

TABLE OF CONTENTS - NỘI DUNG

MỤC	TÊN CHUYÊN ĐỀ	TÊN BÀI	TRANG
1.	CHUYÊN ĐỀ I. PHONETICS	Bài 1. Phonetic Symbols	4
2.		Bài 2. Stress & Rules to mark stress	13
3.	CHUYÊN ĐỀ II. WORD-CLASSES	Bài 1. Nouns	24
4.		Bài 2. Verbs	40
5.		Bài 3. Adjectives	57
6.		Bài 4. Adverbs	75
7.		Bài 5. Articles	93
8.		Bài 6. Prepositions	102
9.		Bài 7. Synonym & Antonym	112
10.		Bài 8. Sentence Elements	121
11.	CHUYÊN ĐỀ III. GRAMMAR	Bài 1. Tenses of Verbs	138
12.		Bài 2. Emphasis	159
13.		Bài 3. Gerunds	172
14.		Bài 4. Infinitives	187
15.		Bài 5. The Passive Voice	201
16.		Bài 6. Indirect Speech	216
17.		Bài 7. Subjunctives	231
18.	CHUYÊN ĐỀ IV. PHRASES VS. CLAUSES	Bài 1. Phrases vs. Clauses	242
19.		Bài 2. Conditional Sentences	252
20.		Bài 3. Relative Clauses	268
21.		Bài 4. Phrases & Clauses of Purpose	281
22.		Bài 5. Phrases & Clauses of Concession	290
23.		Bài 6. Phrases & Clauses of Reason	300
24.		Bài 7. Clauses of Causes and Effects	310
25.		Bài 8. Adverbial Clauses of Time	319
26.		Bài 9. Communicative Exchanges	331
27.	CHUYÊN ĐỀ V.	Bài 1. Sentences Transformation	340
28.	WRITING SKILLS	Bài 2. Paragraph & Essay Organizing	359
29.	KEYS TO EXERCISES	Đáp án các bài tập thực hành	369

PHẦN I – CÁC CHUYÊN ĐỀ VÀ BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

CHUYÊN ĐỀ I – PHONETICS CHUYÊN ĐỀ VỀ NGỮ ÂM

Chuyên đề này sẽ cung cấp các kí hiệu phiên âm quốc tế của các nguyên âm (đơn, đôi, ba), các phụ âm (vô thanh, hữu thanh), một số chùm phụ âm, và đặc biệt là tuyển tập các bài tập thực hành rất hữu ích. Trong chuyên đề này, các kí hiệu phiên âm quốc tế được sử dụng theo mẫu của các kí hiệu phiên âm quốc tế theo bộ sách giáo khoa Tiếng Anh của Nhà Xuất Bản Giáo Dục năm 2006. Phần phiên âm các từ và vị trí của các trọng âm chính được thực hiện thông qua việc tham khảo các từ điển on-line như MultiDictionary 9.0, Oxford Collocations Dictionary, hay Cambridge Dictionary, ... Với mục đích phục vụ cho công tác giảng dạy và ôn tập thi các cấp, hình thức phiên âm và việc xác định vị trí các trọng âm chỉ mang tính tham khảo, và là cơ sở để giải các bài tập thực hành kèm theo, tuy nhiên, các bài tập thực hành kèm theo của chuyên đề này bao gồm những từ vựng có liên quan đến chương trình tiếng Anh phổ thông và thường xuyên được sử dụng trong các đề thi.

BÀI 1. PHONETIC SYMBOLS BẢNG PHIÊN ÂM QUỐC TẾ

1. The symbols vowel sounds (Các kí hiệu phiên âm của các nguyên âm):

1.1. The symbols of pure vowel sounds (Các kí hiệu phiên âm của các nguyên âm đơn):

Symbols of the sounds (Kí hiệu các âm)	In letters (Chữ cái thể hiện)	Examples in words (Ví dụ cụ thể trên các từ)		
/ ɪ /	a	vill <u>a</u> ge /'vɪlɪdʒ/	pack <u>a</u> ge /'pækɪdʒ/	assembl <u>a</u> ge /ə'semblɪdʒ/
	e	pre <u>t</u> ty /'prɪtɪ/	repre <u>s</u> ent	de <u>l</u> iver /di'livə(r)/
	i	s <u>i</u> t /sɪt/	l <u>i</u> ttle /'lɪtl/	s <u>i</u> mple /'sɪmpl/
	y	happ <u>y</u> /'hæpɪ/	easy /'i:zɪ/	usuall <u>y</u> /'ju:əlɪ/
/ i: /	ea	le <u>a</u> d /li:d/	se <u>a</u> side /'si:sɑɪd/	me <u>a</u> ningful /'mi:nɪŋfəl/
	ee	me <u>e</u> t /mi:t/	she <u>e</u> p /ʃi:p/	ste <u>e</u> l /sti:l/
/ e /	a	ma <u>n</u> y /'meni/	<u>a</u> ny /'eni/	manifol <u>d</u> /'menɪfəʊld/
	e	se <u>n</u> d /send/	recomm <u>e</u> nd /rɪkə'mend/	compreh <u>e</u> nd /kəmprɪ'hend/

	ea	<u>h</u> ea <u>d</u> /hed/	sp <u>re</u> ad /spred/	<u>h</u> ea <u>d</u> ache /'hedeɪk/
/ æ /	a	l <u>a</u> nd /lænd/	br <u>a</u> ndy /'brændɪ/	s <u>a</u> ndy /'sændɪ/
/ ɔ /	o	p <u>o</u> t /pɒt /	sp <u>o</u> t /spɒt /	sl <u>o</u> t /slɒt /
	a	w <u>a</u> sh /wɒʃ /	wh <u>a</u> t /wɒt /	w <u>a</u> tch /wɒtʃ/
/ ɔ: /	a	t <u>a</u> lk /tɔ:k/	w <u>a</u> lk /wɔ:k/	w <u>a</u> ter /'wɔ:tə(r)/
	aw	s <u>a</u> w /sɔ:/	l <u>a</u> wn /lɔ:n/	p <u>a</u> wn /pɔ:n/
	oa	br <u>oa</u> d /brɔ:d/	br <u>oa</u> den/'brɔ:dn/	abr <u>oa</u> d /ə'brɔ:d/
	oo	d <u>oo</u> r /dɔ:(r)/	fl <u>oo</u> r /flɔ:(r)/	fl <u>oo</u> rage /'flɔ:ɹɪdʒ/
	or	f <u>or</u> k /fɔ:k/	sp <u>or</u> t /spɔ:t/	transp <u>or</u> t /'trænsɔ:t/
	ou	f <u>ou</u> ght /fɔ:t/	th <u>ou</u> ght /θɔ:t/	b <u>ou</u> ght /bɔ:t/
/ ʌ /	o	s <u>o</u> me /sʌm/	c <u>o</u> me /kʌm/	d <u>o</u> ne /dʌn/
	u	sh <u>u</u> t /ʃʌt/	m <u>u</u> ddy /'mʌdɪ/	b <u>u</u> dget /'bʌdʒɪt/
	oo	bl <u>oo</u> d /blʌd/	fl <u>oo</u> d /flʌd/	bl <u>oo</u> dless /blʌdlɪs/
	ou	t <u>ou</u> gh /tʌf/	en <u>ou</u> gh /ɪ'nʌf/	r <u>ou</u> gh /rʌf/
/ ɑ: /	a	t <u>a</u> sk /tɑ:sk/	f <u>a</u> st /fɑ:st/	broadc <u>a</u> st /br ɔ:d'kɑ:st/
	ar	c <u>a</u> rd /kɑ:d/	_____ 1	f <u>a</u> rther /'fɑ:ðər/
	ear	h <u>e</u> art /hɑ:t/	h <u>e</u> arten /'hɑ:tən/	h <u>e</u> arth /hɑ:θ/
/ ʊ / or	u	p <u>u</u> ll /pʊl/	p <u>u</u> sh /pʊʃ/	p <u>u</u> llet /'pʊlet/
	oo	g <u>oo</u> d /gʊd/	c <u>oo</u> k /kʊk/	l <u>oo</u> k /lʊk/
/ u /	ou	c <u>ou</u> ld /kʊld/	w <u>ou</u> ld /wʊld/	sh <u>ou</u> ld /ʃʊld/
/ u: /	u	f <u>ru</u> gal /'fru:gəl/	concl <u>u</u> de /kɒn'klu:d/	ill <u>u</u> sion /ɪ'lu:ʃn/
	oe	sh <u>oe</u> /ʃu: /	sh <u>oe</u> bill /'ʃu:bɪl/	sh <u>oe</u> maker /'ʃu:meɪkər/
	oo	m <u>oo</u> n /mu:n/	sp <u>oo</u> n /spu:n/	sm <u>oo</u> th /smu:θ/
	ui	f <u>ru</u> it /fru:t/	c <u>ru</u> ise /kru:s/	recr <u>ui</u> t /rɪ'kru:t/
/ ə /	a	<u>a</u> wait /ə'weɪt/	ab <u>o</u> ut /ə'baʊt/	m <u>a</u> chine /mə'ʃi:n/
	o	t <u>o</u> night /tə'nait/	p <u>o</u> tato /pə'teɪtəʊ/	t <u>o</u> morrow /tə'mɒrəʊ/
	er	read <u>e</u> r /'ri:dər/	writ <u>e</u> r /'raɪtər/	cruis <u>e</u> r /'kru:sər/
	or	act <u>o</u> r /'æktər/	doct <u>o</u> r /'dɒktər/	translat <u>o</u> r /'trænsleɪtər/
/ ɜ: /	er	pref <u>e</u> r /prɪ'fɜ: r/	merc <u>h</u> ant /'mɜ:tʃənt/	merc <u>h</u> iful /'mɜ:sɪfʊl/
	ir	sh <u>ir</u> t /ʃɜ:t/	sk <u>ir</u> t /skɜ:t/	f <u>ir</u> st /fɜ:st/
	ur	hur <u>t</u> /hɜ:t/	f <u>ur</u> ther /'fɜ:ðə/	f <u>ur</u> nish /'fɜ:nɪʃ/
	or	w <u>or</u> d /wɜ:d/	w <u>or</u> k /wɜ:k/	w <u>or</u> m /wɜ:m/
	ear	h <u>ear</u> d /hɜ:d/	<u>ear</u> th /ɜ:θ/	<u>ear</u> then /'ɜ:θən/

1. 2. The diphthongs and triphthongs (Các kí hiệu phiên âm của các nguyên đôi, ba):

Symbols of the sounds (Kí hiệu các âm)	In letters (Chữ cái thể hiện)	Examples in words (Ví dụ cụ thể trên các từ)		
/ eɪ /	a	<i>case</i> /keɪs/	<i>baby</i> /'beɪbɪ/	<i>lazy</i> /'leɪzɪ/
	ai	<i>maid</i> /meɪd/	<i>maiden</i> /'meɪdn/	<i>maidenly</i> /'meɪdnli/
	ay	<i>say</i> /seɪ/	<i>clay</i> /kleɪ/	<i>play</i> /pleɪ/
	ei	<i>eight</i> /eɪt/	<i>eighthly</i> /'eɪθli/	<i>Iranic</i> /eɪ'rænɪk/
/ aɪ /	i	<i>kite</i> /kaɪt/	<i>night</i> /naɪt/	<i>mine</i> /maɪn/
	y	<i>sky</i> /skaɪ/	<i>fly</i> /flaɪ/	<i>satisfy</i> /'sætɪsfaɪ/
/ ɔɪ /	oi	<i>soil</i> /sɔɪl/	<i>coin</i> /kɔɪn/	<i>spoil</i> /spɔɪl/
	oy	<i>employ</i> /ɪm'plɔɪ/	<i>enjoy</i> /ɪn'dʒɔɪ/	<i>employment</i> /ɪm'plɔɪmnt/
/ aʊ /	ou	<i>mouse</i> /maʊs/	<i>mouth</i> /maʊθ/	<i>surround</i> /sɜ:'raʊnd/
	ow	<i>now</i> /naʊ/	<i>power</i> /'paʊər/	<i>cowboy</i> /'kaʊ bɔɪ/
/ əʊ /	o	<i>cold</i> /kəʊld/	<i>scold</i> /skəʊld/	<i>fold</i> /fəʊld/
	ow	<i>slow</i> /sləʊ/	<i>flow</i> /fləʊ/	<i>show</i> /ʃəʊ/
	ew	<i>sew</i> /səʊ/	<i>sewing</i> /'səʊɪŋ/	<i>sewn</i> /səʊn/
/ ɪə /	ear	<i>hear</i> /hɪə(r)/	<i>fear</i> /fɪə(r)/	<i>near</i> /nɪə(r)/
	ere	<i>here</i> /hɪə(r)/	<i>merely</i> /'mɪəli/	<i>atmosphere</i> /'ætmoʊsfɪə(r)/
/ eə /	ere	<i>there</i> /ðeə(r)/	<i>therapy</i> /'θeərəpi/	<i>thereabout</i> /'ðeərəbaʊt/
	are	<i>fare</i> /feə(r)/	<i>share</i> /ʃeə(r)/	<i>stare</i> /steə(r)/
	air	<i>hair</i> /heə(r)/	<i>fair</i> /feə(r)/	<i>stairs</i> /steə(r)s/
/ ʊə /	our	<i>tour</i> /tʊə(r)/	<i>tourer</i> /tʊərə/	<i>tourism</i> /'tʊərɪzəm/
/ aɪə /	ire	<i>tire</i> /taɪə/	<i>fire</i> /faɪə/	<i>firemen</i> /'faɪəmen/
	yre	<i>tyre</i> /taɪə/	<i>tyreless</i> /'taɪəlis/	<i>tyre-pump</i> /'taɪə pʌmp /
	yer	<i>buyer</i> /baɪə/	<i>flyer</i> /flaɪə/	<i>buyer</i> /baɪə/
/ əʊə /	ower	<i>slower</i> /sləʊə/	<i>slower</i> /sləʊə/	<i>slower</i> /sləʊə/
/ aʊə /	ower	<i>shower</i> /ʃaʊə/	<i>power</i> /paʊə/	<i>flower</i> /flaʊə/
	our	<i>flour</i> /flaʊə/	<i>sour</i> /saʊə/	<i>flour</i> /flaʊə/
/ eɪə /	ayer	<i>prayer</i> /preɪə/	<i>player</i> /pleɪə/	<i>sprayer</i> /spreɪə/

	eyer	<u>greyer</u> /'greiə/	<u>greyer</u> /'greiə/	<u>greyer</u> /'greiə/
/ ɔɪə /	oyer	<u>enjoyer</u> /ɪn'dʒɔɪə/	<u>enjoyer</u> /ɪn'dʒɔɪə/	<u>employer</u> /ɪm'plɔɪə/
	oyal	<u>loyal</u> /'lɔɪəl/	<u>loyalty</u> /'lɔɪəltɪ/	<u>loyal</u> /'lɔɪəl/

2. The symbols of the consonant sounds (Các kí hiệu phiên âm của các phụ âm):

2.1. The symbols of voiceless consonants (Kí hiệu phiên âm của các phụ âm vô thanh):

Symbols of the sounds (Kí hiệu các âm)	In letters (Chữ cái thể hiện)	Examples in words (Ví dụ cụ thể trên các từ)		
/ p /	p	<u>p</u> en /pen/	<u>p</u> aint /peɪnt/	<u>p</u> eople /'pi:pəl/
/ f /	f	<u>f</u> ive /faɪv/	<u>f</u> ormal /'fɔ:məl/	<u>f</u> amily /'fæmɪli/
	ph	<u>ph</u> ysics /'fɪz ɪks/	<u>ph</u> ysician /fɪ'zɪkʃn/	<u>ph</u> ysical /fɪ'zɪkəl/
	gh	la <u>gh</u> /la:f/	enou <u>gh</u> /ɪ'nʌf/	rou <u>gh</u> /rʌf/
/ θ /	th	<u>th</u> row /θrəʊ/	<u>th</u> under /'θʌndə(r)/	s <u>ixth</u> /sɪksθ/
/ t /	t	<u>t</u> each /ti:tʃ/	<u>t</u> emple /'tempəl/	<u>t</u> ittle /'tɪtləl/
	ed	look <u>ed</u> /lʊkt/	laugh <u>ed</u> /la:ft/	stop <u>ped</u> /stɒpt/
/ s /	s	<u>s</u> ite /saɪt/	<u>s</u> andy /'sændɪ/	<u>s</u> ample /'sæmpəl/
	c	<u>c</u> entre /'sentə/	<u>c</u> entury /'sentʃʊri/	<u>c</u> ell /sel/
/ ʃ /	sh	<u>sh</u> ee <u>p</u> /ʃi:p/	<u>sh</u> ee <u>t</u> /ʃi:t/	Engl <u>ish</u> /'ɪŋlɪʃ/
	ch	ma <u>ch</u> ine /mə'ʃi:n/	<u>ch</u> aise /ʃeɪz/	<u>ch</u> ampagne /ʃæm'peɪn/
	s	<u>s</u> ugar /'ʃʊgə/	<u>s</u> ugary /'ʃʊgəri/	<u>s</u> ure /'ʃʊə(r)/
/ tʃ /	ch	<u>ch</u> oice /tʃɔɪs/	<u>ch</u> urch /tʃɜ:tʃ/	chimney /'tʃɪmni/
	t	fix <u>t</u> ure /'fɪkstʃə/	fu <u>t</u> ure /'fju:tʃə/	quest <u>ion</u> /'kwestʃn/
/ k /	k	<u>k</u> itchen /'kɪtʃn/	<u>k</u> iss /kɪs/	<u>k</u> ing /kɪŋ/
	c	<u>c</u> oncert /kən'sɜ:t/	<u>c</u> ancel /'kænsəl/	<u>c</u> omedy /'kɒmɛdi/
	ch	<u>ch</u> emist /'kemɪst/	<u>ch</u> emistry /'kemɪstri/	<u>ch</u> emical /'kemɪkəl/
	q	<u>q</u> uite /kwaɪt/	quest <u>ion</u> /'kwestʃn/	con <u>q</u> uest /'kɒŋkwɛst/
/ h /	h	<u>h</u> ike /haɪk/	<u>h</u> unger /'hʌŋgə(r)/	<u>h</u> omeless /'həʊmlɪs/
	wh	<u>wh</u> oop /hu:p/	<u>wh</u> ose /hu:z/	<u>wh</u> olesale /'həʊlseɪl/

2.2. The symbols of voiced consonants (Kí hiệu phiên âm của các phụ âm hữu thanh):

Symbols of the sounds (Kí hiệu các âm)	In letters (Chữ cái thể hiện)	Examples in words (Ví dụ cụ thể trên các từ)		
/ b /	b	<u>b</u> oy /bɔɪ/	<u>b</u> am <u>b</u> oo /bæm'bu:/	<u>b</u> and /bænd/
/ v /	v	<u>v</u> isit /'vɪzɪt/	<u>v</u> an /væn/	<u>v</u> ictory /'vɪktərɪ/
	f	<u>o</u> f /əv/	<u>o</u> f /əv/	<u>o</u> f /əv/
/ ð /	th	<u>th</u> em /ðəm/	<u>w</u> ith /wɪð/	<u>th</u> ough /ðəʊ/
/ d /	d	<u>d</u> one /dʌn/	<u>d</u> octor /'dɒktə(r)/	<u>d</u> ancer /'dænsə(r)/
	ed	<u>l</u> ived /'lɪvd/	<u>e</u> arn <u>ed</u> /ɜ:nd/	<u>c</u> ancell <u>ed</u> /'kænsəld/
/ z /	z	<u>z</u> ebra /'zi:brə/	<u>z</u> ip /zɪp/	<u>z</u> ealot /'zelət/
	s	<u>v</u> isit /'vɪzɪt/	<u>v</u> isual /'vɪzjuəl/	<u>te</u> ach <u>er</u> s /ti:tʃəz/
/ ʒ /	s	<u>v</u> ision /'vɪʒn/	<u>u</u> sual /'juʒuəl/	<u>u</u> sually /'juʒuəli/
/ dʒ /	g	<u>g</u> erm /dʒɜ:m/	<u>g</u> ene /dʒi:n/	<u>a</u> ge /eɪdʒ/
	j	<u>j</u> am /dʒæm/	<u>j</u> am /dʒæz/	<u>j</u> oyful /dʒɔɪfʊl/
/ g /	g	<u>g</u> ift /gɪft/	<u>g</u> ain /geɪn/	<u>g</u> irl /gɜ:l/
/ l /	l	<u>l</u> ittle /'lɪtəl/	<u>l</u> amp /læmp/	<u>l</u> ight /laɪt/
/ m /	m	<u>m</u> onk /mɒŋk/	mammal /'mæməl/	Monday /'mʌndeɪ/
/ n /	n	<u>n</u> ame /neɪm/	<u>n</u> umber /nʌmbə/	<u>n</u> oise /nɔɪs/
/ ŋ /	n	<u>th</u> ink /θɪŋk/	<u>th</u> ank /θæŋk/	<u>s</u> ink /sɪŋk/
	ng	<u>s</u> ing /sɪŋ/	<u>th</u> ing /θɪŋ/	<u>ce</u> iling /'si:lɪŋ/
/ r /	r	<u>r</u> ural /'ruərəl/	<u>r</u> ing /rɪŋ/	<u>r</u> ead <u>er</u> /'ri:də/
/ w /	w	<u>w</u> ith /wɪð/	<u>w</u> ine /waɪn/	<u>w</u> ing /wɪŋ/
	wh	<u>w</u> hen /wen/	<u>w</u> histle /'wɪsəl/	<u>w</u> hisper /'wɪspə/
/ j /	y	<u>y</u> oung /jʌŋ/	<u>y</u> early /'jɪəli/	<u>y</u> outh /ju:θ/
	u	<u>m</u> usic /'mju:sɪk/	<u>u</u> nit /'ju:nɪt/	<u>u</u> niversity /ju:nɪ'vɜ:sɪti/
/ φ / mute cases	h	<u>h</u> onest /'ɔ:nɪst/	<u>h</u> our /aʊə/	<u>h</u> eir /aɪə/
	k	<u>k</u> n <u>ig</u> ht /naɪt/	<u>k</u> n <u>i</u> t /nɪt/	known /nɔʊn/
	b	com <u>b</u> /kɔʊm/	clim <u>b</u> /klaɪm/	de <u>b</u> t /det/
	p	<u>p</u> neumonia /ŋjʊ'mɔ:niə/	<u>p</u> sychology /saɪ'kɔ:lɒdʒɪ/	<u>p</u> sychiatrist /saɪ'kiətɪst/

2.3. The clusters of consonants (Kí hiệu phiên âm của các chùm phụ âm):

Symbols of the sounds (Kí hiệu các âm)	In letters (Chữ cái thể hiện)	Examples in words (Ví dụ cụ thể trên các từ)		
/ s+ /	/ sp /	<u>s</u> peak /spi:k/	<u>s</u> poil /spɔɪl/	<u>s</u> peaker /'spi:kə/
	/ st /	<u>s</u> tart /stɑ:t/	<u>s</u> tand /stænd/	<u>s</u> tay /steɪ/
	/ sk /	<u>s</u> chool /skʊl/	<u>s</u> kill /skɪl/	<u>s</u> can /skæn/
	/ sf /	<u>s</u> phere /sfɪə/	<u>s</u> pherical /sfɪərəl/	bio <u>s</u> phere /baɪə'sfɪə/
	/ sm /	<u>s</u> mall /smɔl/	<u>s</u> plash /smæʃ/	<u>s</u> pell /smel/
	/ sn /	<u>s</u> now /snəʊ/	<u>s</u> neeze /sni:z/	<u>s</u> neaky /'sni:kɪ/
	/ sw /	<u>s</u> weet /swi:t/	<u>s</u> wim /swɪm/	<u>s</u> wan /swɔn/
	/ sj /	<u>s</u> uper /sjʊpə/	<u>s</u> uperadd /'sjʊpərəd/	<u>s</u> uperably /'sjʊpərəblɪ/
/ p+ /	/ pl /	<u>p</u> lump /plʌmp/	<u>p</u> ply /ə'plaɪ/	<u>p</u> lease /pli:s/
	/ pr /	<u>p</u> roud /praʊd/	<u>p</u> ropose /'prɒpəʊs/	<u>p</u> roduce /prə'dju:s/
	/ pj /	<u>p</u> ure /pjʊə/	<u>p</u> urely /'pjʊəli/	<u>p</u> urify /'pjʊərəfaɪ/
/ t+ /	/ tr /	<u>t</u> rain /treɪn/	<u>t</u> reat /tri:t/	<u>t</u> reatment /tri:tmənt/
	/ tw /	<u>t</u> wice /twais/	<u>t</u> werp /twɜ:p/	<u>t</u> wicer /'twaisə/
	/ tj /	<u>t</u> ube /tjʊb/	<u>t</u> ubal /'tjʊ:bəl/	<u>t</u> uber /'tjʊ:bə/
/ k+ /	/ kl /	<u>k</u> lass /kla:s/	<u>k</u> lean /kli:ns/	<u>k</u> lame /kleɪm/
	/ kr /	<u>k</u> ream /kri:m/	<u>k</u> ry /kraɪ/	<u>k</u> reative /kri:'eɪtɪv/
	/ kw /	<u>k</u> uite /kwaɪt/	<u>k</u> uit /kwɪt/	<u>k</u> uest /kwest/
	/ kj /	<u>k</u> ure /kjʊə/	<u>k</u> ute /kjʊt/	<u>k</u> tely /kjʊtli/
/ b+ /	/ bl /	<u>b</u> low /bləʊ/	<u>b</u> lame /bleɪm/	<u>b</u> leach /bli:tʃ/
	/ br /	<u>b</u> ring /brɪŋ/	<u>b</u> ride /braɪd/	<u>b</u> ridge /brɪdʒ/
	/ bj /	<u>b</u> eauty /'bjʊti/	<u>b</u> eautify /'bjʊtɪfaɪ/	<u>b</u> eautiful /'bjʊtɪfʊl/
/ g+ /	/ gl /	<u>g</u> lass /gla:s/	<u>g</u> lim /glɪm/	<u>g</u> lance /gla:ns/
	/ gr /	<u>g</u> row /grəʊ/	<u>g</u> reat /gret/	<u>g</u> room /gru:m/
/ d+ /	/ dr /	<u>d</u> ream /dri:m/	<u>d</u> read /dred /	<u>d</u> readful /'dredfʊl/
	/ dw /	<u>d</u> well /dwel/	<u>d</u> weller /'dwelə/	<u>d</u> welt /dwel/
	/ dj /	<u>d</u> uty /'djʊti/	<u>d</u> utiful /'djʊtɪfʊl/	<u>d</u> utifully /'djʊtɪfʊli/
/ f+ /	/ fl /	<u>f</u> low /fləʊ/	<u>f</u> ly /flaɪ/	<u>f</u> lame /fleɪm/
	/ fr /	<u>f</u> ry /fraɪ/	<u>f</u> righ /fraɪt/	<u>f</u> ridge /frɪdʒ/
	/ fj /	<u>f</u> urious /'fjʊriəs/	<u>f</u> ew /fju/	<u>f</u> uriously /'fjʊriəsli/

/ θ+ /	/ θr /	<u>th</u> row /θrəʊ/	<u>th</u> rough /θruː/	<u>th</u> reat /θret/
	/ θw /	<u>th</u> wart /θwæt/	<u>th</u> wack /θwæk/	<u>th</u> wack /θwæk/
Các kết hợp khác	/ vj /	<u>v</u> iew /vjʊ/	int <u>er</u> view /'ɪntəvjʊ/	pre <u>v</u> iew /pri'vjʊ/
	/ mj /	<u>m</u> ute /mjʊt/	<u>m</u> utual /mjʊtʊəl/	<u>m</u> usic /mjʊzɪk/
	/ ʃr /	<u>sh</u> rimp /ʃrɪmp/	<u>sh</u> riek /ʃriːk/	<u>sh</u> rill /ʃrɪl/
	/ nj /	<u>n</u> ude /njʊd/	<u>n</u> udist /'njʊdɪst/	<u>n</u> udism /'njʊdɪzəm/
	/ spr /	<u>s</u> pread /spred/	<u>s</u> prawl /sprɔːl/	<u>s</u> pray /spreɪ/
	/ spl /	<u>s</u> plash /splæʃ/	<u>s</u> plat /splæt/	<u>s</u> plashy /splæʃi/
	/ skr /	<u>s</u> cream /scriːm/	<u>s</u> creed /scriː /	<u>s</u> creen /scriːn/
	/ str /	<u>s</u> tream /striːm/	<u>s</u> trawny /strɔː ɪ/	<u>s</u> treak /striːk/
	/ skj /	<u>s</u> cuba /'skjʊbə/	<u>s</u> cuba /'skjʊbə/	<u>s</u> cuba /'skjʊbə/
	/ stj /	<u>s</u> tudent /'stjʊdnt/	<u>s</u> tupid /'stjʊpɪd/	<u>s</u> tudio /'stjʊdiəʊ/
	/ spj /	<u>s</u> pume /spjʊːm/	<u>s</u> pue /spjʊː/	<u>s</u> pumous /spjʊːməs/
	/ skw /	<u>s</u> quare /skweə/	<u>s</u> quarer /'skweərə/	<u>s</u> quander /'skwɔːdə/

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 1: Find the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others of the same group.

- A. candy B. sandy C. many D. handy
- A. earning B. learning C. searching D. clearing
- A. pays B. stays C. says D. plays
- A. given B. risen C. ridden D. whiten
- A. cough B. tough C. rough D. enough
- A. accident B. jazz C. stamp D. watch
- A. this B. thick C. bath D. thin
- A. gas B. gain C. germ D. good
- A. bought B. naught C. plough D. thought
- A. forks B. tables C. beds D. windows
- A. handed B. booked C. translated D. visited
- A. car B. coach C. century D. cooperate
- A. within B. without C. clothing D. strengthen
- A. has B. bag C. dad D. made
- A. kites B. catches C. oranges D. buzzes
- A. student B. stupid C. study D. studio
- A. wealth B. cloth C. with D. marathon

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 18. A. brilliant | B. trip | C. tripe | D. tip |
| 19. A. surgeon | B. agent | C. engine | D. regard |
| 20. A. <u>feather</u> | B. <u>leather</u> | C. <u>feature</u> | D. <u>measure</u> |

Exercise 2: Find the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others of the same group.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. geology | B. psychology | C. classify | D. photography |
| 2. A. <u>idiom</u> | B. <u>ideal</u> | C. <u>item</u> | D. <u>identical</u> |
| 3. A. <u>children</u> | B. <u>child</u> | C. <u>mild</u> | D. <u>wild</u> |
| 4. A. <u>both</u> | B. <u>myth</u> | C. <u>with</u> | D. <u>sixth</u> |
| 5. A. <u>helped</u> | B. <u>booked</u> | C. <u>hoped</u> | D. <u>waited</u> |
| 6. A. <u>name</u> | B. <u>natural</u> | C. <u>native</u> | D. <u>nation</u> |
| 7. A. <u>blood</u> | B. <u>food</u> | C. <u>moon</u> | D. <u>pool</u> |
| 8. A. <u>comb</u> | B. <u>plumb</u> | C. <u>climb</u> | D. <u>disturb</u> |
| 9. A. <u>thick</u> | B. <u>though</u> | C. <u>thank</u> | D. <u>think</u> |
| 10. A. <u>flour</u> | B. <u>hour</u> | C. <u>pour</u> | D. <u>sour</u> |
| 11. A. <u>dictation</u> | B. <u>repetition</u> | C. <u>station</u> | D. <u>question</u> |
| 12. A. <u>dew</u> | B. <u>knew</u> | C. <u>sew</u> | D. <u>few</u> |
| 13. A. <u>asked</u> | B. <u>helped</u> | C. <u>kissed</u> | D. <u>played</u> |
| 14. A. <u>smells</u> | B. <u>cuts</u> | C. <u>opens</u> | D. <u>plays</u> |
| 15. A. <u>decided</u> | B. <u>hatred</u> | C. <u>sacred</u> | D. <u>warned</u> |
| 16. A. <u>head</u> | B. <u>break</u> | C. <u>bread</u> | D. <u>breath</u> |
| 17. A. <u>blood</u> | B. <u>tool</u> | C. <u>moon</u> | D. <u>spool</u> |
| 18. A. <u>height</u> | B. <u>fine</u> | C. <u>tidy</u> | D. <u>cliff</u> |
| 19. A. <u>through</u> | B. <u>them</u> | C. <u>threaten</u> | D. <u>thunder</u> |
| 20. A. <u>fought</u> | B. <u>country</u> | C. <u>bought</u> | D. <u>ought</u> |

Exercise 3: Find the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others of the same group.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. <u>moon</u> | B. <u>pool</u> | C. <u>door</u> | D. <u>cool</u> |
| 2. A. <u>any</u> | B. <u>apple</u> | C. <u>hat</u> | D. <u>cat</u> |
| 3. A. <u>book</u> | B. <u>blood</u> | C. <u>look</u> | D. <u>foot</u> |
| 4. A. <u>pan</u> | B. <u>woman</u> | C. <u>sad</u> | D. <u>man</u> |
| 5. A. <u>table</u> | B. <u>lady</u> | C. <u>labor</u> | D. <u>captain</u> |
| 6. A. <u>host</u> | B. <u>most</u> | C. <u>cost</u> | D. <u>post</u> |
| 7. A. <u>dear</u> | B. <u>beard</u> | C. <u>beer</u> | D. <u>heard</u> |
| 8. A. <u>work</u> | B. <u>coat</u> | C. <u>go</u> | D. <u>know</u> |
| 9. A. <u>name</u> | B. <u>flame</u> | C. <u>man</u> | D. <u>fame</u> |
| 10. A. <u>how</u> | B. <u>town</u> | C. <u>power</u> | D. <u>slow</u> |

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|------------------------------|---|
| 11. A. <u>h</u> arm | B. <u>w</u> ash | C. <u>c</u> all | D. <u>t</u> alk |
| 12. A. <u>b</u> rought | B. <u>o</u> ught | C. <u>th</u> ought | D. <u>th</u> ough |
| 13. A. <u>c</u> all | B. <u>c</u> urtain | C. <u>c</u> ell | D. <u>c</u> ontain |
| 14. A. <u>m</u> ea <u>s</u> ure | B. <u>d</u> eci <u>s</u> ion | C. <u>p</u> leas <u>u</u> re | D. <u>p</u> er <u>mi</u> ssi <u>o</u> n |
| 15. A. <u>d</u> rou <u>gh</u> t | B. <u>f</u> ou <u>gh</u> t | C. <u>b</u> rou <u>gh</u> t | D. <u>b</u> ou <u>gh</u> t |
| 16. A. <u>b</u> uild <u>s</u> | B. <u>d</u> estroy <u>s</u> | C. <u>o</u> ccur <u>s</u> | D. <u>p</u> revent <u>s</u> |
| 17. A. <u>d</u> eal | B. <u>t</u> ea <u>ch</u> | C. <u>b</u> rea <u>k</u> | D. <u>c</u> lea <u>n</u> |
| 18. A. <u>s</u> upport <u>e</u> d | B. <u>a</u> ppro <u>a</u> ch <u>e</u> d | C. <u>n</u> otice <u>d</u> | D. <u>f</u> inish <u>e</u> d |
| 19. A. <u>u</u> nity | B. <u>s</u> uite | C. <u>s</u> tudious | D. <u>v</u> olum <u>e</u> |
| 20. A. <u>c</u> lim <u>b</u> er | B. <u>s</u> ub <u>t</u> le | C. <u>d</u> eb <u>t</u> or | D. <u>p</u> robab <u>l</u> e |

Exercise 4: Find the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others of the same group.

- | | | | |
|---|--|--|-----------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>l</u> ov <u>e</u> d | B. <u>a</u> pp <u>e</u> ar <u>e</u> d | C. <u>a</u> gr <u>e</u> e <u>d</u> | D. <u>c</u> ough <u>e</u> d |
| 2. A. <u>t</u> her <u>e</u> up <u>o</u> n | B. <u>t</u> hrill | C. <u>t</u> hr <u>e</u> es <u>o</u> me | D. <u>t</u> hr <u>o</u> ne |
| 3. A. <u>ch</u> in | B. <u>ch</u> aos | C. <u>ch</u> ild | D. <u>ch</u> arge |
| 4. A. <u>w</u> ast <u>e</u> d | B. <u>p</u> ract <u>i</u> c <u>e</u> d | C. <u>l</u> augh <u>e</u> d | D. <u>j</u> ump <u>e</u> d |
| 5. A. <u>c</u> oa <u>s</u> t | B. <u>m</u> ost | C. <u>l</u> ost | D. <u>w</u> h <u>o</u> le |
| 6. A. <u>e</u> n <u>e</u> rg <u>y</u> | B. <u>g</u> ain | C. <u>g</u> est <u>u</u> re | D. <u>v</u> illag <u>e</u> |
| 7. A. <u>p</u> opulati <u>o</u> n | B. <u>n</u> ati <u>o</u> n | C. <u>q</u> uesti <u>o</u> n | D. <u>st</u> ati <u>o</u> n |
| 8. A. <u>m</u> ea <u>t</u> | B. <u>s</u> weat | C. <u>l</u> ea <u>f</u> | D. <u>s</u> ea <u>t</u> |
| 9. A. <u>a</u> ntibiotic | B. <u>p</u> ant | C. <u>h</u> and | D. <u>w</u> ant |
| 10. A. <u>h</u> ei <u>gh</u> t | B. <u>m</u> yth | C. <u>t</u> ype | D. <u>c</u> lim <u>b</u> |
| 11. A. <u>b</u> u <u>sh</u> | B. <u>r</u> ush | C. <u>p</u> u <u>ll</u> | D. <u>l</u> un <u>a</u> r |
| 12. A. <u>b</u> ou <u>gh</u> t | B. <u>s</u> ou <u>gh</u> t | C. <u>d</u> rou <u>gh</u> t | D. <u>f</u> ou <u>gh</u> t |
| 13. A. <u>k</u> ill <u>e</u> d | B. <u>c</u> ur <u>e</u> d | C. <u>c</u> rash <u>e</u> d | D. <u>w</u> aiv <u>e</u> d |
| 14. A. <u>t</u> hunder | B. <u>p</u> refer | C. <u>g</u> ro <u>c</u> er | D. <u>l</u> ou <u>d</u> er |
| 15. A. <u>t</u> ell <u>s</u> | B. <u>t</u> alk <u>s</u> | C. <u>s</u> tay <u>s</u> | D. <u>s</u> teal <u>s</u> |
| 16. A. <u>s</u> tomach | B. <u>w</u> atch | C. <u>ch</u> ange | D. <u>ch</u> urch |
| 17. A. <u>a</u> ttack <u>s</u> | B. <u>r</u> epeat <u>s</u> | C. <u>r</u> oo <u>f</u> s | D. <u>t</u> ray <u>s</u> |
| 18. A. <u>d</u> rou <u>gh</u> t | B. <u>f</u> ou <u>gh</u> t | C. <u>b</u> rou <u>gh</u> t | D. <u>b</u> ou <u>gh</u> t |
| 19. A. <u>b</u> uild <u>s</u> | B. <u>d</u> estroy <u>s</u> | C. <u>o</u> ccur <u>s</u> | D. <u>p</u> revent <u>s</u> |
| 20. A. <u>n</u> ame | B. <u>n</u> ati <u>o</u> n | C. <u>n</u> ati <u>v</u> e | D. <u>n</u> atur <u>a</u> l |

BÀI 2. STRESS & RULES TO MARK STRESS QUI TẮC ĐÁNH TRỌNG ÂM

As we all know, marking primary stresses on multi-syllable words is so much challenging for not only English learners, but the teachers as well. There have many different ideas on this matter. For many teachers, it is essential and better to teach stress while teaching each word itself to the students. This is undoubtedly an excellent approach, but how the students remember all individual words together with their primary stress pattern is a big question. And, the students may forget the word, or its stress pattern, or they may find it impossible to guess a new word's stress pattern. Other teachers believe that it is important for the students to be provided with rules for marking stress, after that they are able to do the practice better. In fact, English, as we know, is not a phonetically alphabet language, and there are always irregular words facing the students.

Như chúng ta đều biết, việc xác định vị trí trọng âm chính đối với các từ đa âm tiết trong tiếng Anh là thử thách không chỉ đối với người học mà đối với cả giáo viên. Có nhiều quan điểm khác nhau về việc dạy cách xác định trọng âm chính đối với từ đa âm tiết. Nhiều người cho rằng cách tốt nhất để dạy phần trọng âm là dạy cách phát âm và trọng âm cho từng từ đơn lẻ khi đề cập hay giảng dạy. Như vậy người học sẽ phải học thuộc vị trí trọng âm với từng từ đơn lẻ được dạy. Đây là một ý kiến tốt, tuy vậy, sẽ tốn rất nhiều thời gian để người học ghi nhớ từng từ kèm theo vị trí trọng âm, việc quên trọng âm của một từ hay không có khả năng suy đoán vị trí trọng âm của các từ mới gặp sẽ là khó khăn cho người học. Những ý kiến khác lại cho rằng bộ quy tắc đánh trọng âm mà người học được trang bị sẽ giúp họ giải quyết tốt các bài tập về trọng âm. Nhưng trên thực tế, tiếng Anh là ngôn ngữ không có quy luật cấu âm theo dạng ghép chữ cái, và những cách phát âm ngoại lệ cũng là khó khăn mà người học phải đối mặt.

Trong khuôn khổ bài này, một số qui tắc phổ biến và hữu ích để xác định vị trí trọng âm chính đối với các từ tiếng Anh đa âm tiết được chia sẻ, và sẽ là công cụ hữu ích cho người dạy và học hoàn thành tốt nhiệm vụ của bài học này.

MỘT SỐ QUI TẮC ĐÁNH TRỌNG ÂM CHÍNH CHO CÁC TỪ ĐA ÂM TIẾT BASIC RULES FOR MARKING PRIMARY STRESSES ON MULTI-SYLLABLE WORDS

What is the main (primary) stress of a word? *Main (primary) stress of a word (bearing more than one syllable) is the degree of the loudness or prominence with which a sound or a word is pronounced. Trọng âm chính của một từ đa âm tiết là độ lớn hay thống trị về âm của một âm tiết khi một chùm âm của một từ (có từ hai âm tiết trở lên) được đọc, nói hay phát âm.*

Some basic rules to mark stresses – Những qui tắc xác định vị trí trọng âm cơ bản:

2.1. For di-syllable words: Đối với các từ có 2 âm tiết.

a. Trọng âm chính của các từ có hai âm tiết thường rơi vào âm tiết thứ 2 đối với các động từ (trừ trường hợp các âm tiết thứ 2 đó có chứa nguyên âm /ə/, /ɪ/, hoặc /əʊ/), và rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất đối với các từ loại còn lại (trừ trường hợp âm tiết thứ nhất đó có chứa

nguyên âm đơn /ə/). (Primary stresses on di-syllable words are usually on the second syllables for verbs whose second syllables don't contain the vowel sounds of /ə/, /ɪ/, and /əʊ/, and on the first syllables of the other words except for the syllables bearing the vowel sound of /ə/).

Examples:

Verbs		Transcriptions		Nouns		Transcriptions	
1.	appeal	/ ə'pi:l /	2	1.	brother	/ 'brʌðə /	1
2.	appear	/ ə'pɪr /	2	2.	color	/ 'kʌlə /	1
3.	approach	/ ə'prɔ:tʃ /	2	3.	dhoti	/ 'həʊti /	1
4.	arrange	/ ə'reɪdʒ /	2	4.	father	/ 'fɑ:ðə /	1
5.	decide	/ dɪ'saɪd /	2	5.	mother	/ 'mʌðə /	1
6.	invite	/ ɪn'vaɪt /	2	6.	palace	/ 'pælɪs /	1
7.	prepare	/ prɪ'peə /	2	7.	people	/ 'pi:pl /	1
8.	provide	/ prɔ'vaɪd /	2	8.	pupil	/ 'pjʊpəl /	1
9.	support	/ sə'pɔ:t /	2	9.	student	/ 'stju:dnt /	1
10.	surprise	/ sə'praɪs /	2	10.	summer	/ 'sʌmə /	1

hoặc:

Adjectives		Transcriptions		Adverbs		Transcriptions	
1.	ancient	/ 'eɪnsənt /	1	1.	ever	/ 'evə /	1
2.	annual	/ 'ænjʊəl /	1	2.	hardly	/ 'hɑ:dli /	1
3.	concave	/ 'kɒnkeɪv /	1	3.	never	/ 'nevə /	1
4.	cozy	/ 'kəʊzi /	1	4.	often	/ 'ɔ:fn /	1
5.	easy	/ 'i:zi /	1	5.	rarely	/ 'reəli /	1
6.	happy	/ 'hæpi /	1	6.	rather	/ 'rɑ:ðə /	1
7.	muddy	/ 'mʌdi /	1	7.	really	/ 'riəli /	1
8.	noisy	/ 'nɔɪzi /	1	8.	scarcely	/ 'skeəslɪ /	1
9.	quiet	/ 'kwaɪət /	1	9.	seldom	/ 'seldəm /	1
10.	ready	/ 'redi /	1	10.	sometimes	/ 'sʌmtaɪmz /	1

Except for: Ngoại trừ các trường hợp

Verbs		Transcriptions		Others		Transcriptions	
1.	borrow	/ 'bɔ:rəʊ /	1	1.	afraid	/ ə'freɪd /	2
2.	bother	/ 'bɔ:ðə /	1	2.	across	/ ə'krɔ:s /	2
3.	broaden	/ 'brɔ:dən /	1	3.	around	/ ə'raʊnd /	2
4.	enter	/ 'entə /	1	4.	canal	/ kə'næl /	2
5.	follow	/ 'fɒləʊ /	1	5.	career	/ kə'riə /	2
6.	harbor	/ 'hɑ:bər /	1	6.	surround	/ sə'raʊnd /	2
7.	suffer	/ 'sʌfə /	1	7.	polite	/ pə'laɪt /	2

8. widen	/ 'waɪdən /	1	8. police	/ pə'lis /	2
9. loosen	/ 'lu:zən /	1	9. today	/ tə'deɪ /	2
10. tighten	/ 'taɪtən /	1	10. tonight	/ tə'nait /	2

b. Đối với những từ có mang tiền tố, hậu tố, trọng âm chính của từ đó thường rơi vào âm tiết gốc. (Primary stresses on di-syllable words are usually on the root syllables with words having suffixes or prefixes).

Như bảng sau:

Prefixes			Suffixes		
	Transcriptions			Transcriptions	
1. become	/ bɪ'kʌm /	2	1. threaten	/ 'θretən /	1
2. react	/ rɪ'ækt /	2	2. failure	/ 'feɪljʊə /	1
3. foretell	/ fɔ'tel /	2	3. daily	/ 'deɪli /	1
4. begin	/ bɪ'gɪn /	2	4. treatment	/ 'tri:tmənt /	1
5. unknown	/ ʌn'knəʊn /	2	5. ruler	/ 'ru:lə /	1
6. prepaid	/ prɪ'peə /	2	6. quickly	/ 'kwɪkli /	1
7. redo	/ rɪ'du /	2	7. builder	/ 'bɪldə /	1
8. overact	/ əv'ækt /	2	8. lately	/ 'leɪtli /	1
9. upload	/ ʌp'ləʊd /	2	9. actual	/ 'æktʃuəl /	1
10. dislike	/ dɪs'lʌɪk /	2	10. sandy	/ 'sændɪ /	1

Ngoại trừ: unkeep / 'ʌnki:p/

Chú ý: Đối với những từ có nhiều chức năng từ vựng khác nhau, trọng âm chính thường rơi vào âm tiết thứ 2 đối với động từ, rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất đối với các từ loại còn lại. (For words having different word-classes, the main stresses are usually on the second syllables for verbs, the first for other word-classes).

Như bảng sau:

Verbs			Others		
	Transcriptions			Transcriptions	
1. rebel	/ rɪ'bel /	2	1. rebel	/ 'rebəl /	1
2. progress	/ prə'gres /	2	2. progress	/ 'prɒgres /	1
3. suspect	/ səs'pekt /	2	3. suspect	/ 'sʌspekt /	1
4. record	/ rɪ'kɔ:d /	2	4. record	/ 'rekəd /	1
5. export	/ ɪks'pɔ:t /	2	5. export	/ 'ekspət /	1
6. conflict	/ kən'flɪkt /	2	6. conflict	/ 'kɒnflɪkt /	1
7. permit	/ pə'mɪt /	2	7. permit	/ 'pɜ:mɪt /	1
8. conduct	/ kən'dʌkt /	2	8. conduct	/ 'kɒn dʌkt /	1
9. perfect	/ pə'fekt /	2	9. perfect	/ 'pɜ:fekt /	1
10. import	/ ɪm'pɔ:t /	2	10. import	/ 'ɪmpət /	1

2.2. For words with more than two syllables: Đối với các từ có hơn 2 âm tiết.

Đối với các từ có hơn hai âm tiết thông thường trọng âm chính **thường** rơi vào âm tiết thứ ba kể từ âm tiết cuối. (Primary stresses are usually on the 3rd syllables from the end for words with more than two syllables.)

Như bảng sau:

	Words	Transcriptions		Words	Transcriptions
1.	family	/ 'fæmɪli /	11.	biology	/ baɪ'ɔ:lɒdʒɪ /
2.	cinema	/ 'sɪnəmə /	12.	democracy	/ dɪ'mɔ:krəsi /
3.	regular	/ 'regjʊlə /	13.	satisfy	/ 'sætɪsfaɪ /
4.	singular	/ 'sɪŋgjʊlə /	14.	dedicate	/ 'delɪkeɪt /
5.	international	/ ɪntə'næʃənəl /	15.	philosophy	/ fɪ'lɔ:sɒfi /
6.	demonstrate	/ 'demənstreɪt /	16.	philosopher	/ fɪ'lɔ:sɒfə /
7.	recognize	/ 'rekɔɡnaɪz /	17.	character	/ 'kærɪktə /
8.	psychology	/ saɪ'kɔ:lɒdʒɪ /	18.	interest	/ 'ɪntərɪst /
9.	qualify	/ 'kwɔ:lɪti /	19.	internet	/ 'ɪntənət /
10.	biologist	/ baɪ'ɔ:lɒdʒɪst /	20.	different	/ 'dɪfərənt /

Đối với các từ có tận cùng như **“ian”, “ic”, “ience”, “ient”, “al”, “ial”, “ual”, “eous”, “ious”, “iar”, “ion”,** trọng âm **thường** rơi vào âm tiết liền trước của các tận cùng này – thứ 2 kể từ âm tiết cuối. (For words ending in suffixes as **“ian”, “ic”, “ience”, “ient”, “al”, “ial”, “ual”, “eous”, “ious”, “iar”, “ion”,** primary stresses are usually on the preceding syllables of these suffixes).

Như bảng sau:

	Endings	Words	Transcriptions	Words	Transcriptions
1.	<i>ian</i>	physician	/ fɪ'zɪksən /	musician	/ mju'zɪksən /
2.	<i>ic</i>	athletic	/ eθ'letɪk /	energetic	/ enə'dʒetɪk /
3.	<i>ience</i>	experience	/ ɪks'prɪəns /	convenience	/ kən'veniəns /
4.	<i>ient</i>	expedient	/ ɪks'pedɪənt /	ingredient	/ ɪn'grɪ:diənt /
5.	<i>al</i>	parental	/ pə'rentəl /	refusal	/ re'fju:zəl /
6.	<i>ial</i>	essential	/ ɪ'senʃəl /	confidential	/ kənfi'denʃəl /
7.	<i>ual</i>	habitual	/ hæ'bi:tʃuəl /	individual	/ ɪndɪ'vi:duəl /
8.	<i>eous</i>	courageous	/ kə'rægəʊs /	spontaneous	/ spɒn'tænəʊs /
9.	<i>ious</i>	delicious	/ de'li:ʃɪʊs /	industrious	/ ɪn'dʌstriəʊs /
10.	<i>ion</i>	decision	/ dɪ'si:zən /	communication	/ kəmju:nɪ'keɪʃn /
11.	<i>iar</i>	familiar	/ fə'mi:lɪə /	unfamiliar	/ ʌnfə'mi:lɪə /

Trừ: television / 'televɪzən /

Đối với các từ có tận cùng “*ese*”, “*ee*”, “*eer*”, “*ier*”, “*ette*”, “*oo*”, “*esque*”, trọng âm thường rơi vào chính các âm tiết chứa các tận cùng này. (For words ending in suffixes as “*ee*”, “*eer*”, “*ese*”, “*ier*”, “*ette*”, “*esque*”, “*oo*”, primary stresses are usually on these suffixes).
Như bảng sau:

	Endings	Words	Transcriptions	Words	Transcriptions
1.	<i>ee</i>	refugee	/ refjʊ'dʒi: /	employee	/ implɔɪ'i: /
2.	<i>eer</i>	volunteer	/ vɒlʌn'tiə /	engineer	/ endʒi'nɪə /
3.	<i>ese</i>	Portuguese	/ pɔ:tjʊ'gi:s /	Vietnamese	/ vietnʌ'mi:s /
4.	<i>ette</i>	ushrette	/ ʌʃ'ret /	cigarette	/ sigə'ret /
5.	<i>esque</i>	bamboo	/ bæm'bu: /	picturesque	/ pɪktʃə'res /
6.	<i>oo</i>	kangaroo	/ kæn'gru: /	cukoo	/ kʊ'ku: /
7.	<i>oon</i>	saloon	/ sæ'lu:n /	typhoon	/ taɪ'fu:n /

Đối với các từ có tận cùng là “*ate*”, “*fy*”, “*ity*”, “*ize*”, trọng âm chính thường rơi vào âm tiết thứ ba kể từ âm tiết cuối. (For words ending in “*ate*”, “*fy*”, “*ity*”, “*ize*”, primary stresses are usually on the 3rd syllables from the end.)

Như bảng sau:

	Endings	Words	Transcriptions	Words	Transcriptions
1.	<i>ate</i>	dedicate	/ 'dedɪkeɪt/	communicate	/ kə'mjʊnɪkeɪt/
2.	<i>fy</i>	classify	/ 'kla:sɪfaɪ /	satisfy	/ 'sætɪsfaɪ /
3.	<i>ity</i>	ability	/ ə'bi:lɪtɪ /	responsibility	/ respɒsɪ'bi:lɪtɪ /
4.	<i>ize</i>	recognize	/ 'rekɔɡnaɪz /	urbanize	/ 'z:bənaɪz /
5.	<i>ety</i>	society	/ səʊ'saɪətɪ/	anxiety	/ æŋ'zaɪətɪ /

Một số trường hợp đặc biệt cần lưu ý:

on the first syllable			on the second syllable		
	Words	Transcriptions	Words	Transcriptions	
1.	internet	/ 'ɪntənət /	1.	important	/ ɪm'pɔ:tənt /
2.	interest	/ 'ɪntərɪst /	2.	remember	/ rɪ'membə /
3.	interested	/ 'ɪntərɪstɪd /	3.	deliver	/ dɪ'lɪvə /
4.	interesting	/ 'ɪntərɪstɪŋ /	4.	september	/ sep'tembə /
5.	character	/ 'kærɪktə /	5.	october	/ ɔk'təʊbə /
6.	characterize	/ 'kærɪktəraɪz /	6.	november	/ nəʊ'vembə /
7.	different	/ 'dɪfərənt /	7.	december	/ dɪ'sembə /
8.	difference	/ 'dɪfərəns /	3rd syllable words		
9.	differently	/ 'dɪfərəntli /	1.	magazine	/ məgə'zi:n/
10.	difficult	/ 'dɪfɪkəlt /	2.	understand	/ ʌndə'stænd/

11. difficulty / 'dɪfɪkəltɪ /

12. difficulty / 'dɪfɪkəltɪ /

3. recommend / rɪkə'mend /

4. comprehend / kəmprɪ'hend /

Notes: chú ý:

- Trên thực tế không có một quy tắc bất biến cho việc xác định vị trí trọng âm của từ.
- Việc xác định trọng âm cần thực hiện cùng cách phát âm, dựa nhiều vào kinh nghiệm.
- Những bài tập được cung cấp là những bài tập có tần suất sử dụng lớn để soạn đề thi.

Some other rules to mark stresses: Những quy tắc xác định vị trí trọng âm khác:

3.1. Compound words: Từ ghép:

Đối với từ ghép gồm hai loại danh từ thì nhấn vào âm tiết đầu: **typewriter**; **suitcase**; **teacup**; **sunrise**.

Đối với từ ghép có tính từ ở đầu, còn cuối là từ kết thúc bằng **-ed**, nhấn vào âm tiết đầu của từ cuối: bad-**tempered**.

Đối với từ ghép có tiếng đầu là con số thì nhấn vào tiếng sau: three-**wheeler**.

Từ ghép đóng vai trò là trạng ngữ thì nhấn vần sau: down-**stream** (hạ lưu).

Từ ghép đóng vai trò là động từ nhưng tiếng đầu là trạng ngữ thì ta nhấn âm sau: down-**grade** (hạ bộ); ill-**treat** (ngược đãi, hành hạ).

Danh từ kép: nhấn ở **yếu tố thứ nhất** của danh từ:

Noun-Noun: **classroom**, **teapot**

Noun + Noun: **apple tree**, **fountain pen**

Gerund (V-ing) + Noun: **writing paper**, **swimming pool**

Others:

Từ cuối là dụng cụ cho từ đầu: a **soup spoon**, a **school bus**

Từ đầu xác định từ cuối: a **mango tree**; an **apple tree**

Từ cuối là danh từ tận cùng bằng: er, or, ar: a **bookseller**

Trọng âm ở từ sau nếu từ trước chỉ vật liệu chế tạo ra từ sau: a paper **bag**, a brick **house**

3.2. First syllable stressed: Nhấn vào âm tiết liền trước của các âm liệt kê.

ity: **ability**, **possibility**, **simplicity**, **complexity**.

ety: **society**, **anxiety**

ic, ics: **electric**, **phonetic**, **athletics** [ngoại lệ: **politic**, **catholic**, **Arabic**]

ical: **historical**, **electrical**, **economical**, **identical**

ive: **impressive**, **possessive** [ngoại lệ: **adjective**, **transitive**, **intransitive**, **positive**]

ative: **predicative**, **causative**, **superlative**

able: **countable**, **recognizable** [ngoại lệ: **honorable**, **comfortable**, **miserable**, **admirable**, **valuable**, **inexorable**]

ible: **comprehensible**, **indefensible**

tion, tional: demonstr**ation**, dict**ation**, cond**itional**, educ**ational**

sion, sional: profess**ion**, impress**ion**, occas**ional**

y (2 phụ âm): happ**y**, bus**y**

3.3. Third syllable from the end stressed: Nhấn vào âm tiết thứ ba kể từ âm tiết cuối của các từ có tận cùng như.

ate: concentr**ate**, execr**ate**, gener**ate**

tude: gratt**itude**, solit**itude**, att**itude**

ogy: physi**ology**, geol**ogy** (địa chất học), phon**ology**, phyci**ology**

sophy: philo**sophy**

aphy: biog**raphy**, phot**ography**, autobi**ography**

metry: geomet**ry**, phot**ometry**

nomy: econ**omy**, physiogn**omy**

3.4. Final syllable stressed: Nhấn vào âm tiết cuối khi nó chứa các tổ hợp.

ade: lemon**ade**, promen**ade**

ee: train**ee**, pay**ee**, disagr**ee**, employ**ee**, guarant**ee**

eer: volunt**eer**, pion**eer**

ese: Vietn**amese**, Chin**ese**, Japan**ese**

ette: usher**ette**, cigar**ette**, silhou**ette** (“h” câm), statu**ette**.

esque: stat**uesque**, picar**esque**, pictur**esque** [“que” câm, nhấn “es”]

oo: bamb**oo**, shamp**oo**

oon: typh**oon**, sal**oon**

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 5: Find the word whose stress pattern is different from the others of the same group.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1. A. afloat | B. superior | C. passenger | D. contribute |
| 2. A. chemistry | B. original | C. tribute | D. emphasis |
| 3. A. sentimental | B. commonplace | C. mathematics | D. information |
| 4. A. pronounce | B. American | C. soldier | D. prefer |
| 5. A. muscular | B. instrument | C. dramatic | D. argument |
| 6. A. magnetic | B. radiation | C. unpleasant | D. equipment |
| 7. A. distraction | B. considerable | C. recommend | D. description |
| 8. A. probability | B. attitude | C. technological | D. entertainment |
| 9. A. emergency | B. encourage | C. shortage | D. distraction |
| 10. A. natural | B. surplus | C. dynamite | D. decision |
| 11. A. legacy | B. illuminate | C. humanity | D. commemorate |
| 12. A. numerous | B. recent | C. telescope | D. forever |
| 13. A. behaviour | B. predict | C. occurrence | D. environmental |

-
- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 14. A. mishap | B. evacuate | C. vigorous | D. moderate |
| 15. A. unspeakable | B. accomplish | C. emotional | D. tendency |
| 16. A. expression | B. response | C. psychologist | D. vehicle |
| 17. A. development | B. prevent | C. common | D. avoid |
| 18. A. supply | B. reliever | C. effective | D. remedy |
| 19. A. familiar | B. repellent | C. antiseptic | D. survive |
| 20. A. ingenious | B. device | C. enormous | D. dangerous |

Exercise 6: Find the word whose stress pattern is different from the others of the same group.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. A. paper | B. tonight | C. lecture | D. story |
| 2. A. money | B. army | C. afraid | D. people |
| 3. A. enjoy | B. daughter | C. provide | D. decide |
| 4. A. begin | B. pastime | C. finish | D. summer |
| 5. A. abroad | B. noisy | C. hundred | D. quiet |
| 6. A. passion | B. aspect | C. medium | D. success |
| 7. A. exist | B. evolve | C. enjoy | D. enter |
| 8. A. doctor | B. modern | C. corner | D. Chinese |
| 9. A. complain | B. machine | C. music | D. instead |
| 10. A. writer | B. baker | C. builder | D. career |
| 11. A. provide | B. adopt | C. happen | D. inspire |
| 12. A. result | B. region | C. river | D. robot |
| 13. A. constant | B. basic | C. irate | D. obvious |
| 14. A. become | B. carry | C. appoint | D. invent |
| 15. A. engine | B. battle | C. career | D. rabies |
| 16. A. interesting | B. surprising | C. amusing | D. successful |
| 17. A. understand | B. engineer | C. benefit | D. Vietnamese |
| 18. A. applicant | B. uniform | C. yesterday | D. employment |
| 19. A. dangerous | B. parachute | C. popular | D. magazine |
| 20. A. beautifully | B. intelligent | C. redundancy | D. discovery |

Exercise 7: Find the word whose stress pattern is different from the others of the same group.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. comfortable | B. employment | C. important | D. surprising |
| 2. A. variety | B. irrational | C. industrial | D. characterize |
| 3. A. colorful | B. equality | C. dictionary | D. vegetable |
| 4. A. elegant | B. regional | C. musical | D. important |

-
- | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 5. | A. difference | B. suburban | C. internet | D. character |
| 6. | A. beautiful | B. effective | C. favorite | D. popular |
| 7. | A. attraction | B. government | C. borrowing | D. visit |
| 8. | A. difficulty | B. individual | C. population | D. unemployment |
| 9. | A. biology | B. redundancy | C. interviewer | D. comparative |
| 10. | A. conversation | B. isolation | C. traditional | D. situation |
| 11. | A. continue | B. disappear | C. imagine | D. inhabit |
| 12. | A. altogether | B. capacity | C. eventually | D. particular |
| 13. | A. professor | B. digestion | C. mechanic | D. engine |
| 14. | A. mathematics | B. biology | C. experiment | D. philosophy |
| 15. | A. evolution | B. development | C. discovery | D. philosopher |
| 16. | A. another | B. energy | C. centigrade | D. gravity |
| 17. | A. evaporate | B. temperature | C. impossible | D. experiment |
| 18. | A. gravity | B. professor | C. pyramid | D. remedy |
| 19. | A. abandon | B. discover | C. imagine | D. satisfy |
| 20. | A. activity | B. epidemic | C. philosopher | D. significance |

Exercise 8: Find the word whose stress pattern is different from the others of the same group.

- | | | | | |
|-----|----------------|----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. | A. disease | B. humor | C. cancer | D. treatment |
| 2. | A. remedy | B. exercise | C. pollution | D. surgery |
| 3. | A. pneumonia | B. activity | C. psychiatrist | D. ordinary |
| 4. | A. persuade | B. reduce | C. offer | D. apply |
| 5. | A. expression | B. successful | C. physical | D. prevention |
| 6. | A. farmer | B. farewell | C. factory | D. fairy |
| 7. | A. cattle | B. country | C. canal | D. cover |
| 8. | A. money | B. machine | C. many | D. mother |
| 9. | A. borrow | B. agree | C. await | D. prepare |
| 10. | A. government | B. condition | C. parliament | D. fortunate |
| 11. | A. paper | B. police | C. people | D. purpose |
| 12. | A. interesting | B. important | C. increasing | D. implying |
| 13. | A. element | B. enormous | C. animal | D. elephant |
| 14. | A. damage | B. destroy | C. demand | D. deny |
| 15. | A. biology | B. intelligent | C. environment | D. infrastructure |
| 16. | A. ancient | B. attack | C. alive | D. across |
| 17. | A. person | B. purpose | C. possess | D. pirate |

-
- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| 18. A. eternal | B. enormous | C. enemy | D. Egyptian |
| 19. A. ruler | B. river | C. retire | D. rapid |
| 20. A. revolution | B. responsible | C. renovation | D. regulation |

Exercise 9: Find the word whose stress pattern is different from the others of the same group.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. A. sentence | B. suggest | C. species | D. system |
| 2. A. bacteria | B. dangerous | C. government | D. interesting |
| 3. A. attack | B. defeat | C. believe | D. happen |
| 4. A. pyramid | B. pharaoh | C. animal | D. possession |
| 5. A. accompany | B. responsibility | C. environment | D. prepare |
| 6. A. provide | B. improve | C. contain | D. borrow |
| 7. A. cinema | B. telephone | C. department | D. restaurant |
| 8. A. design | B. garage | C. market | D. village |
| 9. A. exercise | B. example | C. holiday | D. stadium |
| 10. A. excellent | B. exactly | C. dangerous | D. wonderful |
| 11. A. beautiful | B. elephant | C. already | D. usually |
| 12. A. theatre | B. unknown | C. absence | D. dinner |
| 13. A. amuse | B. imagine | C. interest | D. surprise |
| 14. A. especially | B. beautifully | C. quickly | D. lately |
| 15. A. policeman | B. performer | C. engineer | D. assistant |
| 16. A. advice | B. beauty | C. picture | D. postcard |
| 17. A. prepare | B. practice | C. prevent | D. provide |
| 18. A. famous | B. curious | C. anxious | D. delicious |
| 19. A. vacation | B. colleague | C. pupil | D. teacher |
| 20. A. theatre | B. career | C. cinema | D. gallery |

Exercise 10: Find the word whose stress pattern is different from the others of the same group.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. A. picture | B. business | C. stranger | D. return |
| 2. A. museum | B. cinema | C. hospital | D. concert |
| 3. A. performance | B. unknown | C. visit | D. confirm |
| 4. A. yesterday | B. tonight | C. today | D. tomorrow |
| 5. A. memory | B. article | C. newspaper | D. edition |
| 6. A. sorry | B. tractor | C. police | D. fireman |
| 7. A. interest | B. remember | C. assemble | D. resemble |

-
- | | | | | |
|-----|----------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| 8. | A. policeman | B. semester | C. exercise | D. attendance |
| 9. | A. vegetable | B. interesting | C. volleyball | D. detective |
| 10. | A. homework | B. lesson | C. detect | D. tennis |
| 11. | A. uncle | B. machine | C. rubber | D. butter |
| 12. | A. every | B. evening | C. potato | D. factory |
| 13. | A. produce | B. money | C. improve | D. because |
| 14. | A. vegetable | B. university | C. Wednesday | D. television |
| 15. | A. coffee | B. farmer | C. paper | D. deliver |
| 16. | A. eleven | B. elephant | C. energy | D. envelope |
| 17. | A. preparation | B. decoration | C. television | D. exhibition |
| 18. | A. leather | B. paper | C. iron | D. ceramics |
| 19. | A. mirror | B. invent | C. wallet | D. engine |
| 20. | A. discovery | B. calculator | C. aero-plane | D. difficulty |
-

CHUYÊN ĐỀ II: WORD CLASSES

CHUYÊN ĐỀ VỀ TỪ VỰNG

Chuyên đề này cung cấp những khái niệm cơ bản về từ vựng như; định nghĩa, các chức năng ngôn ngữ, một số cách tạo ra từ phái sinh, các cụm từ, cụm thành ngữ, một số hình thức sử dụng đặc biệt của một số từ loại như Danh từ, Động từ, Tính từ, Trạng từ,... Trên cơ sở các kiến thức cơ bản về từ vựng (Danh từ, Động từ, Tính từ, Mạo từ, Giới từ,...) để giúp người học có những kiến thức cơ sở về từ vựng trong tiếng Anh từ đó thực hiện các yêu cầu của các dạng bài tập có liên quan trong các đề thi THPT Quốc Gia. Những bài tập thực hành đi kèm sẽ giúp cho việc giảng dạy và ôn tập theo chuyên đề được thuận lợi và hiệu quả. Việc hoàn thành các bài tập thực hành ngoài việc giúp cho người học nắm chắc kiến thức về từ vựng còn giúp tăng vốn từ vựng, sự tự tin trong sử dụng ngôn ngữ và nắm chắc trật tự từ trong tiếng Anh.

BÀI 1. NOUNS - DANH TỪ

Definition: *To call out the names of things, objects, actions, or movements, etc.*

(Danh từ là từ dùng để gọi tên sự vật, hiện tượng)

Functions: (chức năng)

2.1. Subject (S) (chủ ngữ): *Danh từ làm chủ ngữ cho câu, hay chủ thể tác động, nhận tác động từ động từ.*

e.g. A teacher usually works at school.

S A V A

Some kinds of birds migrate in winter.

S V A

Accidents may happen anytime, anywhere, and to anyone.

S V A

2.2. Object (O) (tân ngữ): *Danh từ làm tân ngữ cho câu, hay chủ thể nhận tác động từ động từ, theo sau một số giới từ.*

e.g. He buys some cakes for his birthday party.

S V O O

They sent me some documents.

S V O O

We had made an appointment to meet at the station.

S V O

2.3. Complement (C) (bổ ngữ): *Danh từ làm bổ ngữ trong câu, là thành phần phụ hoàn tất câu.*

e.g. She was a famous singer.

S V C

Peter will become our new manager in the next two year.

S V C A

She has been our principal since last May.

S V C A

2.4. Compounds (danh từ ghép): *Danh từ có thể ghép với nhau để tạo thành danh từ mới với những qui tắc ghép khác nhau.*

e.g. summer holiday, birthday cakes, schoolboy, schoolgirl, salesman, chairperson, etc.

2.5. Possessive cases (dạng sở hữu cách): *Chú ý cách tạo dấu sở hữu cách trong các ví dụ dưới đây.*

e.g. the boss's car, his teacher's remarks, ...
children's seats, people's lives, ...
pupils' books, the farmers' tools, ...

2.6. Noun phrases (cụm danh từ kết hợp tự do): *Free words combination or compounds.*

Danh từ ghép với các thành tố khác tạo thành cụm danh từ.

Plural forms: các hình thức biến đổi danh từ từ dạng số ít thành số nhiều (chỉ dành cho danh từ đếm được – countable nouns).

3.1. **Adding "s"** to almost count-nouns: thêm 's' vào sau hầu hết các danh từ số ít để tạo thành các danh từ số nhiều. (Chú ý: tận cùng 's' được phát âm /s/ khi liền trước là các phụ âm vô thanh như /f/, /t/, /k/, /p/, phát âm là /ɪz/ khi theo sau các tận cùng **ce, ge, se, ze**, còn lại phát âm là /z/).

Như bảng sau:

	singular	plural		singular	plural
1.	an action	actions	11.	a bomb	bombs
2.	an actor	actors	12.	a cat	cats
3.	an apple	apples	13.	a dog	dogs
4.	an orange	oranges	14.	a finger	fingers
5.	an eel	eels	15.	a kid	kids
6.	an eye	eyes	16.	a lamp	lamps
7.	an heir	heirs	17.	a table	tables
8.	an hour	hours	18.	a unit	units
9.	an onion	onions	19.	a whisper	whispers
10.	an umbrella	umbrellas	20.	a winner	winners

3.2. **Adding "es"** to the count-nouns that end in "**s, ss, sh, ch, o, x**" with /ɪz/ or /z/ sounds: Thêm 'es' vào sau các danh từ đếm được số ít tận cùng bằng "**s, ss, sh, ch, o, x**" để tạo thành các danh từ số nhiều tương ứng.

Như bảng sau:

	endings	singular	plural	singular	plural
1.	s	a bus	buses	a plus	pluses
2.	ss	a class	classes	a kiss	kisses
3.	sh	a brush	brushes	a dish	dishes
4.	ch	a church	churches	a watch	watches
5.	o	a potato	potatoes	a tomato	tomatoes
6.	x	an ax	axes	a box	boxes

Note: Words of foreign origin or abbreviation ending in 'o', add 's' only. Với các từ vay mượn, từ viết tắt tận cùng bằng 'o', ta thêm 's' để tạo hình thức số nhiều. Như:

	singular	plural	singular	plural
1.	a dynamo	dynamos	6. a soprano	sopranos
2.	a kilo	kilos	7. a kimono	kimonos
3.	a piano	pianos	8. a UFO	UFOs
4.	a radio	radios	9. a UFO	UFOs
5.	a photo	photos	10. an O	Os

3.3. **Adding "ies"** to the count-nouns that end in "y" with its preceding consonants: Với các danh từ đếm được số ít tận cùng là 'y' và liền trước là phụ âm ta bỏ 'y' thay bằng 'ies' để tạo ra các danh từ số nhiều tương ứng. Như bảng sau:

	singular	plural	singular	plural
1.	a lorry	lorries	5. an ability	abilities
2.	a story	stories	6. a sky	skies
3.	a lady	ladies	7. a fly	flies
4.	a baby	babies	8. a lady	ladies

Nhưng:

	singular	plural	singular	plural
1.	a boy	boys	4. a storey	storeys
2.	a toy	toys	5. a prey	preys
3.	a play	plays	6. a way	ways

3.4. **Adding "ves"** to the count-nouns that end in "f", "fe": Chuyển các danh từ đếm được tận cùng bằng "f", "fe" từ số ít sang số nhiều ta đổi "f", "fe" thành 'ves' như bảng sau:

	singular	plural	singular	plural
1.	a wife	wives	4. a leaf	leaves
2.	a knife	knives	5. a loaf	loaves
3.	a life	lives	6. a thief	thieves

Chú ý:

Các danh từ *hoof, scarf, và wharf* đổi sang số nhiều thành *hoofs, scarfs, và wharfs* hoặc *hooves, scarves, và wharves*. Tức là có thể thêm 's' hoặc 'ves'.

Các danh từ *cliff, handkerchief, và safe* đổi sang số nhiều sẽ chuyển thành *cliffs, handkerchiefs, và safes*. Tức là chỉ thêm 's'.

3.5. **Irregular changes:** dạng biến đổi bất qui tắc mô tả ở bảng dưới đây:

<u>singular</u>	<u>plural</u>	<u>singular</u>	<u>plural</u>
1. a man	men	11. a child	children
2. a woman	women	12. a medium	media
3. a chairman	chairmen	13. a mouse	mice
4. a chairwoman	chairwomen	14. an ox	oxen
5. a salesman	salesmen	15. a goose	geese
6. a saleswoman	saleswomen	16. a tooth	teeth
7. a salesperson	salespeople	17. a foot	feet
8. a chairperson	chairpeople	18. a phenomenon	phenomena
9. a person	people	19. a policeman	policemen
10. a louse	lice	20. a policewoman	policewomen

3.6. **Collective nouns:** *crew, family, group, team,...* (singular or plural form, either singular or plural verb) Các danh từ trên gọi là danh từ tổ hợp, có thể coi là số ít hoặc số nhiều, dùng động từ dạng số ít hoặc nhiều.

e.g. The crew save many victims.

Hoặc The crew saves many victims.

Our group have won several times.

Hoặc Our group has won several times.

3.7. **Always-plural-form-nouns:** Những danh từ dưới đây luôn tồn tại dưới hình thức số nhiều.

1. arms	11. greens (vegetable)	21. pyjamas
2. athletics	12. jeans	22. savings
3. binoculars	13. mathematics	23. scales
4. breeches	14. outskirts	24. scissors
5. clothes	15. pants	25. shears
6. damages	16. pains (trouble, effort)	26. spirits
7. earnings	17. physics	27. stairs
8. ethics	18. pliers	28. surroundings
9. glasses	19. police	29. trousers
10. goods	20. politics	30. valuables

e.g. The police have asked several witnesses to prove their ideas.

The stairs are too dim for us to go up easily.

3.8. The unchanged names of creatures: *deer, sheep, calf, cod, pike, plaice, salmon, squid, trout, turbot* (these nouns can take either singular or plural verbs) hình thức số ít, nhiều không đổi.

	singular	plural		singular	plural
1.	a deer	deer	6.	a cod	cod
2.	a sheep	sheep	7.	a pike	pike
3.	a calf	calf	8.	a plaice	plaice
4.	a salmon	salmon	9.	a squid	squid
5.	a trout	trout	10.	a turbot	turbot

e.g. A deer is trapped and two other deer are killed by the poachers.

A squid and two salmon were sent to the laboratory for rescue.

3.9. Plural form but singular verb: *news, mumps (bệnh sùng quai hàm), billiards, bowls* – Các danh từ trên có hình thức số nhiều nhưng sử dụng như danh từ số ít.

e.g. There is a news at 7.00 every day.

Mumps is widely seen among children of the age of under fifteen.

Uncountable nouns: Danh từ không đếm được

4.1. Substances: các dạng vật chất sau được qui ước là danh từ không đếm được:

1. beer	6. dust	11. jam	16. stone
2. bread	7. gin	12. oil	17. tea
3. cloth	8. glass	13. paper	18. water
4. coffee	9. gold	14. sand	19. wine
5. cream	10. ice	15. soap	20. wood

e.g. Vietnamese coffee is exported to many countries in the world.

Beer is a favourite drink in the South.

4.2. Abstract nouns: Các danh từ trừu tượng được qui ước là danh từ không đếm được:

1. advice	6. fear	11. knowledge
2. beauty	7. help	12. mercy
3. courage	8. hope	13. pity
4. death	9. horror	14. relief
5. experience	10. information	15. suspicion

e.g. Fear is a kind of feelings.

Knowledge is one's valuable possession.

4.3. Others: một số danh từ khác được qui ước là danh từ không đếm được:

1. baggage 3. damage 5. luggage 7. parking 9. work
camping 4. furniture 6. money 8. shopping 10. weather e.g. Camping is

my favourite outdoor activity.

Weather is getting warmer when the Spring comes.

4.4. **Notes:** Particular senses of uncountable nouns: Một số danh từ không đếm được lại có thể sử dụng với mạo từ như danh từ đếm được trong các ngữ cố định sau:

a. a help: *A great help to + O*

e.g. He gave a great help to our family.
Computer is a great help to my work.

b. a relief: *A relief to + V.*

e.g. That gave me a relief to continue my study.
A relief to work makes your doing better.

c. a knowledge: *A good/ bad knowledge of + N.*

e.g. Pete has got a good knowledge of history.
A good knowledge of physics helps him pass the test.

d. a dislike / dread / hatred / horror / love of + ...

e.g. He had a great love for funny stories.
A great love for wildlife encouraged him to apply for that job.

e. a mercy / pity / shame / wonder + *that...*

e.g. It's a pity that I couldn't come.
What's a pity!

f. a fear/ fears; a hope/ hopes; a suspicion/ suspicions.

e.g. We have a suspicion / suspicions that no one will agree to help.
A suspicion of no reason made him angry.

5. **Compound nouns:** danh từ ghép

5.1. Noun-noun: *Hanoi-capital; hall-door; hitch-hiker; kitchen-table; traffic light; winter clothes;*

5.2. Noun-gerund: *fruit-picking; weight-lifting; lorry-driving; bird-watching; coal-mining; surf-boating;...*

5.3. Gerund-noun: *waiting-list; landing card; driving board; dining room; driving license; ...*

5.4. Free combination: sự kết hợp tự do

shop window; church bell; picture frame; garden gate; college library; gear level;... city street; corner shop; country lane; ...

summer holiday; spring flowers; Sunday paper; dawn chorus; November fog; ... steel door; stone wall; silk shirt;...

coffee cup; golf club; chess board; football ground;...

fish-farm; gold-mine; oil-rig; ...

football match; beauty contest; pop music;...

Suffixes: các hậu tố dùng để tạo danh từ.

suffixes		words	
1. er	teacher	reader	listener
2. or	visitor	actor	spectator
3. ist	terrorist	capitalist	naturalist
4. ant	applicant	assistant	pollutant
5. age	voyage	carriage	marriage
6. dom	freedom	boredom	wisdom
7. ness	sadness	tiredness	happiness
8. iety	society	anxiety	variety
9. ing	fishing	shopping	washing
10. our	behavior		
11. ee	employee	refugee	interviewee
12. ent	government	payment	investment
13. ce	importance	difference	significance
14. ion	action	decision	communication
15. hood	childhood	adulthood	neighborhood
16. ism	tourism	Buddhism	mechanism
17. ship	friendship	scholarship	relationship
18. ility	ability	possibility	responsibility
19. al	arrival	refusal	approval
20. y	difficulty	honesty	accuracy

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 11: Give *ONE* of the derived nouns of the given words.

	<i>roots</i>	<i>nouns</i>		<i>roots</i>	<i>nouns</i>
1.	able	.....	16.	imitate	.....
2.	anxious	.....	17.	know	.....
3.	attract	.....	18.	like	.....
4.	announce	.....	19.	lonely	.....
5.	believe	.....	20.	maintain	.....
6.	careful	.....	21.	manage	.....
7.	certain	.....	22.	modernize	.....
8.	child	.....	23.	organize	.....
9.	discover	.....	24.	pollute	.....
10.	excite	.....	25.	popular	.....
11.	explain	.....	26.	prove	.....

12. friendly	.....	27. short	.....
13. free	.....	28. solid	.....
14. hospitable	.....	29. stupid	.....
15. imagine	.....	30. warm	.....

Exercise 12: Give ONE of the derived nouns of the given words to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

- | | |
|--|-------------|
| 1. The children all have very different_____. | PERSON |
| 2. An_____ is a person who is concerned about the natural environment and wants to improve and protect it. | ENVIRONMENT |
| 3. She had never been greatly concerned about her _____. | APPEAR |
| 4. The_____ of people interviewed prefer TV to radio. | MAJOR |
| 5. I'll never forget the_____ I felt in the situation. | HUMILIATE |
| 6. The main goals of the Association of Southeast Asian Nations are to promote peace and_____ in the region. | STABLE |
| 7. The security of the earth can be threatened by_____ groups. | TERROR |
| 8. It is reported that humans are the main reason for most species' declines and habitat_____. | DESTROY |
| 9. He resigned for a_____ of reasons. | VARY |
| 10. The Americans are much more concerned than the Indians and the Chinese with physical_____ when choosing a wife or a husband. | ATTRACT |
| 11. How much does_____ of this club cost? | MEMBER |
| 12. I was annoyed at his_____ to co-operate. | REFUSE |
| 13. Jackson had another violent_____ with the referee. | AGREE |
| 14. She studied_____ at university. | ECONOMY |
| 15. Jackie suffered as a child from a very strict_____. | BRING |
| 16. Rescue team held out little hope of finding other_____. | SURVIVE |
| 17. _____ of the new system will take several days. | INSTALL |
| 18. Teachers must keep a record of students'_____. | ATTEND |
| 19. There were 50_____ in the talent contest. | COMPETE |
| 20. Our_____ has lasted a lifetime. | FRIEND |

Exercise 13: Give ONE of the derived nouns of the given words to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

- | | |
|--|------|
| 1. It was a complete _____ due to their poor planning. | FAIL |
|--|------|

-
2. Everyone has a number of _____ but none has many true friends. ACQUAINT
3. Freedom of _____ is one of the fundamental rights. SPEAK
4. Do you ever suffer from _____? BORE
5. We can look forward to a period of _____. PROSPER
6. Due to _____ the difference between urban life and rural life is more and more reduced. ELECTRIC
7. A doctor may prescribe _____ if the patient has an infection. BIOTIC
8. Beauty is in the eye of the _____. HOLD
9. It is said the _____ of a Swiss watch is perfect. PRECISE
10. We have to decide to interview only the best six _____ for the job. APPLY
11. He left the room without any _____. EXPLAIN
12. Many people expressed _____ with the whole idea. AGREE
13. A lot of plants and animals could be used as medicines against cancer, AIDS, heart diseases and other _____. SICK
12. _____ to a new environment is a difficult thing for old people. ADAPT
15. Police asked _____ if they had seen the accident happen PASS
16. He shook his head in _____. APPROVE
17. He fought the illness with courage and _____. DETERMINE
18. Because of a car _____, she didn't get to the airport in time for her flights. BREAK
19. The ___ need assistance from the whole society. POVERTY
20. We are offering many special price _____ on printers this REDUCE month.

Exercise 14: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. _____ surely leads to the loss of many factory jobs.
 A. automatic B. automation C. automate D. automatically
2. Stress and tiredness often lead to lack of _____.
 A. concentration B. concentrate C. concentrated D. concentrator

Jack likes the books that he borrowed from the school library very much. He has read them with _____.

- A. entertainment B. romance C. tasting D. pleasure

Many communities are burning garbage and other biological waste products to produce _____.

- A. electric B. electricity C. electrician D. electrify

Many of young people between the ages of 16 and 18 who are neither in education nor _____ are in danger of wasting their lives.

- A. power B. ability C. nature D. employment

6. A book may be evaluated by a reader or professional writer to create a book _____.

- A. review B. reviewing C. reviewer D. reviewed

7. Farmers make their soil more productive by distributing _____.

- A. fertile B. fertility C. fertilizers D. fertilizable

Chemical wastes from factories are _____ that cause serious damage to species habitats.

- A. pollutes B. pollutants C. pollutions D. polluters

A book may be studied by students as the _____ of a writing and analysis exercise in the form of a book report.

- A. limit B. time C. subject D. interest

10. In some communities a husband's _____ over his wife is absolute.

- A. power B. powerful C. powerfully D. powered

11. I think that up to now there has not been a real _____ between men and women.

- A. equal B. equally C. equality D. equalize

12. Most people consider it women's _____ to take care of children and do housework.

- A. limit B. relationship C. responsibility D. respect

13. She is a biologist. She is interested in _____.

- A. conserves B. conservation C. conservancy D. conservative

The _____ development leads to our country's prosperity.

- A. industry B. industries C. industrial D. industrialize

15. Almost half of turtles and tortoises are known to be threatened with _____.

- A. extinct B. extinction C. extinctive D. extinctly

The organization has emphasized cooperation in the "three pillars" of security, socio cultural and economic _____ in the region.

- A. organization B. production C. integration D. establishment

17. To preserve that _____, it was necessary to preserve the people that had created it.

- A. civil B. civilize C. civility D. civilization

It is reported that humans are the main reason for most species' declines and habitat _____ and degradation are the leading threats.

- A. destroy B. destructive C. destructor D. destruction

19. I have nearly finished reading the book. There are only a few _____ left.

-
- A. pieces B. pages C. slices D. sheets
20. A child receives his early_____ from their parents.
- A. educate B. education C. educator D. educative

Exercise 15: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. He has been very interested in doing research on_____ since he was at high school.
- A. biology B. biological C. biologist D. biologically
2. Most doctors and nurses have to work on a_____ once or twice a week at the hospital.
- A. solution B. night shift
C. household chores D. special dishes
3. You are old enough to take_____ for what you have done.
- A. responsible B. responsibility C. responsibly D. irresponsible
4. These quick and easy_____ can be effective in the short term, but they have a cost.
- A. solve B. solvable C. solutions D. solvability
5. What are the_____ of that country? - I think it is some kinds of cheese and sauces.
- A. drinks B. beverages C. grains D. special dishes
6. Hung tried his best and passed the driving test at the first_____.
- A. try B. attempt C. doing D. aim
7. My husband and I both go out to work so we share the_____.
- A. happiness B. household chores
C. responsibility D. employment
8. You should not burn_____. You had better dig a hole and bury it.
- A. dishes B. lab C. garbage D. shift
- He cannot make a_____ to get married to Mary or stay single until he can afford a house and a car.
- A. decide B. decision C. decisive D. decisively
10. It is thought that traditional marriage_____ are important basis of limiting divorce rates.
- A. appearances B. records C. responses D. values
11. Thanks to my friends'_____ remarks, my essay have been improved.
- A. construct B. construction C. constructive D. constructor
12. She was the first in her family to enjoy the privilege of a university_____.
- A. schedule B. education C. science D. technology
13. English is an important_____ that is required in several national examinations.
- A. language B. test C. evaluation D. subject

_____ is the study of the Earth's physical features and the people, plants, and animals that live in different regions of the world.

- A. Science B. Geography C. History D. Technology
15. _____ is the study of the events of the past.
A. Geography B. History C. Arts D. Literature
16. Thanks to the _____ of paper, many books have been kept for a very long time.
A. information B. knowledge C. durability D. portability
- A _____ is an area of knowledge or study, especially one that you study at school, college, or university.
A. degree B. subject C. level D. vacancy
18. Most _____ are at senior level, requiring appropriate qualifications.
A. degrees B. grades C. colleges D. vacancies
19. She reads newspapers every day to look for the vacant _____ for which she can apply.
A. institutions B. indications C. positions D. locations
- A _____ is an official document that you receive when you have completed a course of study or training.
A. vocation B. subject C. certificate D. grade

Exercise 16: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

All the countries of the area have _____ to protect their wildlife but they are rarely enforced.

- A. efforts B. laws C. results D. reserves
2. The president traveled under the _____ of many soldiers.
A. protect B. protective C. protector D. protection
3. Forest dwellers had always hunted the local _____ but their needs had been small.
A. wildlife B. commerce C. reserve D. generation
- A _____ is a report in a newspaper or magazine in which a writer gives his opinion of a book, a film, or a play.
A. page B. subject C. review D. journey
- She has been out of work for 3 months. She stays at home and does the housework _____.
A. disappoint B. disappointedly C. disappointed D. disappointing
6. In former days, women were considered not to be suitable for becoming a _____.
A. politics B. political C. politically D. politician
7. The referee had no hesitation in awarding the visiting team a _____.
A. penalty B. penalize C. penal D. penalization
8. The crowd cheered as the goalkeeper deflected the _____.
A. shoot B. shooting C. shooter D. shot

They eventually realize that reckless_____ of the earth's resources can lead only to eventual global disaster.

- A. exploit B. exploitable C. exploitation D. exploitative

10. Mary enjoys reading_____, adventure, and whatever else she can either buy or borrow.

- A. romance B. romantic C. romanticize D. romanticism

11. The novel has had a tremendous impact on_____ and publishing markets.

- A. entertain B. entertainer C. entertainment D. entertainingly

A_____ is a story long enough to fill a complete book, in which the characters and events are usually imaginary.

- A. pleasure B. novel C. page D. review

13. Women show a _____ to live longer than men.

- A. tend B. tendency C. tendentious D. tende

A _____ is a very large wave, often caused by an earthquake, which flows onto the land and destroys things.

- A. famine B. catastrophe C. tsunami D. flood

15. It is necessary for the host to make his guest feel comfortable and _____.

- A. relax B. relaxation C. relaxing D. relaxed

Toxic chemicals from factories are one of the serious factors that leads wildlife to the _____ of extinction.

- A. wall B. fence C. verge D. bridge

17. A_____ is the story of a person's life written by somebody else.

- A. romance B. fiction C. biography D. science

18. After leaving school, many of us only read for_____.

- A. please B. pleasant C. pleasure D. pleasing

There are plenty of industrial_____ established in the area, which also makes the government worried about pollution.

- A. series B. goods C. enterprises D. relationships

20. The referee's_____ is the most important in any sport competition.

- A. decide B. decisive C. decision D. decider

Exercise 17: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. There is a wide_____ of computers in that shop for you to choose.

- A. vary B. various C. variety D. variously

2. There are several places where residents face the threat of_____ every day.

- A. terrorist B. terrorism C. terrorize D. terror

Many people think that in some more years we will see the complete_____ of newspapers and magazines due to the Internet.

A. disappear B. disappearance C. appear D. appearing 4. The_____ of the future will no longer be remedial. It will be preventive.

A. communication B. education C. medicine D. technology

5. Doctors and pharmacists have to assume_____ for human life.

A. responsibility B. achievement C. optimism D. aspect

6. Strict_____ measures are in force in the capital to protect it from terrorism.

A. scientific B. normal C. transportation D. security

7. Constant_____ of attack makes everyday life dangerous here.

A. threat B. threaten C. threatening D. threateningly

8. The government gave top _____ to reforming the legal system.

A. priority B. primary C. preference D. major

There will be powerful network of computers which may come from a single computing _____ that is worn on or in the body.

A. device B. machinery C. equipment D. vehicle

These new economic reforms have allowed for international_____ and development in the country.

A. pay B. renovation C. investment D. opportunity

After a decade of economic liberalization, Vietnam has seen a dramatic rise in living_____ in urban areas.

A. surface B. standards C. levels D. backgrounds

12. Their_____ has lasted for more than 20 years.

A. friends B. friendly C. friendness D. friendship

For more than 20 years, the Vietnamese government has pursued the open-door _____ and continued to woo foreign investment.

A. policy B. way C. export D. guideline

Development plans were to focus equally on agriculture and industry and investment was to favor projects that developed both_____ of the economy.

A. parties B. parts C. sections D. sectors

Despite the plan's emphasis on agricultural_____, the industrial sector received a larger share of state investment.

A. shortage B. commitment C. development D. achievement

A_____ is a spacecraft that is designed to travel into space and back to earth several times.

A. plane B. corporation
C. telecommunication D. shuttle

An economic _____ is a time when there is very little economic activity, which causes a lot of unemployment and poverty.

- A. improvement B. depression C. development D. mission

_____ is the technology of sending signals and messages over long distances using electronic equipment, for example by radio and telephone.

- A. Telecommunication B. Telegraph
C. Multifunction D. Information technology

19. What will the relationship between computing and _____ bring us over the next 15 years?

- A. science B. scientific C. scientifically D. scientist

20. We sometimes go away from the city to the countryside for a _____ of fresh air.

- A. feeling B. sip C. swallow D. breath

Exercise 18: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. Parents can express a _____ for the school their child attends.

- A. prefer B. preference C. preferential D. preferable

2. I would like to invite you to participate in the _____ ceremony.

- A. graduate B. graduated C. graduation D. graduating

In many countries, prospective university students apply for _____ during their last year of high school.

- A. achievement B. information C. course D. admission

4. The University of Cambridge is a prestigious _____ of higher learning in the U.K.

- A. tower B. hall C. house D. institute

5. He has not been offered the job because he cannot meet the _____ of the company.

- A. requirements B. applicants C. information D. education

_____ is used to describe the work of a person whose job is to treat sick or injured animals, or to describe the medical treatment of animals.

- A. Chemistry B. Pharmacy C. Medicine D. Veterinary

7. He was the only _____ that was offered the job.

- A. apply B. application C. applicant D. applying

Although he has not got necessary experience, he used to take a _____ in business administration.

- A. curriculum B. course C. school D. class

The functional skills such as fundamentals of agriculture, health and hygiene and population education have also been incorporated in the primary school _____.

- A. curriculum B. project C. plan D. schedule

10. There is a wide range of _____ in the education system of the USA.

A. select B. selective C. selected D. selection

Entry to university is competitive so some _____ with the minimum entrance qualifications will find themselves without a place.

A. tutors B. professors C. teachers D. applicants

Students also have the opportunity to choose from a wide range of _____ courses in the university.

A. compulsory B. optional C. required D. limited

Many children are under such a high _____ of learning that they do not feel happy at school.

A. recommendation B. interview C. pressure D. concentration

She likes meeting people and travelling so she wants to apply for a _____ of a receptionist or tourist guide.

A. location B. position C. site D. word

15. To my _____, I was not offered the job.

A. happiness B. dream C. joy D. disappointment

16. Being well-dressed and punctual can help you create a good _____ on your interviewer.

A. impression B. pressure C. employment D. effectiveness

She often reads newspapers and look through the Situations _____ columns every day, but up to now she has not found any job yet.

A. Article B. Space C. Vacant D. Spot

18. Many people will be out of _____ if the factory is closed.

A. work B. career C. profession D. job

You should ask the interviewer some questions about the job to show your _____ and keenness.

A. anger B. thrill C. amazement D. interest

20. The control of _____ has been carried out through measures rooted in monetarism.

A. inflate B. inflationist C. inflation D. inflator

BÀI 2. VERBS - ĐỘNG TỪ

I. Definition: To denote action, state, and be the most important part of sentences. Động từ dùng để diễn tả hành động, hoạt động, trạng thái và sự tồn tại.

Classification: phân loại động từ

1. Auxiliary verbs: động từ trợ

1.1. Primary auxiliary verbs: Động từ trợ chính – là những động từ vừa có thể đảm nhận chức năng của một động từ chính, vừa có chức năng của động từ trợ. Gồm một số động từ như: be/ have/ do/need, etc. (These verbs can either be auxiliaries or lexical verbs)

a. Be:

+ Main verb: e.g. She is the head of our company.

S V

Lan has been to all big cities in Vietnam.

S V

Be careful! Don't be afraid to go!

V

Auxiliary verb: e.g. She is doing her homework. S aux V

Lan was punished due to her carelessness.

S Aux V

b. Have:

+ Main verb: e.g. She has a lot of acquaintances but just a few close friends.

S V

They were having the time of their life.

V

Auxiliary verb: e.g. They had had a car before we afforded one.

Aux V

She has studied here for five years now.

S Aux V

c. Do:

+ Main verb: e.g. She does morning exercises regularly.

S V

They did all they could in order to better their lives.

S V

+ Auxiliary verb: e.g. She doesn't go jogging because the weather is so wet.

S Aux V

Lan did do that I think.

S Aux V

d. Need

+ Main verb: e.g. She needs to start in order to get the last train to London.
S V

Some more materials are urgently needed.

S

V

+ Auxiliary verb: e.g. You needn't hurry as we have much time left.

S Aux V

He need not say anything as it is not important for him to.

S Aux V

1.2. Modal verbs: Các động từ khuyết thiếu (động từ tình thái - Động từ được coi là động từ khuyết thiếu gồm: can/ could/ may/might/ must/ have to + base form/ will/ would/ shall/ should/ be going to + base form/ used to + base form/ ought to + base form/) tự thân không bảo đảm nghĩa cho câu nó cần kết hợp với một động từ mang nghĩa để hoàn thành nghĩa cho câu. Việc phát âm các động từ tình thái được thực hiện dưới hình thức strong form và weak form (xem chương trình sách giáo khoa Tiếng Anh 12 – NXB Giáo Dục Việt Nam 2006). Một số động từ tình thái và cách sử dụng cụ thể được trình bày dưới đây. (These are sometimes functional verbs).

a. “**Can**” is used to denote:

- ability: e.g. She can swim.

- deduction: e.g. He gets up a bit later than usual so he can be late for school.
(high certainty)

speculation: e.g. He hasn't come up yet. He can have had something to do at home.

- others: e.g. Can you help me? Or Can I help you? (ask for help or offer to help)
You can win if you want. (possibility)

- etc.

b. “**Could**” is used to denote:

- ability: e.g. She could swim when she was only eight.

- deduction: e.g. He could be absent from school as he felt ill last night.
(high certainty)

- speculation: e.g. He hasn't come up yet. He could have had trouble with his bike.

- others: e.g. Could you tell me how to get to the Square, please?
(ask for direction)

Could you speak louder, please! (polite request)

- etc.

c. **“Be able to - inf”** is used to denote:

- ability: e.g. She was able to swim when she was only eight.
- future: e.g. He will be able to gain a seat at a university.

Note: “Be able to - inf”, to some extent, functions as “can” (present tense); “could” (past tense) and replaces “can” in future tense, but in fact, “Be able to - inf” denotes the ability at the time of speaking.

- etc.

d. **“May”** is used to denote:

- possibility: e.g. It may rain soon.
- deduction: e.g. He may be selected as our new manager. (low certainty)
- speculation: e.g. He hasn’t come up yet. He may have changed his mind. (low certainty)
- others: e.g. May I say something? (ask for permission)

- etc.

e. **“Might”** is used to denote:

- possibility: e.g. It might be a nice day there then.
- deduction: e.g. He might be selected as our new manager. (lower certainty)
- speculation: e.g. He hasn’t come up yet. He might have changed his mind. (lower certainty)

- etc.

f. **“Must”** is used to denote:

- obligation: e.g. I must work hard to please my parents. (I myself want to do so.)
- deduction: e.g. He must be selected as our new manager. (certainty)
- speculation: e.g. He hasn’t come up yet. He must have changed his mind. (certainty)

etc.

g. **“Have to - inf”** is used to denote:

- compulsion: e.g. I have to work hard to please my parents. (My parents want me to do so.)
- past: e.g. He had to work hard to please his parents. (replace must in the past)
- future: e.g. He will have to work hard to please his parents. (replace must in the future)

- etc.

h. **“Ought to - inf”** is used to denote:

I ought to write to him right now.
You oughtn’t to go now.

- A: Ought she to leave? - B: Yes, I suppose she should.

- etc.

i. **“Will”** is used to denote:

- future: e.g. Our course will end in July.

- promise: e.g. I will try my best to win her heart. (also used as a swear)

- invitation: e.g. My party is on Monday night, will you come?

- etc.

j. **“Would”** is used to denote:

- future in the past: e.g. He said he would help me.

- invitation: e.g. Would you like a cold drink?

- possibility: e.g. If he tried harder, he would be successful now.

- etc.

k. **“Shall”** is used to denote:

- future: e.g. I shall be the 12th grade student next month.

(for the subjects of I & We and formal way only)

- suggestion: e.g. Shall we meet outside the theatre?

- etc.

l. **“Should”** is used to denote:

- past form of shall: e.g. I told him that I should be there.

- advice: e.g. We should do more to protect the wildlife.

- etc.

Lexical verbs: Động từ mang nghĩa là những động từ mang nghĩa chính cho câu, được chia làm hai loại chính là nội động từ và ngoại động từ phụ thuộc vào tính chất truyền tải ý nghĩa của động từ. Động từ mang nghĩa gồm hai phân nhóm chính là Nội động từ và Ngoại động từ như mô tả dưới đây:

2.1. Intransitive verbs: verbs that can function as verb phrases and make sentences meaningful without any complementation. Nội động từ là những động từ mà tự thân có thể bảo đảm nghĩa cho câu, mà không có sự trợ giúp của tân ngữ.

e.g. She cried (noisily).

S V A

It rains (hard).

S V A

It is raining (heavily).

S V A

The wind was blowing (hard).

S V A

They laughed (happily).

S V A

Linking verbs: Động từ nối là những động từ có thể theo sau bởi các tính từ (bổ ngữ). Gồm:
become; feel; seem; look; appear; turn; grow; taste; smell; sound; stay;

keep; etc

e.g. She became exhausted after a long walk.

S V C

He felt a bit bored.

S V C

He seemed indifferent.

S V C

Pete looked tired. Nhưng Pete looked tiredly at the man behind.

S V C S V A

Lan appeared nicer after having made up carefully.

S V C

As he grew older, he seemed more active.

S V C S V C

They tried to keep calm during the discussion.

S V C

The title of this book sounds interesting.

S V C

The food tasted delicious. But, he tasted the food deliciously.

S V C S V O A

2.2. Transitive verbs: verbs that need objects as the complementation. Là những động từ tự thân không đảm bảo nghĩa cho câu mà cần có các tân ngữ đi kèm, được chia làm ba nhóm chính sau.

Mono-transitive verbs: (Ngoại động từ đơn) verbs that followed by one object – là những động từ chỉ cần một tân ngữ theo kèm theo mẫu câu:

S – V – O

e.g. She bought some kinds of flowers.

S V O

Ann met her fiancé yesterday.

S V O

They like apples very much.

S V O

He did a lot of sight-seeing during his vacation.

S V O

Lan took many photos when she went shopping in the city centre.

S V O

Di-transitive verbs: (Ngoại động từ đa) verbs that followed by both direct and indirect objects – Là những động từ mà theo sau là cả tân ngữ trực tiếp và gián tiếp.

Những động từ thường gặp nhóm này gồm *bring, build, buy, cut, draw, feed, tell, find, get, give, hand, leave, lend, write, make, offer, owe, paint, pass, pay, promiss, read, sell, send, show, teach, etc.* theo mẫu câu:

S – V – O – O

Một số động từ cần lưu ý:

one form

“buy somebody something” e.g. *She bought me some sweets.*

“explain to somebody (about) something”
e.g. *He explained to me the rules.*

“give somebody something” e.g.
Pete gave me a wink.

“lend somebody something” e.g.
Paul lent me \$100 yesterday.

“make somebody something”
e.g. *They made me some sandwiches.*

“send somebody something” e.g.
Laura sends me a letter.

“bring somebody something” e.g.
She brought me a pen.

“fix somebody something” e.g.
He fixed me a drink.

“owe somebody something” e.g.
He owed Janet a drink.

“draw somebody something” e.g.
He drew Janet a portrait.

the other form

“buy s.t for somebody”
e.g. *She bought some sweets for me*

“explain (about) something to somebody”
e.g. *He explained the rules to me.*

“give something to somebody”
e.g. *Pete gave a wink to me.*

“lend something to somebody”
e.g. *Paul lent \$100 to me yesterday.*

“make something for somebody”
e.g. *They made some sandwiches for me.*

“send something to somebody”
e.g. *Laura sends a letter to me.*

“bring something for somebody”
e.g. She brought a pen for me.

“fix something for somebody” e.g. He fixed a drink for me.

“owe something to somebody” e.g. He owed a drink to Janet.

“draw something for somebody” e.g. He owed a portrait for Janet.

Complex transitive verbs: follow by an object and its compliment. Ta gọi loại động từ này là ngoại động từ phức hợp, và động từ này tuân theo công thức:

S – V – O – C

Một số động từ thuộc loại này được ví dụ cụ thể như dưới đây:

- Make: e.g. The film made me bored.
 I was bored with the film.
 The film bored me.
 I found the film boring.
- Get: e.g. He gets everything ready for her trip.
 Everything for her trip is prepared well by her.
- Find: e.g. They found the long walk tiring.
 The long walk tired them.
 They were tired of the long walk.
 The long walk made them tired.
- Drive: e.g. His jokes drove me mad.

Affixations: phụ tố để tạo động từ

1. **en:** added to nouns or adjectives (mean make, or lead to). Ta có thể thêm vào trước hoặc sau một số danh từ hay tính từ để tạo thành động từ. Mô tả như dưới đây:

<u>prefix</u>		<u>suffix</u>	
<u>root words</u>	<u>verbs</u>	<u>root words</u>	<u>verbs</u>
courage	encourage	length	lengthen
danger	endanger	strength	strengthen
roll	enroll	broad	broaden
act	enact	rich	richen
large	enlarge	wide	widen
rich	enrich	worse	worsen

ize/ ise: added to nouns or adjectives (mean make, or develop, or specify). Ta có thể thêm vào sau một số tính từ để tạo thành động từ. Mô tả như dưới đây:

<u>adjectives</u>	<u>verbs</u>	<u>adjectives</u>	<u>verbs</u>
critic	criticize	capital	capitalize
maximum	maximize	equal	equalize
minimum	minimize	industrial	industrialize
modern	modernize	natural	naturalize
popular	popularize	real	realize

IV. Sentence models:

- | | | |
|---|-----------------------------|--|
| 1 | S + V-intrans | <u>They laugh.</u>
S V |
| | | <u>The wind is blowing.</u>
S V |
| 2 | S + V-monotrans + O | <u>He did his homework.</u>
S V O |
| | | <u>Harley carried an umbrella.</u>
S V O |
| 3 | S + V-in/ extensive + Cs | <u>He became famous.</u>
S V C |
| | | <u>They are nearly exhausted.</u>
S V C |
| 4 | S + V-intrans + A | <u>He went abroad.</u>
S V A |
| | | <u>She arrives late.</u>
S V A |
| 5 | S + V-ditrans + O + O | <u>She buys me presents.</u>
S V O O |
| | | <u>That brings my father success.</u>
S V O O |
| 6 | S + V-complex trans + O + C | <u>The story made me bored.</u>
S V O C |
| | | <u>You drive me mad.</u>
S V O C |

Others.

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 19: Give ONE of the derived verbs of the given words to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

- The noise _____ as the plane got farther away. LESS
- Our school set up a project to _____ the library system. COMPUTER
- The breakdown of the negotiations was not _____. EXPECT

He is completely _____! Not only is he lazy but he is dishonest too. EMPLOY

He won the discus event at the Olympic Games but was
later _____ when a medical check proved that he had been QUALIFY

taking drugs.	
Women who are slimming can never enjoy a meal without being afraid of _____ their diet.	ORGANISE
It is forbidden to hunt for that kind of bird. It has been listed as one of the _____ species.	DANGER
8. _____ children will not be allowed to cross busy roads.	ACCOMPANY
9. In nursing, women tend to _____ men by four to one.	NUMBER
10. Before enrolling on a course, you should first ensure that it has been _____ by an officially recognized body.	VALID
11. He stood at the door to make sure that no one _____ the party.	GATE
12. Her health has _____ considerably since we last saw her.	BAD
13. He was _____ of the consequences in advance	INFORMATION
14. This road is so bad that it needs _____.	SURFACE
15. He _____ his brother to take part in 2002 World cup.	COURAGE
16. It's a lovely old house, I agree, but can we afford to _____ it.	MODERN
They frequently _____ the traffic as they march through the MOBILE streets.	
18. Can we _____ the meeting for next Monday at 7 o'clock?	ARRANGE
19. I will resign if you continue _____ what I say.	REGARD
20. She was late as she _____ how much time she'd need.	ESTIMATE

Exercise 20: Give ONE of the derived verbs of the given words to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Politeness is one thing. Real kindness is another. You must learn to _____ the two.	DIFFERENT
Our tomatoes are _____ nicely; they'll be ready to eat in RIPE about a week.	
3. Actually, there is no short cut to _____ a foreign language.	MASTER
A right amount of calcium added to our food will help SOLID to _____ our weak bones.	
5. He has _____ in giving up smoking.	SUCCESS
6. The water is _____. You can't drink it.	POLLUTION
7. Oscar had eaten so much that he had to _____ his belt.	LOOSE
The government decided that the country's agricultural economy should be _____.	INDUSTRY
9. Fertilizers can help _____ the soil.	RICH
10. He _____ to hit me if I didn't hand over my money.	THREAT

-
11. He objected to being _____ unfair. CRITIC
12. He wished to become a university student and to _____ in SPECIAL
Medicine.
- _____ your seatbelts during the plane's take-off and FAST
landing.
14. Don't forget to _____ the boat when you are away. TIGHT
She would have _____ her dream if she had passed the REAL entrance
examination.
16. Farmers have to _____ the soil before growing each crop. FERTILE
17. Japan is among the most _____ countries. INDUSTRY
18. The practice of being on a diet has now been so _____. POPULAR
19. We should _____ all the school's regulations. STANDARD
- Terrorism _____ the civilized human beings by bombing DANGER and
murders.

Exercise 21: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Yesterday the naval authorities _____ the reports in Friday' newspapers that they had explored three bombs near an unknown submarine.

- A. published B. confirmed C. re-started D. agreed

2. If you have the _____ in an election, you have the legal right to indicate your choice.

- A. status B. individual C. vote D. equality

3. Professor Richards insisted that every student _____ their report by Friday.

- A. finish B. finishes C. finished D. had finished

4. In the early 16th century, the geography of the globe still _____ a mystery.

- A. maintained B. continued C. was D. remained

If you have an old blanket, _____ it along so that we have something to sit on at the beach.

- A. bring B. go C. put D. keep

6. We are not allowed _____ jeans at school.

- A. wear B. to wear C. wearing D. worn

7. Sometimes I do not feel like _____ to my sibling about my troubles.

- A. talk B. to talk C. talking D. talked

Although the team was both mentally and physically exhausted, they _____ on walking.

- A. stopped B. kept C. took D. put

9. The house stands high in the top of the hill, so it can be _____ from very far.

A. aimed at B. picked up C. visible D. deal with
More people speak English than any other language, but non-native speakers now _____ native speakers by three to one.

A. outnumber B. overtake C. pass D. dominate
11. Thanks for the sandwich, but you _____ it. I had lunch in town.

A. needn't have made B. mightn't have made
C. shouldn't have made D. ought to have made

Before the plane _____ off, the flight attendant told everyone to fasten their seat belts and put their chairs in an upright position.

A. woke B. brought C. kept D. took

This letter _____ be from Harry. He doesn't know my new address.

A. might B. can't C. mustn't D. shouldn't

14. Don't forget to _____ your gloves on. It is cold outside.

A. let B. make C. put D. fix

15. Politicians frequently _____ a lot of criticism.

A. come out in B. catch up with C. come in for D. get up to

This is a regional organization that aims to _____ economic growth, social progress, and cultural development.

A. account B. include C. accelerate D. respect

17. My father sometimes _____ the washing up after dinner.

A. washes B. takes C. makes D. does

18. Waste paper can be used again after being _____.

A. produced B. recycled C. wasted D. preserved

19. John is not at home. He _____ go somewhere with Daisy. I am not sure.

A. might B. will C. must D. should

20. The boy made his father _____ him a new bag.

A. buy B. to buy C. buying D. buys

Exercise 22: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. Boy, stop reading. _____ the book down and go to bed.

A. Take B. Put C. Set D. Pick

2. Our relatives _____ meet us at the station this evening.

A. are being B. are going to C. go to D. will be to

3. He _____ for that company for five months when it went bankrupt.

A. has been worked B. has worked
C. had been working D. was working

4. At this time next week, all of the students_____ for their examinations.
A. will be sat B. have been sitting
C. have sat D. will be sitting
5. You_____ write to her for she'll be here tomorrow.
A. don't B. mustn't C. needn't D. haven't
6. Can you_____ what it would be like to live without books?
A. imagine B. advise C. describe D. understand
7. _____ anything suspicious arise; please let me know at once.
A. Should B. Would C. Can D. Did
8. The athlete had tried his best to_____ his SEA Games title and records.
A. carry B. perform C. defend D. support
9. After closing the envelope, the secretary_____ the stamps on firmly.
A. stuck B. struck C. sucked D. licked
- The country is now willing to_____ part in the Games hosted by a European country by the end of the year.
A. play B. lose C. take D. enjoy
11. Suppose I_____ half the money I owe you. Would that satisfy you?
A. will pay B. would pay C. pay D. paid
- I cannot believe Peter and Mary_____ up last week. They have been married for almost fifteen years. I hope they get back together.
A. went B. gave C. looked D. broke
13. Not only_____ the exam but she also got a scholarship.
A. did she pass B. she passed C. she has passed D. has she passed
14. " _____ stupid, you will never get good marks by cheating."
A. Be not B. Not be C. Don't be D. Won't be
- It took us over twelve hours to hike over the mountain. By the time we got back to our campsite, I was completely_____ out.
A. worn B. went C. put D. knocked
16. The policeman_____ me off with a warning as it was Christmas.
A. sent B. gave C. let D. set
- If you don't have the telephone number now, you can_____ me up later and give it to me then.
A. call B. stop C. give D. hold
- I didn't get to see the end of that mystery movie on TV last night. How did it_____ out?
A. go B. make C. bring D. turn

When he realized the police had spotted him, the man_____ the exit as quickly as possible.

- A. made up B. made out C. made off D. made for

20. Traffic is being_____ from the High Street while the water main is under repair.

- A. subverted B. averted C. diverted D. perverted

Exercise 23: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. Either you or Daisy_____ the vase. There is no one else in the room.

- A. has been broken B. have been broken
C. has broken D. have broken

2. Old Mr. Brown's condition looks very serious and it is doubtful if he will_____.

- A. pull up B. pull back C. pull through D. pull out

When_____ a European, we should stick to the last name unless he suggests that we use his first name.

- A. talking B. speaking C. discussing D. addressing

Jack is having his lawyer_____ up the contract to make sure that all of the legalities are properly dealt with.

A. go B. look C. get D. draw 5. When you are finished using the

computer, can you please_____ it off.

- A. take B. turn C. do D. go

The school principle_____ that all students hand in their mobile phones to teachers during school hours.

- A. strongly advised B. urgently asked C. firmly told D. firmly insisted

7. I supposed, as_____ we all, that the meeting would be cancelled.

- A. did B. equally C. would D. just

8. "You_____ put the car in the garage. I'm going out in it later".

- A. mustn't B. haven't C. needn't D. can't

9. _____ I have a day off tomorrow? - Of course not. We have a lot of things to do.

- A. Must B. Will C. May D. Need

10. He tried to limit himself to_____ 10 cigarettes a day.

- A. be smoking B. have smoked C. smoke D. smoking

11. The tin opener seemed_____ for left-hand people.

- A. to be designed B. being designed C. to design D. designing

12. The computer_____ reprogramming. There is something wrong with the software.

- A. must B. need C. should D. may

13. This is the third time James_____ the volunteer program to the village.

- A. joins B. joined C. has joined D. has been joining
14. Don't _____ the kettle; it's still hot.
A. touch B. feel C. look D. taste
- It was very difficult for the inspector to _____ what recommendations he should make.
A. decide B. settle C. solve D. realize
16. James won five medals at the competition. His parents _____ very proud of him.
A. can't be B. can't have C. must have been D. could have been
- Mark:** "What does "w.w.w" _____ for?"
Linda: "Is it short for "world wide web?""
- A. sit B. stand C. lie D. point
18. Marsha is going to take extra lessons to _____ what she missed when she was away.
A. catch up on B. put up with C. cut down on D. take up with
19. The baby does nothing but _____ all day.
A. to sleep and to eat B. to sleep and eat C. sleep and eat D. sleeping and eating
20. Andy _____ across the lawn.
A. danced wildly B. was wildly danced
C. was dancing wild D. was being danced wildly

Exercise 24: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

- "Follow me" _____ a very popular English teaching program on television in the 80s.
A. used to be B. was used to
C. was used to being D. used as
2. I'm the only person here who went to state school, _____?
A. am I? B. aren't I C. do I D. didn't I?
3. Kelvin _____ every summer.
A. plays softball and tennis B. plays with softball and tennis
C. is played softball and tennis D. is played with softball and tennis
4. The eagle _____ higher and higher in the sky.
A. soar B. soared C. is soared D. was soared
5. It _____ me only five minutes to get to school.
A. cost B. took C. brought D. spent
6. This is a _____ flight so please be prepared.
A. stopping B. stopped C. non-stop D. stopover
7. How much do you _____ Tam?
A. measure B. weight C. heavy D. weigh

-
8. Is it possible for us to _____ to the cinema without him?
A. reach B. come C. arrive D. go
9. I want you to _____ your best clothes tonight for the party.
A. wore B. dress C. put on D. hung up.
- As all field players are only allowed to touch the ball with one hand at a time, they must develop the ability to catch and _____ the ball with either hand.
A. throw B. point C. score D. cross
11. The explorers made a fire to _____ off wild animals.
A. get B. keep C. take D. go
12. The doctor asked his patient to _____ down the coach.
A. lay B. sit C. lie D. come
13. The children won't go to bed until their parents have _____ so.
A. gone B. been C. done D. prepared
14. If something urgent has _____ up, phone me immediately and I will help you.
A. picked B. come C. kept D. brought
15. The passengers had to wait because the plane _____ off one hour late.
A. took B. turned C. cut D. made
16. These trousers don't _____. They are much too big for the child.
A. suit B. pass C. fit D. match
17. You really can't _____ a thing that woman says!
A. imagine B. believe C. rely D. count
18. I do not use those things any more. You can _____ them away.
A. get B. fall C. throw D. make
19. If only I _____ play the guitar as well as you!
A. would B. should C. could D. might
20. They were late for work because their car _____ down.
A. got B. put C. cut D. broke

Exercise 25: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. We fell over some pieces of wood _____ lying around.
A. leave B. leaves C. leaving D. left
2. My father had the telephone _____ out of his office.
A. take B. taking C. taken D. to take
3. There is only one student in the classroom _____ his lesson.
A. prepared B. to prepare C. preparation D. preparing
4. I wish our teacher _____ our problems a little better.

-
- A. understand B. understands C. understood D. will understand
5. They all laughed because the film was very_____.
- A. amuse B. amusing C. amused D. amusement
6. The girl weeps whenever she_____ such a story.
- A. hears B. had heard C. will hear D. heard
7. The entrance examination_____ in July.
- A. begin B. has begun C. begins D. shall begin
8. I wish I_____ him, but I don't.
- A. am liking B. like C. liked D. was liking
9. The authority_____ down that building to build a supermarket.
- A. knocked B. came C. went D. fell
- Birth control methods have_____ women from the endless cycle of childbearing and rearing.
- A. free B. freely C. freedom D. freed
11. **Anna:** " _____ I be here by 6 o'clock?"
- Maria:** "No, you _____."
- A. Shall/ mightn't B. Must/ needn't C. Will/ mayn't D. Might/ won't
12. "We'd better _____ if we want to get there in time."
- A. put down B. speed up C. turn down D. take up
- If I had gone white water rafting with my friends, I_____ down the Colorado River right now.
- A. should have floated B. must be floating
- C. would be floating D. would have been floating
14. It is a good book. I think it is interesting enough for you to _____.
- A. put down B. swallow C. look up D. understand
15. We saw a man_____ in the street yesterday.
- A. staggered B. staggering C. to stagger D. staggers
16. I want this exercise_____ in ink.
- A. write B. to write C. writing D. to be written
17. It's no good _____ your father about your failure.
- A. to tell B. tell C. telling D. told
18. The room is too dirty. It_____ now.
- A. should clean B. should have cleaned
- C. should be cleaning D. should be cleaned
19. The situation_____ to continue.
- A. cannot allow B. cannot be allowed
- C. cannot have allowed D. cannot be allowing
-

-
20. The students refused _____ to school in the afternoon.
A. returning B. to return C. to be returned D. return

Exercise 26: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. When I was ten, I _____ watch most TV programmes if I asked my parents first.
A. might B. may C. can D. could
2. That car _____ several times this year.
A. was repaired B. repaired C. has repaired D. had been repaired
3. The machine _____ on by pressing this switch.
A. can turn B. can be turned C. must turn D. should be turning
4. Stop. _____ you see that notice?
A. Did B. Don't C. Won't D. Will

When the offense takes possession of the ball, the strategy is to _____ the ball down the field of play and to score a goal.

- A. create B. ride C. advance D. eject
6. I _____ this letter around for days without looking at it.
A. am carrying B. will be carrying C. carry D. have been carrying
7. She heated the chocolate until it _____ then poured it over the cake.
A. changed B. formed C. melted D. flooded
8. The manager had his secretary _____ the report for him.
A. to have typed B. typed C. type D. to type
9. I have been trying to ring him up all day and I could not _____ through.
A. get B. take C. look D. hang
10. I would really _____ your help with this assignment.
A. respect B. take C. appreciate D. thank
11. Can you keep calm for a moment? You _____ noise in class!
A. are always made B. always make
C. have always made D. are always making
12. The water supply of the building was _____ off because the pipes burst.
A. handed B. held C. cut D. paid

I've just been told some _____ news.

- A. astonish B. astonishment C. astonished D. astonishing
- If people _____ after their houses properly, the police wouldn't have so much work to do.
A. looked B. look C. have looked D. should look
15. - **Jack:** "How are you _____ on with your work?"

- Jill: "It is OK."

A. calling B. getting C. laying D. looking

16. Everybody agrees that no more staff_____.

A. should employ B. should not be employed

C. will not be employed D. will be employed

17. You need more exercise - you should_____ jogging.

A. try on B. take up C. carry out D. hold up

18. That pipe_____ for ages - we must get it mended.

A. has been leaking B. is leaking C. had been leaking D. leaks

Things_____ clear to them so that they can do the work in the way that you have told them.

A. are making B. ought to be made C. have made D. needn't be made

"Can you _____ me a favor, Bill?" Peter said.

A. make B. get C. put D. do

BÀI 3. ADJECTIVES - TÍNH TỪ

I. Definition: Words that denote colours, sizes, shapes, weights, characteristics, quality, quantity, and states of things, persons, actions, etc. Là từ dùng để chỉ màu sắc, kích cỡ, hình dạng, trọng lượng, đặc điểm, chất lượng, số lượng, và trạng thái của sự vật, hiện tượng.

Kinds (Classification): phân loại

Main kinds: phân loại chính

Demonstrative: (tính từ chỉ định) *this, that, those, these*.

e.g. *This* book is mine and *that* is yours.

I'd like to have a look at *those* shoes, please.

Distributive: (tính từ phân phối) *each, every, either, neither*.

e.g. *Each* room has its own TV set.

We care for *every* client there.

Quantitative: (tính từ chỉ số lượng) *some, any, no, little, few, many, much, numbers*.

e.g. *Some* books are new and *few* are old.

She has met *many* strangers in the town.

Interrogative: (tính từ nghi vấn) *which, what, whose*. e.g.

Which hat is your, the red or the blue one?

What kind of films do you like to watch?

Possessive: (tính từ sở hữu) *my, your, his, her, our, its, their*

e.g. *Your car needs cleaning.*

He apologized to her for having hurt *her* feelings.

Quality: (tính từ chỉ phẩm chất) *clever, dry, fat, golden, heavy,...*

e.g. He was very *clever* at making decision.

The winners will be presented with *golden* medals.

Derived adjectives: Tính từ phái sinh là những tính từ được phái sinh từ các từ gốc khác để đảm nhận chức năng của tính từ. cụ thể như sau:

Present participles: Một số động từ như *amaze, amuse, bore, embarrass, excite, exhaust, frighten, interest, surprise, tire, etc.* có thể thêm hậu tố ING để tạo thành các tính từ chỉ đặc điểm, tính chất của sự vật, hiện tượng như: *amazing, amusing, boring, embarrassing, exciting, exhausting, frightening, interesting, surprising, tiring, etc.* e.g. We found the film *amazing*.

They thought the long walk was *tiring*.

A *boring* night didn't appeal to him.

An *interesting* book interested me.

The *exciting* monkey snatched the boy's ice-cream.

Past participles: Một số động từ như *amaze, amuse, bore, embarrass, excite, exhaust, frighten, interest, surprise, tire, etc.* có thể thêm hậu tố ED để tạo thành các tính từ chỉ đặc điểm, tính chất của người như: *amazed, amused, bored, embarrassed, excited, exhausted, frightened, interested, surprised, tired, etc.*

e.g. We are nearly *exhausted* after so long a walk. They felt extremely *tired* after a day of hard work. She was *embarrassed* when she found herself naked. Susan became so *excited* when she heard the good news. The boy was *frightened* by the thrilling action in the movie.

Others:

compound words used as adjectives:

e.g. Ha Noi is a *one-thousand-year-old* city.

An *eighty-year-old* lady showed me the way here.

This is a *hard-to-put-down* book.

Those are *hard-to-pick-up-again* ones.

* noun-ed used as adjectives:

e.g. An *one-eyed* man told me to sit down.

The *manned* craft landed safely.

The *unmanned* one burst into flames after the crash.

That is the *four-bedroomed* flat.

Adverbs-past participles used as adjectives:

e.g. He was a *well-educated* man.

They are *properly-trained* workers.

The *poorly-prepared* trip turned to be disastrous.

They entered an *ill-lighted* room.

Functions (Position): chức năng hay vị trí

Noun-subordinator: Tính từ thực hiện chức năng làm bổ nghĩa cho danh từ, tính từ thường được đặt liền trước các danh từ để chỉ tính chất, đặc điểm của danh từ đó.

e.g. This is a *new* book.

She is really a *kind-hearted* lady.

We live in a very *large* room.

Note: Khi có nhiều tính từ cùng bổ nghĩa cho một danh từ ta cần chú ý đến trật tự các tính từ như bảng dưới đây:

Opinion → 2. Size → 3. Age → 4. Shape → 5. Color → 6. Origin → 7. Material

e.g. *My beautiful large new round brown Vietnamese conical leaf hat* is over there.

Verb-complementation: Tính từ thực hiện chức năng làm bổ ngữ cho động từ, tính từ thường theo sau các động từ (linking verbs) như: *be, become, seem, appear, feel, get, grow (become), keep, look (appear), make, smell, sound, taste, turn,*

... e.g. She is really *beautiful*.

They became more and more *nervous*.

He seemed *tired*.

Mr. An felt a bit *disappointed*.

But some verbs can take either an adjective or an adverb: e.g. He looks *calm*. (=He himself is calm)

He looks *calmly* at the angry crowd. (= He shows no attitude to the angry crowd)

Comparison forms: cấp so sánh đối với các tính từ có thể được trình bày theo dạng dưới đây:

3.1. **Positive degree:** so sánh bằng của tính từ

a. Formula:

S - V - as - adjs - as - O

b. Examples: She is *as tall as* my wife.

Peter was *as hard-working as* I was.

not - as/so - adjs - as

Note: negative formula

--

e.g. Helen is *not as strict as* Jane.
 He was *not so intelligent as* his fellows.
 The house is *not as comfortable as* the previous one.

3.2. Comparative degree: Hình thức so sánh hơn của tính từ

a. **Monosyllable-adjectives:** Đối với tính từ đơn âm tiết hoặc tính từ đa âm tiết nhưng có tận cùng bằng “y”, “ow”, hoặc “er”:

S - V - adjs -ER - than - O

e.g. Lan is *shorter than* Na
 She was *better at English than* we were.
 She looked *happier than* her brother.

Multi-syllable-adjectives: Đối với tính từ đa âm tiết

S - V - more - adjs - than - O

e.g. She was *more hard-working than* us.
 We are *more intelligent than* him.
 Helen is *more beautiful than* she used to be.

3.3. Superlative degree: so sánh hơn nhất

a. **Monosyllable-adjectives:** Đối với tính từ đơn âm tiết hoặc tính từ đa âm tiết nhưng có tận cùng bằng “y”, “ow”, hoặc “er”:

S - V - the - adjs - EST

e.g. Nam is *the best* in our class.
 She was *the kindest* lady I’ve ever met.
 Lam is *the happiest* in our group.

b. **Multi-syllable- adjectives:** Đối với tính từ đa âm tiết

S - V - the - most - adjs

e.g. Sarah was *the most intelligent* in my group.
 She is *the most hard-working* girl I’ve ever known.
 Water is one of *the most important* factors to life.

Notes: For adjectives ending in “er”, “y”, “ly”, or the irregular cases – Bảng các hình thức so sánh của các tính từ bất qui tắc:

	<u>Adjective</u>	<u>Comparative</u>	<u>Superlative</u>
1.	bad	worse	the worst
2.	clever	cleverer	the cleverest

3.	far	farther/ further	the farthest/ furthest
4.	good	better	the best
5.	happy	happier	the happiest
6.	little	less	the least
7.	many/ much	more	the most
8.	old	older/ elder	the oldest/ eldest
9.	pretty	prettier	the prettiest
10.	silly	sillier	the silliest

3.4. **Double comparison:** Hình thức so sánh kép gồm 4 mẫu câu sau:

S - V - adj-ER - and - adj-ER

e.g. She is becoming *older* and *wiser*.

S - V - adj-ER - and - more - adj

e.g. It was getting *darker* and *more humid*.

c.

S - V - more - adj - and - adj-ER

e.g. He is more *hard-working* and *smarter*.

S - V - more - adj - and - more - adj

e.g. Linh is becoming *more industrious* and *more intelligent*.

3.5. **Parallel comparison:** hình thức so sánh thặng tiến gồm 4 mẫu câu sau:

a.

The adj-ER - S - V, the adj-ER - S - V

e.g. The *older* she is, the *wiser* she becomes.

The adj-ER - S - V, the more adj - S - V

e.g. The *darker* it was, the *more humid* it seemed to be.

The more adj - S - V, the adj-ER - S - V

e.g. The *more hard-working* he is, the *smarter* he becomes.

The more adj - S - V, the more adj - S - V

e.g. The *more industrious* Linh is, the *more intelligent* he gets.

Confused words: Một số từ dễ bị nhầm lẫn về cách sử dụng.

a. like/ alike:

- * like (adj) giống e.g. Tom is very *like* Bill.
- * alike (adj) giống nhau e.g. Tom and Bill *are alike*.

b. like/ as:

- * like (adv) giống e.g. He swims *like* a fish.
You look *like* a ghost.
- * as (adv) như là e.g. Do *as* I told you.
He ate *as* he had been hungry for months

c. like + N/ as + N:

- * like (adv) giống e.g. He worked *like* a slave.
(He worked very hard/ He wasn't a slave).
- * as (adv) là e.g. He worked *as* a slave.
(He was a slave in fact).

d. The adjectives: the –được đặt trước các tính từ để chỉ nhóm các sự vật hiện tượng có chung một tính chất.

- e.g. *The rich* are not always happy.
The poor need support from the whole community.
The retarded find it hard to integrate.
The suspected are not allowed to travel abroad.

IV. Adjectival clauses: Một số các mệnh đề tính ngữ cơ bản thường gặp

1. That – clause:

It be adj that - S - V

- e.g. It is *disappointed that* he failed the exam.
It's *better that* someone should tell him.

2. find/ think/ believe + that:

S - V - that - it be adj to-inf

- e.g. I *found that it is impossible* to start now.
She *thought that it was silly* to ask him to stay.
We *believe that it will be easier* to get a seat in a university in the future.

Comment: Với các tính từ theo cấu trúc:

It be adj of O to - inf

Character: Các tính từ chỉ tính cách như: *brave, careless, cowardly (nhút nhát), cruel, generous, good, nice (=kind), mean, rude, selfish...*

- e.g. It is *brave* of Maria to go out at night alone.
It is *cowardly* of him not to talk in public spaces.
It is *generous* of Mr. Pike to offer me a lift.

S - V - adj - N to-inf

It is *selfish* to care for ourselves only.

Sense: Các tính từ chỉ phẩm chất như: *clever, foolish, idiotic (ngu), intelligent, sensible (nhạy bén), silly, stupid,...*

e.g. It is *idiotic* of Maria to go out at night alone.

It is *clever* of him not to talk in public spaces.

It is *sensible* of Mr. Pike to offer me a lift.

It is *stupid* to care for ourselves only.

4. Pronoun + be + adjs + noun + infinitives:

Using the above adjectives and - Hình thức này sử dụng các tính từ như phần trên, ngoài ra còn dùng với các tính từ sau đây: *astonishing, curious, ridiculous (lố bịch), unreasonable, funny(=strange), odd (lập dị), pointless, useful, useless,...*

e.g. That's *the amazing idea* to show.

It was *an unreasonable result* to accept.

He was *an odd person* to talk to.

It will be *a funny thing* to do when we go fishing.

It's - adjs - to infinitives

Dùng với các tình từ sau: *advisable, inadvisable, better, best, desirable, essential, good, important, necessary, unnecessary, vital (tất yếu),...*

e.g. It's *advisable* to put our money into the bank.

It's *best* to stop discussing the matter now.

It's *important* to know one's limitation.

It be - adjs - (for O) - to infinitives

Dùng với các tình từ sau: *convenient, dangerous, difficult, easy, hard, possible, important, safe,...*

e.g. It's *safe for us* to put our money into the bank.

It's *difficult* for them to stop discussing the matter now.

It's *important for everyone* to know one's limitation.

S - be - adjs - to infinitives

Dùng với các tình từ sau: *angry, delighted, dismayed, glad, happy, pleased, relieved, sorry, sad*

e.g. They are *angry* to hear that their house was broken into.
He is *delighted* to know his entrance examination results.
I am *glad* to talk to you.

S - be - glad/ happy/ sorry/ sad/... - to say/ tell/ inform

e.g. I am glad to tell you that you win the prize.

We are sorry to inform you that you lose the match.

Others adjs + to find/ learn/ hear/ see/...) Như: *able, unable, apt, inclined, liable, prone, prepared, quick, reluctant, slow, ready, willing,*

It - be - adj that S - V (không chia)/ should V

Được dùng với các tính từ sau: *advisable, inadvisable, better, best, desirable, essential, good, important, necessary, unnecessary, vital, compulsory, suggested,* etc. e.g.

It's *advisable* that he (should) be on-time.

It's *vital* that one (should) have medical insurance.

It's *important* that corporal punishments on children be

banned. 10. Special cases: các cấu trúc đặc biệt

Due: (sắp xảy ra chỉ thời gian)

e.g. The race is due to start in 5 minutes.

Due to: a result of (vì, do bởi, chỉ một kết quả)

e.g. The accident was due to his carelessness.

Owing to: because of (bởi vì, do bởi, chỉ một nguyên nhân)

e.g. Owing to his carelessness, we had an accident.

Certain/ sure + to V= opinion (chắc là - chỉ một suy đoán)

e.g. He is sure to take legal action.

Certain/ sure that + (clause) = opinion (chắc là - chỉ một suy đoán)

e.g. I am certain that the price will be higher.

Certain/ sure/ confident of + N/G: (chỉ sự quyết tâm)

e.g. He was sure of entering the haunted house.

Bound + to V= obligation (Việc sắp sửa diễn ra)

e.g. We were bound to leave.

Afraid/ ashamed of + N/G: (sợ hay xấu hổ vì điều gì)

e.g. She was afraid of being left alone.

Sorry for/ about + N/G: (hối tiếc về điều gì đó)

e.g. Tom felt sorry for making so many mistakes.

Afraid/ ashamed/ sorry + to V: (sợ, xấu hổ, tiếc vì phải..)

e.g. I'm sorry to tell you that bad news.

Anxious about = worried (lo lắng vì điều gì)

e.g. He was anxious about going in the dark alone.

Anxious for O to V = wish (muốn làm gì)

e.g. He was anxious for you to go in the dark alone.
Anxious that + (clause)

e.g. We are anxious that we couldn't come.

Fortunate/ lucky that + (clause) = It's a good thing...

e.g. It was lucky that we weren't late.

S + be fortunate/ lucky to V

e.g. She was lucky to have such an interesting book.

Possible/ probable/ likely + future = perhaps

e.g. It's possible that man will live longer.

Aware/ conscious of N/G

e.g. We should be aware of protecting our nature.

Aware/ conscious + that + (clause)

e.g. She was conscious that she would be late.

V. Suffixes: Cách kiến tạo ra tính từ qua các hậu tố.

	<u>suffixes</u>		<u>words</u>	
1.	able	portable	agreeable	eatable
2.	al	parental	musical	moral
3.	ed	tired	bored	excited
4.	en	woolen	golden	wooden
5.	ful	careful	useful	helpful
6.	ial	essential	trial	social
7.	ible	visible	legible	edible
8.	ic	politic	romantic	historic
9.	ing	tiring	boring	exciting
10.	ish	reddish	whitish	blackish
11.	ive	active	effective	native
12.	less	careless	useless	helpless
13.	ly	lovely	lively	friendly
14.	ous	industrious	enormous	dangerous
15.	some	troublesome		worrisome
16.	y	wealthy	healthy	rainy

others:

Nationality

an	<i>American</i>	<i>German</i>	<i>Venezuelan</i>
ese	<i>Chinese</i>	<i>Sudanese</i>	<i>Vietnamese</i>
i	<i>Iraqi</i>	<i>Israeli</i>	<i>Yemeni</i>

ian	<i>Australian</i>	<i>Brazilian</i>	<i>Italian</i>
ish	<i>English</i>	<i>Danish</i>	<i>Turkish</i>
other	<i>Czech</i>	<i>Dutch</i>	<i>French</i>
	<i>Greek</i>	<i>Swiss</i>	<i>Thai</i>

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 27: Give ONE of the derived adjectives of the given words.

	<i>roots</i>	<i>adjectives</i>		<i>roots</i>	<i>adjectives</i>
1.	accident	.....	16.	mean	.....
2.	industry	.....	17.	home	.....
3.	inform	.....	18.	poison	.....
4.	history	.....	19.	danger	.....
5.	politics	.....	20.	value	.....
6.	parent	.....	21.	understand	.....
7.	essence	.....	22.	advice	.....
8.	confide	.....	23.	eat	.....
9.	act	.....	24.	tire	.....
10.	affect	.....	25.	bore	.....
11.	destroy	.....	26.	excite	.....
12.	defend	.....	27.	avoid	.....
13.	produce	.....	28.	benefit	.....
14.	compete	.....	29.	success	.....
15.	thank	.....	30.	chaos	.....

Exercise 28: Give ONE of the derived adjectives of the given words to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

- The book doesn't say much about prices, but it is very _____ INFORM about everything else.
- He lost in the election because he was a weak and _____ DECIDE leader.
- I couldn't help it. The accident was _____. AVOID
- He was very _____ when his cat was run over. SET
- Keith's exam results turned out to be _____. DISASTER
- I think it's sheer _____ to get married in church if you don't HYPOCRITE believe in God.
- These countries are _____ in imports of raw cotton. PREFER
- Sam was accused of stealing some _____ documents. CONFIDE

-
- | | |
|---|------------|
| 9. You do not have to go. Your decision must be entirely_____. | VOLUNTEER |
| 10. Going swimming everyday would have very_____ effects. | BENEFIT |
| 11. He felt_____ certain about his success. | TOLERATE |
| 12. Do you feel_____ to the new job? | ATTRACT |
| 13. He works for UNESCO in a purely_____ role. | ADVICE |
| 14. Watching television can be very_____. | EDUCATE |
| 15. Those countries are_____ on other countries for most of their food. | DEPEND |
| 16. She is extremely_____ about the history of art. | KNOW |
| 17. Traveling in big cities is becoming more and more_____ every day. | TROUBLE |
| 18. The trouble with Mr. Brown is that he's so_____. One minute he goes mad when you come late; the next he says nothing. You never know where you are! | CONSIST |
| 19. I didn't know who it was – with a mask on she was completely _____. | RECONGNISE |
| 20. The surgeon tried their best to save his life, but unfortunately the operation was_____. | SUCCESS |

Exercise 29: Give ONE of the derived adjectives of the given words to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

- | | |
|--|----------|
| 1. He was very_____ of the work he had done. | PRIDE |
| 2. Are there any_____ rivers left in the world? | POLLUTE |
| 3. After the explosion, only two people were left_____. | LIVE |
| 4. Those_____ group has never lost its appeal. | THEATRE |
| 5. Dolphins, _____ species, sometimes jump above the surface of the water. | MAMMAL |
| 6. He's the most_____, ill-mannered person I've ever met. | PLEASE |
| 7.The situation is so_____ in some countries now that it is CHAOS difficult to see any solution. | |
| 8. Computers are now considered_____ in the business world. | DISPENSE |
| 9. The damage caused by the terrible storm two days ago was_____ by the government. The real figures go up every minute. | ESTIMATE |
| 10. Barack Obama is the first President of the United States with_____ background. | RACE |
-

-
11. The students are already _____ with the work of Shakespeare. ACQUAINT
12. She's so _____ that she won't let anything stand in the way of her ambition. MIND
13. That was a very _____ thing to say. HURT
14. It's _____ of him to lose his temper like that – he's usually very calm. CHARACTER
15. Different conservation efforts have been made in order to save _____ species. DANGER
16. Her son is always mischievous and _____, which annoys her very much. OBEY
17. You can never be sure what my sister is going to do. She is so _____. PREDICT
18. We found it _____ to your wonderful news. THRILL
- There was a _____ dissatisfaction with the government's WIDE policies.
- I was kept _____ last night by the noise from a party in WAKE the flat above.

Exercise 30: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. I was most _____ of his efforts to help me during the crisis.
A. appreciation B. appreciable C. appreciate D. appreciative
2. The International Committee of the Red Cross is a private _____ institution founded in 1863 in Geneva, Switzerland.
A. human B. humanity C. humanization D. humanitarian
3. Peter isn't keen on exercise, but he isn't _____ to the occasional walk.
A. averse B. unwilling C. reluctant D. contrary
4. _____ players are not allowed to interfere with the opponent's movements unless the player is holding the ball.
A. Defense B. Defensive C. Defender D. Defensively
5. Richard is _____ to give up immediately when faced with any problems.
A. habitual B. subject C. susceptible D. apt
6. I wanted to go a more _____ route across Montana.
A. north B. northerly C. northerner D. northernmost
7. She is a slow student. She seems to be unable to concentrate on anything in _____.
A. particular B. particularly C. particularity D. particularize

-
8. This development project could be of great help to the_____ Vietnamese population.
A. major B. living C. rural D. domestic
9. There's a lot more to Willie than one would think: still waters run_____.
A. deep B. deeply C. deepness D. depth
10. Many teenagers are not much_____ in reading books, except for what they are made to read at school.
A. excited B. important C. slow D. interested
11. The copy machine was reduced to even _____ the sale price.
A. least as B. as much as C. more than D. less than
12. It is_____ to fail a job interview, but try again.
A. disappoint B. disappointing C. disappointedly D. disappointment
13. Most crimes that are committed are no more than_____ theft.
A. slight B. small C. unimportant D. petty
14. Students also have the opportunity to choose from a wide range of_____ courses in the university.
A. compulsory B. optional C. required D. limited
15. She is extremely competent and_____.
A. industrial B. industrious C. industry D. industrialized
- Mr. Hudson provided us with an_____ guide to the full-time and part-time programs on offer to a range of candidates drawn from schools and colleges.
A. inform B. informative C. informed D. information
17. I'm very lazy. I only go to the gym once in a_____ moon.
A. black B. blue C. full D. new
18. All payments to the organization are_____ and are received as donations.
A. volunteer B. voluntary C. voluntarily D. voluntariness
19. His eyes were light blue and_____ in their innocence.
A. childless B. childish C. childlike D. childhood
- A university is an institution of higher education and research, which grants_____ degrees at all levels in a variety of subjects.
A. secondary B. optional C. academic D. vocational

Exercise 31: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. That meat is_____ for human consumption.
A. unfit B. inadequate C. incompetent D. different
2. A(n)_____ species is a population of an organism which is at risk of becoming extinct.
A. dangerous B. endanger C. endangered D. endangerment

-
3. I am _____ to come to the meeting on Monday evening, please apologize for my absence.
A. unable B. impossible C. incapable D. unlikely
4. In the South, _____ development concentrated on rice cultivation, and nationally, rice and rubber were the main items of export.
A. industrial B. agricultural C. mining D. textile
5. The more he tried to explain, _____ we got.
A. the much confused B. the many confusing
C. the more confusing D. the more confused
- In former days, after the battles soldiers on both sides died or were left wounded on the field without an _____ attendance and basic care.
A. medicine B. medical C. medication D. medically
7. The new policies include cutting _____ subsidies and trade barriers.
A. agriculture B. agricultural C. agriculturalist D. agriculturally
8. The music aroused an _____ feeling of homesickness in him.
A. intentional B. intense C. intended D. intensive
9. According to the boss, John is the most _____ for the position of executive secretary.
A. supportive B. caring C. suitable D. comfortable
10. He was very respectful at home and _____ to his parents.
A. responsible B. caring C. obedient D. lovely
11. Jane is plain, but her sister is very _____.
A. complex B. attractive C. sympathetic D. sophisticated
12. London is home to people of many _____ cultures.
A. diverse B. diversity C. diversify D. diversification
13. Her job was so _____ that she decided to quit it.
A. interesting B. satisfactory C. stressful D. wonderful
14. Their flat is decorated in a _____ combination of color.
A. tasteful B. sweet C. delicious D. tasty
- A specific area of biotechnology that shows great promise for treatment and cure of life-
_____ diseases.
A. developing B. threatening C. hoping D. fitting
- The Prime Minister is to consider changes to sexually _____ laws to enforce equal opportunities.
A. discriminate B. discrimination C. discriminatory D. discriminated
17. This ring is made of plastic so it is quite _____.
A. valuable B. invaluable C. worthless D. priceless
18. The more _____ and positive you look, the better you will feel.
A. confide B. confident C. confidently D. confidence
-

19. He was offered the job thanks to his_____ performance during his job interview.
A. impress B. impression C. impressive D. impressively

The doctor gave the patient a(n)_____ examination to discover the cause of his collapse.
A. thorough B. exact C. universal D. whole

Exercise 32: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. Many young men prefer scuba-diving because it is_____.
A. adventure B. adventurous C. adventurously D. adventurer

The AIDS_____ continues to spread around the world. Up to 4,000 people are infected with the HIV virus every single day.

A. treatment B. epidemic C. tsunami D. damage

When a fire broke out in the Louvre, at least twenty_____ paintings were destroyed, including two by Picasso.

A. worthless B. priceless C. valueless D. worthy

4. His brother refuses to even listen to anyone else's point of view. He is very_____.

A. open-minded B. kind-hearted C. narrow-minded D. absent-minded

5. Someone who is_____ thinks that bad things are going to happen.

A. optimistic B. pessimistic C. threatened D. hopeful

6. The bride looked_____ on her wedding than she does as usual.

A. nicer and more attractive B. more nicer and more attractive
C. more nicer and more attractive D. more attractive and nicer

7. As_____ as I know, we have not received a bill for the new computer.

A. much B. long C. soon D. far

8. The project was rejected because of_____ funds.

A. unavailable B. inconsiderable C. incomplete D. insufficient

9. She is _____ to leave as soon as possible.

A. cautious B. anxious C. worried D. nervous

10. The success of the sport event had a great contribution of many_____ volunteers.

A. support B. supporter C. supportive D. supportively

The_____ challenge of economic, reform was to solve the problems of motivating workers and farmers to produce a larger surplus.

A. initial B. initiate C. initiative D. initiation

Because of_____ weather conditions, California has an advantage in the production of fruits and vegetables.

-
- A. favour B. favourably C. favourite D. favourable

Women always feel moved when they find somebody who understands them_____ they know themselves.

- A. better as B. more better than
C. better than D. as better than

They started, as_____ gatherings but they have become increasingly formalized in the last few years.

- A. informal B. informally C. informalize D. informality

15. I am so_____ that I cannot say anything, but keep silent.

- A. nerve B. nervous C. nervously D. nervousness

16. After a_____ hesitation, she began to speak with such a convincing voice.

- A. rude B. slight C. small D. impolite

He is one of the most_____ bosses I have ever worked with. He behaves rudely to not only me but also others in the staff.

- A. thoughtful B. impolite C. attentive D. communicative

18. Those specialists are trying to find ways of making more_____ use of agricultural land.

- A. produce B. production C. productive D. productivity

19. Although they are poor and hard, they are_____ to their children's success.

- A. content B. proud C. satisfied D. boastful

In the future, the number of tiny but_____ computers you encounter every day will number in the thousands, perhaps millions.

- A. power B. powerful C. powerfully D. powered

Exercise 33: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. It is_____ not to say "Thank you" when you are given something.

- A. small B. rude C. slight D. formal

In England, primary education is provided by state schools run by the government and by _____ fee-paying schools.

- A. independent B. independently C. depended D. independence

3. My computer is not_____ of running this software.

- A. able B. compatible C. capable D. suitable

4. To Vietnamese students, the_____ examination to university is very difficult.

- A. require B. requirement C. requiring D. required

Despite many recent_____ advances, there are parts where schools are not equipped with computers.

- A. technology B. technological C. technologically D. technologist
-

He's a very _____ person because he can make other workers follow his advice.

- A. creative B. influential C. deciding D. effective

7. Many people have objected to the use of animals in _____ experiments.

- A. science B. scientist C. scientific D. scientifically

8. Many _____ crafts such as weaving are now being revived.

- A. habitual B. traditional C. customary D. ordinary

9. After he had returned from the desert, he was confined to bed by a _____ disease.

- A. mystery B. mysterious C. mysteriously D. mysteriousness

10. James should have stayed out of the sun as his skin is so _____.

- A. sensible B. sensitive C. insensible D. senseless

11. Have you any objections _____ this new road scheme?

- A. with B. for C. at D. to

Current extinction rates are at least 100 to 1,000 times higher than _____ rates found in the fossil record.

- A. nature B. natural C. naturally D. naturalness

"Don't worry. I have _____ tire at the back of my car."

- A. other B. others C. the other D. another

14. Not many people find reading more _____ than watching TV.

- A. interest B. interested C. interesting D. interestingly

15. His house is nothing out of the _____; it's just an average five-room house.

- A. normal B. usual C. ordinary D. typical

16. To become a novelist, you need to be _____.

- A. imagine B. imagination C. imaginative D. imaginarily

17. Is he really _____ to judge a brass band contest?

- A. efficient B. skillful C. capable D. competent

A _____ problem, feeling, or belief is difficult to change because its causes have been there for a long time.

- A. deep-seated B. significant C. dependent D. intellectual

19. I think giving a presentation in front of the class is _____.

- A. slow B. stupid C. famous D. scary

Someone who is _____ is hopeful about the future or the success of something in particular.

- A. powerful B. optimistic C. stagnant D. pessimistic

Exercise 34: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. The traffic in town was very _____ and I arrived home earlier than expected.

-
- A. light B. weak C. little D. few
2. Western women are more _____ than Asian women.
A. depend B. dependent C. independent D. independently
- Although David was _____ after a day's work in the office, he tried to help his wife the household chores.
A. exhaustion B. exhausted C. exhausting D. exhaustive
4. Are you sure that boys are more _____ than girls?
A. act B. active C. action D. activity
5. The lake contained _____ thousands of fish.
A. much B. one C. many D. few
6. What are the _____ of that country? - I think it is some kinds of cheese and sauces.
A. drinks B. beverages C. grains D. special dishes
7. The witness's account was not _____ with the facts.
A. matched B. reliable C. consistent D. confirmed
8. The interviews with parents showed that the vast majority were _____ of teachers.
A. support B. supportive C. supporter D. supporting
9. Dogs make very _____ pets. They'll always stay by your side.
A. mental B. private C. loyal D. digital
10. He was _____ when I had those problems and said whatever I did he would stand by me.
A. supportive B. exciting C. busy D. dull
11. As I was _____ of the change in the program, I arrived half an hour late for the rehearsal.
A. unaware B. unconscious C. unable D. unreasonable
- Many young people have objected to _____ marriage, which is decided by the parents of the bride and groom.
A. agreed B. shared C. contractual D. sacrificed
13. The government should do more for _____ people.
A. usual B. ordinary C. everyday D. typical
14. You are not _____ to say anything unless you wish to do so.
A. obliged B. willing C. equal D. attracted
15. They had a _____ candlelit dinner last night and she accepted his proposal of marriage.
A. romance B. romantic C. romantically D. romanticize
16. People can become very _____ when they are stuck in traffic for a long time.
A. nervous B. bad-tempered C. stressful D. pressed
17. Sometimes it is _____ to find suitable books for our children.
A. difficult B. difficulty C. difficultly D. difficulties
18. They decided to divorce and Mary is _____ to get the right to raise the child.
A. equal B. determined C. obliged D. active
-

19. Helen is _____ seafood, so she never tries these delicious dishes.
 A. allergic to B. tired of C. keen on D. preferable to
20. Body language is a potent form of _____ communication.
 A. verbal B. non-verbal C. tongue D. oral

BÀI 4. ADVERBS - TRẠNG TỪ

I. Kinds (Classification): phân loại trạng từ

Adverbs of manner: trạng từ chỉ thể cách dùng để chỉ cách thức của hành động, hoạt động, thường theo sau và bổ nghĩa cho các động từ. thông thường trạng từ chỉ thể cách được biến đổi phái sinh từ tính từ tương ứng:

Adjs + ly = Adv

Ví dụ về cấu tạo của trạng từ chỉ thể cách:

adjectives	adverbs	adjectives	adverbs
1. amazing	amazingly	6. early	early
2. beautiful	beautifully	7. fast	fast
3. brave	bravely	8. good	well
4. happy	happily	9. hard	hard
5. quick	quickly	10. late	late

Ví dụ về chức năng của trạng từ chỉ thể cách:

She sang *beautifully*.

He drove *dangerously* and got a serious accident.

Helen was used to getting up *early*.

Tom run very *fast* and won the first place prize.

He did *well* in the examination and got good marks.

Adverbs of place: Các trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn được dùng như các ngữ cố định để tạo thành trạng ngữ chỉ nơi chốn. Gồm các trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn như: *by/ down/ near/ here/ there/ etc.*

e.g. She comes *there* twice a week.

Here come the police.

The mother tried to stop her baby from coming any *nearer* to the socket.

Adverbs of time: Các trạng từ chỉ thời gian cũng được dùng như các ngữ cố định để tạo thành trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian. Gồm các trạng từ chỉ thời gian như: *now/ soon/ still/ today/ yet/ etc.*

e.g. We are going to Hanoi *today*.

He will return *soon*.

They are *still* upstairs.

We are *now* living in the age of information technology.

Adverbs of frequency: Các trạng từ chỉ tần suất được dùng để chỉ số lần xuất hiện của sự vật, sự việc trên một đơn vị thời gian. Gồm các trạng từ chỉ tần suất như: *always/ usually/ often/ sometimes/ occasionally/ seldom/ rarely/ never/ once/ twice/ three times/ four times/* etc.

e.g. Linda *often* goes to school by bus.

We *never* eat dog-meat.

She *once* became the leader.

He brushes his teeth *twice* a week.

He goes to the church *six times* a year.

Adverbs of sentence: Các trạng từ của câu được dùng để mô tả sắc thái lời nói và có vị trí linh hoạt trong câu. Các trạng từ của câu như: *certainly/ definitely/ luckily/* etc.

e.g. He was *certainly* the liar.

Luckily, she passed the exam.

He *finally* passed the driving test after three successive

attempts. Mr. Peter loved the scenic beauty of the resort *totally*.

Adverbs of degree: Các trạng từ chỉ mức độ được dùng để mô tả mức độ hay tính chất của sự việc. Các trạng từ chỉ mức độ như: *fairly/ hardly/ rather/ quite/ too/* etc.

e.g. He was *quite* handsome.

Hardly did we see anything.

She is *fairly* tall with bright complexion.

Mrs. Black felt *a bit* bored with the main character's performance.

Adverbs of interrogative: Gồm các trạng từ: *when/ where/ why/*

e.g. *When* did you go?

Where is she now?

Why didn't you put on your best clothes to go to the interview?

Adverbs of relative: Gồm các trạng từ: *when/ where/ why*

e.g. He came *when* we were watching T.V.

That's the park *where* we first met.

I don't know the reason *why* she didn't come to your party yesterday.

Note: Some adverbs share the same form with their corresponding adjectives – Một số trạng từ có hình thức giống hệt với tính từ cùng nguồn gốc với chúng. Hay nói khác đi, dưới đây là bảng một số tính từ và trạng từ có chung một hình thức:

	<u>adjectives</u>	<u>adverbs</u>		<u>adjectives</u>	<u>adverbs</u>
1.	back	back	13.	long	long
2.	direct*	direct*	14.	more*	more*
3.	early	early	15.	most*	most*
4.	enough	enough	16.	much*	much*
5.	far	far	17.	near*	near*
6.	hard*	hard*	18.	pretty	pretty
7.	high*	high*	19.	right*	right*
8.	ill	ill	20.	short*	short*
9.	just*	just*	21.	till	till
10.	late*	late*	22.	straight	straight
11.	left	left	23.	well	well
12.	little	little	24.	wrong*	wrong*

e.g. She is a *hard* worker. She works very *hard*.

He didn't have *enough* money, and he wasn't old *enough* to earn much.

A *near* look helps me know what it is. He lives *near* the church.

My house is *far* from school so I have to walk *far* every morning.

Note: Adverb with "*" above can either have "ly" or not, but differences in meanings.

e.g. She worked *hard*. = She is a hard-working person.

She could *hardly* work. = She could not or was unable to work.

Positions (Functions): Vị trí hay chức năng của một số loại trạng từ được giới thiệu như dưới đây:

1. Adverbs of manner: Trạng từ chỉ thể cách có chức năng chính là bổ nghĩa cho động từ, chỉ cách thức của hoạt động. Trạng từ chỉ thể cách có vị trí như sau:

Follow verbs – đi liền ngay sau động từ để bổ nghĩa cho động từ:

eg: He danced *gracefully*.

She sang *marvelously*.

They ran *quickly* to the bookstore.

Before prepositions or follow objects in – Theo sau các tân ngữ hoặc đi trước các giới từ trong cấu trúc:

S – V – preposition – O

eg: He looked at me *carefully*.

He looked *carefully* at me.

Follow Subject – Theo sau các chủ ngữ như:

eg: He *suspiciously* tasted the soup.

The inspectors *thoroughly* examined the dead body.

At the beginning or end – Có thể đặt ở đầu hoặc cuối câu như:

eg: *Carefully* he checks the suitcase.

He checks the suitcase *carefully*.

Adverbs of time: Trạng từ chỉ thời gian thường có các vị trí sau:

At the beginning or end of sentences – Một số trạng từ chỉ thời gian có thể đặt ở đầu hoặc cuối của câu mà không làm thay đổi tính chất hay nghĩa của câu như: *afterwards/ eventually/ lately/ now/ recently/ at once/ since then/ till/...*

eg: He will return *soon*. = He will soon return = *Soon* he will return.

Today we will learn lesson two. = We will learn lesson two *today*.

Eventually we reach the top of the hill. = We *eventually* reach the top of the hill.

Always at the end - Một số trạng từ chỉ thời gian luôn được đặt ở cuối của câu, khi thay đổi vị trí chức năng của trạng từ cũng thay đổi, chẳng hạn như: *before*/ early/ immediately*/ late*

(Adverbs with “*” are used as conjunctions when placed at the beginning of sentences – các trạng từ có dấu “*” ở trên sẽ được dùng như liên từ khi được đặt ở đầu câu).

eg: He went to the church *immediately*. Khác với *Immediately*, he went to the church.

Follow subjects or “V - O” – các trạng từ *yet/ still/ etc.* theo sau các chủ ngữ riêng *just* đứng tách giữa động từ trợ và động từ mang nghĩa như:

eg: He *still* lives in the suburb of the city.

nhưng: He has *just* left the house.

Adverbs of place: Các trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn có các vị trí trong câu như dưới đây:

At the beginning or end – Được đặt ở đầu hoặc cuối của câu mà không làm thay đổi tính chất và nghĩa của câu như: *away/ everywhere/ nowhere/ somewhere/ here /there/ etc.*

eg: *Nowhere* could we find him.

We could find him *nowhere*.

English is spoken *everywhere*.

Everywhere English is spoken.

Administration – các trạng từ dùng để chỉ định như: *here/ there*

eg: He lives *here*.

She hasn't gone *there*.

Adverbs of frequency: Trạng từ chỉ tần suất:

Flexible positions - thường đi sau *to be*, đi trước các động từ thường, hoặc tách giữa động từ trợ với động từ mang nghĩa như: *always/ continually/ frequently/ often/ once/ twice/ periodically/ repeatedly/ sometimes/ usually/ etc.*

eg: She *usually* walks to school.
She is *often* late for school.
Sometimes he goes out at night.
He *sometimes* goes out at night.
He goes out at night *sometimes*.

Restricted (inversion) – Các trạng từ mang nghĩa phủ định khi được đặt ở đầu câu sẽ phải đảo ngữ như: *hardly - ever/ never/ rarely/ scarcely ever/ seldom/ etc.*

eg: She will *never* she eat this kind of food.
Nhưng *Never* will she eat this kind of food.

IV. Inversion cases: các trường hợp đảo ngữ

Trong một số trường hợp các trạng từ có nghĩa hạn chế (phủ định) không đứng ở các vị trí bình thường mà được đảo lên đầu câu với dụng ý nhấn mạnh đến hành động của chủ thể (chủ ngữ). khi đó ta thực hiện hình thức đảo ngữ (đảo động từ trợ lên trước chủ ngữ - như câu nghi vấn) và gọi là câu đảo ngữ. cụ thể như trình bày dưới đây:

Restricted adverbs or phrases: Một số trạng từ và ngữ mang nghĩa phủ định phải đảo ngữ khi được đặt ở đầu câu như:

<i>hardly...ever</i>	<i>hardly...when</i>	<i>in no circumstances</i>
<i>never</i>	<i>no sooner...than</i>	<i>not only</i>
<i>nowhere</i>	<i>on no account</i>	<i>only by</i>
<i>only....then</i>	<i>scarcely ever</i>	<i>scarcely...when</i>
<i>only.... when</i>	<i>neither...nor</i>	<i>only in this way</i>
<i>so</i>	<i>not till</i>	<i>seldom</i>

Inversion cases: Trong tiếng Anh, đảo ngữ (đảo trật tự từ trong câu) được dùng để nhấn mạnh. Một số hình thức đảo ngữ như sau:

2.1. Đảo ngữ với NO và NOT:

No - N - auxiliary - S - V
Not any - N - auxiliary - S - V

e.g: No money shall I lend you from now on.
Not any money shall I lend you from now on.

2.2. Đảo ngữ với các trạng từ phủ định: Never, Rarely, Seldom, Little, Hardly ever,

Never/ Rarely/ Seldom /Little/ Hardly ever - auxiliary - S - V

- e.g. *Never* in mid-summer does it snow.
Hardly ever does he speak in the public.
Little did I know that he was a compulsive liar.

2.3. Đảo ngữ với ONLY

Only one
Only later Chỉ bằng cách này/-auxiliary kia S - V. (Chỉ bằng cách này/ kia)
Only in this way
Only in that way

Only in this way – auxiliary – S – V or *Only in* - adv of time/ place

e.g. *Only in this way could* the problem be solved.

Only then – auxiliary – S – V or *Only after* - N: Chỉ sau khi làm gì e.g.

Only after all guests had gone home could we relax.

Only by V-ing/ N: Chỉ bằng cách làm gì

e.g. *Only by* practising English everyday can you speak it fluently. *

Only when - clause: Chỉ khi làm gì

e.g. *Only when* her friends told me did I know she had been well-known.

Only when I understand her did I like her.

* *Only with* - N: Chỉ với cái gì

e.g. *Only with* the bank's loan could he buy the car.

* *Only if* - clause

e.g. *Only if* you promise to return the book will he lend it to you.

2.4. Đảo ngữ với các cụm từ có No

* *At no time*: Không bao giờ

e.g. The result of the match was never in doubt

At no time/ Never was the result of the match in doubt

On no condition/ On no account + auxiliary+ S+ N: Dù bất cứ lý do gì cũng không

e.g. *On no account* must this switch be touched.

On no account should you be late for the exam.

Under/ in no circumstances: Dù trong bất cứ hoàn cảnh nào cũng không

e.g. *Under no circumstances* should you lend him the money.

For no reason/ In no way: Không sao có thể

e.g. *In no way* could I agree with you.

* *No longer*: Không còn nữa

- e.g. The money is not to be paid under any circumstances.
Under no circumstances is the money to be paid
On no condition shall we accept their proposal

By no means: Hoàn toàn không

- e.g. *By no means* does he intend to criticize your idea.

2.5. **No sooner...than...:(Vừa mới...thì đã...)**

hay **Hardly/ Barely/ Scarcely...when/ before**

- e.g. *Hardly* had I arrived home *when* the telephone rang. (= I had *hardly* arrived home *when* the telephone rang.)
e.g. *Scarcely* had she finished reading *when* she fell asleep. (= She had *scarcely* finished reading *when* she fell asleep.)
e.g. *Barely* had they won the match *when* the coach had a heart attack. (= They had *barely* won the match *when* the coach had a heart attack.)
e.g. *No sooner* had the company launched its new product *than* it went bankrupt. (= The company had *no sooner* launched its new product *than* it went bankrupt.)
e.g. *No sooner* did they realize that they had made a mistake *than* the company went bankrupt. (= They *no sooner* realized that they had made a mistake *than* the company went bankrupt.)

2.6. Đảo ngữ với **Not only...but...also...** (không những...mà còn.....)

Not only + trợ động từ + S + V + but also + S +

V... hoặc Not only + trợ động từ + S + V but... also.....

- e.g. *Not only* is he good at English *but* he *also* draw very well
Not only does he sing well *but* he *also* plays musical instruments perfectly
Not only does he study well, *but also* he sings well.

2.7. Đảo ngữ với **So**

So - adj/ adv - auxiliary - S - V - that S - V

- e.g. *So* strange was the situation that I couldn't sleep.
So difficult is the test that students need three months to prepare.
So dark is it that I can't write.
So busy am I that I don't have time to look after myself.
So difficult was the exam that few students pass it.
So attractive is she that many boys run after her.

So intelligent is that she can answer all questions in the interview.

2.8. Câu đảo ngữ có chứa “Such” mang cấu trúc như sau:

Such - be - Danh từ - ...

e.g. *Such* is the moment that all greats traverse. (Thật là thời khắc trở ngại lớn lao).
Such is the stuff of dreams. (Thật là một giấc mơ vô nghĩa).

Lưu ý: Thường khi gặp “so great, so much - Noun” thì ta dùng đảo ngữ với “such”

e.g. The problem is so great that everybody is concerned of it.

Such is the problem that everybody is concerned of it. There is so much uncertainty that I will not invest my money.

Such is there uncertainty that I will not invest my money.

2.9. Đảo ngữ với until/ till:

Not until/ till - clause/ adv of time - auxiliary - S -

V e.g. I won't come home till 10 o'clock.

Not until/ till 10 o'clock that I will come home.

It is not *until* 10 o'clock that I will come home. I

didn't know that I had lost my key till I got home.

Not until/ till I got home did I know that I had lost my key.

2.10. Đảo ngữ với No where

No where - Aux - S - V

e.g. *Nowhere* in Vietnam is the scenery as beautiful as that in my country.

Nowhere do I feel as comfortable as I do at home.

Nowhere can you buy the goods as good as those in my country.

2.11. Đảo ngữ với câu điều kiện

Câu điều kiện loại 1: **If clause = should+S+V**

(Lưu ý: Dùng SHOULD để nói về khả năng xảy ra ít chắc chắn hơn)

e.g. Should she come late she will miss the train.

Should he lend me some money I will buy that house.

Câu điều kiện loại 2: **If clause= Were S +to V/ Were+S**

(Lưu ý: Dùng WERE TO để nói về khả năng xảy ra ít chắc chắn hơn)

e.g. If I were you I would work harder.

Were I you, I would work harder.
 If I knew her I would invite her to the party.
 Were I to know her, I would invite her to the party. c.

Câu điều kiện loại 3: **If clause = Had+S+V_{3ED}**

e.g. If my parents hadn't encouraged me, I would have passed the exam.
 Had my parents not encouraged me, I would have passed the exam.

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 35: Give ONE of the derived adverbs of the given words to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

- | | |
|---|-------------|
| 1. She was_____ knowledgeable about the history of China. | EXTREME |
| 2. Many people were buried_____ after the earthquake. | LIVE |
| 3. This type of behaviour is no longer_____ acceptable. | SOCIETY |
| 4. His boss told him off because he had behaved_____. | RESPONSIBLE |
| 5. Tom spoke_____ because he was so excited. | BREATHE |
| 6. This new film is_____ good. | EXCEPT |
| There is a shortage of pure water in the city nowadays. We have to use it_____. | |
| 8. The evening was_____ spent playing and talking. | ENJOY |
| 9. On my salary, we have to live as_____ as possible. | ECONOMY |
| 10. He didn't feel happy because he worked_____. | SUCCESS |
| 11. She seems_____ happy in her new job. | REASON |
| Such a kind man would never_____ hurt his friend's INTEND feelings. | |
| Her bedroom is_____ decorated with her favorite PLEASE souvenirs from her trips. | |
| 14. Explosive are_____ weapons. | DIE |
| The song has_____ been selected for the Sea Games 22, OFFICE Vietnam. | |
| The police should impose heavy fines on those who drive_____. | |
| 17. _____, Charles Darwin didn't intend to publish his book On the Origin of Species. | DANGER |
| 18. John drives very_____. | CARE |
| 19. We always have a bed ready in the spare room in case visitors arrive_____. | ORIGIN |
| 20. Nitric oxide is_____ poisonous. | EXPECT |
| | HIGH |

Exercise 36: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. Everyone can join our club, _____ age and sex.
A. not mention B. in case of C. in place of D. regardless of
 2. He was looking at his parents _____, waiting for recommendations.
A. obey B. obedience C. obedient D. obediently
 3. John hasn't studied hard this year, so, in the last couple of months, he's had to work _____ just to catch up.
A. vaguely B. randomly C. barely D. intensely
- Be sure not to rely too _____ on your mother tongue when you are learning a foreign language.
5. She accepted that she had acted _____ and mistakenly, which broke up her marriage.
A. romantically B. unwisely C. wisely D. attractively
 6. I walked away as calmly as I could. _____, they would have thought I was a thief.
A. In case B. If so C. Or else D. Owing to
 7. _____ will Mr. Thanh be able to regain control of the company.
A. Only with hard work B. Only if he works hardly
C. No matter how does he work hardly D. Not until his work hard
 8. If a boss wants to have a well-qualified staff, he should have to pay his employees _____.
A. appropriate B. appropriately C. appropriation D. appropriating
 9. If you book in advance you will _____ certainly have a better table at our restaurant.
A. mostly B. the most C. most D. almost
 10. _____ speaking, I do not really like my present job.
A. Honest B. Honesty C. Honestly D. Dishonest
- Don't worry. They will do the job as _____ as possible.
11. _____
A. economic B. economical C. economically D. economy
- During the time of economic reforms, the economy has grown _____ with only a few major setbacks.
12. _____
A. constant B. constantly C. constants D. constancy
13. Although _____ satisfied with the contract, the officials hesitatingly agreed to sign it.
A. completed B. complete C. completion D. completely
 14. No one can predict the future exactly. Things may happen _____.
A. expected B. unexpected C. expectedly D. unexpectedly
- Lam, Hang and Chuc were first, second, and third _____ in the school cross-country race.

- A. respectively B. actively C. responsively D. tremendously
16. The computer allows us to work fast and_____.
- A. efficiently B. differently C. variously D. freshly
17. Although the new library service has been very successful, its future is_____ certain.
- A. by all means B. by no means C. at any rate D. by any chance
18. Read the book_____ and you can find the information you need.
- A. care B. careful C. carefulness D. carefully
- **Ha**: "What do you think of your new bookkeeper?"
- **Linh**: "He works _____ his figures never need _____."
- A. such efficiently that / to check C. so efficient that / checking
- B. so efficiently that / to be checked D. such an efficient that / to be checked
20. John_____ across the lawn.
- A. danced wildly B. was wildly danced
- C. was dancing wild D. was being danced wildly

Exercise 37: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. Mrs. Chau has managed the department_____ that she'll be promoted next month.
- A. too successful B. so successfully C. very successful D. too successfully
2. I_____ think that scuba diving is more of danger than adventure.
- A. person B. personal C. personally D. personalize
3. Stress and tiredness often lead to lack of_____.
- A. concentration B. concentrate C. concentrated D. concentrator
4. _____, the athlete broke the world's record with two attempts.
- A. Surprise B. Surprised C. Surprising D. Surprisingly
5. In spite of her abilities, Laura has been_____ overlooked for promotion.
- A. repetitive B. repeatedly C. repetition D. repeat
- When a woman works outside the home and makes money herself, she is_____ independent from her husband.
- A. financially B. politically C. philosophically D. variously
7. _____, there are black holes in space.
- A. Theoretically B. Theorically C. Theorily D. Theoricly
- **Alice**: "How often do you go to the dentist, Anne?"
- Anne**: "_____."
- A. Many times B. Last week C. Twice a year D. Next month
9. She remembered the correct address only_____ she had posted the letter.
- A. since B. after C. following D. afterwards

10. Have you live here _____ life?
 A. all your B. all the C. your all D. the
11. Are there enough apples for us to have one _____?
 A. every B. self C. each D. individually
12. _____ has such a stunning achievement been recorded.
 A. Today B. Recently C. Always D. Seldom
13. The price of fruit has increased recently _____ the price of vegetables has gone down.
 A. whether B. when C. whereas D. otherwise
- Faraday's father worked very _____, but he could _____ feed the family.
 A. hardly/ hard B. hardly/ hardly C. hard/ hard D. hard/ hardly
15. We always have a bed ready in the spare room in case visitors arrive _____.
 A. expectedly B. expected C. unexpectedly D. unexpected
16. When the two women met, they stopped and kissed _____.
 A. each another B. each other C. the other each D. each one
17. The trouble started only _____ the other man came into the room.
 A. until B. when C. and then D. too soon
18. This machine is _____ easy to install and cheap to operate.
 A. comparatively B. comparative C. compare D. comparison
19. Shakespeare was not only a famous playwright _____ a poet _____ well.
 A. but/ as B. and/ too C. but/ so D. also/ as
20. Glaciers are huge ice masses which _____ flow over land.
 A. slowly B. slowest C. slow D. slower

Exercise 38: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

1. The root of the trees allow the water to go into the soil, that gradually releases it to

A B C

flow down rivers.

D

2. With the development of the Internet and the World Wide Web, businessmen do not

A B hardly have as much traveling as they used to.

C

D

3. Despite of the increase in air fares, most people still prefer to travel by plane.

A B C D

4. Nancy said that she went to the supermarket before coming home.

A B C D

5. Even on the most careful prepared trip, problems will sometimes develop.

A B C D

6. Never before have so many people in our country are interested in football.

A B C D

7. The existence of many stars in the sky lead us to suspect that there may be life on
A B C another planet.

D

8. Long ago, I gave up to try to learn swimming as I could not get over my fear of water.

A B C D

9. The only good way to getting achievement in learning English is to practice it as
A B C D frequently as possible.

10. Douglas was driving along the dirt road when his car broke down in the middle of the
road. A B C D

The librarian told to her that the book she was looking for had been taken away the
A B C
previous day.

D

A lot of information on the Internet are not reliable.

A B C D

13. It is sure that human beings will regret to destroy the environment and they obviously
A B C
have to suffer a lot.

D

Efforts to improving the standard of living for human have also resulted in the
A B C D environmental pollution.

15. All the students are looking forward to spend their free time relaxing in the sun this
A B C D
summer.

16. I'd prefer to do it on myself, because other people make me nervous.

A B C D

17. Could you mind telling me the way to the nearest restaurant?

A B C D

18. There was a very interesting news on the radio this morning about the earthquake in
Italy. A B C D

19. Many people have stopped to smoke because they are afraid that it may be bad for
A B C D
their health.

20. After spending two days arguing about where to go on holidays, they decided not going
A B C D anywhere.

Exercise 39: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

1. All the pupils have done the exercises easy.
A B C D

The die of a famous doctor was announced last night.
A B C D

3. The Oxford English Dictionary is well known for including many different meanings of
A B C words and to give real examples.

D
4. It was disappointing that almost of the guests left the wedding too early.
A B C D

5. We occasional go out for dinner but we cook our meals most of the time.
A B C D

6. She was too shame to tell her teacher about the stupid mistakes.
A B C D

7. She failed the driving test because she didn't follow the guidance of the driving instruct.
A B C D 8. To prepare his science works, Faraday often spent
whole days in the laboratory.

A B C D
Supposed that you failed your driving test, would you take it again?
A B C D

10. I hadn't understood his directions. However, I asked him to repeat what he'd said.
A B C D 11. They ride their bicycles to the countryside for please.

A B C D
He was sadness because he couldn't pay his debts.
A B C D

She is no longer young enough to enter a beautiful contest.
A B C D

14. Although there were a lot of opposition initially, many people now accept that infertile
A B C couples have the right to medical help.

D

The representatives joining the festival were from different national.

A B C D

The teacher often courage the student to ask questions.

A B C D

17. In some countries, black people do not have equal with white people.

A B C D

Because his love for teaching, David would continue his teaching career.

A B C D

19. Most greetings cards are folding and have a picture on the front and a message inside.

A B C D 20. Aloha is a Hawaiian word meaning 'love', that can be used to say hello
or goodbye.

A B C D

Exercise 40: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the
following sentences that needs correcting:

1. Many industry developed countries spend much money preventing environmental
pollution. A B C D

When foreigners ask him, he answers in English automatic.

A B C D

Special drugs should be manufacture and dispensed carefully.

A B C D

He often went to work late, consequence he was sacked.

A B C D

5. We should learn all the new word by heart in order to rich our vocabulary.

A B C D

The little boy felt very disappppoint because his parents didn't let him go with them.

A B C D 7. Dr. Swan, that lives next door, is willing to help poor
patients.

A B C D

8. A professor of economy and history at our university developed a new theory of the

A B

relationship between historical events and financial crises.

C D

Although the bad traffic, I managed to arrive at the meeting on time.

A B C D

You had better learning a foreign language before applying for a job.

A B C D

On to hear the telephone ring, I answered it immediately.

A B C D

There's something wrong with my computer. It may need to repair.

A B C D

Many scientists have tried to unlocking the genetic code.

A B C D

14. It is very difficult for us to preventing forest fires during the drought.

A B C D

15. After analyzing the steep rise in profits according to your report, it was convinced that

A B C your analyses were correct.

D

16. In my judgment, I think Hem is the best physicist among the scientists of the region.

A B C D 17. In order no money would be wasted, we had to

account for every penny we spent.

A B C D

18. Many people have found the monotonous buzzing of the vuvuzela in the 2010-World-

A B C Cup matches so annoyed.

D

Hardly did he enter the room when all the lights went out.

A B C D

20. Publishing in the UK, the book has won a number of awards in recent regional book fairs.

A B C D

Exercise 41: Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

Women nowadays no longer depend on their husband.

No longer _____.

He never suspected that she was a witch.

At no time _____.

She had never been so happy before.

Never _____.

Women in developed countries no longer bear many children.

No longer_____.

John didn't celebrate until he received the offer of promotion in writing.

Not until_____.

I have never heard such nonsense!

Never_____.

As soon as the teacher left, the students started shouting again.

Hardly_____.

I have never seen such a mess in my life.

Never_____.

There are more tourists in the city this year than ever before.

Never_____.

Public borrowing has seldom been so high.

Seldom_____.

They had seldom participated in such a fascinating ceremony.

Seldom_____.

They little suspected that the musical was going to be a runaway success.

Little_____.

The embassy staff little realized that Ted was a secret agent.

Little_____.

I had hardly begun to apologize when the door closed.

Hardly_____.

The shop can in no way be held responsible for customers' lost property.

In no way_____.

The couple had no sooner arrived than the priest started the ceremony.

No sooner _____.

Tom only understood the meaning of the comment when he saw his wife's face.

Only_____.

The restaurant cannot accept animals under any circumstances.

Under no circumstances_____.

The artist rarely paid any attention to his agent's advice.

Rarely_____.

The presidential visit attracted such an enormous crowd that all traffic came to a standstill.

So _____.

Exercise 42: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

Her grief was so great that she almost fainted.

So _____.

He got down to writing the letter as soon as he returned from his walk.

No sooner _____.

She had hardly begun to speak before people started interrupting her.

Hardly _____.

I only realized what I had missed when they told me about it later.

Only when _____.

You won't find a more dedicated worker anywhere than Mrs. John.

Nowhere _____.

The outcome of the election was never in doubt.

At no time _____.

He forgot about the gun until he got home.

Not until _____.

The only way you can become a good athlete is by training hard every day.

Only by _____.

I can hardly keep my eyes open.

Hardly _____.

I shut the door, but right after that I realized I'd left the key inside.

No sooner _____.

I was so tired that I don't feel like eating.

So tired _____.

He sings well and plays the guitar well.

Not only _____.

They had such a fierce dog that nobody would visit them.

So _____.

She not only passed the exam but also got a prize.

Not only _____.

The Picasso painting was so expensive that nobody could buy it.

So _____.

16 The problem is so great that everybody is concerned of it.

Such _____.

There is so much uncertainty that I will not invest my money.

Such _____.

He could hardly know what had happened to his car.

Hardly _____.
We will not find this kind of book any where.
Nowhere _____.
They could seldom do anything better than what they had finished.
Seldom _____.

BÀI 5. ARTICLES - MẠO TỪ

I. Indefinite article: a/ an

When counting or measuring time, distance, weight, and other singular countable nouns, etc. we can use “a”/ “an” for the singular (with the meaning one).

Khi đo đếm các đơn vị danh từ đếm được số ít như thời gian, khoảng cách, trọng lượng, và các danh từ đếm được khác, ta sử dụng “a”/ “an” liền trước các danh từ đó với nghĩa là “một”. Cụ thể cách sử dụng “a”/ “an” như sau:

The use of “a”: The indefinite article “a” is place before singular countable nouns beginning with consonant sounds – Mạo từ bất định “a” được đặt trước các danh từ đếm được số ít bắt đầu bằng một phụ âm. Xem các ví dụ sau:

- | | | |
|---------------|--------------|------------------|
| 1. a bat | 11. a hat | 21. a nod |
| 2. a bomb | 12. a house | 22. a nut |
| 3. a car | 13. a hut | 23. a pen |
| 4. a comb | 14. a knife | 24. a pupil |
| 5. a damp | 15. a lamp | 25. a queue |
| 6. a European | 16. a lesson | 26. a question |
| 7. a fan | 17. a litre | 27. a ramp |
| 8. a finger | 18. a man | 28. a seat |
| 9. a gift | 19. a mouse | 29. a university |
| 10. a guy | 20. a mouth | 30. a watch |

The use of “an”: The indefinite article “an” is place before singular countable nouns beginning with vowel sounds – Mạo từ bất định “an” được đặt trước các danh từ đếm được số ít bắt đầu bằng một nguyên âm. Xem các ví dụ sau:

- | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. an ax | 11. an earphone | 21. an ice-cream |
| 2. an ankle | 12. an ease | 22. an icon |
| 3. an anlage | 13. an eel | 23. an idea |
| 4. an aunt | 14. an election | 24. an idiom |
| 5. an American | 15. an eye | 25. an idol |
| 6. an African | 16. an echo | 26. an udder |
| 7. an Australian | 17. an heir | 27. an Ugrian |

- | | | |
|--------------|-------------|------------------|
| 8. an eagle | 18. an hour | 28. an Ukrainian |
| 9. an eaglet | 19. an iamb | 29. an umbrella |
| 10. an ear | 20. an ibex | 30. an unaptness |

II. Definite article: The

“the” is the same form for singular and plural and for all genders – “the” được sử dụng với tất cả các loại danh từ - số ít, số nhiều, đếm được, và không đếm được - theo các qui tắc dưới đây:

Use “the”: “the” được sử dụng khi:

1.1. When the object or group of objects is unique or considered to be unique – Khi vật thể hoặc nhóm vật thể là duy nhất hay được coi là duy nhất:

e.g. *the* earth *the* sun *the* sky *the* equator *the* stars

1.2. Before a noun which has become definite as a result of being mentioned the second time – Đứng trước các danh từ được xác định khi nó được lặp lại:

e.g. I live in a small house. *The* house is really nice.

He bought a car. *The* car was made in Japan.

1.3. Before a noun made definite by the addition of a phrase or clause – Đứng trước các danh từ được làm cho xác định bởi các cụm từ hoặc mệnh đề theo sau:

e.g. *the* girl in blue *the* man with the banner
the man that I adored *the* park where we first met

1.4. Before a noun which by reason of locality can represent one particular thing – Đứng trước các danh từ được xác định khi nó mang tính địa phương: e.g. Peter is in the garage. (the garage is in Peter’s house)

Please give me the form so I can help you to fill in. (it’s your form)

1.5. Before superlatives and other words like *first*, *second*, *last*, *only*, *etc.* used as adjectives or pronouns – Đứng trước các hình thức so sánh hơn nhất, các từ sau *first*, *second*, *last*, *only*, *etc* khi dùng như tính từ hay đại từ. Chẳng hạn:

e.g. This is *the first* time I have ever been to London.

Job is *the only* thing I care for now.

She is always *the first* to come and *the last* to leave.

1.6. Before the well-known places – Đứng trước các địa danh nổi tiếng có tính toàn cầu như:

e.g. <i>the</i> Nile	<i>the</i> Thames	<i>the</i> Amazon
<i>the</i> Alp	<i>the</i> Andes	<i>the</i> Everest
<i>the</i> Atlantic	<i>the</i> Indian	<i>the</i> Pacific
<i>the</i> Eiffel	<i>the</i> Statue of Liberty	<i>the</i> Twin Towers

1.7. Before some countries’ names – Trước tên một số quốc gia như:

-
- e.g. *the* Union of Arabic Emirates (the U.A.E)
the United States (the U.S)
the Philippines
the United Kingdom
the former Union of Soviet Socialist Republic (the U.S.S.R)

1.8. Before the political system of almost all countries – Đặt trước tên quốc gia có thể chế chính trị như:

- e.g. *the* Socialist Republic of Vietnam (the S.R.V)
the People Republic of China (the P.R.C)
the People Democratic of Laos (the P.D.L)
the People Democratic of North Korea (the P.D.K)
the Republic of South Korea (the S.K)
the Republic of France (the S.K)
the Kingdom of Thailand
the Kingdom of Belgium
the Kingdom of Sweden
the Kingdom of Netherland

1.9. Before adjectives to make pronouns – Đặt trước tính từ tạo thành các đại từ như:

- e.g. *The* rich are not always happy.
The poor need help from all communities.

1.10. Before proper nouns – Đặt trước danh từ riêng chỉ các dòng họ:

- e.g. *The* Jones went shopping on Sundays.
The Blacks are on your holiday in Mexico.

1.11. Before a noun of nationality to imply a nation – Đặt trước danh từ chỉ quốc tịch để nói đến một dân tộc như:

- e.g. *The* English are used to driving on the left.
The French are considered to be the most romantic.
The Vietnamese are among the most industrious.

Omission of “the”: “the” được sử dụng khi:

- 2.1. Before names of places except the above mentioned.
- 2.2. Before abstract nouns except when they are used to make sense.
- 2.3. Nouns with possessive or demonstrative adjectives.
- 2.4. before nouns of games and parts of body.

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 43. *In the following sentences supply the articles (a, an, or the) if they are necessary. If no article is needed, leave the space blank (∅).*

His father bought him _____ bicycle that he had wanted for his birthday.
_____ Statue of Liberty was a gift of friendship from France to _____ United States.
Michael is studying _____ English and _____ math this semester.
Please give me _____ cup of _____ coffee with _____ cream and _____ sugar.
_____ big books on _____ table are for my history class.
When you go to _____ store, please buy _____ bottle of _____ chocolate milk
and _____ dozen oranges.
John and Mary went to _____ school yesterday and then studied in _____ library
before returning home.
There are only _____ few seats left for _____ tonight's musical at _____ university.
_____ Lake Erie is one of _____ five Great Lakes in _____ North America.
What did you eat for _____ breakfast this morning?
Bob played _____ basketball and _____ baseball at _____ Boy's Club this year.
Rachel plays _____ violin and her sister plays _____ guitar.
Mike attended _____ Princeton University.
Henry has been admitted to _____ School of Medicine at _____ Midwestern university.
Brian can't go to _____ movies tonight because he has to write _____ essay.

Exercise 44. *In the following sentences supply the articles (a, an, or the) if they are necessary. If no article is needed, leave the space blank (∅).*

Last night there was _____ singing outside my house.
_____ chair which you are sitting in is broken.
_____ Florida State University is smaller than _____ University of Florida.
Scientists sent _____ expedition to _____ Mars during _____ 1990s.
Mai's grandmother is in _____ hospital, so we went to visit her _____ last night.
I'm on night duty. When you go to _____ bed, I go to _____ work.
Sorry, I can't find the number. I remember writing it on _____ back of an envelope.
_____ gold is perhaps _____ most highly treasured metal.
_____ Mekong River is _____ longest river in _____ Vietnam.
_____ winter is usually cold, but _____ winter of this year is warm.
_____ money you gave me is not enough to buy _____ bicycle.
Look at _____ sun. It is rising.
We watch television after _____ dinner.
Mr. Brown bought _____ new car _____ last week.
He usually travels to _____ Philadelphia by _____ train.

Exercise 45. In the following sentences supply the articles (a, an, or the) if they are necessary. If no article is needed, leave the space blank (∅).

Miss White speaks _____ Chinese very well although she is from _____ UK.

_____ swimming is _____ good sport.

Please open _____ door.

_____ United States is _____ world's biggest consumer of energy.

Smith likes to play _____ volleyball, but he is not _____ good player.

My daughter is learning to play _____ violin at _____ school.

I told my mother we would be _____ home in _____ hour or so.

You can see _____ moon in _____ sky at _____ night.

_____ her children play in _____ street all day.

_____ blue is _____ color I like.

_____ January is _____ first month of the year.

You frequently see this kind of violence on _____ television.

_____ AIDS is _____ incurable disease.

Not everyone believes that _____ technology has improved _____ quality of people's lives.

Would you show me _____ shortest way to _____ airport?

Exercise 46: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

It is estimated that about 640 women remain illiterate in _____ world, mostly in developing countries.

A. a B. an C. the D. ∅

2. Did you read _____ book I lent you _____ last week.

A. a/ the B. the/ the C. the/ ∅ D. ∅/ ∅

3. I went by _____ train to _____ West of England.

A. ∅/ a B. ∅/ the C. ∅/ ∅ D. the/ the

4. We visited Canada and _____ United States.

A. an B. a C. ∅ D. the

5. I fell in _____ love with him because of his kind nature.

A. a B. the C. ∅ D. an

6. _____ schooling is compulsory in Australia between _____ ages of six and seventeen.

A. The/ ∅ B. A/ an C. ∅/ the D. The/ an

7. In _____ most social situations, _____ informality is appreciated.

A. ∅/ ∅ B. the / an C. a / the D. the/ a

_____ love is _____ very strong feeling of affection towards someone who you are romantically attracted to.

- A. The/ the B. The/ ∅ C. A/ the D. ∅/ a
9. London is _____ of England.
A. a capital B. capital C. one capital D. the capital
10. Do you know exactly _____ number of Siberian tigers in China?
A. a B. an C. the D. ∅
11. It is estimated that only 1,000 pandas remain in _____ wild.
A. a B. an C. the D. ∅
12. _____ friend in need is _____ friend indeed.
A. The/ the B. A/ a C. ∅/ ∅ D. ∅/ the
13. What is your _____ biggest dream in _____ your life?
A. ∅/ ∅ B. the/ a C. the/ the D. a/ the
14. Did you have _____ good time at the party last night?
A. a B. an C. the D. ∅
15. The local authorities are conducting _____ campaign to help _____ disabled.
A. a/ the B. the/ ∅ C. ∅/ ∅ D. ∅/ the
16. We should do something immediately to conserve _____ nature
A. a B. an C. the D. ∅
- Everyone knows what is happening to _____ earth but we just do not know how to stop it.
A. a B. an C. the D. ∅
18. Where can people play _____ water polo?
A. a B. an C. the D. ∅
19. No _____ water polo player except _____ goalie can hold the ball with both hands.
A. a/ the B. the/ ∅ C. the/ a D. ∅/ the
20. As for me, I consider reading _____ important part of _____ life.
A. an/ ∅ B. the/ a C. ∅/ the D. an/ a

Exercise 47: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. Anne says that she reads about half _____ hour a day, at least.
A. a B. an C. the D. ∅
- Different people like specific types of books, and some people just like _____ literature in general.
A. a B. an C. the D. ∅
- Have you ever read _____ "Oliver Twist", _____ interesting novel written by Charles Dickens?
A. the/ the B. ∅/ an C. ∅/ ∅ D. an/ the

4. I like _____ books better than _____ films.
A. Ø/ Ø B. the/ the C. Ø/ the D. the/ Ø

5. How many players are there in _____ water polo team?
A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

6. _____ swimming is considered to be good way of losing weight.
A. Ø/ a B. The/ a C. A/ the D. The/ the

7. Water polo is played in _____ pool 1.8 meters deep.
A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

8. The goalie tried to catch _____ ball, but he failed.
A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Internationally, 189 countries have signed _____ accord agreeing to create Biodiversity Action Plans to protect endangered and other threatened species.
A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Known worldwide by its panda logo, World Wildlife Fund (WWF) is dedicated to protecting _____ world's wildlife and the rich biological diversity that we all need to survive.
A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

WWF is _____ leading privately supported international conservation organization in the world, and has sponsored more than 2,000 projects in 116 countries.
A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Species become extinct or endangered for _____ number of reasons, but _____ primary cause is the destruction of habitat by human activities.
A. Ø/ a B. a/ the C. the/ a D. Ø/ Ø

Since _____ 1600s, worldwide overexploitation of animals for _____ food and other products has caused numerous species to become extinct or endangered.
A. the/ a B. the/ Ø C. Ø/ the D. the/ the

By 2015, it will be widely accepted that schools and pre-schools have _____ extremely important role to play in future of our world.
A. an/ a B. an/ the C. the/ the D. Ø/ Ø

On _____ Internet and with cable television we can select information from _____ wide variety of sources.
A. the/ a B. an/ the C. the/ Ø D. Ø/ the

There is one _____ thing we can be sure _____ energy will be more challenging and more important in the future.
A. the/ Ø B. the/ an C. a/ the D. Ø/ Ø

17. _____ Europe and Asia are coming to rely more and more on _____ nuclear generation.
A. An/ a B. Ø/ Ø C. The/ the D. The/ a

18. He usually travels to _____ Philadelphia by _____ train.

- A. Ø/ Ø B. the/ a C. the/ the D. Ø/ a
19. You frequently see this kind of violence on_____ television.
A. a B. an C. the D. Ø
20. How do we know what_____ universe is supposed to look like?
A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Exercise 48: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. _____ Sahara of _____ Africa is the world's largest desert.
A. Ø/ the B. The/ Ø C. A/ an D. The/ an

Deserts can be defined as areas that receive_____ average annual precipitation of less than 250 mm.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø
3. The Simpson Desert is in_____ north of_____ Lake Eyre.

- A. Ø/ Ø B. the/ the C. a/ the D. the/ Ø

Cold deserts can be covered in_____ snow or ice and frozen water is unavailable to plant life.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø 5. _____ sand covers only about 20 percent of Earth's deserts.

- A. A B. An C. The D. Ø

Deserts have_____ reputation for supporting very little life, but in_____ reality deserts often have high biodiversity.

- A. a/ Ø B. the/ the C. a/ the D. the/ a

Peter enjoys_____ science fictions, _____ type of book based on imagined scientific discoveries in the future.

- A. Ø/ Ø B. the/ Ø C. Ø/ a D. the/ the

8. Different people never read a book in_____ same way.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Companies now can exploit the opportunities presented by_____ integrated market of increasingly prosperous consumers in the region.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Among_____ greatest challenges are the integration of market diversity and the transitional economies of its member countries.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Integrating with_____ world's economy, we find ourselves facing important opportunities and challenges.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

To build on the field of political and security cooperation, _____ leaders have agreed to establish the Security Community.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

13. On July 28, 1995, Vietnam became _____ seventh member of ASEAN.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

14. This country has _____ population of over 50 million.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

All countries remain ready to further cooperation with _____ United Nations in the ongoing humanitarian efforts for the victims of catastrophe.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

_____ UN leaders appreciate the support, cooperation and leadership that ASEAN has shown in helping the victims of disasters.

- A. A B. An C. The D. Ø

The organization hosts cultural activities in _____ attempt to further integrate the region.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

In earlier times when the family depended on the hunter for food, woman's role, because she was gatherer, was secondary.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Education is recognized as _____ essential need for achieving equality in most walks of life.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

It is estimated that about 640 women remain illiterate in _____ world, mostly in developing countries.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø
-

BÀI 6. PREPOSITIONS - GIỚI TỪ

I. Introductions: Learners of English usually find it hard to remember and confidently use prepositions as they have two main following problems to solve when dealing with prepositions:

whether in any construction a preposition is required or not

which preposition to use when one is required

Students often have trouble because a certain construction in their mother tongue requires a preposition, whereas a similar one in English does not.

in the past/ future
during the war for
a week

on September 5th, 2015

by noon
before the deadline
after midnight since
last Tuesday until
1980

In English, prepositions are words normally placed before nouns or pronouns or gerunds, and are used to form adverbial phrases of time, place, reason, result, concession, condition, etc.

Người học tiếng Anh thường gặp khó khăn để ghi nhớ và sử dụng thành thạo các giới từ trong tiếng Anh vì họ thường xuyên phải phân vân; ở trường hợp nào thì một giới từ được đòi hỏi, trong một trường hợp cần giới từ thì ta phải dùng giới từ cụ thể nào. Người học gặp rắc rối khi dùng giới từ cũng là bởi có sự khác biệt giữa ngôn ngữ bản xứ của họ với tiếng Anh trong các trường hợp sử dụng giới từ. Trong tiếng Anh, giới từ là những từ đi trước các danh từ, đại từ, danh động từ, và dùng để cấu tạo các cụm trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn, nguyên nhân, kết quả, sự nhượng bộ, điều kiện,...

Trên thực tế, trong tiếng Anh, chức năng của các giới từ thay đổi phụ thuộc vào ngữ cảnh của lời nói, một giới từ sẽ có nhiều nghĩa khác nhau, chức năng khác nhau khi được đặt trong các cụm từ khác nhau. Trong cuốn tài liệu này giới từ chỉ được giới thiệu với mục đích ôn tập cho kì thi THPT Quốc Gia.

The use of some prepositions: Cách sử dụng của một số giới từ

Prepositions of time: Giới từ chỉ thời gian

at: dùng cho các thời điểm trong ngày, một kì nghỉ

e.g. at five at eleven at night
 at noon at Christmas at dawn

in/ during/ for: dùng cho khoảng thời gian

e.g. in the morning/ afternoon/ evening
 during the 19th century
 for ten days

on: dùng cho các ngày, thứ

e.g. on Sunday on Monday night

* **by/ before/ after/ since/ until:** dùng như

sau e.g. by this time tomorrow
 before 9.00 after
 work since
 dawn until
 lunch-time

Prepositions of place and movement: Giới từ chỉ nơi chốn và sự vận động

* **in:** dùng cho các địa điểm

e.g. The radio is in the living-room. He lives in the center of the city.

on: dùng để chỉ ở trên bề mặt
e.g. The toys are on the floor. The map is on the wall.

at: dùng để chỉ ở gần hay hiện diện ở đâu đó
e.g. She is at the station now. Lan is at the hairdresser's.

into: dùng cho sự hướng vào trong
e.g. He went into the living-room. He walked into the theatre.

onto: dùng cho sự hướng lên trên bề mặt
e.g. The cat jumped onto the table.

out of: dùng cho sự hướng ra ngoài
e.g. The man jumped out of the car.

off: dùng chỉ sự hướng ra ngoài
e.g. He knocked the glass off the table

above/ over: dùng chỉ sự hướng lên trên
e.g. The ceiling is above our heads.
The helicopter was flying over the buildings.

below/ under: dùng chỉ sự hướng xuống dưới
e.g. Do the tasks below the passage.
She hid her hat under the table.

through: qua, suốt, xuyên suốt
e.g. Through the investigation, the police came to a conclusion.
We kept in touch through time.

along: dọc theo
e.g. The lovers walked along the river.
They went along the street to find my flat.

* **beside/ by/ next to/ near:** gần
e.g. He sat beside the dustbin. They live next to the store.
She sat by the window. Ha lived near the church.

* **between:** giữa
e.g. The T.V set was between the table and the bed.

* **opposite:** đối diện
e.g. Lan's house is opposite the bank.
The bank is opposite the bookstore.

in front of: đằng trước của
e.g. The theatre was in front of the bank.
The stadium is in front of the bookstore.

* **to/ towards:** hướng về phía

e.g. To the left of the house, there's a well.
To the right of the house, there's a garage.
We walked towards the end of the road.

Prepositions that go with verbs, nouns, and adjectives: Giới từ đi với động từ, danh từ, tính từ. Phần kiến thức này sẽ được trình bày kĩ ở bài Gerunds (danh động từ).

* Verbs – prepositions: Giới từ đi với động từ

e.g. He looked at his nephew.
She talked to a stranger.
He insisted on going out.

* Nouns – prepositions: Giới từ đi với danh từ

e.g. He put a lot into his bank account.
She had a choice of studying abroad.
He had difficulty in persuading his fiancé.

Adjectives – prepositions: Giới từ đi với tính từ

e.g. He was surprised at what I said to him.
She was afraid of talking with a stranger.
He was keen on playing video games.

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 49: *In the following sentences, supply the suitable preposition to each of the gaps.*

We give each other presents _____ Christmas.

Don't sit _____ the floor.

I'm going away _____ the end of January.

I met Tom _____ the street yesterday.

They sent me a cheque _____ \$ 50.

There has been some decrease _____ military spending this year.

Nobody knows what the cause _____ the explosion was.

Do you think we'll find a solution _____ this problem?

Have you ever read any books _____ Mark Twain?

It's unreasonable _____ you to expect her to love you at first sight.

They were furious _____ me _____ not inviting them to the party.

Were you disappointed _____ your examination results?

Everybody was shocked _____ the news.

She is scared _____ going out alone.

I'm not ashamed _____ what I did.

Exercise 50: *In the following sentences, supply the suitable preposition to each of the gaps.*

My sister won't have dinner _____ 11.30 p.m.

She is engaged _____ an American.

Who was responsible _____ all the noise last night?

Your writing is similar _____ mine.

Ann wasn't keen _____ going out in the rain.

The city centre was crowded _____ tourists.

I always try my best to get along _____ other officers.

Why don't you apply _____ a position in that company?

He is very selfish. He doesn't care _____ other people.

Don't look out of the window. Concentrate _____ your work!

He lost control of the car and crashed _____ a wall.

He was the sort of person that you could depend _____.

Did you hear _____ the fight in the club on Saturday night?

She's very old. She needs someone to look _____ her.

He often dreams _____ travelling to America.

Exercise 51: *In the following sentences, supply the suitable preposition to each of the gaps.*

I didn't have enough money to pay _____ the meal.

He has suffered _____ lung cancer for ages.

He shouted _____ from the other side of the street.

The police are searching _____ the escaped prisoner.

That's a good idea. Why didn't I think _____ that?

How much did you have to pay _____ the meal?

Do you always go _____ school _____ foot?

My office is next _____ newsagent so I buy magazines almost every day.

Children don't want to be _____ door, they want to stay in to watch T.V.

_____ no doubt, whales are the biggest mammal on Earth.

The firefighters have been _____ strike for more than three days.

When I saw him, I was _____ a group of friends _____ the corner of the club.

I have got an appointment _____ the optician's.

In the end, they fell _____ love and lived happily ever after.

During the show, a crazy fan jumped _____ the stage and kissed the singer.

Exercise 52: *Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.*

1. Many people are not interested _____ reading books as much as seeing films.

A. in B. with C. for D. about
We spend more time watching TV than reading books. But _____ fact, TV has not kill reading.

A. for B. upon C. at D. in
3. Books are a wonderful source _____ knowledge and pleasure.

A. with B. of C. in D. about
Although he hadn't spoken French for many years, he picked it _____ again after a few weeks.

A. over B. on C. through D. up
5. _____ the start of each period, both teams line up on their own goal line.

A. In B. For C. From D. At
6. Helen is very excited _____ going to work in Germany.

A. about B. for C. with D. to
7. A water polo ball is constructed of waterproof material to allow it to float _____ the water.

A. upon B. over C. above D. on
8. There are six field player positions and a goalkeeper _____ each team.

A. in B. with C. from D. for
9. Pay more attention _____ picture and you can find out who is the robber.

A. to B. for C. at D. on
10. She looked _____ me, smiling happily and confidently.

A. on B. over C. forward to D. at
We have to apply effective measures to save many plant and animal species _____ extinction.

A. from B. in C. for D. on
12. They said that the blue cheese was very tasty, but the smell put me _____.

A. of B. in C. to D. off
Over-exploitation for food, pets, and medicine, pollution, and disease are recognized _____ a serious threat _____ extinction.

A. as/ of B. to/ for C. over/ with D. upon/ at
14. _____ entering the hall, he found everyone waiting for him.

A. With B. On C. At D. During
15. Clearing forests for timber has resulted _____ the loss of biodiversity.

A. with B. at C. in D. for
16. Once you have started something, you ought to see it _____ to the end.

A. to B. through C. for D. in
17. Which subject is this book _____?

A. for B. on C. of D. up

-
18. We are _____ no obligation to change goods which were not purchased here.
A. to B. with C. at D. under
19. Francis Bacon lived _____ about the same time as Shakespeare.
A. at B. for C. in D. over
20. Nothing _____ the ordinary ever happens here.
A. about B. out of C. from D. within

Exercise 53: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. People enjoy a book _____ different ways.
A. on B. with C. upon D. in
2. _____ the time you get to the theater, the play will have finished
A. Until B. In C. By D. on
- The meeting has been brought _____ to Monday due to the seriousness of the situation.
A. on B. out C. down D. forward
4. It is important _____ students to read as many books as possible.
A. up B. about C. to D. for
- She is traveling to Germany tomorrow on her first working trip and she is very excited _____ it.
A. for B. against C. about D. with
6. Do you feel I was too friendly _____ the applicants.
A. with B. at C. on D. across
7. Who does the book belong _____?
A. for B. to C. on D. through
8. I finished my homework a few days ahead _____ the deadline.
A. of B. to C. by D. at
9. He picked _____ the book and turned page after page.
A. up B. on C. away D. in
10. Some people never set _____ to become rich and famous.
A. up B. out C. off D. across
11. _____ defense, the players work to regain possession of the ball and prevent a goal.
A. About B. Over C. Without D. On
- Players can move the ball by throwing it _____ a teammate or swimming while pushing the ball in front of them.
A. for B. into C. to D. from
13. It was really kind _____ you to help those poor people.

-
- A. by B. of C. at D. to
14. Shots usually succeed when the goalie is out_____ position.
A. into B. for C. of D. off
15. That afternoon Joe Cole was the most popular player_____ the field.
A. on B. with C. among D. for
16. If you have ever watched television, you have seen plenty_____ drug ads.
A. with B. of C. for D. about
17. He turned_____ the offer of a new job and stayed with his present employer.
A. up B. down C. out D. off
18. The space shuttle crashed and went_____ in flames.
A. of B. for C. over D. off
19. Hoi An is famous_____ its old streets.
A. for B. of C. to D. about
20. Elevators in tall building make the top floors accessible_____ everybody.
A. to B. with C. about D. at

Exercise 54: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. The context_____ which you learn something can affect how well you remember it.
A. of B. for C. to D. in
2. While I am waiting_____ my bus, I often listen_____ music.
A. on/ at B. for/ to C. toward/ about D. upon/ in
3. A very nice painting is hung_____ the wall in our classroom.
A. on B. over C. at D. above
4. Those space-crafts are used_____ taking photographs_____ space.
A. about/ through B. for/ in C. of/ at D. in/ off
5. I believe that judges should be independent _____ the government.
A. to B. from C. with D. on
6. Will you take care _____ my little dog when I am _____ business?
A. through/ away B. about/ at C. for/ over D. of/ on

You can learn to move information from your short-term memory_____ your long-term memory.

- A. by B. with C. in D. to
8. According_____ Bill, there's something wrong_____ my computer.
A. after/ for B. on/ about C. to/ with D. upon/ at
9. - **Jenny:** "John got married again." - **Tommy:** "Really? Who_____?"
A. with B. at C. to D. about
-

-
10. He depends_____ his sister_____ assistance.
A. to/ from B. from/ in C. on/ for D. at/ with
11. What kind of sport one chooses to play mostly depends_____ his preference and health.
A. with B. for C. in D. on
12. Too many factories dispose_____ their waste by pumping it into rivers and the sea.
A. out B. of C. away D. off
13. Most referees often wears_____ black.
A. in B. for C. with D. on
14. In water polo game, only the goalie can hold the ball_____ two hands.
A. at B. in C. with D. from
15. Don't count your chickens_____ they are hatched."
A. after B. since C. while D. before
- Probability of extinction depends_____ both the population size and fine details of the population demography.
A. on B. in C. from D. for
17. Many modern medicines are derived_____ plants and animals.
A. on B. for C. from D. in
18. Traveling to Paris_____ air is quicker than driving.
A. by B. on C. over D. through
- 15,589 species (7,266 animal species and 8,323 plant species) are now considered _____ risk_____ extinction.
A. at / of B. on / in C. for / with D. in / at
- Contamination and global warming have driven many species of animals and plants _____ the threat of extinction.
A. for B. to C. with D. on

Exercise 55: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. Drivers should slow_____ on this road because it is slippery after rains.
A. on B. down C. up D. to
2. Pollution has bad effect_____ our life.
A. of B. to C. with D. on
3. Before you light_____ a cigarette, remember to ask for permission.
A. up B. down C. on D. off
4. It's very kind_____ you to offer us a lovely dinner.
A. of B. from C. for D. to
5. The woman was pale and weak because_____ the lack_____ fresh air.

- A. for/ on B. on/ for C. of/ of D. of/ for
6. Today's weather will be a continuation_____ yesterday.
- A. on B. at C. of D. in
7. I'm not good_____ English. I think I should spend more time_____ it.
- A. in/ at B. at/ on C. at/ in D. on/ at
- An umbrella is what I need now, it's raining. I'll give it_____ tomorrow.
- A. up B. away C. back D. over
9. I couldn't find any place to go_____ holiday.
- A. at B. for C. up D. on
- 10 I'm fed_____ doing the same work every day.
- A. out of B. forward to C. on to D. up with
11. Have you ever thought_____ giving up smoking?
- A. over B. of C. on D. at
- If you don't know the meaning of the word, you should look it_____ in the dictionary.
- A. out B. in C. up D. on
13. She has tried_____ several shoes but she can't find suitable ones.
- A. at B. in C. out D. on
14. The party begins at 7 o'clock and I'll pick you_____ at 6:30.
- A. on B. up C. away D. of
15. I come_____ an ancient city, sometimes referred_____ as the Athens of the North.
- A. on/ as B. up/ to C. over/ to D. from/ to
16. The house is_____ fire. Please call_____ help!
- A. at/ to B. for/ at C. on/ for D. up/ for
17. An apple stand_____ the New York State.
- A. for B. on C. up D. at
18. She keeps_____ complaining_____ the weather.
- A. in/ of B. on/ about C. out/ about D. on/ in
- Some pessimistic persons think that the world's resources will run_____ in some day.
- A. off B. of C. out D. on
20. Let's get acquainted_____ the newcomer.
- A. to B. of C. with D. about

Exercise 56: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. We don't have time to think it_____.
- A. on B. up C. out D. over

-
2. I object_____ being kept waiting. Why can't you be_____ time?
A. at/ in B. for/ in C. to/ on D. at/ on
- You aren't aware_____ the time, are you? You are always late_____ work.
A. of/ for B. for/ of C. on/ at D. on/ for
4. If someone knocks_____ the door_____ night, don't open it.
A. on/ at B. at/ at C. up/ in D. at/ on
5. Everything is available_____ the operation.
A. of B. on C. from D. for
6. He is very keen_____ English, but he is not good_____ listening.
A. at/ on B. on/ at C. at/ at D. to/ of
7. Your hairstyle is quite similar_____ me.
A. from B. with C. of D. to
8. Nguyen Du devoted all his lifetime_____ writing.
A. for B. to C. in D. from
9. I bought a coat_____ my mother_____ the supermarket.
A. from/ for B. for/ at C. for/ from D. for/ in
10. She was very surprised_____ the grade she received.
A. at B. on C. of D. about
11. We might need more food, depending_____ how many people turn up.
A. for B. on C. at D. with
- Jane doesn't spend much money_____ clothes.
A. over B. about C. at D. on
13. A sign warned motorists_____ dangers.
A. of B. for C. about D. A and C
14. They translated the letter_____ French.
A. for B. with C. into D. about
- Since she graduated, Anne has no longer been dependent_____ her parents for financial support.
A. to B. on C. upon D. B and C
16. Catherine became accustomed_____ spicy foods when she was traveling.
A. to B. on C. for D. about
17. Table salt is composed_____ two elements, sodium and chlorine.
A. to B. around C. of D. for
18. Washington state is famous_____ its apples.
A. in B. for C. of D. with
19. People who are afraid_____ heights are called acrophobias.
A. of B. on C. in D. to
-

-
20. Water is essential _____ all life.
A. on B. for C. in D. with
-

BÀI 7. SYNONYMS & ANTONYMS TỪ ĐỒNG NGHĨA TRÁI NGHĨA

Exercise 57. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is **CLOSEST** in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

1. The film is not worth seeing. The plot is too **dull**.

- A. simple B. complicated C. boring D. slow

In rural Midwestern towns of the USA, the decisions that affect most residents are made at general **assemblies** in schools and churches.

- A. concerts B. public libraries C. gatherings D. prayer services

Helen Keller, blind and deaf from an early age, developed her sense of smell so finely that she could **identify** friends by their personal odors.

- A. classify B. communicate with C. describe D. recognize

4. The life boat **rescued** the crew of the sinking ship.

- A. picked up B. provided food for C. saved the life of D. looked for

5. The most important thing is to keep yourself **occupied**.

- A. busy B. comfortable C. free D. relaxed

6. He **didn't bat an eye** when he realized he failed the exam again.

- A. didn't want to see B. didn't show surprise
C. wasn't happy D. didn't care

The notice should be put in the most **conspicuous** place so that all the students can be well-informed.

- A. easily seen B. beautiful C. popular D. suspicious

8. If the headmaster were here, he would sign your papers **immediately**.

- A. right ahead B. currently C. formerly D. right away

Living in the central Australian desert has its problems, of which **obtaining** water is not the least.

- A. controlling B. storing C. purifying D. getting

10. Thirty minutes after the accident, the captain still refused to **abandon** the burning ship.

- A. sail B. get on C. leave D. come to

11. It will be fine tomorrow. But if it should rain tomorrow, the match will be **postponed**.

- A. taken off B. sold off C. put off D. turned off

Many scientists agree that global warming poses great **threats** to all species on Earth.

- A. annoyance B. risks C. irritations D. fears

The works of such men as the English philosophers John Locke and Thomas Hobbes helped **pave the way for** academic freedom in the modern sense.

- A. initiate B. lighten C. terminate D. prevent

14. E-cash cards are the main means of all transactions in a **cashless** society.

- A. cash-free B. cash-starved C. cash-strapped D. cash-in-hand

15. For a long term period, Lizzie Magie has been battling against the **vicissitudes** of life.

- A. mutability B. caprice C. ups and downs D. determination

The aim of University education is to **inure** students to hardship, trials and adverse situations in life.

- A. accustom B. obliterate C. shun D. estrange.

17. Those girls are totally unaware that they are being **made use of** by this organization.

- A. taken for granted B. spoken ill of
C. made fun of D. taken advantage of

18. In life, Ray always **gives me a hand with** repairing the broken things in my house.

- A. assists me by B. asks me to help with
C. pleases me by D. serves me with

19. Human beings are constantly **contaminating** natural habitats of the wildlife.

- A. polluting B. promoting C. destroying D. protecting

The rains of 1993 causing the Missouri river to overflow **resulted in** one of the worst floods of the 20th century.

- A. stopped B. lessened C. caused D. overcame

Exercise 58. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is **CLOSEST** in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

I'm becoming increasingly **absent-minded**. Last week, I locked myself out of my house twice.

- A. being considerate of things B. remembering to do right things
C. forgetful of one's past D. often forgetting things

2. For calculating a calendar, it is **convenient** to use the tropical solar year.

- A. practical B. critical C. necessary D. appropriate

3. The medical community continues to **make progress** in the fight against cancer.

- A. speed B. expect more C. do better D. treat better

4. As all of us cannot be **available** today, let's put off the discussion till later.

- A. present for the event B. scheduled for the event
C. arranged for the event D. appointed for the event

As the enemy forces were so **overwhelming**, our troops had to retreat to a safer position.

-
- A. powerful B. dreadful C. overflowing D. outgrowing

We oppose this war, as we would do any other war which created an environmental **catastrophe**.

- A. pollution B. disaster C. convention D. epidemic

7. Relaxation therapy teaches one not to **fret over** small problems.

- A. get involved in B. worry about C. look for D. get angry about

The 1923 earthquake in Japan killed about 200,000 people and left countless **wounded** and homeless.

- A. poor B. imprisoned C. suffered D. injured

9. The bomb **exploded** in the garage; fortunately no one hurt.

- A. put on B. went off C. got out D. kept up

10. The number of insect species **is greater than** that of all other animal species.

- A. equals B. augments C. exceeds D. predicts

11. They had to **delay** their trip because of the bad weather.

- A. get through B. put off C. keep up with D. go over

12. The organization was **established** in 1950 in the USA.

- A. come around B. set up C. made out D. put on

13. It took me a very long time to **recover from** the shock of her death.

- A. turn off B. take on C. get over D. keep up with

Many young children are spending large amounts of time watching the TV without being aware of its **detriment** to their school work.

- A. harm B. advantage C. support D. benefit

To prepare for your job interview, you should **jot** down your qualifications and experience as well as some important information about yourself.

- A. draw B. place C. put D. write

16. The girls were deeply **affected** by that sentimental movie.

- A. influenced B. sad C. touched D. annoyed

Helen Keller, blind and deaf from an early age, developed her sense of smell so finely that she could **identify** friends by their personal odors.

- A. classify B. communicate with
C. describe D. recognize

18. The whole audience objected to their **foul** play during the football match.

- A. clumsy B. dependent C. imperfect D. unfair

There are many tours to record them all as a result I will list ones that must appeal more to **adventurous** travelers.

- A. ready for danger B. willing to take risks
-

C. satisfied with risks

D. reluctant to be endangered

20. You can withdraw money from the account at any time without **penalty**.

A. loss

B. charge

C. punishment

D. offense

Exercise 59. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

1. **Be careful!** The tree is going to fall.

A. Look out

B. Look up

C. Look on

D. Look after

2. He did not particularly want to **play** any competitive sport.

A. use up

B. do with

C. take up

D. go on

3. I just want to stay at home and watch TV and **take it easy**.

A. sleep

B. sit down

C. eat

D. relax

4. Some experts believe that the **functions** of the print media will be replaced by audio or visual media.

A. services

B. influences

C. roles

D. popularity

5. In the end her neighbour decided to **speak his mind**.

A. say exactly what he thought

B. say a few words

C. have a chat

D. are given the right to

6. I'm sorry. I didn't mean to interrupt you. Please, **go on** and finish what you were saying.

A. talk

B. quit

C. continue

D. stop

The crew divided the life preservers among the twenty **terrified** passengers as the ship began to sink.

A. exhausted

B. surprised

C. frightened

D. excited

8. Most deserts are **enormous** sandy areas.

A. mysterious

B. narrow

C. immense

D. aerial

The repeated **commercials** on TV distract many viewers from watching their favourite films.

A. advertisements

B. contests

C. businesses

D. economics

As tourism is more developed, people worry about the damage to the **flora and fauna** of the island.

A. fruits and vegetables

B. flowers and trees

C. plants and animals

D. mountains and forests

It is such a prestigious university that only excellent students **are entitled to** a full scholarship each year.

A. have the obligation to

B. have the right to refuse

C. are refused the right to

D. are given the right to

12. In the future many large **corporations** will be wiped out and millions of jobs will be lost.

A. companies

B. services

C. supermarkets

D. farms

13. Few businesses are **flourishing** in the present economic climate.

- A. growing well B. setting up C. closing down D. taking off

Being listed as an endangered species can have negative **effect** since it could make a species more desirable for collectors and poachers.

- A. awareness B. preservation C. support D. impact

15. My mom is always **bad-tempered** when I leave my room untidy.

- A. feeling embarrassed B. talking too much
C. very happy and satisfied D. easily annoyed or irritated

We really **appreciate** your help, without which we couldn't have got our task done in time.

- A. feel thankful for B. depreciate C. require D. are proud of

17. The Bali Tiger was declared extinct in 1937 due to hunting and **habitat** loss.

- A. reserve B. generation
C. natural environment D. diversity

It is found that **endangered** species are often concentrated in areas that are poor and densely populated, such as much of Asia and Africa.

- A. disappeared B. increased C. threatened D. reduced

19. Many species have become extinct each year before biologists can **identify** them.

- A. destroy B. drain C. endanger D. discover

20. During the earthquake, a lot of buildings **collapsed**, which killed thousands of people.

- A. went off accidentally B. fell down unexpectedly
C. exploded suddenly D. erupted violently

Exercise 60. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is **CLOSEST** in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

1. I hope to have the **privilege** of working with them again.

- A. honor B. advantage C. favor D. right

2. Everything was in a **thorough** mess.

- A. utter B. full C. complete D. appalling

3. The **service station** at Shiel Bridge has a good range of groceries.

- A. coach station B. railway station C. power station D. petrol station

Humans depend on species diversity to **provide** food, clean air and water, and fertile soil for agriculture.

- A. raise B. produce C. supply D. reserve

Many schools provide environmental education to increase students' **awareness** of conservation needs.

- A. effort B. benefit C. exploitation D. knowledge
-

You must answer the police's questions **truthfully**; otherwise, you will get into trouble.

- A. exactly as things really happen B. with a negative attitude
C. in a harmful way D. as trustingly as you can

7. She got up late and **rushed** to the bus stop.

- A. came into B. went leisurely C. went quickly D. dropped by

8. The **meteorologist** said on TV that it is supposed to rain all day tomorrow.

- A. astronomer B. TV anchor C. TV weatherman D. fortune teller

9. Billy, come and **give me a hand** with cooking.

- A. help B. prepared C. be busy D. attempt

10. Whenever problems **come up**, we discuss them frankly and find solutions quickly.

- A. happen B. encounter C. arrive D. clean

11. It will take **more or less** a month to prepare for the wedding.

- A. approximately B. generally C. frankly D. simply

Mr. Pike held his wife's hands and talked urgently to her in a low voice, but there didn't seem to be any **response**.

- A. feeling B. emotion C. reply D. effect

13. My uncle, who is an **accomplished** guitarist, taught me how to play.

- A. skillful B. famous C. perfect D. modest

After many year of unsuccessfully **endeavoring** to form his own orchestra, Glenn Miller finally achieved world fame in 1939 as a big band leader.

- A. requesting B. trying C. offering D. deciding

15. Professor Berg was very interested in the **diversity** of cultures all over the world.

- A. variety B. changes C. conservation D. number

16. Women **liberated from** child care can pursue their own interests.

- A. leisure with B. burdened with C. having fun with D. freed from

17. I didn't think his comments were very **appropriate** at the time.

- A. correct B. right C. exact D. suitable

18. It was **inevitable** that the smaller company should merge with the larger.

- A. urgent B. unavoidable C. important D. necessary

19. This is the **instance** where big, obvious non-verbal signals are appropriate.

- A. situation B. attention C. place D. matter

When you are in a restaurant, you can raise your hand slightly to show that you need **assistance**.

- A. bill B. menu C. help D. food

Exercise 61. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word or phrase that is *OPPOSITE* in meaning to the italic part in each of the following questions.

1. We ought to keep these proposals **secret** from the chairman for the time being.

- A. lively B. frequented C. accessible D. revealed

2. They have not made any effort to **integrate** with the local community.

- A. cooperate B. put together C. separate D. connect

There has been **insufficient** rainfall over the past two years, and farmers are having trouble.

- A. adequate B. unsatisfactory C. abundant D. dominant

4. Now, when so many frogs were killed, there were **more and more** insects.

- A. lesser and lesser B. fewer and fewer C. lesser and fewer D. less and less

5. The young are now far more **materialistic** than their precedents years ago.

- A. monetary B. greedy C. spiritual D. object-oriented

6. One of the key to **successful** business is careful planning.

- A. falling B. victorious C. faulty D. impossible

7. Mr. Smith's new neighbors appear to be very **friendly**.

- A. amicable B. inapplicable C. hostile D. futile

8. The clubs meet on the last Thursday of every month in a **dilapidated** palace.

- A. renovated B. regenerated C. furnished D. neglected

9. His **extravagant** ideas were never brought to fruition.

- A. impressive B. exaggerated C. unacceptable D. practical

10. This shouldn't be too **taxing** for you.

- A. comfortable B. demanding C. easy D. relaxing

11. The Germany's war hysteria has accounted for its people's **hostility** towards foreigners.

- A. disease B. ceremony C. malaria D. serenity .

12. He was **ostracize** by his colleagues for refusing to support the strike.

- A. crucify B. include C. patronize D. lionize.

Population growth rates **vary** among regions and even among countries within the same region.

- A. fluctuate B. stay unchanged C. restrain D. remain unstable

14. She could not hide her **dismay** at the result.

- A. disappointment B. depression C. happiness D. pessimism

15. Certain courses are compulsory; others are **optional**.

- A. voluntary B. free C. pressure D. mandatory

16. We offer a speedy and **secure** service of transferring money in less than 24 hours.

- A. uninterested B. unsure C. slow D. open

The Red Cross is an international humanitarian agency dedicated to reducing the **sufferings** of wounded soldiers, civilians and prisoners of war.

A. worry and sadness B. pain and sorrow C. loss D. happiness

18. After five days on trial, the court found him **innocent** of the crime and he was released

A. innovative B. naïve C. guilty D. benevolent

Mr. Brown is a very **generous** old man. He has given most of his wealth to a charity organization.

A. hospitable B. honest C. kind D. mean 20. In the first two decades of its existence, the cinema developed **rapidly**.

A. leisurely B. sluggishly C. weakly D. shortly

Exercise 62. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word or phrase that is *OPPOSITE* in meaning to the italic part in each of the following questions.

1. The earth is being **threatened** and the future looks bad.

A. done B. made C. defended D. varied

2. Thousands are going **starving** because of the failure of this year's harvest.

A. hungry B. poor C. rich D. full

I'd like to **pay some money into** my bank account.

A. withdraw some money from B. put some money into
C. give some money out D. leave some money aside

4. We offer a speedy and **secure** service of transferring money in less than 24 hours.

A. uninterested B. unsure C. open D. slow

5. The International Organizations are going to be in a **temporary** way in the country.

A. permanent B. guess C. complicated C. soak

My little daughter would spend an **inordinate** amount of time in the shop, deciding exactly which 4 comics she was going to buy.

A. excessive B. limited C. required D. abundant

About 95 percent of all animals are **invertebrates** which can live anywhere, but most, like the starfish and crabs, live in the ocean.

A. with backbones B. with ribs
C. without ribs D. without backbones

He had never experienced such **discourtesy** towards the president as it occurred at the annual meeting in May.

A. politeness B. rudeness C. measurement D. encouragement

We always feel **safe** and secure at home as we are a close-knit family and supportive of one another.

A. uninterested B. unsafe C. open D. slow

10. Why are you being so **arrogant**?

- A. snooty B. humble C. cunning D. naive

11. His policies were **beneficial** to the economy as a whole.

- A. harmless B. crude C. detrimental D. innocent

12. The doctor advised Peter to **give up** smoking.

- A. stop B. continue C. finish D. consider

13. **Advanced** students need to be aware of the important of collocation.

- A. of high level B. of great important
C. of low level D. of steady progress

Fruit and vegetables grew in **abundance** on the island. The islanders even exported the surplus.

- A. excess B. large quantity C. small quantity D. sufficiency

15. There is growing **concern** about the way man has destroyed the environment.

- A. attraction B. consideration C. ease D. speculation

16. The bank announced that it was to **merge** with another of the high street banks.

- A. associate B. separate C. cooperate D. assemble

17. My uncle, who is an **accomplished** guitarist, taught me how to play.

- A. skillful B. famous C. perfect D. unskilled

18. **Affluent** families find it easier to support their children financially.

- A. Wealthy B. Well-off C. Privileged D. Impoverished

19. She had a **cozy** little apartment in Boston.

- A. uncomfortable B. dirty C. lazy D. warm

A frightening number of **illiterate** students are graduating from college.

able to read and write

able to join intramural sport

inflexible

unable to pass an examination in reading and writing

BÀI 8. SENTENCE ELEMENTS CÁC THÀNH TỐ CỦA CÂU

I. Subjects (S): Chủ ngữ là chủ thể của hành động hoặc đối tượng được đề cập, hay miêu tả. Chủ ngữ có thể là:

Subject pronouns: Chủ ngữ có thể là các đại từ nhân xưng chủ ngữ như:

	First Person	Second Person	Third Person
Singular form	I	You	He, She, It
Plural form	We	You	They

e.g. He went abroad to study medicine.

S Vp

They were killed in an accident.

Vp

It is going to rain.

SV

We have learnt English for seven years now.

Vp

Nouns, or noun phrases: Chủ ngữ có thể là danh từ hay cụm danh từ như:

e.g. Love is a stage of feeling and can't be recognized by senses.

S Vp

Gain and loss go together.

S Vp

Tourism is considered to be smoke-free industry.

S Vp

A wealthy, healthy life is anyone's wish.

S Vp

Gerunds, or gerund phrases: Chủ ngữ có thể là danh động từ hay cụm danh động từ như:

e.g. Fishing is his favourite pastime.

SVp

Getting good marks is not always difficult.

S Vp Preparing for exams is

really stressful.

SVp

Travelling by air is considered to be safest.

SVp

Infinitives or infinitive phrases: Chủ ngữ có thể là động từ hay cụm động từ nguyên thể như:

e.g. To be honest is a good quality of a person.

S Vp

To tell lie is not acceptable in science.

S Vp

To fall in love means to love some one deeply.

S Vp

To do is better than to speak.

Vp

Clauses: Chủ ngữ có thể là một mệnh đề như:

eg. What we really wish is to be at the cinema.

S Vp

All she can say is that he is a liar.

S Vp

That she didn't turn up worried us all.

S Vp

Whatever he said annoyed us.

Vp

II. Complements (C): Bổ ngữ là thành phần hoàn thiện nghĩa cho cụm từ, câu.

Bổ ngữ có thể là:

1. Adjectives or participles: Bổ ngữ có thể là các tính từ hay phân từ như:

e.g. She is exhausted.

S V C

The film made me bored.

S V O C

They are very hard-working and intelligent.

S V C

The lessons are long and difficult.

S V C

Nouns, or noun phrases: Bổ ngữ có thể là các danh từ hay cụm danh từ như:

eg. She is a kind hearted lady.

S V C

They became the new employees.

S V C

She will be a nurse.

S V

Lam wishes she were a prince.

S V S V

Gerunds or gerund phrases: Bổ ngữ có thể là các danh động từ hay cụm danh động từ như:

eg. Her hobby is singing.

S V C

His passion in life is studying English.

S V C

Seeing is believing.

S V C

What he wanted is having a good job.

S V C

Infinitives or infinitive phrases: Bổ ngữ có thể là các nguyên thể hay cụm nguyên thể như:

eg. My dream is to become a teacher.

S V C

Her wish is to have a good job to do.

S V C

What he needs to do is to finish the form.

S V C

All I can do is to offer you a lift.

S V C

Clauses: Bổ ngữ có thể là các mệnh đề như:

eg. A full apology is what the boss wants now.

S V C

A smile is all he could do and what he should do.

S V C

A good job was what he wanted.

S V C

A seat in a university is all she wished.

S V C

Notes: Có 2 loại bổ ngữ;

bổ ngữ cho chủ ngữ (Cs)

e.g. She was exhausted.

S V Cs

He was bored.

S V Cs

bổ ngữ cho tân ngữ (Co)

e.g. The long walk made us *exhausted*.

V O Co

The film made him *bored*.

SV O Co

Objects (O): Genders to be described or mentioned usually follow ordinary verbs to show the direct or indirect goals that the verbs aim at, or follow prepositions. (Tân ngữ là thành tố hoàn thành câu, thường theo sau động từ thường chỉ hướng hay đối tượng của động từ, hoặc theo sau các giới từ).

Tân ngữ có thể là:

Object pronouns: Tân ngữ có thể là các đại từ nhân xưng tân ngữ như:

	First Person	Second Person	Third Person
Singular form	me	you	him, her, it
Plural form	us	you	them

e.g. We met *him* yesterday.

S V O A

She made *us* a big cake.

s V O O

The lady sent *me* a request.

S V O O

The man bought a loaf of bread for *her*.

S V O O

Nouns, or noun phrases: Tân ngữ có thể là các danh hoặc cụm danh từ như:

e.g. She gave *me* a blank look.

S V O O

Lan is doing *her* homework.

S V O

Nga did a lot of exercises.

S V O

We sent *endless letters* to *the manager*.

S V O O

Gerunds or gerund phrases: Tân ngữ có thể là các danh động từ hay cụm danh động từ như:

e.g. The man loved *telling funny stories*.

S V O

Willy hated *being left alone in the darkness.*

S V O

We are afraid of *missing the class.*

S V O

She was interested in *going shopping on Sundays.*

S V O

Infinitives or infinitive phrases: Tân ngữ có thể là các nguyên thể hay cụm nguyên thể như:

e.g. Jack wished *to become an astronaut.*

S V O

He liked *to walk in the rain.*

S V O

They wanted *to have seats.*

S V O

Kelvin loves *to do the crosswords.*

S V O

5. Clauses: Tân ngữ có thể là các mệnh đề như:

e.g. We know *how we should solve the problem.*

S V O

She asked *why we didn't arrive on time.*

S V O

Dick wanted to know *whether he was accepted.*

S V O

Linda wondered *where she should go.*

S V O

Notes: Có 2 loại tân ngữ;

tân ngữ trực tiếp (Od)

e.g. She gave *a book* to me.

S V Od Oi

Lam bought me *an ice-cream.*

S V Oi Od

tân ngữ gián tiếp (Oi)

e.g. The host made *us* a big cake.

S V Oi Od

She sent *some documents* to me.

S V Od Oi

IV. Adverbials: A sentence element is used to denote the stages, manner, methods, or to indicate time, places, purposes, or others. (Trạng ngữ được dùng để miêu tả trạng thái, cách thức, phương pháp, mức độ, hay dùng để chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn, mục đích, ... của hành động).

Trạng ngữ có thể là:

Adverbs: Trạng ngữ có thể là các trạng từ như:

eg. We often go to work by bus.

A

She danced marvelously.

A

Naturally, it rains much in Summer.

A

He bravely defeated his opponent.

A

Adverbial phrases: Trạng ngữ có thể là các cụm từ như:

eg. In the past, people used to live in a large family.

A

A

To tell the truth, I liked that play.

A

In my opinion, she is a kind-hearted woman.

A

To sum up, it's convenient to travel by air.

A

A

Adverbial clauses: Trạng ngữ có thể là các mệnh đề như:

eg. When we came, they were fighting.

A

Billy tried hard in order that he could pass the exam.

A

While we were having dinner, the light went out.

A

He passed the exam because he tried hard.

A

V. Verbs: phần nói về động từ đã được trình bày kỹ ở Bài 2. Verbs của chuyên đề này (từ trang 40 đến trang 56 – tài liệu này)

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 63. Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. _____ saying was so important that I asked everyone to stop talking and listen.
A. What the woman was B. The woman was
C. What was the woman D. That the woman was
2. My mother is fed _____ with doing the housework every day.
A. up B. of C. on D. in
3. He found _____ hard to live on his unemployment benefit.
A. it B. its C. it's D. it is
4. She spoke quietly to him _____ someone hear a word of their conversation.
A. so that B. in order that C. for fear that D. for fear of
5. English people are _____ in playing football.
A. interested B. interesting C. to be interested D. to be interesting
6. It is _____ for me to see you go away for a year.
A. undeniable B. incompetent C. unbearable D. intolerant
7. She's proud of her _____.
A. successful B. success C. succeed D. succeeded
8. Only in Japan _____ the high levels of western countries.
A. industrialization has reached B. industrialization is reached
C. has industrialization reached D. is industrialization reached
9. Nowadays children would prefer history _____ in more practical ways.
A. be taught B. to teach C. to be taught D. teach
10. Hurry up! They've only got _____ seats left.
A. a little B. a few C. a lot of D. plenty of
11. _____ of the students know the answer to that question.
A. Most B. Almost C. Mostly D. The most
12. We decided not to travel, _____ the terrible weather forecast.
A. having heard B. we heard
C. having been heard D. being heard
13. _____ for their strong fiber include flax and hemp.
A. Plants are grown B. Plants grown
C. Plants that grow D. To grow plants
14. I think you must be _____ me for someone else.
A. confusing B. reminding C. mistaking D. considering
15. He used _____ on time. But this time he is terribly late.

- A. arriving B. arrive C. to arrive D. to arriving
16. They have grown roses here _____ 1990.
A. for B. since C. during D. in
17. You'll miss the train _____ you don't hurry up.
A. if B. when C. since D. unless
18. He is my _____ brother. But he looks younger than me.
A. elder B. older C. old D. young
19. It took me forty five minutes to _____ to office everyday.
A. getting B. gets C. get D. got
20. You look rather _____. Are you worried about something?
A. occupied B. preoccupying C. preoccupied D. occupant

Exercise 64. Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. If you hear the fire _____, leave the building quickly.
A. alarm B. caution C. notice D. publicity
2. She remembered the correct address only _____ she had posted the letter.
A. since B. afterwards C. following D. after
3. The teacher made us _____ hard for the final examination.
A. learn B. learning C. to learn D. learnt
4. Neither Bill nor Norris _____ going to the play tonight.
A. was B. were C. are D. is
5. Over the past two years the _____ of living has risen considerably.
A. charge B. cost C. rate D. price
6. He told his father a long and _____ story to explain his lateness.
A. inconceivable B. incredulous C. unimaginable D. unconvincing
7. We need _____ information before we can decide.
A. further B. furthest C. far D. farther
8. Women workers wear hats in _____ their hair gets caught in the machinery.
A. course B. case C. occasion D. event
9. An employer may look with _____ on a young college graduate.
A. suspiciously B. suspicion C. suspect D. suspicious
- I don't mind living _____ my own in a big city.
A. with B. by C. at D. on
11. She was filling in the _____ form.
A. applicant B. application C. apply D. appliance
12. It was _____ to listen to the story.

A. exciting B. excited C. excite D. excitement
13. My brother and my sister have many_____.

A. different B. difference C. differ D. differences

14. It was_____ to see my old friends again.

A. surprised B. surprise C. surprisingly D. surprising

15. Mr. Brown gave a long_____ about unemployment in Australia.

A. lectures B. lecturing C. lectured D. lecture

Pests occur in large numbers, and they can_____ terrible damage, particularly to growing crops, that in some parts of the world people frequently suffer from famine.

A. do such B. do so C. make such D. make so

17. The new magazine about maintenance_____ tomorrow.

A. comes down B. comes off C. comes on D. comes out

18. Anna can't get the job because there are too many_____ for it.

A. engineers B. interviewers C. applicants D. workers

19. There are many_____ ways to learn English vocabulary.

A. different B. differences C. differ D. differing

20. Nam stopped_____ two years ago.

A. smoking B. smoke C. to smoke D. smoked

Exercise 65. Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. A_____ storm has swept a hundred of houses away.

A. strong B. heavy C. hard D. long

2. My child would rather read books than_____ anything else.

A. doing B. to do C. did D. do

3. My friend doesn't like asking her mother_____ money.

A. to B. in C. for D. with

4. Mrs. Lan_____ up being on a diet because it was not effective.

A. gives B. giving C. to give D. gave

5. Anna has just graduated from university. She wants to apply_____ a suitable job.

A. at B. for C. to D. in

6. He is unemployed. He gets some unemployment_____.

A. salary B. card C. benefit D. currency

7. A long walk makes everybody_____.

A. tired B. tiring C. to tire D. tire

8. The neighbor of mine is a_____ smoker. He smokes 30 cigarettes a day.

A. much B. heavy C. many D. big

-
9. Her parents can't stand _____ her at home all day.
A. to see B. see C. seeing D. seen
10. I am tired _____ watching the same program every day.
A. in B. on C. with D. of
11. While she _____, the phone rang.
A. was cooking B. cooked C. cooking D. cook
12. My mother is used to _____ an excellent speaker in public spaces.
A. to be B. being C. have been D. been
13. She doesn't have time to go shopping because she's too _____ with her work.
A. busy B. bored C. get up D. tired
14. His roof was broken by a _____ wind two weeks ago.
A. hard B. big C. strong D. much
15. He has learned English for 4 years, and she is good _____ English now.
A. by B. at C. for D. in
16. Mt. Everest is _____ highest peak of _____ Himalayas.
A. a/ the B. the/ a C. the/ nothing D. the/ the
17. Nothing in your room _____ since you were sent to the hospital.
A. have been moved B. has been moved
C. have moved D. has moved
18. Water plays a vital _____ in developing agriculture.
A. part B. importance C. vision D. character
19. The weather in the South of Vietnam seems _____ than _____ in the North.
A. more pleasant/ it B. more pleasant/ that
C. pleasant/ the weather D. more pleasant/ those
- It's more _____ to use gas instead of electricity to warm up the house.
A. economy B. economic C. economical D. economist

Exercise 66. Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. I thought that you _____ us, but I was wrong. You never have enough courage.
A. would join B. joined C. had joined D. will join
- She is very _____. Don't say anything that can hurt her.
A. decided B. dedicate C. dedicated D. devoted
3. He is 59 years old. He _____ next year.
A. is going to retire B. retires C. retired D. has retired
4. A dictionary is a book _____ explains words.

-
- A. what B. it C. its D. which
5. British Isles _____ by speakers of Celtic language two thousand years ago.
A. inhabited B. are inhabited C. were inhabited D. were inhabiting
6. He is from Tokyo. He _____ Japanese.
A. says B. talks C. speaks D. announces
7. He wore dark glasses so that nobody could _____ him.
A. recognize B. recognition C. recognized D. recognizable
8. Modern English is different _____ old English.
A. of B. in C. from D. on
9. It is necessary to learn a foreign _____ .
A. tongue B. story C. country D. language
10. He arrived in Singapore _____ Monday evening.
A. in B. from C. on D. at
- We've got very little time left. Unless we hurry, we'll _____ the bus.
A. miss B. remember C. catch D. get in
- I wish I _____ here longer, but it's time for me to go home.
A. stay B. can stay C. will stay D. could stay
- It is believed that books are _____ species, fighting for survival in competition with TV, film, the internet and CD.
A. endangered B. dangerous C. danger D. dangerously
14. The man shouts loudly as if we _____ all deaf.
A. would be B. had been C. are D. were
15. English _____ by about 700 million people around the world.
A. is been spoken B. is going to spoken
C. is spoken D. will spoken
16. Whenever he has free time, he goes swimming. Swimming is his _____ pastime.
A. favor B. favorable C. favored D. favorite
17. Naturally, we can say that children _____ eating sweets.
A. want B. like C. need D. prefer
18. Young people hate _____, they prefer making questions.
A. ask B. asking C. be asked D. being asked
19. Your sister will be ill if she doesn't stop _____ so much.
A. to worry B. worry C. worried D. worrying
20. The word "fishing" in "Fishing is his favorite pastime" is a(n) _____.
A. noun B. pronoun C. gerund D. adjective
-

Exercise 67. Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

He loves _____ lies, that's why we call him "a liar".

- A. telling B. saying C. speaking D. talking

2. The word "stopped" in "He stopped smoking 5 years ago" can be replaced by _____.

- A. took up B. came up C. picked up D. gave up

3. She's thirsty. She'd like _____ a cold drink.

- A. have B. having C. to have D. to having

4. She never gets up late. She's used to _____ up early.

- A. get B. getting C. gets D. got

5. One of those _____ from Japan.

- A. students are B. student are C. students is D. student is

6. Among those, I like the red one _____.

- A. more B. best C. better D. much

7. I think we cannot have enough one cup of coffee for each as we've got very _____ milk left.

- A. little B. a little C. few D. a few

8. He has been in hospital _____ last Tuesday.

- A. for B. when C. from D. since

9. I don't really like An, but this time I'd like _____ him.

- A. to meet B. meet C. met D. meeting

10. The science classes at this _____ difficult.

- A. schools are B. school are C. school is D. schools is

11. Be quiet! I _____ to listen to some important information.

- A. was trying B. am trying C. try D. tried

12. Most children find it interesting _____ a foreign language.

- A. learn B. learning C. learned D. to learn

13. 'John won't come tomorrow.' 'Did he say he _____ next week?'

- A. will come B. would come C. is coming D. had come

14. Children enjoy _____ cartoon film.

- A. watch B. watching C. watched D. to watch

15. I am afraid of _____ alone in dark.

- A. being left B. left C. leaving D. to leave

M. Faraday didn't have much _____ when he was young.

- A. school B. scholar C. schooled D. schooling

17. A person who studies biology is a _____ .

- A. scientist B. physicist C. biologist D. mathematician

I _____ you to the woman I was speaking with, but I couldn't think of her name.

-
- A. will introduce B. would have introduced
C. would introduce D. couldn't have

19. Most of the experiments are carried out in _____.

- A. schools B. libraries C. factories D. laboratories

20. He was very good ____ mathematics when he was at school.

- A. on B. of C. at D. for

Exercise 68. Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

He says he's been to _____ restaurant in Viet Tri town.

- A. all B. most C. every D. many

2. The ability to work well for long hours is his _____.

- A. length B. width C. height D. strength

3. It is the English pronunciation that _____ a lot of difficulties to Vietnamese pupils.

- A. makes B. causes C. does D. gets

4. I had no difficulty _____ to your English.

- A. listen B. to listen C. to listening D. listening

5. I _____ her as soon as she entered the room.

- A. recognized B. had recognized
C. could recognized D. did recognized

6. You should _____ to your uncle fore being rude to him.

- A. forgive B. apologize C. excuse D. regret

7. The rocket went into _____ round the moon.

- A. track B. orbit C. path D. circle

She took _____ of the fine weather to do a day's work in her garden.

- A. chance B. interest C. advantage D. charge

9. Long speeches are really _____.

- A. bore B. boring C. bored D. to bored

You shouldn't _____ him all the time.

- A. teased B. tease C. teases D. teasing

11. We won't have to import electricity if the solar energy is _____ used.

- A. large B. widely C. widen D. width

12. Mark Twain is the _____ name of Samuel Longhorn Clemens.

- A. pen B. new C. career D. writer

His friend _____ him a lot in his career. Without their support, he would not have been successful.

- A. told B. encouraged C. taught D. complained
-

-
14. I am sorry but we have to _____ the discussion. We have no more time.
 A. put an end to B. make room for
 C. take advantage of D. put effort into
15. This is the man who _____ me English.
 A. teach B. teaches C. are teaching D. were teaching
16. He _____ in love with her picture even before he met her.
 A. falls B. has fallen C. fell D had fallen
17. The man who _____ had been in the sea for ten hours.
 A. had been rescued B. was rescued
 C. rescued D. had rescued
18. The police finally arrested the _____ criminal.
 A. famous B. notorious C. respectable D. renowned
19. Mark Twain's last book was written in 1909, one year before his _____.
 A. died B. dead C. death D. dying
20. His wife had great influence _____ his books.
 A. in B. at C. for D. on

Exercise 69. Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. It's the pronunciation that causes me a lot of _____.
 A. difficult B. difficulty C. difficully D. difficulties
2. If you place a bowl of water in the sun, it will _____.
 A. evaporate B. evaporated C. evaporator D. evaporation
3. _____ 350 million people speak English as their first language.
 A. Approximaty B. Approximately C. Approximation D. Approximate
- "Gone with the wind" was _____ by Mrs. Margaret Mitchell.
 A. written B. read C. designed D. drawn
5. World population will continue to rise if we do not try _____ it.
 A. to increase B. lower C. to reduce D. reducing
6. I did all the work _____ my own.
 A. by B. on C. for D. at
7. Every Sunday my father spends three hours _____ English.
 A. practice B. to practice C. practiced D. practicing
8. I have learned English for 3 years, and I am good _____ English now.
 A. in B. for C. by D. at
-

-
- Hoa's brother enjoys_____ to ghost stories at night.
- A. telling and listening C. listen
 B. tell and listen D. to tell
10. Mr. Minh has known me_____ he moved to Ha Noi national university.
- A. until B. since C. when D. during
11. How_____ is that hotel?
- A. long B. length C. high D. height
12. How much does this hat_____?
- A. pay B. spend C. fix D. cost
13. The exhibition_____ place once a year.
- A. does B. has C. takes D. makes
14. _____ Sundays, I often go fishing with my father.
- A. In B. On C. Over D. For
15. It is_____ to drive without a driving license in Viet Nam.
- A. good B. danger C. dangerously D. dangerous
16. Would you like him_____?
- A. coming B. to come C. come D. came
17. My mother can play a lot of_____ instruments.
- A. music B. musical C. musician D. musically
18. The girl spoke with a_____ accent.
- A. southern B. southwards C. south D. southbound
- What's the_____ of Viet Nam?
- A. popular B. populate C. populous D. population
20. The bus takes_____ than the train.
- A. more long B. the longest C. longer D. long

Exercise 70: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Please fill in your employment history, including your_____ employer as well as any previous ones you might have had.

- A. private B. daily C. constant D. current
2. He studies_____ his two brothers.
- A. much better than B. more better than
 C. more good than D. very better than
3. Sarah delivered a(n)_____ appeal to the court and asked for mercy.
- A. sensational B. sentimental C. emotional D. affectionate

4. She explained the problem very clearly and is always _____ in response to questions.

- A. attention B. attentive C. attentively D. attentiveness

5. What I like about this restaurant is that there is _____ parking space right outside it.

- A. plenty B. ample C. expanded D. big

There was a _____ tremble in her voice, which showed that she was very nervous at that time.

- A. slight B. slighted C. slightly D. slightness

Although Vicky looked pretty much the same after all those years, I noticed _____ changes which made her look even more beautiful than I remembered.

- A. fair B. sensitive C. subtle D. joint

8. Mrs. Pike was so angry that she made a _____ gesture at the driver.

- A. rude B. rudeness C. rudely D. rudest

I find mending old socks incredibly _____ that's why I always ask my mother to do it for me.

- A. hilarious B. tedious C. furious D. recreational

10. He is not really friendly and makes no attempt to be _____.

- A. society B. social C. socialize D. sociable

11. If she can make up stories, she is certainly a very _____ girl.

- A. imaginary B. imaginable C. imaginative D. imagining

12. She sent me a _____ letter thanking me for my invitation.

- A. polite B. politely C. politeness D. impoliteness

13. I don't want much sugar in my coffee. Just _____, please.

- A. a little B. little C. a few D. few

Mr. Timpson's behavior and comments on occasions were inappropriate and fell below the _____ standards.

- A. accept B. acceptable C. acceptance D. accepting

15. As I was _____ of the change in the program, I arrived half an hour late for the rehearsal.

- A. unaware B. unconscious C. unable D. unreasonable

16. The college offers both _____ and professional qualifications.

- A. government B. experience C. requirement D. academic

17. After years of being exposed to the sun and rain, the sign had become completely _____.

- A. unreadable B. readable C. misread D. illegible

Fee-paying schools, often called "independent schools", "private schools" or " _____ schools".

- A. college B. primary C. secondary D. public

19. We all agree that she is _____ student of the two sisters.

- A. the cleverer B. clever C. the cleverest D. most clever
-

20. This book is not really_____. It is a waste of money buying it.

A. inform

B. information

C. informative

D. informatively

CHUYÊN ĐỀ III – GRAMMAR

CHUYÊN ĐỀ NGỮ PHÁP

Chuyên đề này đề cập đến các mảng kiến thức cơ bản như: thì của động từ, hình thái nhấn mạnh của lời nói, danh động từ, động từ nguyên thể, câu bị động, câu gián tiếp, Chuyên đề này sẽ giúp cho người học hệ thống hóa các mảng kiến thức có liên quan, luyện tập các dạng bài tập có liên quan được sử dụng trong các đề thi THPT Quốc Gia. Hoàn thành các bài tập thực hành của chuyên đề này, người học sẽ làm chủ các kiến thức ngữ pháp, tự tin trong việc xác định yêu cầu và giải các bài tập thuộc mảng kiến thức có liên quan.

BÀI 1. TENSES OF VERBS

THÌ CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ

I. The present tenses: Các thì hiện tại

The simple present tense: Thì hiện tại thường

The form: Công thức cấu tạo

(+) S - V

(-) S - don't/ doesn't - V

(?) Do/ Does - S - V?

1.2. The usage: Trường hợp sử dụng

To denote actions that happened repeatedly. Diễn tả những hành động được lặp đi lặp lại, thường đi với các trạng từ chỉ tần suất như: *always, usually, often, sometimes, etc.*

e.g. She never comes late.

They walk to school every day.

He does not often fishes on Sundays.

Do you usually get bad marks?

To denote long lasting events. Diễn tả hành động tồn tại lâu dài như một điều tất yếu.

e.g. We live in Concord street.

He works for a factory near his house. We go to the school in the morning. They watch stars at night.

To denote a true fact. Diễn tả những sự thật hiển nhiên.

e.g. The earth moves around the Sun.

The Sun rises in the east.

There seems to be more rain in summer than that in winter.

Water evaporates.

1.3. The recognition: Các dấu hiệu nhận biết của thì này là các trạng từ chỉ thời gian và tần suất như sau:

now/ nowadays/ today/ this summer/...
always/ usually/ often/ sometimes/ occasionally/...
the proof of constant truth.

1.4. Notes: Chú ý

To denote a plan/ prediction/ timetables/... Thì Hiện tại thường còn dùng để diễn tả một kế hoạch, dự đoán, hay thời gian biểu như:

e.g. A: When does the first train leave?

It leaves at 9.00. (The train does not actually leave at the time of speaking)

The division of “**be**”, “**have**”, “**can, may, must**”,...

The present progressive tense: Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn

The form: Công thức cấu tạo

(+) S - am/ are/ is - V-ING
(-) S - am/ are/ is - not - V-ING
(?) Am/ Are/ Is - S - V-ING?

2.2. The usage: Cách sử dụng

- To denote happening actions at the time of speaking. Diễn tả những hành động đang diễn ra tại thời điểm nói, thường đi với các trạng từ: *now, right now, at the moment, at this time*, etc.

e.g. She is teaching Maths now.

He is watching a football match at the moment.

To denote the interruption/ intention/ prediction/ plan/... Diễn tả những dự kiến, dự đoán, những sự việc sắp diễn ra.

e.g. She is coming soon. (In fact, she has not come yet)

Be quiet! The baby is sleeping.

We are going to Hanoi tomorrow.

Be quicker! The train is leaving.

2.3. The recognition: Dấu hiệu nhận biết của thì này căn cứ vào các trạng từ sau:

- now/ right now/ at present/ at this time/ at this moment/...

e.g. Right now, they are working in the factory.

follow a command, request,...

e.g. Be quiet! I am trying to listen to some important news.

2.4. Notes: Điểm cần lưu ý

The ING-forms – Gấp đôi phụ âm cuối khi tạo present participles với các động từ sau: *getting, running, having, writing, dying, lying,...*

e.g. She is running in the park now.

The omission of the verbs of awareness or sensation as - một số động từ không dùng cho thì hiện tại tiếp diễn như: be/ see/ hear/ understand/ know/ like/ want/ glance/ feel/ think/ smell/ love/ hate/ realize/ seem/ remember/ forget/... (use the simple present instead - mà thay vào đó ta dùng thì hiện tại thường để diễn tả).

The present perfect tense: Thì hiện tại hoàn thành

3.1. The form: Công thức cấu tạo

(+) S - have/ has - P.P
(-) S - haven't/ hasn't - P.P
(?) Have/ Has - S - P.P?

3.2. The usage: Cách sử dụng

To denote actions that happened in the past but having results, relating, or still happening at present.

e.g. We have lived here since 1990.

They have learned English for 5 years.

To denote actions that happened right before the time of speaking, using “just”.

e.g. She has just come from New York.

They have just bought a new house.

To denote unfulfilled actions with “yet”.

e.g. He hasn't come yet.

Have you met him yet?

To denote past actions; no certain time expression, using “already”.

e.g. We have already seen that film.

She has already been to Paris.

3.3. The recognition:

just = recently = lately. - ever/ never (comments) e.g.

We haven't gone to the theatre recently.

already/ yet/ since/ for/ so far/ until now/ up to now (present).

e.g. He has written ten books so far.

3.4. Notes:

Past participles: (regular verbs adding “ed”./ irregular verbs “learn by heart”)

The differences between the present perfect and the simple past tense.

The present perfect progressive tense: Thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn

The form: Công thức cấu tạo

(+) S - have/ has - been - V-ing
(-) S - haven't/ hasn't - been - V-ing
(?) Have/ Has - S - been - V-ing?

The usage: Cách sử dụng

To denote actions that happened in the past but having results, relating, or still happening at present.

e.g. We have been living here since 1990.

They have been learning English for 6 years now.

4.3. The recognition: Dấu hiệu nhận biết

since/ for/ with verbs as: live, work, wait,...

e.g. She has been waiting for 6 hours now.

They have been playing since 3 o'clock.

II. The past tenses: các thì quá khứ

1. The simple past tense: Thì quá khứ đơn

1.1. The form: Công thức cấu tạo (p.V = the past form of verbs)

(+) S - p.V
(-) S - didn't - V
(?) Did - S - V?

1.2. The usage: Cách sử dụng

- To denote a finished past action.

e.g. We went to the park together.

He gave her mother a ten-dollar note.

He was the first to leave the room.

They had an appointment to meet at the station.

To report past events, past habits, or long lasting action in the past.

e.g. She did all the work yesterday.

We used to sit next to each other.

There used to be a tomb here.

1.3. The recognition: Dấu hiệu nhận biết

last week/ month/ year/...

e.g. He had 5 bad marks last month.

They got married last year.

yesterday/ ago/ in 1969/ in the past/...

e.g. Long long ago, there lived a couple by the sea.

Man first discovered AIDS in 1981.

1.4. Notes: Những điểm cần lưu ý

The past form of the verbs: (regular “V-ED”/ irregular (2nd column in the irregular verbs list))

“ED” pronunciation /ɪd/; /t/; /d/.

The past progressive tense: Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn

2.1. The form: Công thức cấu tạo

(+) S - was/ were - V-ING
(-) S - was/ were - not - V-ING
(?) Was/ Were - S - V-ING?

2.2. The usage: Cách sử dụng

- To denote past happening actions.

e.g. She was watching T.V at 8.00 last night.
Ann was walking to school at 6.00 yesterday.
Nga was fishing at 9.00 last Sunday.

- To denote past interrupting actions.

e.g. She was watching T.V when I came.
While he was playing on the swing, it started to rain.

2.3. The recognition: Dấu hiệu nhận biết

at 8.00 last night/ at that time/ at that moment/ ...

e.g. At 3.00 yesterday, the Jones were driving home.
He was sleeping at that time.

time clause with “**when**”, “**while = as**”.

e.g. As I was walking home, a stranger stopped me to ask for help.
When we arrived, they were fighting.

2.4. Notes: Những điểm cần lưu ý

actions that alternatively happened, use the simple past only.

e.g. When I heard a knock at the door, I came to open it. When I opened the door, I saw my mum.)- This is a timed action.

The past perfect tense: Thì quá khứ hoàn thành

The form: Công thức cấu tạo

(+) S - had - P.P (P2)
(-) S - had not (hadn't) - P.P (P2)
(?) Had - S - P.P (P2)?

3.2. The usage: Cách sử dụng

To denote past finished actions that happened and finished before a certain point of time or another past event (the past of the past tense).

e.g: She had sold all the baskets before 9.00 yesterday.
She had sold all the baskets when we came there yesterday.

3.3. The recognition: Dấu hiệu nhận biết

- when-clause/ after/ before/ already/ since/ for/ ...

e.g. Before he left for home, he had turned all the lights off.

After he had gone, she didn't fall in love with any one.

The past perfect progressive "**S + had been + V-ING**"

The past perfect progressive tense: Thì quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn

The form: Công thức cấu tạo

(+) S - had - been - V-ing (-) S - had not (hadn't) - been - V-ing (?) Had - S - been - V-ing?

The usage: Cách sử dụng

To denote past finished actions that happened and finished before a certain point of time or another past event (the past of the past tense).

e.g: She had been waiting for us since 9.00 yesterday.

She had been playing long when we came there yesterday.

4.3. The recognition: Dấu hiệu nhận biết

when-clause/ after/ before/ already/ since/ for/ ...

e.g. After he had been waiting for a while, he felt annoyed.

She had been working since dawn.

The past perfect progressive "**S - had been - V-ING**"

III. The future tenses: các thì tương lai

The simple future tense: thì tương lai thường

The form: Công thức cấu tạo

(+) S - will/ shall - V (-) S - will/ shall - V (?) Will/ Shall - S - V?
--

"shall" is restrictedly used only for I/We with the formal senses.

The negative forms "will not = won't", "shall not = shan't".

1.2. The usage: Cách sử dụng

- To denote future actions.

e.g. They will build more hospitals.

We shall go to your party.

He won't win the match, I think.

To denote future plan/ idea/ timetable/...

e.g. The car will start in-time.

We shall finish the course in June.

1.3. The recognition: Dấu hiệu nhận biết

someday, tomorrow,.../

e.g. She will be rich someday.

Tomorrow, there will be a new schedule for us.

- next week/ month/ year/..

e.g. He won't leave next month.

There will be no rain next week.

1.4. Notes: Điểm cần lưu ý

“shan't” is not used in conditional sentences./ “ shall” is used as a suggestion/ invitation/....

e.g. A: Shall we meet tonight?

Yes, let's.

I am going to the country this weekend, will you go with me?

Certainly, I will.

The future progressive tense: thì tương lai tiếp diễn

The form: Công thức cấu tạo

(+) S - will be - V-ING

(-) S - won't be - V-ING

(?) Will - S - be - V-ING?

2.2. The usage: Cách sử dụng

To denote timetables/ intentions/ plans/... using “at”.

e.g: She will be watching T.V at 8.00 tonight.

We will be staying at REX hotel at 5.00 next Sunday's morning.

To show the future happening actions with “**when**”.

e.g. She will be sitting at the gate when we come tomorrow.

When you come back, I will be waiting for you here.

The future perfect tense: thì tương lai hoàn thành

The form: Công thức cấu tạo

(+) S - will have - P.P (P2)

(-) S - won't have - P.P (P2)

(?) Will - S + have - P.P?

3.2. The usage: Cách sử dụng

To denote planned actions with “by”, “by the time”, “by then”.

e.g: She will have finished the course by the next Friday/ by then.
We will have finished our project by the end of June.

To show a future schedule-finished action.

e.g: The bridge will have been used by the next Autumn.
A new school will have been built here next year.

3.3. Other forms: Các hình thức diễn đạt tương lai

khác a. The simple present tense:

To denote a timetable, or a plan... Thì hiện tại thường diễn tả kế hoạch, dự định, thời gian biểu,...

e.g: A: When does he leave?
He leaves tonight. (He doesn't leave in fact)
When does the new school year start?
It starts early in September. (It is due to start)

The present progressive: To denote an intention. Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn có cách diễn đạt tương lai tương tự thì hiện tại thường, nhưng có tinha chắc chắn cao hơn.

e.g: A: When are you leaving?
I am leaving this afternoon.

The "be + going to inf" form: To denote an intention or a near future action, an arrangement.

e.g: She is going to celebrate her 34th birthday.
They are going to get married.

IV. The sequences of tenses: Sự hòa hợp của các thì trong các mệnh đề.

Subordinate clauses: Mệnh đề phụ cơ bản

Main clause	Subordinate clause
Simple present tense.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- simple present tense.- present perfect tense.- present progressive tense.- simple future tense.- "be going to V" form.- simple past tense (certain point of past time).
Simple past tense	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- simple past tense.- past progressive tense.- past perfect tense.- "would + V" form.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - "be going to + V" past form. - simple present tense (showing the truth).
Present perfect tense	Simple present tense.
Past perfect tense	Simple past tense.

Adverbial clauses: Mệnh đề trạng ngữ

Main clause	Adverbial clauses (of time)	
Present tenses	Present tenses	When/ whenever/ as/ while/ before/ after/ as soon as/...
Past tenses	Past tenses	When/ while/ as/ till/ until/ just as/ since/....
Future tenses	Present tenses	No sooner than/ hardly...when/ as long as/....

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 71: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. They_____ for 3 hours when the storm suddenly broke.
 - A. had been running
 - B. have been running
 - C. are running
 - D. will be running
2. I_____ come to the conclusion that nowadays nobody cares about anything.
 - A. will
 - B. had
 - C. do
 - D. have
3. I assumed you _____ paying for the repairs until the end of last year.
 - A. have been
 - B. was been
 - C. are being
 - D. had been
4. _____ get tired of answering the same questions every day?
 - A. Have you ever
 - B. Had you ever
 - C. Do you ever
 - D. Are you ever
5. She_____ working on that manuscript for 2 years now.
 - A. will be
 - B. has been
 - C. had been
 - D. is
6. I_____ there once a long time ago and_____ back since.
 - A. went/ have not been
 - B. go/ am not
 - C. have gone/ was
 - D. was going/ had not been

The students_____ by Mrs. Linda. However, this week they_____ by Mr. Mike.

- are usually taught/ are being taught
- usually teach/ are teaching
- have usually been taught/ have been teaching
- were usually teaching/ are teaching

In the past the trip _____ very rough and often dangerous, but things _____ a great deal in the last hundred and fifty years.

- A. was/ have changed B. is/ change
C. had been/ will change D. has been/ changed

9. Now you _____ from New York to Los Angeles in a matter of hours.

- A. are flying B. would fly C. will fly D. can fly

10. When Carol _____ last night, I _____ my favorite show on television.

- A. was calling/ watched B. called/ have watched
C. called/ was watching D. had called/ watched

11. By this time next summer, you _____ your studies.

- A. completes B. will complete
C. are completing D. will have completed

12. Right now, Jim _____ the newspaper and Kathy _____ dinner.

- A. reads/ has cooked B. is reading/ is cooking
C. has read/ was cooking D. read/ will be cooking

Last night at this time, they _____ the same thing. She _____ and he the newspaper.

- are doing/ is cooking/ is reading
were doing/ was cooking/ was reading
was doing/ has cooked/ is reading
had done/ was cooking/read

When I _____ home last night, I _____ that Jane _____ a beautiful candlelight dinner.

- had arrived/ discovered/ prepared
was arriving/ had discovered/ was preparing
have arrived/ was discovering/ had prepared
arrived/ discovered/ was preparing

Sam _____ to change a light bulb when he _____ and _____.

- A. was trying/ slipped/ fell B. tried/ was slipping/ falling
C. had been trying / slipped D. has tried/ slips/ falls

16. Yesterday, I _____ for work late because I _____ to set my alarm.

- A. had left/ forgot B. was leaving/ was forgetting
C. left/ had forgot D. had been leaving/ would forget

17. By the time we _____ to the train station, Susan _____ for us for more than two hours.

- A. will get/ has been waiting B. got/ was waiting
C. got/ had been waiting D. get/ will wait

I _____ for this company for more than thirty years, and I intend to stay here until I _____ next year.

- A. am working/ will retire B. am going to work/ am retiring

- C. work/ am going to retire D. have been working/ retire
19. My mother always the first_____ up and the last_____ to bed.
 A. getting/ going B. to get/ going C. getting/ to go D. to get/ to go
20. I_____ you last night after dinner, but you_____ there. Where_____ you?
 A. was calling/ are not/ are B. called/ were not/ were
 C. had called/ had not been/ were D. called/ have not been/ are

Exercise 72: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

- The lights_____ out because we_____ the electricity bill.
 A. have gone/ did not pay B. will go/ did not paid
 C. go/ would not pay D. went/ had not paid
 - _____ Tom Cruise's last movie? Yes, I_____ it three days ago
 A. Have you ever seen/ saw B. Did you ever see/ have seen
 C. Had you ever seen/ would see D. Will you ever see/ saw
 - I_____ a terrible accident while I_____ on the beach.
 A. see/ am walking B. saw/ was walking
 C. was seeing/ walked D. have seen/ were walking
 - After all, she_____ him since her childhood.
 A. knows B. knew C. was knowing D. had known
 - We_____ touch since we_____ school three years ago.
 A. lost/ have left B. have lost/ leave
 C. have lost/ left D. were losing/ had left
- _____ in Rome than he_____.
- No sooner he had arrived/ was being kidnapped
 No sooner had he arrived/ was kidnapped
 Had he no sooner arrived/ kidnapped
 No sooner was he arriving/ had been kidnapped
- I_____ there once a long time ago and_____ back since.
 A. was/ have not been B. had been/ was not
 C. would be/ had not been D. have been/ will not be
- As many as ten-million children_____ with the virus by the end of this decade.
 A. have been infected B. will be infecting
 C. had been infected D. will have been infected
 - What_____ when the fire alarm_____ off?
 A. are you doing/ will go B. have you done/ would go
 C. were you doing/ went D. will you do/ are going

-
10. He _____ email before, so I _____ him how to use it.
 A. did not use/ had shown B. had not used/ showed
 C. has not used/ showed D. was not using/ will show
- Doctor Pike _____ the hospital after he _____ an uneventful evening on duty.
 He _____ of his day of rest.
 A. was leaving/ has had/ thought B. left/ had had/ was thinking
 C. will leave/ had/ will think D. is leaving/ will have/ thinks
12. She _____ me anything about that problem so far.
 A. is not telling B. does not tell C. will not tell D. has not told
13. I think that everything _____ ready for the project procedure by the end of next month.
 A. will have been B. has been C. had been D. is
14. Be quiet! Someone _____ at the front door. I _____ it.
 A. is knocking/ will answer B. knocks/ am answering
 C. has knocked/ am going to answer D. will knock/ have answered
15. Kelvin and Martha _____ married in June.
 A. are getting B. has got C. was getting D. will have got
16. Two lions _____ from the National Zoo, and the police _____ to catch them.
 A. will escape/ try B. escaped/ had tried
 C. have escaped/ are trying D. escape/ were trying
17. Oranges _____ rich in vitamin C, which _____ good for our health.
 A. have been/ is B. are/ is C. are/ will be D. were/ has been
18. Let's go to Fuji for our summer holiday! - OK. It _____ good.
 A. sounds B. is sounding C. has sounded D. was sounding
19. They _____ enthusiastically when their teacher _____ in.
 A. discuss/ comes B. will have discussed/ comes
 C. will discuss/ will come D. were discussing/ came
- I told him _____ the word to Jane somehow that I _____ to reach her during the early hours.
 A. passing/ will try B. he will pass/ tried
 C. to pass/ would be trying D. he passed/ have tried

Exercise 73: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. Laura said she had worked on the assignment since _____.
 A. yesterday B. two days ago C. the day before D. the next day
2. John asked me _____ interested in any kind of sports.
 A. if I were B. if were I C. if was I D. if I was

-
3. I _____ you everything I am doing, and you have to do the same.
A. will tell B. would tell C. told D. was telling
4. John asked me _____ that film the night before.
A. that I saw B. had I seen C. if I had seen D. if had I seen
5. The guest told the host that _____.
A. I must go now B. he must go now
C. he had to go now D. he had to go then
6. The teacher told Joe _____.
A. to stop talking B. stop talking C. stops talking D. stopped talking
7. She said she _____.
A. was very tired last night B. was very tired the night before
C. had been very tired last night D. had been very tired the night before
8. She said that her teacher _____ to London _____.
A. will go/ tomorrow B. went/ tomorrow
C. would go/ the next day D. had gone/ the next day
9. She told the boys _____ on the grass.
A. do not play B. did not play C. not playing D. not to play
10. She asked _____.
A. where was her umbrella B. where her umbrella was
C. where were her umbrella D. where her umbrella were
11. Jason asked me _____ me the book the day before.
A. if who gave B. if who has given
C. who had given D. that who had given
12. He said that his father _____ to Dallas the year before.
A. goes B. went C. has gone D. had gone
13. He wanted to know _____ shopping during the previous morning.
A. if we had been going B. that if we had been going
C. we were going D. that we were going
14. He asked me _____ Robert and I said I did not know _____.
A. that did I know/ who were Robert B. that I knew/ who Robert were
C. if I knew/ who Robert was D. whether I knew/ who was Robert
15. The mother asked her son _____.
A. where he has been B. where he had been
C. where has he been D. where had he been
16. They asked me _____.
A. how is my father B. how my father is
C. how was my father D. how my father was
-

-
17. The host asked Peter _____ tea or coffee.
 A. whether he preferred B. that he preferred
 C. did he prefer D. if he prefers
18. She asked me _____ my holidays _____.
 A. where I spent/ the previous year B. where I had spent/ the previous year
 C. where I spent/ last year D. where did I spend/ last year
19. He advised _____ too far.
 A. her did not go B. her do not go C. her not to go D. she did not go
20. Max often says he _____ boxing because it _____ a cruel sport.
 A. does not like/ is B. did not like/ were
 C. not liked/ had been D. had not liked/ was

Exercise 74: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. Albert told me that they _____ fish two _____ days.
 A. have not eaten/ ago B. had not eaten/ previous
 C. did not eat/ before D. would not eat/ last
2. Manh told me that he _____ his best in the exam the _____ day.
 A. had done/ following B. will do/ previous
 C. would do/ following D. was going/ previous
3. Beethoven's Fifth Symphony _____ next weekend.
 A. is going to be performed B. has been performed
 C. will be performing D. will have performed
4. The man _____ an actor years ago.
 A. is said to be B. was said being
 C. was said have been D. is said to have been
5. I hate _____ personal questions by newly-acquainted friends.
 A. to be asking B. to be asked C. being asking D. of asking
6. It _____ that learning a foreign language _____ a lot of time.
 A. says / is taken B. is saying / has been taken
 C. is said / takes D. was said / was taken
7. All bottles _____ before transportation.
 A. frozen B. were froze C. were frozen D. are froze

The trees _____.
 were grown by John yesterday in the backyard
 were grown in the backyard by John yesterday
 were grown in the backyard yesterday by John

D. in the backyard were grown yesterday by
John 9. _____ yet?

- A. Have the letters been typed B. Have been the letters typed
C. Have the letters typed D. Had the letters typed

English has become a second language in countries like India, Nigeria or Singapore where _____ for administration, broadcasting and education.

- A. is used B. it is used C. used D. being used

11. The telephone _____ by Alexander Graham Bell.

- A. is invented B. is inventing C. invented D. was invented

12. Lots of houses _____ by the earthquake.

- A. are destroying B. destroyed C. were destroying D. were destroyed

13. In the US the first stage of compulsory education _____ as elementary education.

- A. to be generally known B. is generally known
C. generally known D. is generally knowing

The Minister of the Education and Training Department appeared on TV last night to _____ his new policy.

- A. public B. publicly C. publicize D. publicizing

15. Mathematics, a required subject in all schools, is _____ into many branches.

- A. grouped B. prepared C. divided D. added

16. Education _____ to be the most important element to develop a country.

- A. often be considered B. can often consider
C. can often considered D. can often be considered

17. The preparations _____ by the time the guests _____.

- A. had been finished/ arrived B. have finished/ arrived
C. had finished/ were arriving D. have been finished/ were arrived

18. _____ in that company?

- A. Do shoes make B. Are shoes be made
C. Shoes are made D. Are shoes made

19. Portuguese _____ as an official language in this city since three hundred years ago.

- A. has always been spoken B. has been spoken always
C. has always spoken D. had always spoken

20. More than ten victims _____ missing in the storm last week.

- A. are reported to be B. are reported to have been
C. are reporting to have been D. are reporting to be

Exercise 75: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. _____ by your father?

A. Did that book write

B. Did that book written

C. Was that book written

D. Was that book be writing

2. Something _____ immediately to prevent teenagers from _____ in factories and mines.

A. should be done/ being exploited

B. we should do/ exploiting

C. should do/ be exploited

D. should have done/ exploited

This car _____.

was manufactured in Japan by Toyota last year

was manufactured by Toyota last year in Japan

was manufactured last year in Japan by Toyota

last year was manufactured by Toyota in Japan

Why _____ on time?

A. don't the exercises finish

B. weren't the exercises be finished

C. aren't the exercises being finished

D. aren't the exercises be finished

No longer _____ in our office since it _____.

have typewriters been used/ computerized

typewriters have been used/ was computerized

have typewriters been used/ was computerized

typewriters have been used/ computerized

When _____?

A. were computers used first

B. were computers first used

C. did computers first use

D. are computers first using

7. Everything that _____ remained a secret.

A. overheard

B. had been overheard

C. had overheard

D. was overhearing

8. The refreshments _____ by Karen.

A. are going to be prepared

B. are going to prepare

C. are preparing

D. are to prepare

9. _____ by the police.

A. The stealing car has just been found

B. The stolen car has just been found

C. The stealing car has just found

D. The stolen car has just found.

10. _____ to you yet?

A. Are the book been giving back

B. Was the book been given back

C. Has been the book given back

D. Has the book been given back

11. What he has done to me _____.

A. cannot forgiven

B. cannot be forgiven

C. cannot forgive

D. cannot be forgiving

-
12. The keys _____ somewhere.
A. must have been leaving B. must have left
C. must be leaving D. must have been left
13. Japanese _____ at the meeting.
A. will speak B. will spoken C. will be spoken D. will be speaking
14. Although he tried his best, he could not make his voice _____.
A. hear B. to hear C. hearing D. heard
15. I _____ in the lounge for ten minutes.
A. was told waiting B. was told to wait
C. was telling to be waited D. was told to be waited
16. These students _____ so much that they feel very tired and bored.
A. are made to study B. are made study
C. are making to study D. ate made to be studied
17. They _____ time and money doing such a thing.
A. were advised not to waste B. were advised not to be wasted
C. were advising not to waste D. were advising not to be wasted
18. If I _____ 10 years younger, I _____ the job.
A. am/ will take B. was/ have taken
C. had been/ will have taken D. were/ would take
19. _____ I had learnt English when I was at high school.
A. Unless B. Even if C. If D. If only
20. You are not allowed to use the club's facilities _____ you are a member.
A. unless B. if C. provided D. supposed

Exercise 76: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. The Titanic _____ the Atlantic when it _____ an iceberg.
A. was crossing/ struck B. had crossed/ was striking
C. crossed/ had struck D. is crossing/ strikes
2. _____ to come over for dinner tonight?
A. Do you want B. Are you wanting
C. Have you wanted D. Will you want
3. What _____ at this time tomorrow?
A. will you do B. will you be doing
C. will you have done D. will you have been doing
4. Many people even wonder these days _____.
A. what marriage is B. what is marriage

-
- C. what marriage was
D. what was marriage
5. If she _____ the train last night, she _____ here now.
A. took/ were
B. were taking/ is
C. had taken/ would have been
D. had taken/ would be
6. _____ if a war happened?
A. What you would do
B. What would you do
C. What will you do
D. What will you do
7. I would send her a fax if I _____ her number.
A. know
B. knew
C. had known
D. could know
8. _____ it were well paid, I would accept this proposal.
A. Providing
B. Unless
C. But for
D. If only
9. _____ more carefully, he would not have had the accident yesterday:
A. If Peter driven
B. If had Peter driven
C. Had Peter driven
D. Unless Peter had driven
10. Either you or I _____ going to meet Professor Pike at the airport.
A. am
B. were
C. are
D. has been
11. If you _____ to my advice, you _____ in trouble now.
A. listened/ were not
B. listen/ are not.
C. had listened/ would not have been
D. had listened/ would not be
12. If you take the 8 a.m. flight to New York you _____ change planes.
A. could not have to
B. will not have to
C. had not had to
D. would not to have to
13. If it _____ warm yesterday, we would have gone to the beach.
A. was
B. were
C. had been
D. could be
14. If it _____ an hour ago, the streets _____ wet now.
A. were raining/ will be
B. had rained/ would be
C. rained/ would be
D. had rained/ would have been
15. _____ here, he would help us with these troubles.
A. Were Peter
B. If were Peter
C. Unless were Peter
D. Unless Peter were
16. _____ that problem with the car, we wouldn't have missed the speech.
A. If we had had
B. If had we had
C. Unless we had had
D. Provided that we had had
17. Mrs. Pike _____ the door before the customers arrived.
A. had opened
B. will open
C. would open
D. has opened
18. If you hear from Susan today, _____ her to ring me.
A. tell
B. to tell
C. telling
D. will tell
-

-
19. She had to have the operation_____.
- A. unless she would dies B. if she would die
C. otherwise she will die D. or she would die
20. After Mariana_____ her exam, I _____ her out to eat.
- A. was finishing/ would take B. finished/ had taken
C. will finish/ have taken D. has finished/ will take

Exercise 77: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

- “Please, will you just tidy your room, and stop_____ excuses!”
- A. having B. making C. doing D. taking
2. My mother told me to_____ for an electrician when her fan was out of order.
- A. send B. write C. rent D. turn
- When you have a small child in the house, you_____ leave small objects lying around. Such objects_____ be swallowed, causing serious injury or even death.
- A. should/ must B. should not/ might
C. needn't/ may D. mustn't/ can't
4. They are going to_____ the pool to 1.8 meter.
- A. deep B. depth C. deepen D. deeply
5. Frank's wallet is lying on the coffee table. He_____ it here last night.
- A. must have left B. should have left
C. must be leaving D. needn't leave
6. Jenny's engagement ring was precious! It_____ have cost a fortune.
- A. must B. should C. can D. needn't
7. You_____ take your umbrella along with you today. It_____ rain later on this afternoon.
- A. ought to/ mustn't B. needn't/ will C. will/ must D. should/ might
8. “You’ll recognize Jenny when you see her. She_____ a red hat.”
- A. will wear B. is wearing C. will be wearing D. wears
9. When the play finished the audience stood up and_____ their hands loudly.
- A. clapped B. nodded C. shook D. hold
10. The Second World War_____ in 1939.
- A. took out B. turned up C. broke out D. brought about
11. He asked_____ him some money.
- A. her to lend B. she to lend C. she has lent D. she lends
12. If it_____ for the heavy storm, the accident would not have happened.
- A. weren’t B. isn’t C. were D. hadn’t been
13. That machine is useless. It_____ not been used for a long time.
-

-
- A. is B. was C. did D. has
14. "You_____ have cooked so many dishes. There are only three of us for lunch."
 A. needn't B. couldn't C. wouldn't D. oughtn't
- Regardless of whether schools belong to the government or are independent, they are_____ to adhere to the same curriculum frameworks.
- A. told B. required C. demanded D. taken
16. He was so ill that he could not___ his final examination and cancelled it to the next year.
 A. make B. do C. take D. gain
17. I could not_____ the lecture at all. It was too difficult for me.
 A. hold on B. make off C. get along D. take in
18. _____ students required to wear uniforms at all times?
 A. Are B. Do C. Did D. Will
19. Some days of rest may help to_____ the pressure of work.
 A. reduce B. lower C. chop D. crease
20. Fruits_____ in a freezer.
 A. should not put B. should not be put
 C. must put D. must be putting

Exercise 78: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. The captain as well as all the passengers_____ very frightened by the strange noise.
 A. is B. were C. was D. have been

If you are_____ for a particular job, someone asks you questions about yourself to find out if you suitable for it.

- A. paid B. chosen C. interviewed D. recommended

Economic reforms began in the Vietnam in 1986 by the leaders of the country to decide to _____ the economy.

- A. repair B. reproduce C. restructure D. reply

4. The Internet has enabled people to_____ with each other more quickly.

- A. interlink B. interact C. interconnect D. intervene

Industry in the area consisted mostly of food-processing plants and factories_____ consumer goods.

- A. renovating B. initiating C. developing D. producing

They still remain the need for an integrated system of subsidies which will_____ farmers to look after their upland environment and producing food.

- A. enable B. adopt C. consume D. expand 7. If everyone_____, how would we control the traffic?

- A. had flown B. can fly C. could fly D. flies
8. She _____ be ill. I have just seen her playing basketball in the school yard.
A. needn't B. shouldn't C. mustn't D. can't
- I've warned you many times _____ the front door unlocked.
A. not leaving B. won't leave C. don't leave D. not to leave
- Hiking the trail to the peak _____ be dangerous if you are not well prepared for dramatic weather changes. You _____ research the route a little more before you attempt the ascent.
A. might/ can B. may/ mustn't C. can/ should D. must/ needn't
11. "I'd rather you _____ home now."
A. going B. go C. gone D. went
12. Peter has been working for 10 hours. He _____ be very tired now.
A. needn't B. must C. has to D. should
13. _____ he arrived at the bus stop when the bus came.
A. No longer has B. No sooner had C. Not until had D. Hardly had
- If a defender _____ a foul within the five meter area that prevents a likely goal, the attacking team is awarded a penalty throw or shot.
A. commits B. interferes C. punches D. touches
15. He is unreliable. What he says _____ be believed.
A. cannot B. must not C. may not D. might not
16. Jane _____ law for four years now at Harvard.
A. is studying B. has been studying
C. studies D. studied
17. He _____ to the doctor after the accident, but he continued to play instead.
A. must have gone B. should have gone
C. couldn't go D. didn't have to go
18. I _____ find my own way there. You _____ wait for me.
A. should/ can't B. have to/ must C. can/ needn't D. might/ mustn't
- I was reading the book last night before I went to bed. I never took it out of this room. It _____ be lying around here somewhere. Where _____ it be?
A. might/ needn't B. can/ should C. shouldn't/ may D. must/ can
20. How many times have I told you _____ football in the street?"
A. not playing B. do not play C. not to play D. not to have played

S - myself/ yourself/ himself/ herself/ itself/ ourselves/ V

BÀI 2. EMPHASIS - THỨC NHẤN MẠNH

Classification: Hình thái nhấn mạnh chính

1.1. Pronunciation: using stresses and intonation. Sử dụng ngữ điệu để nhấn mạnh, chẳng hạn như:

e.g. A: Are you free?
Yes? ↗
Are you free?
Yes, I am.
Really? ↗
Yes, I say yes.

1.2. **Written forms** (transformation): Sử dụng hình thức viết bằng các cấu trúc câu nhấn mạnh khác nhau.

e.g. She could hardly understand.
Hardly could she understand.
The boy broke the vase.
It was the boy who broke the vase.

Styles: Các hình thái dùng văn phong để nhấn mạnh.

2.1. **Verbs:** Dùng các động từ trợ để nhấn mạnh cho động từ (hành động) như công thức:

do/ does/ did - bare infinitives

e.g. He visited us yesterday.
→ He did visit us yesterday.
Hoa loves romantic films.
→ Hoa does love romantic films.

2.2. **Adjectives:** Dùng các động từ trợ để nhấn mạnh cho động từ (hành động) như công thức:

It is/was + adjs + to infinitives

e.g. Knowing your limitation is important.
It's important to know your limitation.
He found that learning English was difficult.
He found that it was difficult to learn English.

2.3. **Reflexive pronouns:** Dùng các đại từ phản thân để nhấn mạnh cho chủ thể của hành động như công thức:

e.g. She did it.
She herself did it.
He thought that.

→ He himself thought that.

2.4. **Cleft sentences:** Dùng các mẫu câu chẻ để nhấn mạnh cho chủ ngữ, tân ngữ, hay trạng ngữ cụ thể:

a. Subject focus:

S - V → It is/ was S that/ who V

e.g.

He broke the rules.

→ It was he who broke the rules. (he not him)

The book interests me.

→ It is the book that interests me.

b. Object focus:

S - V - O → It is/ was O that S - V

e.g.

I hated him.

→ It was he who I hated.

I need a replacement not others.

→ It is a replacement, not others that I need.

c. Adverbials focus:

S - V - A → It is/ was A that S - V

e.g.

We first met in this park.

It was in this park that we first met.

She left on a rainy day.

It was on a rainy day that she left.

2.5. **Inversion case:** Dùng hình thức đảo ngữ để nhấn mạnh – phần đảo ngữ đã được trình bày rất kĩ càng ở Chuyên đề II – Bài 4. Adverbs từ trang 75 đến trang 92 (tài liệu này).

e.g.

He could never find out the truth.

Never could he find out the truth.

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 79. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

No longer _____ to do all her housework with her husband because our family now owns some new labor-saving devices.

A. my mother has

B. has my mother

C. does my mother has

D. does my mother have

2. No sooner had he sat down to lunch _____ there was a knock at the door.

A. than

B. that

C. as

D. when

They hardly found her number when they called her.

They called her sooner or later.

They called her as soon as they found her number.

-
- C.They found her number as soon as they called her.
- D.They found her number sooner or later.
- 4.Never before_____ such a beautiful girl.
A. have I met B. have I meet C. I have met D. did I meet
5. Rarely_____ out after 9.00.
A. does my sister go B. did my sister go C. my sister goes D. my sister does go
6. Hardly_____ asleep when the phone woke him up.
A. the doctor fell B. the doctor had fallen
C. did the doctor fall D. had the doctor fallen
7. Edward_____ goes to bed before midnight.
A. hardly never B. seldom never C. hardly ever D. almost ever
- 8.She had only just put the telephone down when the boss rang.
A.She put the telephone down and the boss rang.
B.Hardly had she put the telephone down when the boss rang.
C.The boss rang back, but she put the telephone down.
D.She had put the telephone down, so she let it ring when the boss rang.
- 9.No sooner_____ than the boss came in.
A. he had left B. had he left C. he was leaving D. was he leaving
10. Not only_____ to take the medicine, but he also hit the nurse.
A. he refused B. does he refuse C. he was refused D. did he refuse
- 11.As soon as he waved his hand, she turned away.
A.He saw her turn away and he waved his hand.
B.He waved his hand and at once she turned away.
C.She turned away because he waved his hand.
D.No sooner had he waved his hand than she turned away.
- 12.Hardly had he left home_____ the telephone rang.
A. than B. that C. as D. when
13. Not only_____ the book, but he had seen the film as well.
A. he had read B. has he read C. had he read D. he did read
14. No longer_____ them to go to the music club.
A. their parents allow B. does their parents allow
C. do their parents allow D. has their parents allow
15. Only because she had to support her family_____ to leave school.
A. that Alice decides B. did Alice decide C. does Alice decide D. Alice decided
16. Hardly_____ at the bus stop when the next bus came.
A. they had arrived B. do they arrive C. arrived they D. had they arrived
17. So surprised at the news_____ that he couldn't say anything.
-

- A. did he become B. he became C. does he become D. did he became
18. Not only _____ shade and beauty, but they also reduce carbon dioxide.
A. trees provide B. provide trees C. do trees provide D. trees do provide
19. My grandfather _____ sleeps more than an hour a night.
A. hardly never B. has ever C. is always D. hardly ever
20. Not only _____ profits, but it also had to lay off workers.
A. did the company lose B. the company lose
C. had the company lose D. lost the company

Exercise 80. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. _____ so many people been out of work as today.
A. In the past, there never have B. Never before have
C. More than ever before D. Formerly, there never were
2. It was only then _____ how much I owed to her.
A. had I realize B. that I realized C. did I realize D. I did realize
3. Only by booking in advance _____ stay in the room you like.
A. can you B. you can C. you will D. you
4. As soon as he arrived at the airport, he called home.
A. He arrived at the airport sooner than he had expected.
B. No sooner had he arrived at the airport than he called home.
C. Calling home, he said that he had arrived at the airport.
D. He arrived at the airport and called me to take him home.
5. At no time _____ know the result of the recognition.
A. the public will B. will the public C. the public D. does the public
6. _____ in medicine relieve distress but they also prevent and cure illness.
A. Do computers B. computers
C. Computers not only D. Not only do computers
7. _____ reptiles hunt at temperatures of 12°C or below.
A. Seldom do B. Do seldom C. Do D. Seldom
8. _____ learn during their sleep by listening to tape records.
A. People rarely can B. Can people rarely
C. Rarely can people D. Can rarely people
9. _____ continental crust older than 200 million years.
A. It is nowhere the B. Nowhere is the
C. Is nowhere the D. Is the nowhere
10. Not only _____ in the field of psychology but animal behavior is examined as well.

-
- A. human behavior is studied B. is human behavior studied
 C. is studied human behavior D. human behavior
11. _____, he would have learned how to read.
 A. Had he been able to go to school as a child
 B. If he has been able to go school as a child
 C. If he could go to school as a child
 D. Were he able to go to school as a child
12. The sooner we solve this problem, the better it will be for all concerned.
 A. It would be better for all concerned if we can solve this problem soon.
 B. If all concerned are better, we can solve this problem soon.
 C. If we could solve this problem soon, it would be better for all concerned.
 D. If we can solve this problem soon, it will be better for all concerned.
13. _____ interested in that subject, I would try to learn more about it.
 A. Were I B. Should I C. I was D. If I am
14. _____ then what I know today, I would have saved myself a lot of time and trouble over the years.
 A. Had I known B. Did I know C. If I know D. If I would know
15. _____ resigned, we would have been forced to sack him.
 A. Had he not B. Hadn't he C. He had not D. He not had
16. It was _____ who broke the rules.
 A. he B. him C. his D. himself
17. It was in this park _____ we first met.
 A. when B. where C. that D. which
18. It is _____ that I would like to go to the beach.
 A. such a nice weather B. too nice weather
 C. such nice weather D. such weather nice
19. Here _____ some accounts that you must check.
 A. is B. are C. were D. was
20. _____, I'd have told you the answer.
 A. If you asked me B. Had you asked me
 C. You had asked me D. Unless you asked me

Exercise 81: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. - **Jack:** "What's your _____?" - **Minh:** "I'm Vietnamese."
 A. nation B. national C. nationality D. international
2. In this course, students receive _____ in the basic English grammar.

-
- A. instruct B. instructional C. instruction D. instructive
3. I _____ him for his honesty.
A. respective B. respectful C. respectable D. respect
4. All of the students appreciate the _____ of English learning.
A. import B. important C. importantly D. importance
5. We can enjoy live program through _____ satellites.
A. communicate B. communication C. communicative D. communicable
6. Learning English has become a _____ in our country.
A. necessitate B. necessary C. necessity D. necessarily
7. Computers are _____ used in schools and universities.
A. widely B. wide C. width D. widen
8. He retired at the _____ of 60.
A. age B. old C. older D. elder
9. My teacher always gives us a clear _____.
A. explain B. explained C. explanatory D. explanation
10. The _____ of the moon for the earth causes the tides.
A. attract B. attracted C. attractive D. attraction
11. Your bad result made me _____.
A. disappoint B. disappointment C. disappointed D. disappointing
12. Getting such a well-paid job is very beyond my _____.
A. expect B. expected C. expecting D. expectation
13. _____ is the activity of doing special exercises regularly in order to make your muscles grow bigger.
A. Wrestling B. Bodybuilding C. Weightlifting D. Badminton
14. He is a great sports _____. He rarely misses any sport games although he was busy.
A. enthusiast B. player C. energy D. programmer
15. In some most Asian countries women are undervalued and they never have the same _____ as men.
A. formality B. basis C. limit D. status
16. _____ is the study or creation of theories about basic things such as the nature of existence, knowledge, and thought, or about how people should live.
A. Politics B. Physics C. Business D. Philosophy
17. There's _____ to be frightened of the dog; he's quite harmless
A. no fear B. no need C. any reason D. a fear
18. Despite her undoubted ability at tennis, she never became the _____ of the local tennis club.
A. member B. winner C. champion D. partner
-

-
19. I would like to offer a small_____ to anyone who find my missing dog.
A. reward B. repayment C. receipt D. expense
20. In beach volleyball, Indonesia defeated Thailand in straight sets to take men's gold_____.
A. present B. award C. medal D. reward

Exercise 82: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. Not many places at the universities are left, so choice is on a severe_____.
A. limiting B. limitation C. delimitation D. limited
2. Higher education_____ have risen this year for the first time in more than a decade.
A. applies B. applications C. applicable D. applicants
3. A letter of_____ is sometimes really necessary for you in a job interview.
A. recommend B. recommended C. recommender D. recommendation
4. Qualifications and_____ are two most important factors that help you get a good job.
A. politeness B. experience C. attention D. impression
5. Doctors have to assume_____ for human life.
A. responsible B. responsibly C. responsibility D. responsables
6. _____ is increasing, which results from economic crisis.
A. Employment B. Unemployment C. Employ D. Unemployed
7. His work involves helping students to find temporary_____ during their summer vacation.
A. decision B. employment C. choice D. selection
8. She has made an_____ for the job as a nursery teacher because she likes children.
A. apply B. applicant C. application D. applicator
9. A_____ is an official document that you receive when you have completed a course of study or training.
A. vocation B. subject C. certificate D. grade
10. An_____ is a student at a university or college who is studying for his or her first degree.
A. undergraduate B. application C. insurance D. exam
11. Although they are twins, they have almost the same appearance but they are seldom in_____.
A. agree B. agreeable C. agreement D. agreeably
12. My parents will have celebrated 30 years of_____ by next week.
A. marry B. married C. marriageable D. marriage
13. Most of us would maintain that physical_____ does not play a major part in how we react to the people we meet.

-
- A. attract B. attractive C. attractiveness D. attractively
14. Reading the story of the _____ having her dress torn off in the lift reminded me of my friend's wedding.
- A. groom B. bride C. celibate D. groomsman
15. I do not think there is a real _____ between men and women at home as well as in society.
- A. attitude B. value C. measurement D. equality
16. A recent survey has shown that supporters of equal partnership in marriage are still in the _____.
- A. crowd B. particular C. majority D. obligation
17. Children who are isolated and lonely seem to have poor language and _____.
- A. communicate B. communication C. communicative D. communicator
- When you catch someone's _____ you do something to attract his attention so that you can talk to him.
- A. head B. hand C. eye D. ear
19. A whistle is the _____ for the football players to begin the match.
- A. communication B. instance C. attention D. signal
20. As an _____, Mr. Pike is very worried about the increasing of juvenile delinquency.
- A. educate B. education C. educator D. educative

Exercise 83: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. For more than ten years, we have seen the significant _____ in the economy of our country.
- A. develop B. developments C. developers D. developed
2. Many teenagers show signs of anxiety and _____ when being asked about their future.
- A. depress B. depression C. depressing D. depressed
3. Henry was a studious student. He needed no _____ to work hard.
- A. encourage B. encouraging C. encouragement D. encouraged
4. A _____ is money that is paid by a government or other authority in order to help an industry or business, or to pay for a public service.
- A. capital B. subsidy C. investment D. salary
5. The _____ challenge of economic reform was to solve the problems of motivating workers and farmers to produce a larger surplus.
- A. initial B. initiate C. initiative D. initiation
6. Since 1990, India has had high growth rates, and has emerged as one of the wealthiest _____ in the developing world.
- A. economics B. economies C. economists D. economically

-
7. Deserts are often composed of _____ and rocky surfaces.
A. water B. trees C. oil D. sand
8. More and more _____ are very excited at discovering as many interesting things in the deserts as possible.
A. explores B. explorations C. explorers D. exploratory
9. In the northern part of the Simpson Desert, the dunes are separated by _____ of low, open shrub land.
A. streets B. ways C. corridors D. lines
10. Advances in computing _____, from processing speed to network capacity and the internet, have revolutionized the way scientists work.
A. technology B. technological C. technologically D. technologist
11. A _____ is a small raised area of ground, like a very small hill.
A. slope B. hummock C. dune D. shrub
12. Scientific _____ helps to explore some places and discover more and more remote parts of the world.
A. survey B. lead C. research D. expedition
13. Several deserts are a quite vast and uninhabited _____.
A. plain B. territory C. corridor D. shrub
14. A _____ is a large animal that lives in deserts and is used for carrying goods and people.
A. slope B. dune C. spinifex D. camel
15. Only a few of the many species at risk of extinction actually make it to the lists and obtain legal _____.
A. protect B. protection C. protective D. protector
16. Many nations have laws offering protection to these species, such as forbidding hunting, restricting land development or creating _____.
A. agencies B. reserves C. awareness D. challenges
17. _____ is the existence of a wide variety of plant and animal species living in their natural environment.
A. Biodiversity B. Conservation C. Globe D. Individual
18. I must tell you about my _____ when I first arrived in London.
A. happenings B. experiences C. events D. incidents
19. _____ is the process by which a piece of land becomes dry, empty, and unsuitable for growing trees or crops on.
A. desert B. deserted C. desertify D. desertification
20. _____ is a branch of Natural Science, and is the study of living organisms and how they interact with their environment.
A. Biology B. Biological C. Biologist D. Biologically
-

Exercise 84: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

- The fire _____ by lightning.
A. must cause
B. must be causing
C. must have caused
D. must have been caused
- If she _____ rich, she would travel around the world.
A. would be
B. is
C. has been
D. were
- Mary was the last applicant _____.
A. to be interviewed
B. to be interviewing
C. to interview
D. to have interviewed
- Argentina _____ Mexico by one goal to nil in the match.
A. beat
B. scored
C. won
D. knocked
- The weather forecast says that _____ tomorrow.
A. it will snow
B. it will be snowed
C. it needs snowing
D. it must be snowed
- The car _____ by Karen. The keys are still on the table.
A. must have taken
B. must have been taken
C. can't have been taken
D. can't have taken
- I wish I _____ many times.
A. will not be interrupted
B. would not be interrupted
C. will not have interrupted
D. would not have been interrupted
- The package _____ carefully before it _____.
A. must be wrapped/ is posted
B. needs wrapping/ will be posted
C. should wrap/ is going to be posted
D. will be wrapping/ needs posting
- Jenny _____ leave the hospital only six hours after the baby was born.
A. was able to
B. could
C. can
D. is able to
- The garden _____. It has just started raining.
A. needn't water
B. needn't be watered
C. needn't be watering
D. needn't have watered
- **Anna:** "I saw Grace this morning at the bank."
- **Pete:** "It _____ Grace. She has been to Paris on her honeymoon."
A. can't be
B. must be
C. can't have been
D. must have been
- Can you please tell me some information that _____ to the job?
A. indicates
B. expresses
C. interests
D. relates
- Not all teenagers are well _____ for their future job when they are at high school.
A. interested
B. satisfied
C. concerned
D. prepared

-
14. Sometimes very young children have trouble _____ fact from fiction and may believe that dragons actually exist.
 A. to separate B. separating C. to be separated D. for separating
15. Doctors are supposed to _____ responsibility for human life.
 A. do B. take C. rush D. join
16. We enjoy _____ time together in the evening when the family members gather in the living room after a day of working hard.
 A. spending B. caring C. taking D. doing
17. It is parents' duty and responsibility to _____ hands to take care of their children and give them a happy home.
 A. shake B. hold C. join D. take
18. Something funny _____ in class yesterday.
 A. happened B. was happened C. happens D. is happened
19. "When can I have my car back?" – "I think it'll _____ late this afternoon."
 A. finish B. be finished C. have finished D. be finish
20. _____ sure that you follow the instructions carefully.
 A. Believe B. Try C. Do D. Make

Exercise 85: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. It _____ it is parents' responsibility to take good care of their children.
 A. commonly says that B. commonly to be said that
 C. is commonly said that D. is commonly saying
2. The earth _____ on the sun for its heat and light.
 A. is depend B. depending C. has depend D. depends
3. The National Hurricane Center is closely watching a strong hurricane. When it _____ the coast sometime tomorrow afternoon, it will bring with it great destructive force.
 A. reaches B. will reach C. is reaching D. reaching
4. Most children enjoy _____ with their parents and sib-ships.
 A. play B. to play C. playing D. played
5. _____ the eldest child, he works hard to help his parents support the family.
 A. Be B. Is C. To be D. Being
6. No matter what happens next I _____ help you.
 A. am B. have C. will D. would
7. _____ Robert lately?
 A. Did you see B. Have you seen C. Do you see D. Are you seeing
8. We _____ Switzerland four times during the 1970s.

- A. used to visit B. would visit C. visited D. will visit
9. She _____ trying to pass her driving test but fails every time.
A. kept B. is keeping C. had kept D. keeps
10. I _____ complete silence now while I try this experiment.
A. am wanting B. want C. did want D. have wanted
11. I love _____ films but I seldom find time to go the cinema.
A. see B. saw C. seen D. seeing
12. About 15,000 years ago, northern Wisconsin _____ under ice a mile deep.
A. buried B. was burying C. was buried D. had buried
13. In the last hundred years, traveling _____ much easier and more comfortable.
A. becomes B. has become C. became D. will become
14. In the 19th century, it _____ two or three months to cross North America by covered wagon.
A. took B. had taken C. had taken D. was taking
15. Alex is busy _____ for his exams.
A. to study B. studied C. studying D. studies
16. - **Max**: "I locked myself out of my apartment. I didn't know what to do."
- **Michel**: "You _____ your roommate."
A. could have called B. may have called
C. would have called D. must have called
17. I _____ with you on that subject.
A. am agree B. am agreed C. agreeing D. agree
18. She is never willing _____ any personal question.
A. answer B. to answer C. answering D. answered
19. _____ a doctor, you have to meet some certain requirements of the medical college.
A. To become B. Become C. Becoming D. Became
20. _____ John usually watch TV at the weekend?
A. Will B. Is C. Does D. Has

Exercise 86: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

1. Last year, my son was lost among the crowd when we have gone shopping.
A B C D
2. The problem has turned out to be more serious than we will have thought.
A B C D
3. Almost 300 million people had visited America's national parks every year.
A B C D

-
4. They have studied English before they went to London.
 A B C D
5. They has got married for 30 years by the end of this month.
 A B C D
6. Children's games, which are amusements involve more than one individual, appear to be culturally universal.
 A B
 D
7. Air pollution, together with littering, are causing many problems in large, industrial cities.
 A B C D
8. I get quite depressed when I think about the damage we are making to the environment.
 A B C D
9. Alike oxygen, which is chemically changed by our bodies into carbon dioxide, nitrogen is merely exhaled back into the air.
 A B
 C D
10. I think she will be suitable for the work because she has been working like a teacher
 A B C D
11. Passengers are required to arrive to the gate fifteen minutes before departure time.
 A B C D
12. Most doctors agree that it is not good for patients to lay in bed without exercising.
 A B C D
13. Employees who haven't seen the new regulations often ask for unnecessary questions;
 A B instead they should ask for a copy of the regulations and read them.
 C D
14. They will help you whenever you will ask them.
 A B C D
15. Going from air condition room to a natural environment can cause respiratory illness.
 A B C D
16. What I told her a few days ago were not the solutions to most of her problems.
 A B C D
17. When Sam will arrive, he will open the gift.
 A B C D
18. My father has ever told me that honesty was the best policy.
 A B C D
19. Dreaming, like all other mental processes, it is a product of the brain and its activity.
 A B C D
-

20. Dictionaries frequently explain the origin of the defined word, state its part of speech and A B C indication its correct use.

D

BÀI 3. GERUNDS - DANH ĐỘNG TỪ

I. Definition & Formation: Danh động từ là hình thức phái sinh của động từ và thực hiện các chức năng như các danh từ. Danh động từ được cấu tạo bằng cách thêm hậu tố *-ing* vào sau động từ gốc như các ví dụ dưới đây:

verbs	gerunds	verbs	gerunds
1. camp	camping	6. jog	jogging
2. dive	diving	7. hike	hiking
3. drive	driving	8. mountaineer	mountaineering
4. fish	fishing	9. shop	shopping
5. gamble	gambling	10. study	studying

Functions: Danh động từ có hầu hết các chức năng như danh từ. Trong khuôn khổ tài liệu này chỉ những chức năng cơ bản có liên quan đến các mảng kiến thức ôn tập thi THPT Quốc gia của danh động từ được mô tả và phân tích như sau:

1. Subject (S): Các danh động từ và cụm danh động từ thực hiện chức năng làm chủ ngữ cho động từ.

e.g. Fishing is his hobby.

S Vp

Getting into the city centre at this time of day isn't easy.

S Vp

Studying abroad is a new trend in Vietnam.

S Vp

Complement (C): Các danh động từ và cụm danh động từ thực hiện chức năng làm bổ ngữ cho động từ.

e.g. Her passion is studying.

S V C

What we really want is escaping from this terrible place.

S V C

Her favourite pastime is fishing.

V C

Compound nouns: Các danh động từ thực hiện chức năng tạo ra các danh từ ghép như sau:

a. Gerund-noun: Ghép một danh động từ với một danh từ để tạo thành một danh từ ghép:
e.g. fishing-rod cooking-apple driving license
wrapping paper writing paper cooking oil Note:

A fishing-rod is a rod for fishing.
A reading lamp is a lamp for reading.
etc.

b. Non-gerund: Ghép một danh từ với một danh động từ để tạo thành một danh từ ghép:
e.g. fruit-picking sky-diving bush walking
time-counting bodybuilding windsurfing
etc.

Object (O): Các danh động từ và cụm danh động từ thực hiện chức năng làm tân ngữ cho động từ hoặc giới từ như trình bày dưới đây:

Direct objects: Follow these certain verbs - Các danh động từ và cụm danh động từ thực hiện chức năng làm tân ngữ trực tiếp cho các động từ theo mẫu câu:

S – V – V+ing.

- | | | | |
|---------------|------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. admit | 9. enjoy | 17. mention | 25. recollect |
| 2. appreciate | 10. escape | 18. mind | 26. report |
| 3. avoid | 11. finish | 19. miss | 27. resent |
| 4. begin | 12. hate | 20. postpone | 28. resume |
| 5. consider | 13. keep | 21. practice | 29. risk |
| 6. continue | 14. like | 22. prefer | 30. resist |
| 7. delay | 15. enjoy | 23. quit | 31. suggest |
| 8. deny | 16. love | 24. recall | |

e.g. He admitted having stolen the car.
She denied having cheated during exam.
We finished working on our projects months ago.
Children practice speaking English day after day.

4.2. Verb preposition: Các danh động từ và cụm danh động từ thực hiện chức năng làm tân ngữ cho các động từ giới từ dưới đây theo mẫu câu:

S – V – pre – V+ing.

- | | | |
|------------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. apologize for | 13. get to | 25. plan on |
| 2. approve of | 14. give up | 26. put off |
| 3. believe in | 15. go back to | 27. rely on |

-
- | | | |
|------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| 4. care for | 16. hesitate about | 28. result in |
| 5. complain of | 17. insist on | 29. return to |
| 6. confess to | 18. keep on | 30. safe from |
| 7. consist of | 19. lead to | 31. succeed in |
| 8. count on | 20. long for | 32. take to |
| 9. depend on | 21. look forward to | 33. think about |
| 10. dream of | 22. mean by | 34. think of |
| 11. end in | 23. object to | 35. threaten with |
| 12. forget about | 24. persist in | 36. worry about |

e.g. He apologized to me for having broken the vase.

She complained of not having been informed about the meeting.

We gave up working on our projects months ago.

Children succeeded in speaking English day after day.

4.3. Adjective preposition: Các danh động từ và cụm danh động từ thực hiện chức năng làm tân ngữ cho các cụm tính từ giới từ dưới đây theo mẫu câu:

S - be - adj - pre - V+ing.

- | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| 1. absorbed in | 21. embarrassed at | 41. right in |
| 2. accustomed to | 22. excited about | 42. scared at (of) |
| 3. afraid of | 23. far from | 43. set on |
| 4. amused at | 24. fed up with | 44. sick of |
| 5. angry with | 25. fond of | 45. skilled in (at) |
| 6. annoy at | 26. fortunate in | 46. slow in |
| 7. ashamed of | 27. free from | 47. sorry for |
| 8. aware of | 28. frightened of | 48. successful in (at) |
| 9. bored with | 29. furious at | 49. sure of |
| 10. busy with | 30. given to | 50. surprised at |
| 11. capable of | 31. good at | 51. thankful for |
| 12. careful about | 32. grateful for | 52. tired of |
| 13. careful in | 33. happy in (at) | 53. unaware of |
| 14. careless of | 34. incapable of | 54. unconscious of |
| 15. certain about | 35. interested in | 55. upset at |
| 16. clever at | 36. keen on | 56. worried about |
| 17. conscious of | 37. nice about | 57. wrong in |
| 18. content with | 38. pleased at | |
| 19. delighted at | 39. proud of | |

20. different from 40. responsible for

e.g. The little boy was absorbed in playing video games.

The police are careful in investigating the case.

He is incapable of running such a big firm like that.

They are tired of waiting for the entrance exam results.

We were worried about travelling so far away from the head-quarter.

4.4. Idiom phrases: (phrases of words that have literal meanings) : Các danh động từ và cụm danh động từ theo sau các ngữ cố định sau:

- can't bear e.g. He can't bear staying at home all day.
- can't face e.g. The lady can't face meeting her ex-husband very often.
- can't stand e.g. I can't stand seeing him in this situation.
- can't help e.g. We couldn't help weeping when we reunited yesterday.
- feel like....e.g. I felt like going out right after he enter
- It's no use... e.g. It's no use explaining to such a mischievous boy.
- It's (not) worth... e.g. It's not worth buying a second hand phone like that.
- There's no point in... e.g. There's no point in quarreling as we have another ways.

4.5. Adjectives: Các danh động từ và cụm danh động từ theo sau các tính từ sau:

- | | | |
|----------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. amusing | 6. hopeless | 11. strange |
| 2. comfortable | 7. lovely | 12. useless |
| 3. difficult | 8. nice | 13. wonderful |
| 4. easy | 9. off | |
| 5. great | 10. pleasant | |

e.g. It's amusing spending time with you here.

It's hopeless waiting for an unpunctual person like him.

It's useless staying out waiting for the postman.

4.6. Noun preposition: Các danh động từ và cụm danh động từ theo sau các cụm danh từ giới từ sau:

- | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. choice of | 3. intention of | 5. possibility of |
| 2. excuse for | 4. method for | 6. reason for |

e.g. He has a choice of studying abroad.

They have no intention of selling their car.

He gave no reason for being late.

4.7. Complement of objects: Follow these below verbs - Các danh động từ và cụm danh động từ theo sau các tân ngữ của các động từ sau:

- | | | |
|----------|---------|------------|
| 1. call | 6. get | 11. notice |
| 2. catch | 7. hear | 12. see |

- | | | |
|-------------|------------|-----------|
| 3. discover | 8. imagine | 13. send |
| 4. feel | 9. keep | 14. set |
| 5. find | 10. leave | 15. stop |
| | | 16. watch |

e.g. He catches the boy climbing over the wall.
They saw an old man crossing the street.
We watched the ants fighting.

4.8. Subjunctive subject "it" or noun phrases;

Find/ found + it + V-ING:

e.g. He found the film annoying.
They find the long walk tiring.

When/ on /while / as + V-ING:

e.g. When opening the case, he found his lost notebook.
On reading the letter, she burst into tears.
While cleaning the room, she found a diamond ring.

Special verbs: Một số động từ đặc biệt mà theo sau có thể là gerunds, hoặc infinitives, cụ thể như dưới đây:

5.1. **stop:** mang hai nghĩa khác nhau khi theo sau các cấu trúc khác nhau như sau:

a. stop + to infinitives (= stop this work to start the other work)

Dừng một việc để thực hiện việc khác

e.g. He stops to smoke. (*He stops his work and starts smoking*)
We stopped to rest. (*We didn't work anymore, and we rested*)

b. stop + gerunds (= to give up a habit) Từ bỏ một điều gì đó

e.g. He stops smoking. (*He no longer smokes*)
They stopped fighting. (*They gave up fighting*)

5.2. **try:** mang hai nghĩa khác nhau khi theo sau các cấu trúc khác nhau như sau:

a. try + to infinitives (= manage successfully to do). Cố gắng làm gì đó

e.g. He tried to lift the case. (*He managed to lift the case and succeeded*)
He tried to work hard. (*He did with all his capability*)

b. try + gerunds (= to experience). Thử làm gì đó

e.g. He tried lifting the case. (*He wanted to know whether he could lift it*)
He tried smoking. (*He wanted to know how he was when he smoked*)

5.3. **remember:** mang hai nghĩa khác nhau khi theo sau các cấu trúc khác nhau như sau:

a. remember + to infinitives (= to make oneself aware of a task).

Ghi nhớ để thực hiện nhiệm vụ (luôn nhắc nhở bản thân thực hiện)

e.g. He remembered to lock the door. (*He had to lock the door*)

They remembered to buy food. (*They reminded themselves to do so*)
b. remember + gerunds (= to assure oneself a fulfilled task)
Nhớ về việc đã làm (bản thân chắc rằng mình đã thực hiện công việc đó)
e.g. He remembered locking the door. (*He was sure that he had locked the door*)
He remembered sending an email. (*He was sure that he had sent*)

5.4. **forget**: mang hai nghĩa khác nhau khi theo sau các cấu trúc khác nhau như sau:

a. forget + to infinitives (= to miss a task). Quên mất một nhiệm vụ

e.g. Sam forgot to buy food. (*Sam didn't buy food*)

He forgot to close the door. (*He didn't close the door*)

b. forget + gerunds (= the fulfilled task is forgotten). Quên một việc đã

làm e.g. Sam forgot buying food. (*He bought food but he didn't remember*)

She forgot refunding my money. (*She refunded but she forgot that*)

5.5. **regret**: mang hai nghĩa khác nhau khi theo sau các cấu trúc khác nhau như sau:

a. regret + to infinitives (not want to do this task)

Bận tâm/ tiếc khi phải làm (hành động chưa được thực hiện)

e.g. Kim regretted to say the truth. (*He didn't want to say the truth but he had to*)

He regretted to call the police. (*he didn't want but he had to*)

b. regret + gerunds (the task is done unexpectedly)

Hối tiếc về việc đã làm (hành động đã được thực hiện)

e.g. Kim regretted saying the truth. (*He said and he regretted what he'd done*)

He regretted not calling the police. (*He wished he had called the police*)

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 87. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. I remembered_____ up in that house with my brothers and sisters.

A. to grow B. to growing C. grow D. growing

2. They are going to_____ the pool to 1.8 meter.

A. deep B. depth C. deepen D. deeply

3. Is it possible for us to_____ to the cinema without him?

A. reach B. come C. arrive D. go

4. I want you to_____ your best clothes tonight for the party.

A. wore B. dress C. put on D. hung up.

5. She encouraged_____ the job.

A. to take the job B. that Frank should take C. Frank to take D. to Frank to take

I_____ you can swim so well and I can't.

A. hate B. hate it that C. hate that D. hate it

7. Michael made me _____ him next week.

- A. to promise to call B. to promise calling C. promise to call D. promise calling

8. We watched the cat _____ the tree.

- A. climbed B. climb C. had climbed D. was climbing

9. I wish you _____ stop interrupting me whenever I speak

- A. will B. would C. did D. might

10. I expect _____ a postcard from my father in England today.

- A. being received B. to receive C. receiving D. to be receiving

11. The child was told to _____ for being rude to his uncle.

- A. excuse B. apologize C. forgive D. confess

12. If you want your son to do better on his exams, I suggest he _____ harder.

- A. will study B. studies C. will study D. study

I am looking for a friendly young person to help _____ my elderly brother while I go out to work during the day.

- A. take after B. give care of C. put up with D. look after

14. _____ the class size is our school's immediate aim.

- A. Reduced B. Reduces C. Reducing D. Reduce

15. The plants need _____ before noon.

- A. watering B. to water C. be watered D. being watered

16. The school required that every student _____ before September 1st.

- A register B. registered C. registers D. was registered

17. She resented _____ waiting for hours in front of the cinema.

- A. to be kept B. keeping C. being kept D. being keeping

18. The government has tried to _____ the price of petrol, but they failed.

- A. bring on B. put in C. bring down D. get over

19. I'm _____ quite hungry now, aren't you?

- A. getting B. becaming C. turning D. growing

Our learning and teaching equipment needs _____ if further improvement is to be achieved.

- A. modernized B. to modernize C. modernizing D. modernize

Exercise 88. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

I don't like _____ when I am not there.

- A. criticizing B. being criticized C. to criticize D. to be criticized

2. Would you mind _____ me a hand?

- A. give B. gave C. to give D. giving
-

_____ is a sport in which you move along the surface of the sea or a lake on a long narrow board with a sail on it.

- A. Water polo B. Diving C. Windsurfing D. Scuba diving

4. Sometimes I do not feel like _____ to my sibling about my troubles.

- A. talk B. to talk C. talking D. talked

5. Their children very much enjoy _____ cartoons.

- A. watch B. watching C. watched D. to watch

6. I regret _____ that your application has been unsuccessful.

- A. say B. saying C. have said D. to say

The missing man's family is desperately seeking anyone _____ information about his activities or whereabouts.

- A. has B. having C. who have D. have

I'll never forget _____ that race. What a thrill!

- A. to win B. win C. being won D. winning

9. The painting was beautiful. I stood there _____ it for a long time.

- A. for admiring B. being admired C. admire D. admiring

10. I was enjoying my book, but I stopped _____ a program on TV.

- A. reading to watch B. to read to watch
C. to read for watching D. reading for to watch

- **Mike:** "Have you ever met the man _____ over there?"

Jane: "No. Who is he?"

- A. stands B. standing C. is standing D. who he is standing

12. My brother stopped _____ two years ago.

- A. smoked B. smoke C. to smoke D. smoking

13. Do you mind _____ the cooking?

- A. doing B. to do C. before D. then

14. When friends insist on _____ expensive gifts, it makes most people uncomfortable.

- A. them to accept B. they accepting C. their accepting D. they accept

A specific area of biotechnology that shows great promise for treatment and cure of life-_____ diseases.

- A. developing B. threatening C. hoping D. fitting

16. He tried to limit himself to _____ 10 cigarettes a day.

- A. be smoking B. have smoked C. smoke D. smoking

17. The girl said that she was afraid of _____ alone in dark.

- A. being left B. left C. to be interested D. interest

When he was questioned by the police, he admitted knowing about the wrongdoing, but denied _____ in any way.

A. to be involved B. involving C. having involved D. being involved
Sometimes very young children have trouble _____ fact from fiction and may believe that dragons actually exist.

A. to separate B. separating C. to be separated D. for separating
We enjoy _____ time together in the evening when the family members gather in the living room after a day of working hard.

A. spending B. caring C. taking D. doing

Exercise 89. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

She hated _____ football matches on T.V and that's why she scolded her husband.

A. watch B. watching C. watched D. to watch

2. Henry should have asked for help instead _____ to do it himself.

A. of trying B. to try C. try D. from trying

3. Who is the woman talking to Mai? I don't recall _____ her around the office before.

A. to have seen B. seeing C. to see D. being seen

4. Mr. Larry was upset by _____ him the truth.

A. our not having told B. us not tell C. we didn't tell D. not to tell

5. Do you have an excuse _____ late to class two days in a row?

A. for to be B. for being C. to be D. being

6. We considered _____ after work.

A. to go shop B. going shopping C. going to shop D. to go to shop

7. She is busy _____ for his exams.

A. to study B. studied C. studying D. studies

8. _____ is the activity of swimming underwater using special breathing equipment.

A. Synchronized swimming B. Rowing
C. Water polo D. Scuba-diving

When _____ a European, we should stick to the last name unless he suggests that we use his first name.

A. talking B. speaking C. discussing D. addressing

Before _____ for a position, check whether you can fulfill all the requirements from the employer.

A. deciding B. applying C. requiring D. demanding

11. There is only one student in the classroom _____ his lesson.

A. prepared B. to prepare C. preparation D. preparing

Industry in the area consisted mostly of food-processing plants and factories _____ consumer goods.

-
- A. renovating B. initiating C. developing D. producing
13. It's no good _____ your father about your failure.
A. to tell B. tell C. telling D. told
14. _____ is a sport in which people or teams race against each other in boats with oars.
A. Rowing B. Windsurfing C. Swimming D. Water polo
15. The equipment in our office needs_____.
A. moderner B. modernizing C. modernized D. modernization
16. _____ stamps is my hobby.
A. Collect B. Collection C. Collecting D. Collected
17. Do you know the woman_____ over there?
A. sits B. who sit C. sat D. sitting
18. We spent a year_____ this boat.
A. to build B. building C. over building D. for building
- My friend Mary is a blabbermouth! She can't resist_____ everyone what she heard from me.
A. tell B. to tell C. telling D. being told
20. _____, he gained lots of group-work skills.
A. Having lived abroad for years C. Live abroad for years
B. In order to live abroad for years D. To live abroad for years

Exercise 90: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. We are looking forward_____ you again soon.
A. to see B. to seeing C. saw D. have seen
2. My mother was afraid to let the boy_____ the tree.
A. to risk climbing B. to risk to climb C. risk climbing D. risk to climb
3. I remember_____ but he said I did not.
A. to buy him a book B. buy him a book
C. buying him a book D. to have bought him a book
4. Remember_____ John a present. Today is his birthday.
A. send B. to send C. sent D. sending
5. I suggest_____ some more mathematical puzzles.
A. do B. to do C. doing D. done
6. Would you mind_____ the door?
A. open B. to open C. opening D. opened
7. You should give up_____ or you will die of cancer.
A. smoke B. to smoke C. smoking D. smoked
-

-
8. The driver stopped_____ a coffee because he felt sleepy.
A. have B. to have C. having D. had
9. That old man tried to stop_____ because of his bad health.
A. smoke B. smokes C. smoked D. smoking
10. There is nothing prevent us from_____ the mystery of that palace.
A. discover B. discovery C. discovering D. discoveries
11. I must go now. I promise_____ late.
A. not being B. not to be C. to not be D. I won't be
12. Do you want_____ with you or do you want to go alone?
A. me coming B. me to come C. that I will come D. that I come
13. I'm sure I locked the door. I clearly remember_____ it.
A. locking B. to lock C. to have locked D. to be locked
- She tried to be serious, but she couldn't help_____.
- A. laughing B. to laugh C. that she laughed D. laugh
15. I like_____ the kitchen as often as possible.
A. not cleaned B. clean C. to clean D. that I clean
16. He tried to avoid_____ my question.
A. answering B. to answer C. answer D. how to answer
17. Could you please stop_____ so much noise?
A. to make B. make C. to have make D. making
18. I enjoy_____ to music.
A. listen B. to listen C. listening D. listened
19. Have you finished_____ your hair yet?
A. wash B. washed C. washing D. to wash
20. If you walk into the road without looking, you risk_____ knocked down.
A. been B. to be C. be D. being

Exercise 91: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. Mr. Thomas does not allow people_____ in his office.
A. smoke B. to smoke C. smoked D. smoking
2. We are not allowed_____ in that restricted area.
A. to enter B. enter C. entering D. to entered
3. You had better_____ at home until you feel better.
A. stay B. to stay C. staying D. stayed
4. The machine needs_____.
- A. to repair B. to be repaired C. repairing D. B and C are correct

-
5. I couldn't help _____ when I heard the story.
A. laughing B. to laugh C. laughed D. laugh
6. Peter usually helps his mother _____.
A. to do housework B. do housework
C. with housework D. all are correct
7. She used that money _____ a new car.
A. buy B. buying C. to buy D. for buying
8. Can you manage to finish _____ the report in the morning?
A. to write B. writing C. writing D. to write
9. Rex hotel was the best place for us _____.
A. stays B. staying C. to stay D. stay
10. You can't stop me from _____ what I want.
A. doing B. do C. to do D. that I do
11. Janet is 55, but she isn't going to retired yet. She wants to carry on _____.
A. to work B. work C. works D. working
12. Hello! Fancy _____ you here! What a surprise!
A. to see B. seeing C. seen D. see
13. I've put off _____ the letters so many times. I really must do it today.
A. write B. to write C. written D. writing
14. What a stupid thing to do! Can you imagine anybody _____.
A. being B. be C. to be D. were
15. She gave up _____ to find a job in this country and decided to go abroad.
A. apply B. to apply C. applying D. application
16. Suddenly he stopped the car in order _____.
A. smoke B. to smoke C. smoking D. has smoked
17. I can't bear _____ this dirty room.
A. seeing B. to see C. seen D. saw
18. Have you considered _____ to live in another country?
A. going B. to go C. gone D. goes
19. Cathy suggested _____ to the cinema.
A. went B. not to go C. not go D. going
20. They caused her _____ a lot.
A. cried B. crying C. to cry D. cry

Exercise 92: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. Paula quit _____ alcohol three years ago.

-
- A. to drink B. drank C. being drunk D. drinking
2. We must do something. We can't go on _____ like this.
A. to live B. living C. life D. live
3. My mother rarely allows me _____ things for myself.
A. to buy B. bought C. buy D. buying
4. She admitted _____ the money.
A. to steal B. steals C. steal D. having stolen
5. It was late, so we decided _____ a taxi home.
A. to take B. taken C. taking D. was taken
6. Kelvin was in a difficult situation, so I agreed _____ him some money.
A. lend B. lending C. to lend D. lender
7. How old were you when you learnt _____?
A. how to drive B. how driving C. how drive D. how drivers
8. I waved to Karen but I failed _____ her attention.
A. to be attracted B. to attract C. attracting D. attracted
9. We decided _____ because of the bad weather.
A. not going out B. not to go out C. not go out D. not gone
10. She always encouraged her son _____.
A. to jog B. jogged C. is jogging D. jogging
11. They seem _____ plenty of money.
A. are having B. to have C. having D. had
12. I like Jackson, but I think he tends _____ too much.
A. to talk B. talking C. talk D. is talking
13. Ann pretended _____ me as he passed me in the street.
A. not seeing B. not to seen C. not see D. not to see
14. I happened _____ that news from a magazine.
A. known B. to be known C. to know D. know
15. He has been on a diet to _____ weight.
A. have lost B. having lost C. to have lost D. lose
16. I don't know whether _____ for the job or not.
A. to applying B. apply C. to apply D. applied
17. Do you understand _____?
A. what done B. what doing C. what to do D. what do
18. Can somebody show me _____ the film in this cinema?
A. how to changed B. how change C. how changing D. how to change
19. Don't forget _____ the letter I gave you.
A. to post B. posting C. post D. posted
-

-
20. There was a lot of traffic, but we managed _____ to the airport in time.
A. are gone B. going C. to go D. to be going

Exercise 93: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. That hotel is so expensive. They _____ you sixty pounds for bed and breakfast.
A. charge B. fine C. take D. cost

2. I am considering _____ my job. Can you recommend a good company?
A. to move B. moving C. to change D. changing

A dry pass, meaning the ball does not _____ the water is thrown a few inches above the head of the catching player.

- A. catch B. hold C. swim D. touch

4. The train _____ by bad weather. I am not sure.

- A. might delay B. might be delaying
C. might have delayed D. might have been delayed

5. The room _____ once a day.

- A. should clean B. should be cleaning
C. should be cleaned D. should have cleaned

6. Two tablets _____ twice a day to have you recover from the illness quickly.

- A. must take B. must be taken C. must have taken D. must be taking

7. Barbara walked past me without saying a word. She _____ me.

- A. can't have seen B. can't see C. can't have been seen D. can be seen

8. The more goals the players _____, the more exciting the match became.

- A. marked B. made C. scored D. sprinted

9. How long does the play _____?

- A. last B. extend C. prolong D. stretch

I think the match _____. Everybody's gone into the stadium and you can hear them cheering.

- A. was started B. will be started C. must started D. must have started

11. We found the exam extremely easy. We _____ so hard.

- A. needn't study B. needn't be studying
C. needn't have studied D. needn't have been studied

12. The curtains have _____ because of the strong sunlight.

- A. faded B. fainted C. lightened D. weakened

13. The referee _____ the coin to decide which team would kick the ball first.

- A. caught B. threw C. cast D. tossed

There is plenty of money in our account so those cheques _____ to the bank today.

- A. needn't be taken B. needn't be taking C. needn't take D. needn't taking
15. We _____ with a swim in the lake.
A. took up B. gave in C. cooled off D. got out
16. The picnic _____ because Peter has just had a traffic accident.
A. will cancel B. will be cancelling
C. will be cancelled D. will have cancelled
17. Neil Armstrong was the first man _____ on the moon.
A. to walk B. walking C. has walked D. walked
18. To _____ a desert is a danger activity which requires careful preparation for risks.
A. comprise B. circle C. remain D. explore
19. Our industrial output _____ from \$2 million in 2002 to \$4 million this year.
A. rises B. has risen C. rose D. was rising
- Before _____ for a position, check whether you can fulfill all the requirements from the employer.
A. deciding B. applying C. requiring D. demanding

Exercise 94: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

Before to go out, remember to turn off the computer.

A B C D

You had better learning a foreign language before applying for a job.

A B C D

On to hear the telephone ring, I answered it immediately.

A B C D

There's something wrong with my computer. It may need to repair.

A B C D 5. It is a dull evening. We have nothing

doing.

A B C D

6. Gets the bad news from her parents, Lan immediately burst into tears.

A B C D 7. I regret not to help you but I really couldn't do anything else.

A B C D

Many scientists have tried to unlocking the genetic code.

A B C D 9. Open the letter from her mother, she

feels very happy.

A B C D

To reduce pollution, we have to stop to use many things that make our lives comfortable.

A B C D 11. It is very difficult for us to preventing forest fires during the drought.

A B C D

12. People want to conserve the environment, but they can't help pollute it.

A B C D

13. **An:** Let's go out for a drink. - **Ba:** I suggest staying at home and watch television.

A B C D

14. The government has had the ethnic minority settling down and provided them with land.

A B C D

15. There are many people visit the Pyramids in Egypt every day.

A B C D

We go to school enriching our mind with knowledge.

A B C D

17. It is very difficult for human beings fighting pollution.

A B C D

18. If we don't care conservation the environment, we will get unavoidable disasters.

A B C D 19. Would you mind give me a hand, I have a lot of things to do?

A B C D

You have to finished writing the report yourself.

A B C D

BÀI 4. INFINITIVES - ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN THỂ

I. Classification: Phân loại động từ nguyên thể

Full infinitive: With “**to**” – Động từ nguyên thể đầy đủ có “to” như:

e.g. He goes to Paris to learn French.

They would like to invite some guests to their house warming party.

Bare infinitive: Without “**to**” – Động từ nguyên thể khuyết không có “to” như:

e.g. My parent didn't let me do what I really liked.

We saw an old lady walk on the grass.

Perfect infinitive: Form “**have past participles**” – Động từ nguyên thể hoàn thành như:

e.g. He was believed to have escaped from the prison.

The man is thought to have escaped with a young girl.

Passive infinitive: Form “**be past participles**” – Động từ nguyên thể bị động như:

e.g. He was believed to be put into prison.

The man is said to be killed in an accident.

Positions and functions: Ở phần này vị trí và chức năng của các động từ nguyên thể đầy đủ “to-infinitive” được đề cập và mô tả như dưới đây:

1. Follow the verbs below: động từ nguyên thể đầy đủ “to-infinitive” đi sau các động từ dưới đây theo công thức:

S - V - to-infinitives

- | | | |
|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. agree | 18. fail | 35. omit |
| 2. arrange | 19. fear | 36. plan |
| 3. ask | 20. forget | 37. prefer |
| 4. attempt | 21. hate | 38. prepare |
| 5. begin | 22. help | 39. pretend |
| 6. care | 23. hesitate | 40. promise |
| 7. cease | 24. hope | 41. propose |
| 8. choose | 25. intend | 42. refuse |
| 9. claim | 26. learn | 43. seem |
| 10. come | 27. like | 44. start |
| 11. continue | 28. long | 45. strive |
| 12. decide | 29. love | 46. swear |
| 13. demand | 30. manage | 47. tend |
| 14. deserve | 31. mean | 48. threaten |
| 15. desire | 32. need | 49. try |
| 16. determine | 33. neglect | 50. want |
| 17. expect | 34. offer | 51. wish |

- e.g. He agreed *to wait for us*.
They determined *to get scholarship*.
Ha offered *to help the old lady*.
She wishes *to become a nurse*.

Follow the idiomatic phrases: động từ nguyên thể đầy đủ “to-infinitive” đi sau các cụm động từ như *make up one’s mind/ take care/ take the trouble/ make sure/ etc.*

- e.g. They couldn’t make up their mind *to go or not*.
They took the trouble of the company *to ask for a pay-rise*.
You should make sure *to apply for the job that suit you well*.

Follow the adjectives below: động từ nguyên thể đầy đủ “to-infinitive” đi sau các tính

từ dưới đây theo công thức:

S - be - adjectives - to-infinitives

- | | | |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. able | 21. easy | 41. proud |
| 2. afraid | 22. fortunate | 42. safe |
| 3. amused | 23. free | 43. scared |
| 4. annoyed | 24. frightened | 44. slow |
| 5. anxious | 25. furious | 45. sorry |
| 6. ashamed | 26. glad | 46. sufficient |
| 7. astonished | 27. good | 47. sure |
| 8. boring | 28. grateful | 48. surprised |
| 9. careful | 29. happy | 49. thankful |
| 10. certain | 30. hard | 50. unable |
| 11. content | 31. hopeless | 51. unusual |
| 12. crazy | 32. horrified | 52. unwilling |
| 13. curious | 33. impatient | 53. unwise |
| 14. dangerous | 34. impossible | 54. usual |
| 15. delighted | 35. interested | 55. useless |
| 16. determined | 36. keen | 56. willing |
| 17. difficult | 37. lucky | 57. wise |
| 18. distressed | 38. moved | 58. wonderful |
| 19. due | 39. pleased | 59. worthy |
| 20. eager | 40. possible | 60. wrong |

- e.g. She is too *annoyed* to say anything.
 They are *certain* to win the race.
 We are *eager* to start a new school year.
 The boy is too *horrified* to say a word.
 He was *wrong* to move to another city.

Follow WH-words: động từ nguyên thể đầy đủ “to-infinitive” đi sau các đại từ *what/ who/ whom/ which/ when/ where/ how/ etc.*

- e.g. She didn't know *what* to do next. We
 didn't decide *where* to go.
 They couldn't make up their mind *who* to trust.

Follow nouns/ pronouns of the verbs below: động từ nguyên thể đầy đủ “to-infinitive” đi sau các tân ngữ của các động từ dưới đây theo công thức:

S - V - O - to-infinitives

- | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. advise | 16. force | 31. order |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|

-
- | | | |
|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| 2. allow | 17. forbid | 32. permit |
| 3. ask | 18. get | 33. persuade |
| 4. assume | 19. guess | 34. prefer |
| 5. beg | 20. hate | 35. suspect |
| 6. believe | 21. imagine | 36. teach |
| 7. challenge | 22. instruct | 37. tell |
| 8. cause | 23. intend | 38. tempt |
| 9. command | 24. invite | 39. think |
| 10. compel | 25. know | 40. trust |
| 11. consider | 26. lead | 41. understand |
| 12. enable | 27. like | 42. urge |
| 13. encourage | 28. love | 43. want |
| 14. expect | 29. mean | 44. warn |
| 15. find | 30. observe | 45. wish |

e.g. She advised me not to take the job.
 They encouraged the son to fight.
 I would like you to apply for that job.
 We prefer him to stand up.
 He urged me to raise my hand.

2.6. To be demonstration, purposes, results: động từ nguyên thể đầy đủ “to-infinitive” được dùng như hình thức chỉ định, chỉ mục đích, kết quả hoặc theo sau *enough/ save money/ etc.*

e.g. The house, *to be demolished*, is very old.
 She has nothing *to eat*.
 We haven't got enough *to have one each*.
 They saved money *to go abroad*.

To form absolute phrases: động từ nguyên thể đầy đủ “to-infinitive” được dùng để tạo ra các cụm động từ chỉ hình thái lời nói như: *To tell the truth/ To cut a long short story/ etc.*

e.g. *To tell the truth*, she was a real liar.
To sum up, it's necessary to own a personal computer.

To form exclamation: động từ nguyên thể đầy đủ “to-infinitive” được dùng để chỉ hình thức cảm thán như sau:

e.g. *To think* she met with such a death!
 Oh! *To be* young again!

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 95. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. You should study hard to _____ your classmates.
A. catch sight of B. feel like C. get in touch with D. keep pace with
 2. Conservationists _____ that experiments on animals be stopped.
A. banned B. complained C. said D. recommended
 3. The child who was caught _____ was made to stand in the corner of the classroom.
A. behaving B. misbehave C. misbehavior D. misbehaving
 4. UNICEF _____ supports and funds for the most disadvantaged children all over the world.
A. presents B. assists C. provides D. offers
 5. Is there anyone who _____ the plan put forward by the committee?
A. differs B. disagrees C. objects D. opposes
 6. Doctors are supposed to _____ responsibility for human life.
A. do B. take C. rush D. join
 7. The policeman _____ me off with a warning as it was Christmas.
A. sent B. gave C. let D. set
 8. You need more exercise - you should _____ jogging.
A. try on B. take up C. carry out D. hold up
 9. Please _____ our letter of the 14th. We have not had a reply.
A. know B. knowledge C. acknowledge D. unknow
 10. He is going to take extra lessons to _____ what she missed while she was away.
A. catch up on B. cut down on C. put up with D. take up with
- It's essential that every student _____ the exam before attending the course.
A. pass B. passes C. would pass D. passed
- It's a formal occasion so we'll have to _____ to the nines- no jeans and pullovers this time!
A. hitch up B. put on C. wear in D. get dressed up
13. After her illness, Lam had to work hard to _____ his classmates.
A. catch sight of B. keep pace with
C. get in touch with D. make allowance for
 14. _____ for farming purposes, soil must contain the minerals plants require.
A. To be good B. Being good C. Be good D. That's good
 15. Please _____ your cigarette. I am going to get choked.
A. cut down B. blowout C. put aside D. put out
- The contract was signed by the three partners who thus agreed to _____ by terms and conditions contained in it.

- A. follow B. adhere C. abide D. stick
17. It is not easy to _____ our beauty when we get older and older.
A. develop B. maintain C. gain D. collect
18. She has been told by her doctor that she is _____, she cannot have a child of her own.
A. childish B. childhood C. childless D. child
19. The baby does nothing but _____ all day.
A. to sleep and to eat B. to sleep and eat
C. sleep and eat D. sleeping and eating
20. It is very difficult to _____ the exact meaning of an idiom in a foreign language.
A. convert B. convey C. exchange D. transfer

Exercise 96. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. A washing machine of this type will certainly _____ normal domestic use.
A. stand up for B. come up with C. get on to D. take down with
2. He is doing very badly but he tries to _____ appearances.
A. hold on B. stick to C. keep up D. make out
- He was so mean that he could not bear to _____ the smallest sum of money for the charity appeal.
A. part with B. pay off C. give in D. let out
4. The mother told her son _____ so impolitely.
A. not behave B. not to behave C. not behaving D. did not behave

Nam: "Excuse me! I'm looking for the library."

Mai: " _____ "

- A. Where're your eyes? It's in front of you. B. Look no further!
C. Find it yourself. I'm busy. D. Oh, nice to meet you.
6. "Can you _____ me a favor, Bill?" Peter said.
A. make B. get C. put D. do
7. Boy, stop reading _____ the book down and go to bed.
A. Take B. Put C. Set D. Pick
8. Our English teacher would like _____.
A. that we practicing our pronunciation B. us practicing our pronunciation
C. us to practice our pronunciation D. we to practice our pronunciation
9. We are not allowed _____ jeans at school.
A. wear B. to wear C. wearing D. worn
10. Jack offered _____ care of my garden while I was out of town.
A. take B. taking C. to have taken D. to take

11. I got Barbara _____ her car for the weekend.
 A. to let me to borrow B. let me borrow
 C. to let me borrow D. let me to borrow
12. _____ sure that you follow the instructions carefully.
 A. Believe B. Try C. Do D. Make
13. Professor Alan insisted that every student _____ their report by Friday.
 A. finish B. finishes C. finished D. had finished
14. The students refused _____ to school in the afternoon.
 A. returning B. to return C. to be returned D. return
- In view of the serious problems associated with the takeover the newspaper company has decided to _____ its offer of financial help.
 A. throw B. reject C. cancel D. deter
- The main problem was that the newly formed organization was not attracting enough work and so they decided to _____ the services of a public relations expert.
 A. call B. engage C. enter D. register
17. She is never willing _____ any personal question.
 A. answer B. to answer C. answering D. answered
18. If you need any support, you can rely on me to _____.
 A. set you down B. face up to you C. back you up D. put you through
19. The manager had his secretary _____ the report for him.
 A. to have typed B. typed C. type D. to type
20. Sports competition are held to _____ cooperation and solidarity among countries.
 A. grow B. upgrade C. spring up D. promote

Exercise 97. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. _____ a doctor, you have to meet some certain requirements of the medical college.
 A. To become B. Become C. Becoming D. Became
2. Our teacher often said, "Who knows the answer? _____ your hand."
 A. Rise B. Lift C. Raise D. Heighten
3. The tin opener seemed _____ for left-hand people.
 A. to be designed B. being designed C. to design D. designing
4. The doctor asked his patient to _____ down the coach.
 A. lay B. sit C. lie D. come
5. The inspector _____ to say whether there were any suspects.
 A. avoided B. denied C. refused D. stopped
6. Jack has decided to _____ the time he spends watching television.

- A. come up with B. cut down on C. run out of D. see to
7. Could you please come over? I need you _____ the refrigerator.
 A. help me moving B. helping me to move
 C. to help me move D. help me to move
8. He lost the race because he _____ petrol on the last lap.
 A. got out of B. ran out of C. made out of D. put out of
9. Is there a bank where I can _____ these pounds for dollars?
 A. exchange B. turn C. alter D. arrange
10. _____ the gold medal, he will have to do better than that
 A. To win B. So he win C. So that he win D. Winning
11. The twins look so much alike that almost no one can _____ them _____.
 A. take/apart B. tell/away C. tell/apart D. take/on
12. The players' protests _____ no difference to the referee's decision at all.
 A. did B. made C. caused D. created
13. Shy people often find difficult to _____ group discussion.
 A. take part in B. get on with C. take place in D. get in touch with
- The boy waved his hands to his mother, who was standing at the school gate, to _____ her attention.
 A. attract B. pull C. follow D. tempt
15. The boy made his father _____ him a new bag.
 A. buy B. to buy C. buying D. buys
16. We, the local residents were asked to _____ for the best activist of the local council.
 A. elect B. shortlist C. support D. vote
17. The dear waters here _____ some of the world's best divers
 A. draw attention B. attract C. appeal D. provoke
18. A lot of people who live in the outskirts have to _____ to work every day by train or tube.
 A. tour B. commute C. travel D. Move
19. It took the man forty five minutes to _____ to his office every day.
 A. riding B. ride C. rode D. rides
20. Mary was the last applicant _____.
 A. to be interviewed B. to be interviewing
 C. to interview D. to have interviewed

Exercise 98: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. Mr. Brown didn't afford _____ a car.
 A. buy B. to buy C. buying D. bought

2. We've got a new computer in our office. I haven't learnt how _____ it yet.
A. to operate B. operating C. operate D. be operated
3. We were all too afraid to speak. Nobody dared _____ anything.
A. saying B. being said C. says D. to say
4. They had a boy _____ that yesterday.
A. done B. to do C. did D. do
5. We get our mail _____ yesterday.
A. been delivered B. delivered C. delivering D. to deliver
6. Tom hopes _____ a solution soon.
A. to be found B. finds C. to find D. finding
7. You must _____ a lot of people here.
A. to know B. knowing C. know D. known
8. This involves having a good memory and _____ hard.
A. work B. to work C. worked D. working
9. They claimed _____ the problem.
A. have solved B. solve C. solving D. to have solved
10. I've been invited to the party but I don't know _____ or not.
A. whether I should to go B. whether go
C. whether going D. whether I should go
11. Health experts advise _____ breakfast.
A. us not skipped B. us not skipping C. us not to skip D. us not skip
12. I would rather _____ this job.
A. not taken B. not take C. not to take D. not taking
13. I spent some time _____ around the shops in Elizabeth street yesterday.
A. looked B. be looking C. look D. looking
14. She will probably offer _____ the stereo for you.
A. to repair B. to be repairing C. repair D. repairing
15. She always proves _____ a true friend.
A. be B. being C. to been D. to be
16. There's no point in _____ that.
A. persuade him to do B. persuading him to do
C. persuading him do D. persuading him doing
17. If you delay _____ it back, you will risk _____ your rights as a customer.
A. to take/ losing B. taking/ to lose
C. being taken/ losing D. taking/ losing
18. You should be willing _____.
A. to do that B. that do C. doing that D. to be done that

19. Just keep on _____ what you like.
A. do B. did C. doing D. done
20. He made me _____ it all over again.
A. do B. doing C. to do D. done

Exercise 99: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. It is easy _____ wise after the event.
A. be B. to be C. being D. is
2. It is up to you _____ the laws of your own country.
A. learn B. to learn C. learning D. learned
3. Aren't you fed up _____ the same thing every day?
A. of doing B. with doing C. with do D. on doing
4. Are you ready _____?
A. cooperate B. cooperated C. to cooperate D. cooperation
5. There are a lot of people _____ London every day.
A. visit B. to visit C. visiting D. have visited
6. We enjoy _____ that film.
A. see B. to see C. seeing D. seen
7. _____ is my hobby.
A. Collect B. Collecting C. Collected D. A and C
8. It's no use _____ about pollution in big cities.
A. to complain B. complain C. complaining D. complained
9. Excuse me for _____ late and it is very kind of you _____ for me
A. to be/ to wait B. been/ waiting C. being/ to wait D. being/ waiting
10. _____ her sweetheart, she smiled happily.
A. Look B. To look C. Looking D. Looked
11. When _____ each other, the American women do not usually shake hands.
A. meet B. to meet C. met D. meeting
12. On _____ at the airport, I was very worried to find that no one _____ for me.
A. arriving/ was waiting B. arrive/ was waiting
C. arriving/ had waiting D. arrive/ had been waited
13. _____ a foreign language requires great effort.
A. Learn B. To learn C. Learning D. B and C
14. I regret _____ you that we cannot approve your application.
A. inform B. to inform C. informed D. informing
15. The rocks in the soil made _____ more difficult.

- A. to plough B. ploughed C. ploughing D. plough
16. I remember _____ you somewhere but I'm sorry I forget your name.
A. meet B. to meet C. met D. meeting
17. Would you mind _____, please.
A. to answer the phone B. answer the phone
C. answering the phone D. to the phone answered
18. My mother told me _____ hope.
A. not to give up B. not to giving up C. not giving up D. not give up
19. My father wanted me _____ a pilot.
A. become B. becoming C. to become D. became
20. I'm hungry. Is there any food _____?
A. to be eaten B. to eat C. eating D. for me eating

Exercise 100: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. My brother _____ his driving test when he was 18.
A. has passed B. passes C. was passing D. passed
- Because it rained very heavily all day they had to _____ the garden party until the following Sunday.
A. prearrange B. rearrange C. postpone D. preserve
3. The next meeting _____ in May.
A. will hold B. will be held C. will be holding D. will have held
4. The manager _____ him for a minor mistake.
A. accused B. charged C. complained D. blamed
5. I _____ hurry. It's nearly 8.00, and my first class starts at 8.15.
A. would prefer B. can't help C. would rather D. had better
6. _____ in simpler words?
A. Has this issue expressed B. Can't this issue express
C. Can this issue express D. Couldn't this issue be expressed
7. All traffic laws _____.
A. is observed B. must be observed
C. must have observed D. had better observe
8. He'd hardly finished doing his homework when you arrived, _____?
A. didn't he B. had he C. would he D. hadn't he
9. Tomatoes _____ before they are completely ripe.
A. can be picked B. can pick C. needn't pick D. should be picking
- I can't _____ this noise any longer. I'm going to write a letter of complaint about this

problem.

A. put up with B. take away from C. get back to D. make out of

11. This letter _____, not handwritten.

A. should be typing B. should be typed
C. needn't type D. needn't be typed

12. You _____ touch that switch, whatever you do.

A. mustn't B. needn't C. won't D. wouldn't

13. Susan _____ hear the speaker because the crowd was cheering so loudly.

A. mustn't B. couldn't C. can't D. needn't

You _____ be rich to be a success. Some of the most successful people I know haven't got a penny to their name.

A. needn't B. couldn't C. mayn't D. mustn't

15. If she _____ sick, she would have gone out with me to the party.

A. hasn't been B. wasn't C. weren't D. hadn't been

16. A water polo cap is used to _____ the players' heads and to identify them.

A. tie B. penalize C. protect D. move

If a defender _____ with a free throw, holds or sinks an attacker, he is excluded from the game for twenty seconds.

A. punches B. passes C. plays D. interferes

- **Jane:** Oh no! I completely forgot we were supposed to pick Jenny up at the airport this morning.

- **Maria:** She _____ there waiting for us.

A. needn't sit B. might still sit
C. must still be sitting D. should have sat

19. This director has _____ some famous films but I think this one is the best.

A. done B. conducted C. made D. composed

20. Hellen often wears beautiful new clothes. She _____ be very rich.

A. must B. could C. might D. needn't

Exercise 101: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. Hurry up, or they _____ serving meals by the time we get to the restaurant.

A. stopped B. will have stopped
C. are stopping D. would stop

2. During the Enlightenment, the powers and uses of reason _____.

A. were stressed B. stressed C. were stressing D. had stressed

If you _____ a book, you have a brief look at it without reading or studying it seriously.

- A. dip into B. put away C. pick up D. put down
That style of dress_____ have been designed by Titian, because it wasn't worn till after his death.
- A. wouldn't B. shan't C. can't D. oughtn't
5. This book_____ to Peter. It is not mine.
- A. possesses B. owns C. has D. belong
6. It was announced that neither the passengers nor the driver_____ in the crash.
- A. were injured B. are injured C. was injured D. have been injured
7. The main task of a defender in a sport game is to_____ the opponents from scoring.
- A. prevent B. preventing C. prevention D. preventable
Peter was asked to_____ to a newspaper article making predictions for technological progress in 10 years.
- A. expect B. invent C. develop D. contribute
My favorite team_____ 15 games so far this season, and will probably win the championship.
- A. are winning B. won C. have won D. will win
10. You should have_____ your composition carefully before you handed it in.
- A. seen through B. thought of C. looked in D. gone over
"Don't worry about your necklace. Give it to me and I promise to_____ great care of it."
A. bring B. take C. keep D. make
Washing machines, vacuum cleaners, and dish washers are labor-_____ devices which help us do housework easily and quickly.
- A. improving B. making C. saving D. employing
13. The old houses were_____ down to make way for a block of flats.
- A. banged B. hit C. knocked D. put
14. The Sahara contains complex linear dunes that are_____ by almost 6 kilometers.
- A. developed B. separated C. lay D. located
15. Nowadays children would prefer history_____ in more practical ways.
- A. be taught B. teach C. to be taught D. to teach
16. Thanks to pictures taken by satellites, deserts have not _____ a mystery in our time.
- A. hidden B. intended C. remained D. attained
17. Those letters_____ now. You can do the typing later.
- A. need typing B. needn't be typed C. need to type D. needn't typing
18. The case against the corruption scandal was_____.
- A. discarded B. refused C. eliminated D. dismissed
19. The museum is open to everybody. It_____ between 9 a.m and 5 p.m.
- A. visits B. visited C. can visit D. can be visited

20. A penalty shot is _____ when a major foul is committed inside the 5-meter line.
A. prevented B. awarded C. committed D. ranged

Exercise 102: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

Minh is a bit tired. He does not feel like eaten anything.

A B C D

2. I noticed the boy to creep into the house through a hole at the foot of the wall.

A B C D

There comes my bus! I must go now. Don't forget giving me a call.

A B C D

Faraday's father was not rich enough to sending him to school.

A B C D

She left the house in a hurry without to say goodbye to us.

A B C D

I remember that I have something new to telling you.

A B C D

7. I couldn't help get angry when he told me about the problem.

A B C D

8. Language coming from Latin, such as French, Italian and Spanish are easy learning.

A B C D

I enjoy not have to get up early when I'm on holiday.

A B C D

10. I don't recommend to eat in that restaurant. Its food is awful.

A B C D

The police stopped everybody enter the house.

A B C D

12. Knew that he was poor, I offered to pay his fare.

A B C D

13. If you don't allow me entering, I'll break down the door.

A B C D

Alan advised me reading some more books.

A B C D

15. Leaves kept to fall and I felt tired of keeping the yard clean.

A B C D

I am only interesting in what he did.

ABCD

Would you please tell me how doing this?

- A B C D

18. My parents never let me going out in the evening.

- A B C D

You should do nothing but waiting.

- A B C D

20. Gloria made a lot of friends by work in the cafeteria.

- A B C D

BÀI 5. THE PASSIVE VOICE - THỂ BỊ ĐỘNG

I. The usage and form: Định nghĩa và cấu trúc của câu bị động.

Câu bị động được sử dụng khi người ta đã biết rõ người thực hiện hành động, khi người ta không muốn nhắc tới chủ thể của hành động, hoặc chủ thể của hành động là chung chung... Câu bị động có cấu tạo chung bằng dạng của động từ "to be" theo sau bởi phân từ quá khứ của động từ chủ động nhưe công thức sau:

S - be - Past Participles

e.g. 1. Hurricanes destroy a great deal of property each year.

Subject present complement

A great deal of property is destroyed by hurricanes each year.

singular subject be past participle

The tornado destroyed thirty houses.

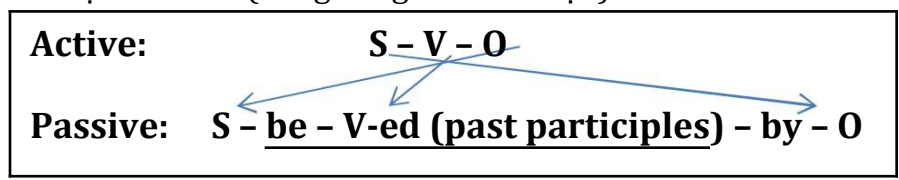
Subject past complement

Thirty houses were destroyed by the tornado.

plural subject be past participle

Turning from active to passive voice: Biến đổi từ câu chủ động sang câu bị động:

1. Formation: Về mặt cấu trúc (bằng công thức cấu tạo)



e.g. 1. The committee is considering several new proposals.

Subject present progressive complement

Several new proposals are being considered by the committee.

plural subject auxiliary be past participle

The committee was considering several new proposals.

Subject past progressive complement

Several new proposals were being considered by the committee.

plural subject auxiliary be past participle

Rules: Về mặt qui tắc (bằng ngôn từ)

Step 1: (Bước 1) Chuyển tân ngữ của câu chủ động thành chủ ngữ của câu bị động.

Step 2: (Bước 2) Chuyển động từ chính của câu chủ động thành phân từ quá khứ của câu bị động, trước phân từ này điền một hình thức của động từ "to be" sao cho cùng thì với thì của động từ chính ở câu chủ động và phù hợp với chủ ngữ của câu bị động.

Step 2: (Bước 2) Chuyển Chủ ngữ của câu chủ động thành tân ngữ của giới từ "by" ở câu bị động.

e.g. 1. The company has ordered some new equipment.

subject present perfect complement

Some new equipment has been ordered by the company.

Singular subject auxiliary be past participle

The company had ordered some new equipment before the strike began.

subject past perfect complement

Some new equipment had been ordered by the company before the strike began.

Singular subject auxiliary be past participle

The manager should sign these contracts today.

Subject modal + verb complement

These contracts should be signed by the manager today.

Subject modal be past participle

Somebody should have called the president this morning.

Subject modal + perfect complement

The president should have been called this morning.

Subject modal have be past participle

3. Notes: (chú ý)

- Nếu chủ ngữ của câu chủ động là people, someone, somebody, no one, nobody, they,... ta không phải thực hiện bước thứ 3.

Khi chuyển từ câu bị động sang câu chủ động ta thực hiện các qui trình ngược so với qui tắc trên đây.

e.g. They will build a bridge over the river next year.

A bridge over the river will be built next year. (without "by them")

Someone stole his car.

S - am/ are/ is - past participles - (by O)

S - am/ are/ is - being - past participles - (by O)

S - was/ were- past participles - (by O)

2016

His car was stolen. (without “*by someone*”)

III. Example of various passive sentences: Một số ví dụ về các hình thức bị động cơ bản

1. Simple present passive: Bị động ở hiện tại thường

a. Form:

A: The teacher punishes the boy.

P: The boy is punished by the teacher.

A: The man kicks the ball.

P: The ball is kicked by the man.

A: People speak English everywhere. → P:

English is spoken everywhere.

Present progressive passive: Bị động ở hiện tại tiếp diễn

a. Form:

A: The teacher is explaining the rules.

P: The rules are being explained by the teacher.

A: The boy is doing his homework.

P: Homework is being done by the boy.

A: They are talking about the pollution problems. → P:

The pollution problems are being talked about.

Present perfect passive: Bị động ở hiện tại hoàn thành

a. Form:

S - have/ has - been - past participles - (by O)

Examples:

A: The teacher has given marks to ten students.

P: Marks have been given to ten students by the teacher.

A: The man has just bought a new car.

P: A new car has just been bought by the man.

A: They have changed the date of the meeting. → P:

The date of the meeting has been changed.

Simple past passive: Bị động ở quá khứ thường

a. Form:

A: The teacher punished the boy.

P: The boy was punished by the teacher.
A: The man kicked the ball.
P: The ball was kicked by the man.
A: Someone took the chairs away. → P:
The chairs were taken away.

Past progressive passive: Bị động ở quá khứ tiếp diễn

a. Form: **S - was/ were - being - past participles - (by O)**

Examples:

A: The teacher was explaining the rules.
P: The rules were being explained by the teacher.
A: The boy was doing his homework.
P: Homework was being done by the boy.
A: They were talking about the pollution problems. → P:
The pollution problems were being talked about.

Past perfect passive: Bị động ở quá khứ hoàn thành a.

Form:

S - had - been - past participles - (by O)

b. Examples:

A: The teacher had given marks to ten students.
P: Marks had been given to ten students by the teacher.
A: The man had just bought a new car.
P: A new car had just been bought by the man.
A: They had changed the date of the meeting. → P:
The date of the meeting had been changed.

Future passive: Bị động ở tương lai

S - will be - past participles - (by O)

a. Form:

A: The teacher will punish the boy.
P: The boy will be punished by the teacher.
A: The man will kick the ball.
P: The ball will be kicked by the man.
A: People will appreciate his contribution. → P:
His contribution will be appreciated.

Future perfect passive: Bị động ở tương lai hoàn thành

S - mV - be - past participles - (by O)

a. Form:

S - will have been - past participles - (by O)

Examples:

A: The teacher will have finished the work by lunch time.

P: The work will have been finished by lunch time by the teacher.

A: The man will have completed the essay in forty five minutes.

P: The essay will have been completed in forty five minutes by the man.

A: They will have done all the exercises. → P:

All the exercises will have been done.

Passive voice using modal verbs: Bị động với các động từ khuyết thiếu

a. Form:

A: The teacher may give presents to the winners.

P: The winners may be given presents by the teacher.

A: The man must use this machine.

P: This machine must be used by the man.

A: They have to make a decision. → P:

A decision has to be made.

Other passive voice: Các hình thái bị động khác

a. To have somebody do something = to get somebody to do something

e.g. Mary had John wash the car. (John washed the car)

Mary got John to wash the car.

b. To have/get something past participles

e.g. Mary had the car washed.

Mary got the car washed.

c. To want/like something past participles

e.g. What do you want done to your car?

I'd like it repaired and cleaned/ I want it repaired and cleaned. **d. To make/ cause O past participles**

e.g. Working all night on Friday made me tired on Saturday? or

The hurricane caused many water front houses damaged. or

Wearing flowers made her more beautiful. **e. To find/ get O**

past participles/ adjectives e.g. I found her quite interesting to talk to. or My sister found snakes frightening.

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 103: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

I had my nephew paint the gate last week.

I had _____.

He recommends that we should stay at the city center.

It is _____.

Someone is going to serve Jack breakfast in bed on his birthday

Jack is _____.

People think that he is the best football player in the 20th century.

It is _____.

They have her tell the story again.

They _____.

My father waters this flower every morning.

→This flower _____.

John gets his sister to clean his shirt.

John gets _____.

The waiter brings me this dish.

This dish _____.

John invited Fiona to his birthday party last night.

Fiona _____.

I will get the dressmaker to make a new dress.

I will _____.

She will have Peter wash her car tomorrow.

She will _____.

Anne had had a friend type her composition.

Anne has _____.

They find that the job is not suitable for a girl like her.

It is _____.

She showed her ticket to the airline agent.

Her ticket _____.

Her mother is preparing the dinner in the kitchen.

The dinner _____.

Rick will have a barber cut his hair.

Rick _____.

Our friends send these postcards to us.

These postcards _____.

18. We should clean our teeth twice a day.

→Our teeth _____.

He had a mechanic repair his car.

He had _____.

She left her relatives five million pounds.

Five million _____.

Exercise 104: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

The teacher explained that this powerful engine pulled the train.

It was _____.

Our teachers have explained the English grammar.

The English _____.

Some drunk drivers caused the accident in this city.

The accident _____.

Their grandmother told them this story when they visited her last week.

This story _____.

Tom will visit his parents next month.

Tom's _____.

Tim ordered this train ticket for his mother.

This train _____.

The manager didn't phone the secretary this morning.

The _____.

They have decided that the company will go to the beach together at the weekend.

It has been _____.

The committee appointed Alice secretary for the meeting.

Alice was _____.

He told me that his football team had played well last season.

I was _____.

Did Mary this beautiful dress?

Was _____?

She is going to buy a cookery book next month.

A cookery _____.

I won't hang these old pictures in the living room.

These _____.

They find the new project worthless.

The new _____.

15. The German didn't build this factory during the Second World War.

This factory _____.

They have persuaded me that they will go with me to the stadium.

I have _____.

The secretary didn't take the note to the manager.

The note _____.

The Greens are going to paint this house and these cars for Christmas Day.

This house _____.

The farmer is going to enlarge the farm.

The farm _____.

Ann had fed the cats before she went to the cinema.

The cats _____.

Exercise 105: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

The students have discussed the pollution problems since last week.

The pollution _____.

They are going to clear those slums.

Those _____.

The director notifies all the workers that they will have to work extra hard this month.

All the _____.

Have the thieves stolen the most valuable painting in the national museum?

Has the most _____.

They are going to mend the roof tomorrow morning.

The roof _____.

Some people will interview the new president on TV.

The new _____.

She often gets the technician to maintain the heater.

She often _____.

I must have the dentist check my teeth.

I must _____.

She will have a veterinary surgeon examine her dog.

She _____.

The shop assistant handed these boxes to the customer.

These boxes _____.

How many languages do they speak in Canada?

How _____?

We believed that Alice would pass the driving test.

Alice _____.

They had the police arrest the shoplifter.

They had _____.

Have you sent the Christmas cards to your family?

Have the _____?

Are you going to repair those shoes?

Are those _____?

Are you going to have the shoemaker repair your shoes?

Are you _____?

You didn't show me the special cameras.

The special _____.

He has broken his nose in a football match.

His nose _____.

He lends his friend his new shoes.

His new _____.

Have you finished the above sentences?

Have above _____?

Exercise 106: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

He discovered that this cotton was grown in Egypt.

It was _____.

The board awarded the first prize to the reporter.

The first prize _____.

We had a man take this photograph when we were on holiday last summer.

We had _____.

He hides the broken cup in the drawer.

The _____.

They promise that the performance will start on time.

It is _____.

They keep this room tidy all the time.

This room _____.

The Greens had a carpet cleaner clean their carpet.

The Greens _____.

That officer announced that the meeting was delayed until next week.

It was _____.

They all voted the party a great success.

The party _____.

We had them repair our car.

We had _____.

Some people inform me that the director is going to take a business trip to England.

I am _____.

I have the hairdresser cut my hair.

I have _____.

We gave Ann some bananas and some flowers.

Ann _____.

She reported that the flowers were killed by frost.

The flowers _____.

Lan got his brother to clean the windows last week.

Lan got _____.

They moved the fridge into the living room.

The fridge _____.

They told me that you were the best architect in this city.

I _____.

Jill got the tailor to make her new dress.

Jill got her _____.

She brought some cups of tea to the visitors in the next room.

Some cups _____.

You should open the wine about three hours before you use it.

The wine _____.

Exercise 107 Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. In order to avoid boredom, the most important thing is to keep oneself _____.

A. occupational B. occupied C. occupation D. preoccupied

Many lists of "Wonders of the World" _____ during the Middle Ages.

A. said to be existed B. are said to exist C. said to exist D. are said to have existed

3. Up _____ when it saw its master.

A. did the dog jump B. jumped the dog C. the dog jumped D. does the dog jump

4. Traffic is being _____ from the High Street while the water main is under repair.

A. subverted B. averted C. diverted D. perverted

5. _____ in 1635, the Boston Latin School is the oldest public school in the United States.

A. To found B. Founding C. Founded D. Having founded

-
6. The room_____ every day by Tommy.
A. cleans B. is cleaned C. is being cleaned D. cleaned
7. They_____ English right now.
A. are studying B. is being studied C. study D. are studied
8. They had their purchases_____ by the shop owner.
A. deliver B. delivering C. to deliver D. delivered
- Joe's leg_____ while he was playing football.
A. broke B. was breaking C. was broken D. was being broken
10. When the accident happened, the police_____ immediately.
A. were called B. called C. were calling D. had called
11. Nobody_____ in the accident, so the ambulance_____.
A. was injured/ wasn't needed B. was injured/ not needed
C. injured/ wasn't needed D. injured/ needed

They have canceled all flights because of the bad weather.

All flights were canceled because of the bad weather.

All flights have canceled because of the bad weather.

All flights has been canceled because of the bad weather.

All flights have been canceled because of the bad weather.

How do people learn languages?

A. How are languages learned?

B. How do languages learn?

C. How are languages learn?

D. How do languages learned?

14. Her purse_____ from her handbag, although she had put it there a moment before.
A. is disappeared B. disappeared C. was disappearing D. disappears
15. We have had the roof of our house _____
A. to replace B. replace C. replaced D. been replaced
16. He was completely_____ by her tale of hardship.
A. taken away B. taken down C. taken in D. taken up
17. Sarah is a young girl with_____ and a straight nose.
A. almond-shaped eyes B. almond-eyed shape
C. eyes shaped almond D. almond-shape eyed
18. Oh, no! My wallet has been _____.
A. robbed B. picked C. stolen D. theft
19. Not having written about the required topic, _____ a low mark.
A. the teacher gave me B. I was given
C. the teacher gave D. my presentation was given
20. Instead of_____ about the good news, Peter seemed to be indifferent.
A. exciting B. being excited C. to excite D. to be excited

Exercise 108. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

- Although younger than the other children, she demanded _____ in the game.
A. to include
B. to be included
C. to have included
D. being including
 - The flight instructor, _____ at the air base, said that order not to fight had been given.
A. when interviewed
B. when his interview
C. when he interviewed
D. when interviewing
 - None of the people _____ to the party can come.
A. invite
B. invited
C. inviting
D. to invite
 - _____ drivers endanger their lives and those of other road users.
A. Drunkard
B. Drunken
C. Drinking
D. Drunk
 - Julia prefers to be her own boss and ____ her own business.
A. run
B. charge
C. form
D. make
 - The party was excellent, and I'd like to thank all the _____.
A. concerned people
B. responsible people
C. people that concerned
D. people concerned
 - _____ in 1635, the Boston Latin School is the oldest public school in the United States.
A. Founding
B. Founded
C. To found
D. Having founded
 - The building was badly _____ in the fire.
A. damaged
B. wounded
C. injured
D. hurt
 - _____ is someone who can reduce spending without hurting morale.
A. Being needed
B. What is needed
C. That which needs
D. What needs
 - The question of late payment of the bills was _____ again at the meeting
A. raised
B. taken
C. risen
D. brought
 - It is important that _____.
A. keeping an exact record
B. an exact record to be kept
C. an exact record be kept
D. to keep an exact record
 - Only during the early twentieth century _____ in the United States.
A. was liquor prohibited
B. liquor was prohibited then
C. when liquor was prohibited
D. that liquor was prohibited
- It was _____ to mark that he'd better withdraw from the game in case his knee injury got worse.
A. recommended
B. argued
C. insisted
D. appealed.
- **Clark:** "Mary has difficulty in fitting in."
Nina: "Well, I guess she _____ to this type of work."

- A. isn't used B. didn't use C. hasn't been used D. doesn't get used.
15. Mary was the last applicant_____.
- A. to interview B. to be interviewed
C. to have interviewed D. to be interviewing
16. It's imperative that this letter_____ immediately.
- A. be sent B. send C. will be sent D. is sent
17. _____ to the big city, I have got lost many times.
- A. Unused B. Unacquainted C. Unfamiliar D. Useless
18. In our hospital, patients_____ every morning.
- A. are examined B. have examined C. can examine D. were examining
19. No one can avoid_____ by advertisements.
- A. having influenced B. being influenced
C. to be influenced D. influencing
20. A large number of workmen_____ because of the economic recession.
- A. has been laid out B. has laid aside C. have laid down D. have been laid off

Exercise 109: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

1. The romantic poet Keats died by tuberculosis at a very young age.
- A B C D
- Science has been dividing into areas to help organize the knowledge.
- A B C D
3. The robbers arrest by the police last week have just escaped from the prison.
- A B C D
4. A social worker who wanted to speak to Mrs. Hamilton attacked and badly bitten by one of her dogs.
- A B C D
5. Most of the films made for entertainment.
- A B C D
6. The magazine, which began in 1972, has long been considered one of the led publications . A B C of the feminist movement.
- D
7. After the rain had let out, the Mitchells continued their hike up the mountain.
- A B C D
- It is general believed that housing is always a big problem for all city dwellers.
- A B C D
9. The president refused to accept either of the four new proposals made by the contractors.
- A B C D

Peter is said being good at English.

B C D

The switch must not be touch while the machine is working.

A B C D

The report has not be examined by the committee of experts yet.

A B C D

The matter will discussing at the next meeting.

A B C D

He was think to be the most handsome boy in our class.

A B C D

All the main streets in this city are be widening.

A B C D

16. Mined over 2,000 years ago, copper is one of the earliest know metals.

A B C D 17. The average adult has got from two to five colds

each year.

A B C D

18. Computers have made access to information instantly available just by push a few buttons.

A B C D

19. Peter usually has his car washing at weekend.

A B C D

Do you know the boy whose bicycle was stole last night?

A B C D

Exercise 110: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

1. Until I got enough money, the picture that I wanted had sold.

A B C D 2. Hand me the letters type by the secretary

yesterday.

A B C D 3. Tom is consider to be the best

student in his class.

A B C D

It's believes that our lives will be better in the future.

A B C D

5. Some gorillas beat their chests as an express of high spirits.

A B C D

6. Because vitamins contained in a wide variety of foods, people seldom lack most of them.

A B C D

Follow vaporization, a reduction in temperature will result in condensation.

A B C D 8. That actress has had her dresses make there.

A B C D

Many people think this novel writing by Ngo Tat To.

A B C D

Most lasers are be used in medical and scientific field.

A B C D

Your question can only answer by an excellent student.

A B C D

When I came back I realized that my camera had been disappeared.

A B C D

13. If either of you take a vacation now, we won't be able to finish this work.

A B C D

14. Among the world's 44 richest countries, there has been not war since 1945.

A B C D

I was informed that you had been see in Athens.

A B C D

This house has been build since last month.

A B C D

17. He couldn't read French so he had the letter translating into English.

A B C D

He is very brave. His friends are impresses by his bravery.

A B C D

19. I had my motorbike repair yesterday, but now it still doesn't work

A B C D

20. Unless there had been a heavy storm, the climber will not have died.

A B C D

BÀI 6. INDIRECT SPEECH - CÂU GIÁN TIẾP

I. Introduction: There are two ways of restating what a person has said; direct and indirect.

While the direct speech repeats what exact words of the speakers, the indirect only gives the exact meaning of what is said or remarked. (Có hai cách để nhắc lại điều một ai đó đã nói; trực tiếp và gián tiếp. Trong khi câu trực tiếp nhắc lại nguyên vẹn từng chi tiết của lời nói, câu gián tiếp chỉ nhắc lại nội dung câu nói một cách chính xác về ý nghĩa mà thôi). Hãy xem các ví dụ dưới đây:

Direct: He said, "I hate being asked."

Indirect: He said that he hated being asked.

Direct: She said, "The postman will come tomorrow."

Indirect: She said that the postman would come the next/ following day.

Direct: "We have lived here for 5 years," she said.

Indirect: She said that they had lived there for 5 years.

Direct: "Do you want any more books?", the librarian asked.

Indirect: The librarian asked if I wanted any more books.

Bài này chỉ đề cập các nguyên tắc biến đổi, hình thức chuyển đổi từ câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp, các để phục vụ cho việc giải các bài tập ôn tập thi THPT Quốc Gia có liên quan.

Changes when turning direct speech into indirect:

Biến đổi từ câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp

Tenses changes: Đổi thì ngữ pháp

Khi chuyển đổi từ câu chủ động sang câu bị động các thì ngữ pháp của động từ được chuyển đổi (ta thường lùi một thì ở câu gián tiếp so với thì của động từ ở câu trực tiếp) theo bảng chuyển đổi dưới đây:

	direct speech		direct speech
1.	simple present	→	simple past
2.	present progressive	→	past progressive
3.	present perfect (progressive)	→	past perfect (progressive)
4.	simple past	→	past perfect
5.	future (will/shall)	→	conditional (would/ should)
6.	must	→	had to inf
7.	can/ may	→	could/ might
8.	conditional	→	conditional (no change)

e.g. D: "I *am* a new comer here," said Linda.

→ I: Linda said that she *was* a new comer there.

- "We are building a new bridge soon" said the Mayor.
 I: The Mayor said that they *were building* a new bridge soon.
 "Where *have you been* since noon, Peter?" asked Janes.
 I: Janes wanted to know where Peter *had been* since noon.
 "I *wasn't* there at that time," he said.
 I: He said that he *hadn't been* there at that time.
 "The new comers *will arrive* three days before tomorrow," said the captain.
 I: The captain said that the new comers *would arrive* in four days' time.
 "He *must* be back before dark," the constructor said.
 I: The constructor said that he *had to* be back before dark.
 "The new comers *may* be a little late," said the captain.
 I: The captain said that the new comers *might* be a little late.
 "If I *had* enough money, I *would buy* a new car," the old man said.
 I: The old man said that he *would buy* a new car if he *had* enough money.

2. Pronouns and adjectives changes: Đổi đại từ và tính từ

Khi chuyển đổi từ câu chủ động sang câu bị động các thì đại từ nhân xưng, tính từ sở hữu, đại từ sở hữu, đại từ phản thân cũng được chuyển đổi. Thông thường ngôi thứ nhất, thứ hai sẽ chuyển thành ngôi thứ ba, trừ trường hợp chủ thể tự diễn đạt về bản thân.

e.g. D: "I will send you *my* document today," said Lan to Minh.

I: Lan said that *she* would send Minh *her* document that day.

"We will leave tomorrow night," he said.

I: He said that *they* would start the following night.

"We will arrive three days before tomorrow," said the captain.

I: The captain said that *they* would arrive in four days' time.

"We moved here many years ago," the widow said.

I: The widow said that *they* had moved there many years before.

Expressions of time and place in indirect speech:

Đổi các trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian và nơi chốn

Khi chuyển đổi từ câu chủ động sang câu bị động các trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian và nơi chốn thường được chuyển đổi theo bảng chuyển đổi dưới đây:

	direct speech	→	direct speech
1.	today	→	that day
2.	yesterday	→	the day before
3.	the day before yesterday	→	two days before

4.	tomorrow	→	the next/ following day
5.	the day after tomorrow	→	in two days' time
6.	next week/ year/ etc.	→	the following week/ years/ etc.
7.	last week/ year/ etc.	→	the previous week/ years/ etc.
8.	a week/ year/ etc. ago	→	the previous year/ a year before
9.	this/ these	→	that/ those
10.	here	→	there

e.g. D: "I will send you my document *today*," said Lan to Minh.

I: Lan said that she would send Minh her document *that day*.

"Where did you go *yesterday*, Peter?" asked Janes.

I: Janes wanted to know where Peter had gone *the day before*.

"Who did you meet *two days before yesterday*, Peter?" asked Janes.

I: Janes wanted to know who Peter had met *three days before*.

"We will leave tomorrow night," he said.

I: He said that they would start the following night.

"The new comers will arrive three days before tomorrow," said the captain.

I: The captain said that the new comers would arrive in four days' time.

"He moved here many years ago," the widow said.

I: The widow said that he had moved there many years before.

III. Some kinds of indirect speech:

Statements: Trong trường hợp này ta thực hiện chuyển đổi các yếu tố như trên và gần như giữ nguyên cấu trúc lời nói. Ở một số trường hợp (tường thuật trực tiếp, thông dịch) động từ dẫn để ở thì hiện tại đơn.

e.g. D: "We will leave tomorrow night," he said.

→ I: He said that they would start the following night.

"The new comers will arrive three days before tomorrow," said the captain. →

I: The captain said that the new comers would arrive in four days' time.

"He moved here many years ago," the widow said.

→ I: The widow said that he had moved there many years before.

"I will send you my document *today*," said Lan to Minh.

→ I: Lan said that she would send Minh her document *that day*.

Or. A→C: "I love you." (C can't understand what A is saying)

→ B→C: He says he loves you. (B interprets what A is saying to C)

Reporter: "Two of the kidnapped have been back to their family."

Interpreter: The reporter says two of the kidnapped have been back to their family.

Questions: Câu hỏi ở hình thức gián tiếp được chia làm hai nhóm sau;
General Questions (Yes/No Questions):

S - { <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; text-align: left;"> <p>asked (O)</p> <p>wondered</p> <p>wanted to know</p> </div> } if/ whether S - V

e.g. D: "Do you live here?" he said.

I: He asked if I lived there.

"Will you go to the movie tonight, Mike?" asked Peter.

I: Peter asked Mike if he would go to the movie that night.

"Have you read the latest notice or not?" the teacher asked.

I: The teacher asked whether I had read the latest notice.

"Were you there with Linda last night?" said my mother.

I: My mother wanted to know if I had been there with Linda the night before.

2.2. WH- Questions (Questions with interrogative words):

S - { <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; text-align: left;"> <p>asked (O)</p> <p>wondered</p> <p>wanted to know</p> </div> } WH words S - V
--

e.g. D: "Where do you live?" he said.

I: He wanted to know where I lived.

"What will you do tonight, Mike?" asked Peter.

I: Peter asked Mike what he would do that night.

"Where have I been all the night long?" the youngster asked.

I: The youngster wondered where he had been all the night long.

"What were you doing last night?" said my mother.

I: My mother wanted to know what I had been doing the night before.

3. Commands, requests, advice, invitations, orders, etc:

Various forms of introductory verbs such as *advice, ask, beg, command, encourage, entreat, forbid, implore, invite, order, recommend, remind, request, tell, urge, warn, etc.* are used in indirect commands, requests, advice, invitations, orders, etc. and "not" is often placed before a full infinitive to make the negative form. – Các câu gián tiếp chỉ mệnh lệnh, yêu cầu, lời khuyên, lời mời, lời ra lệnh hay thúc giục sử dụng nhiều hình thức động từ dẫn như *advice, ask, beg, command, encourage, entreat, forbid, implore, invite, order, recommend, remind, request, tell, urge, warn*, và với dạng phủ định ta chỉ cần thêm "not" vào trước một nguyên thể.

S - introductory verbs - to V S - introductory verbs - (not) to V
--

Cụ thể xem các ví dụ dưới đây:

e.g. D: "Lie down, Tom" he said.

I: He told Tom to lie down.

"Get your coats, boys!" said Peter.

I: Peter asked the boys to get their coats.

"You'd better get ready by now, Linda." the youngster said.

I: The youngster advised Linda to get ready.

"Don't touch the wire, children!" said the mother.

I: The mother warned her children not to touch the wire.

"Hurry up, men!" he said.

I: He urged the men to hurry up.

"Would you like a cup of tea, Mike?" asked Peter.

I: Peter invited Peter a cup of tea.

"Abandon the ship, men!" the captain said.

I: The captain ordered his men to abandon the ship.

"Don't come any nearer!" said the robber to the clerk.

I: The robber warned the clerk not to come any nearer.

"If i were you, I would stop complaining," the girl said to her boyfriend.

I: The girl advised her boyfriend not to complain/ to stop complaining.

"Why don't you take off your coat?" said the clerk.

I: The clerk advised me to take off my coat.

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 111: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

He said to me, "I don't want you to make such a silly mistake again".

He told _____.

She said, "I didn't know you."

She said _____.

The boy said, "I don't know what I'll do".

The boy said _____.

"Sue, can you remember to buy some bread?"

Paul reminded _____.

"Don't touch anything in this room", the man said to the children.

The man ordered _____.

"I must go home to make the dinner", said Mary.

Mary _____.

"Are you going to Paris next week?" Tom asked me.

Tom asked _____.

"Have you finished your homework?" Mom asked.

Mom asked if _____.

She said to me: "I can't do it by myself"

She told me that _____.

"Does your brother live in London, Nam?" Lan asked.

Lan wanted to know if _____.

"Don't repeat this mistake again." his father warned him.

His father warned him _____.

"Give me a smile," the photographer said to me.

The _____.

"Don't leave these books on the table", the librarian said to the students.

The librarian told the students _____.

14. "Have you travelled abroad much?" he asked me.

He _____.

"Who has written this note?" the boss asked the secretary.

The boss asked _____.

"I have just received a postcard from my sister," my friend said to me.

My friend told _____.

"This story happened long ago" he said.

He said _____.

"If I were you, I wouldn't buy this car".

He advised _____.

"Shall I carry your suitcase, Lan?" said Nam.

Nam offered _____.

"Yes, all right, I'll share the food with you, Dave."

Ann agreed _____.

Exercise 112: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

"Don't repeat this mistake again!" the instructor warned the sports-man.

The instructor _____.

"Leave your address with the secretary" the assistant said to me.

The assistant _____.

"Phone to me for an answer tomorrow" the manager said to the client.

The manager _____.

"Don't be so silly!" the father said to the kid.

The father _____.

"Give a smile!" the photographer said to me.

The photographer _____.

"Please, help me to make a decision!" Ann asked her friend.

Ann asked _____.

"Don't leave these books on the table, put them back on the shelf!" she said to the boy.

She _____.

"Be a good girl and sit quietly for five minutes!" the nurse said to the child.

The nurse _____.

"Leave your things here!" my companion advised me.

My companion _____.

"Don't discuss this question now!" said the chairman to the participants.

The chairman _____.

"Will it be safe to stay in the mountains for the night if the weather doesn't change for the better?" we asked the guide.

We asked _____.

The porter said to me, "I'll wake you up, when the train arrives in Leeds."

The porter _____.

My wife said to me: "While you are away, I'll do the packing."

My wife _____.

"Don't leave until I phone you!" he asked me.

He told _____.

"After he leaves hospital, they'll take him to the South." the doctor said.

The doctor _____.

"They'll wait for the fisherman to return until it gets dark." the man explained to me.

The _____.

"As soon as I hear from him, I'll let you know." my neighbour said to me.

My neighbour _____.

"I'll live in town till my husband returns from the expedition and when he returns, we'll go to the seaside together," she said.

She said _____.

The mother said to her son, "Sit still, please."

The mother _____.

John said to his friend, "Come and spend a week with us."

John _____.

Exercise 113. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

"John left here an hour ago," said Jane.

Jane told me that John had left there an hour before.

Jane said John left there an hour before.

Jane told John to have left there an hour before.

Jane told me that John to leave there an hour before.

Maria said that she _____ there at noon.

A. is going to be B. was going to be C. will be D. can be

"Why didn't you follow my advice?" he said.

He asked me to follow his advice.

He asked me not to follow his advice.

He asked me why I did follow his advice.

He asked me why I hadn't followed his advice.

He _____ that he was leaving way that afternoon.

A. told me B. told to me C. said me D. says to me

5. "What shall I do with all this money?" said Peter.

A. Peter asked what should he do with all the money.

B. Peter asked what would he do with all that money.

C. Peter was asking what he would do with all that money.

D. Peter was wondering what he should do with all the money

6. She said to me that she _____ to me the Sunday before.

A. wrote B. has written C. was writing D. had written

7. I asked him how far _____.

A. was it to the nearest bank.

C. it was to the nearest bank.

B. was to the nearest bank.

D. to the nearest bank was

8. I _____ him to sell that old motorbike.

A. said to B. suggested C. advised D. recommended

9. The police wanted to know _____.

A. what was into the parcel

B. that was in the parcel

C. what was in the parcel

D. that in the parcel was

10. My parents reminded me _____ the flowers.

A. remember to plant

B. not to plant to plant

C. to plant

D. planting

"John left here an hour ago," said Jane.

Jane told me that John had left there an hour before

Jane said John left there an hour before

- C. Jane told John to have left there an hour before
D. Jane told me that John to leave there an hour before

12. I asked Martha _____ to enter law school.

- A. are you planning B. is she planning
C. was she planning D. if she was planning

13. Nam wanted to know what time _____.

- A. does the movie begin B. did the movie begin
C. the movie begins D. the movie began

“What would you do if you were a billionaire?” the man asked the woman.

The man asked the woman what she would have done if she were a billionaire.

The man asked the woman what she would do if she were a billionaire.

The man asked the woman what would she do if she were a billionaire.

The man asked the woman what would she have done if she had been a billionaire.

I wondered _____ the right thing.

- A. whether I was doing B. if I am doing
C. was I doing D. am I doing

“Why don’t you reply to the offer of the company right now?” said Anne to her husband.

Anne ordered her husband to accept the offer of the company right away.

Ann suggested that her husband reply to the offer of the company right away.

Ann told her husband not to respond to the offer of the company.

Ann asked her husband the reason why he didn’t reply to the offer of the company immediately.

The scientist said the earth _____ the sun.

- A. goes around B. is going around
C. went around D. was going around

“If I were you, I would try to finish the pre-lab report before carrying out the experiment.” the professor said to his students.

The professor advised his students to finish the pre-lab report before carrying out the experiment.

The professor wished he could finish the pre-lab report for his students.

The professor regretted that his students didn’t do things in the right way.

The professor advised his students to carry out the experiments and then write the pre-lab report.

Peter said that if he _____ rich, he _____ a lot.

- A. is/will travel B. were/ would travel
C. had been/ would have travelled D. was/ will travel

20. They said that they had been driving through the desert _____.

- A. the previous day B. yesterday C. the last day D. Sunday previously

Exercise 114. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

“Would you like to go for a walk along the beach?”

Joe asked me whether I felt like to go for a walk along the beach.

Joe asked me if I felt to like to go for a walk along the beach.

Joe asked me if I felt like going out for a walk along the beach.

Both A and C

He asked the children _____ too much noise.

- A. not to make B. not making C. don't make D. if they don't make

3. The man said that the days _____ longer in summer.

- A. will be B. are C. were D. can be

“Do you know what time the Classical music performance begins, Anna?” asked John.

John asked Anna to know what time the Classical music performance begins.

John asked Anna what time did the Classical music performance begin.

John asked Anna if she knew what time the Classical music performance began.

John asked Anna if she had known what time the Classical music performance began.

The teacher said Columbus _____ America in 1942.

- A. discovered B. had discovered
C. was discovering D. would discover

“Be careful! Don't do that again,” he said.

He encouraged me to do that again.

He advised me to be careful and do that again.

He warned me not to do that again.

He told me to be careful, so I didn't do that again.

John said he _____ her since they _____ school.

- A. hasn't met/ left B. hadn't met/ had left
C. hadn't met/ left D. didn't meet/ has left

She asked John to repeat what he had said.

“Will you please repeat what John said?” she asked.

“Please repeat what you said, John,” she said.

“You have to repeat what you say, John,” she said.

“Please repeat what you said to John,” she said.

The woman asked _____ get lunch at school.

- A. can the children B. whether the children could

C. if the children can D. could the children

10. "No, it's not true. I didn't steal the money!" Jean said.

A. Jean refused to steal the money. B. Jean did not intend to steal the money.

C. Jean admitted stealing the money. D. Jean denied having stolen the money.

11. Laura said that when she _____ to school, she saw an accident.

A. was walking B. has walked

C. had been walking D. has been walking

"Why don't we go out for dinner?" said Mary.

A. Mary suggested a dinner out. B. Mary ordered a dinner out.

C. Mary demanded a dinner out. D. Mary requested a dinner out.

13. He asked, "Why didn't she take the final exam?" - He asked why _____ the final exam.

A. she took B. did she take

C. she hadn't taken D. she had taken

14. Ba said he _____ some good marks last semester.

A. gets B. got C. getting D. have got

My friend told me, "If I were you, I would not smoke so much."

My friend advised me not to smoke so much.

My friend warned me against smoking so much.

My friend prohibited me from smoking so much.

My friend suggested not smoking so much.

They told their parents that they _____ their best to do the test.

A. try B. will try C. are trying D. would try

"I will let you know the answer by the end of this week," Tom said to Janet.

Tom suggested giving Janet the answer by the end of the week.

Tom promised to give Janet the answer by the end of the week.

Tom insisted on letting Janet know the answer by the end of the week.

Tom offered to give Janet the answer by the end of the week.

She asked me where I _____ from.

A. come B. coming C. to come D. came

19. She _____ me whether I liked classical music or not.

A. ask B. asks C. asked D. asking

"Why didn't you follow my advice?" he said.

He asked me to follow his advice.

He asked me not to follow his advice.

He asked me why I did follow his advice.

He asked me why I hadn't followed his advice.

Exercise 115. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. He asked me who _____ the editor of that book.

- A. was B. were C. is D. has been

"Why don't you reply to the President's offer right now?" said Mary to her husband.

Mary suggested that her husband should reply to the President's offer without delay.

Mary told her husband why he didn't reply to the President's offer then.

Mary ordered her husband to reply to the President's offer right now.

Mary wondered why her husband didn't reply to the President's offer then.

He wants to know whether I _____ back tomorrow.

- A. come B. came C. will come D. would come

4. I wonder why he _____ love his family.

- A. doesn't B. don't C. didn't D. hasn't

She said, "John, I'll show you round my city when you're here."

She made a trip round her city with John.

She promised to show John round her city.

She planned to show John round her city.

She organized a trip round her city for John.

They asked me how many children _____.

- A. I had B. had I C. I have D. have I

"Please don't drive so fast, Tom," said Lisa.

Lisa complained about Tom's driving too fast.

Lisa pleaded with Tom not to drive too fast.

Lisa insisted on Tom's driving on.

Lisa grumbled to Tom about driving slowly.

Thu said she had been _____ the day before.

- A. here B. there C. in this place D. where

9. The student said that the English test _____ the most difficult.

- A. is B. was C. will be D. have been

"Would you like some more beer?" he asked.

He offered me some more beer.

He asked me would I like some more beer.

He asked me if I wanted some beer.

He wanted to invite me for a glass of beer.

He wanted to know _____ shopping during the previous morning.

- A. if we had been going B. that if we had been going

C. we were going

D. that we were going

12. He asked me_____ Robert and I said I did not know_____.

A. that did I know/ who were Robert B. that I knew/ who Robert were

C. if I knew/ who Robert was D. whether I knew/ who was Robert

“We’re having a reunion this weekend. Why don’t you come?” John said to us.

John didn’t understand why we came to a reunion.

John asked us why we didn’t come to a reunion this weekend.

John simply asked us why we wouldn’t come to a reunion.

John cordially invited us to a reunion this weekend.

The mother asked her son_____.

A. where he has been

B. where he had been

C. where has he been

D. where had he been

15. Martin asked me_____.

A. how is my father

B. how my father is

C. how was my father

D. how my father was

16. The host asked Peter_____ tea or coffee.

A. whether he preferred

B. that he preferred

C. did he prefer

D. if he prefers

“Stop smoking or you’ll be ill,” the doctor told me.

The doctor advised me to give up smoking to avoid illness.

I was warned against smoking a lot of cigarettes.

The doctor suggested smoking to treat illness.

I was ordered not to smoke to recover from illness.

She asked me_____ my holidays_____.

A. where I spent/ the previous year B. where I had spent/ the previous year

C. where I spent/ last year D. where did I spend/ last year

“Would you like to come to my birthday party, Sara?” asked Frederic.

Frederic invited Sara to his birthday party.

Frederic asked if Sara was able to come to his birthday party.

Frederic asked Sara if she likes his birthday party or not.

Frederic reminded Sara of his birthday party.

He advised_____ too far.

A. her did not go

B. her do not go

C. her not to go

D. she did not go

Exercise 116. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. John often says he _____ boxing because it _____ a cruel sport.

- A. does not like/ is
B. did not like/ were
C. not liked / had been
D. had not liked/ was

2. Nancy asked me why I had not gone to New York the summer _____.

- A. before
B. ago
C. last
D. previous

“You shouldn’t have leaked our confidential report to the press, Frank!” said Jane.

Jane suspected that Frank had leaked their confidential report to the press.

Jane criticized Frank for having disclosed their confidential report to the press.

Jane accused Frank of having cheated the press with their confidential report.

Jane blamed Frank for having flattered the press with their confidential report.

He asked _____ him some money.

- A. her to lend
B. she to lend
C. she has lent
D. she lends

“If you don’t pay the ransom, we’ll kill your boy,” the kidnappers told us.

The kidnappers ordered to kill our boy if we did not pay the ransom.

The kidnappers pledged to kill our boy if we did not pay the ransom.

The kidnappers threatened to kill our boy if we refused to pay the ransom.

The kidnappers promised to kill our boy if we refused to pay the ransom.

Andrew told me that they _____ fish two _____ days.

- A. have not eaten/ ago
B. had not eaten/ previous
C. did not eat/ before
D. would not eat/ last

He last had his eyes tested ten months ago.

He had tested his eyes ten months ago.

He had not tested his eyes for ten months then.

He hasn’t had his eyes tested for ten months.

He didn’t have any test on his eyes in ten months.

Jason told me that he _____ his best in the exam the _____ day.

- A. had done/ following
B. will do/ previous
C. would do/ following
D. was going/ previous

“Mum, please don’t tell dad about my mistake,” the boy said.

The boy begged his mother not to tell his father about his mistake.

The mother was forced to keep her son’s mistake as a secret when he insisted.

The boy earnestly insisted that his mother tell his father about his mistake.

The boy requested his mother not to talk about his mistake any more.

John asked me _____ in English.

- A. what does this word mean
B. what that word means
C. what did this word mean
D. what that word meant

11. “If I were you, I would take the job,” said my room-mate.

A. My room-mate was thinking about taking the job.

My room-mate advised me to take the job.

My room-mate introduced the idea of taking the job to me.

My room-mate insisted on taking the job.

12. The mother told her son _____ so impolitely.

A. not behave

B. not to behave

C. not behaving

D. did not behave

“Don’t forget to tidy up the final draft before submission,” the team leader told us.

The team leader ordered us to tidy up the final draft before submission.

The team leader reminded us to tidy up the final draft before submission.

The team leader asked us to tidy up the final draft before submission.

The team leader simply wanted us to tidy up the final draft before submission.

She said she _____ collect it for me after work.

A. would

B. did

C. must

D. had

“You should have finished the report by now,” John told his secretary.

John reproached his secretary for not having finished the report.

John said that his secretary had not finished the report.

John reminded his secretary of finishing the report on time.

John scolded his secretary for not having finished the report.

She said I _____ an angel.

A. am

B. was

C. were

D. have been

“My company makes a large profit every year. Why don’t you invest more money in it?” my friend said to me.

My friend instructed me how to put more money into his company.

My friend persuaded me to invest more money in his company.

I was asked to invest more money in my friend’s company.

My friend suggested his investing more money in his company.

I have ever told you he _____ unreliable.

A. is

B. were

C. had been

D. would be

“Leave my house now or I’ll call the police!” shouted the lady to the man.

The lady threatened to call the police if the man didn’t leave her house.

The lady said that she would call the police if the man didn’t leave her house.

The lady told the man that she would call the police if he didn’t leave her house.

The lady informed the man that she would call the police if he didn’t leave her house.

I told him _____ the word to Jane somehow that I _____ to reach her during the early hours.

A. passing/ will try
C. to pass/ would be trying

B. he will pass/ tried
D. he passed/ have tried

BÀI 7. SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES - MỆNH ĐỀ GIẢ ĐỊNH

I. The use of “as if/ as though”: (như thể là, cứ như là) các mệnh đề giả định với as if/ as though thường được chia làm hai loại cụ thể dưới đây:

The present sense: Nếu động từ ở mệnh đề dẫn được chia ở thì hiện tại (*simple present*), thì động từ ở mệnh đề giả định sẽ chia ở thì quá khứ đơn (*simple past*), động từ *to be* được chia là *were* với mọi chủ ngữ.

S - V(simple present) - as if/ as though - S - V(simple past)

e.g. The old lady dresses as if it were winter even in the summer. (It is not winter.)
hiện tại quá khứ

Angelique walks as though she studied modelling. (She didn't study modelling)
hiện tại quá khứ

He acts as though he were rich. (He is not rich)
hiện tại quá khứ

2. The past sense: Nếu động từ ở mệnh đề dẫn được chia ở thì quá khứ (*simple past*), thì động từ ở mệnh đề giả định sẽ chia ở thì quá khứ hoàn thành (*past perfect*).

S - V(simple past) - as if/ as though - S - V(past perfect)

e.g. Betty talked about the contest as if she had won the grand prize.
past simple past perfect

(She didn't win the grand prize.)

Jeff looked as if he had seen a ghost. (She didn't see a ghost.)
past simple past perfect

He looked as though he had run ten miles. (He didn't run ten miles.)
past simple past perfect

Cả hai trường hợp giả định trên đều diễn tả những điều không thể diễn ra mà chỉ đơn giản là một giả định.

II. The use of wish and hope:

Hope: mong muốn, hi vọng – Các hành động theo sau hope có thể diễn ra:

e.g. I hope that they will come.

(I don't know if they are coming) (Tôi hi vọng họ sẽ tới)

We hope that they came yesterday.

(We don't know if they came) (Tôi hi vọng là họ đã tới)

Wish: Mong muốn, ước muốn. Các hành động hoặc là chưa, hoặc là không thể diễn ra.

a. Wish somebody something = chúc ai đó một điều gì đó:

e.g. I wish him a happy birthday.

We wish you a merry Christmas and a happy new

year. **b.** Wish to infinitive = mong muốn làm một điều gì đó:

e.g. I wish to have a happy birthday.

We wish to become doctors.

c. Mong muốn làm một điều gì đó sẽ diễn ra trong tương lai:

S - wish - (that) - S* - could/ would/ -V

Subject*: có thể là chính chủ thể, có thể là người khác.

Eg. We wish that you could come to the party tonight. (You can't come)

I wish that you would stop saying that. (You probably won't stop)

She wish that she were coming with us. (She is not coming with us)

d. Mong muốn về một điều gì đó đã không diễn ra ở hiện tại:

S - wish - (that) - S* - V(simple past)

S - wished - (that) - S* - V(past perfect)

Eg. I wish that I had enough time to finish my homework.

(I don't have enough time)

We wish that he were old enough to come with us. (He is not old enough)

They wish that they didn't have to go to class today. (They have to go to class)

Subject*: có thể là chính chủ thể, có thể là người khác.

e. Mong muốn về một điều gì đó đã không diễn ra ở quá khứ:

S - wish - (that) - S - V(past perfect)

S - wished - (that) - S* - V(past perfect)/could have - P₂

e.g. I wish that I had washed the clothes yesterday.

(I didn't wash the clothes yesterday)

She wish that she could have been there. (She couldn't be there)

We wish that we had had more time last night. (We didn't have more time)

Subjunctive cases with certain verbs, adjectives and nouns: Hình thức giả định với một số động từ, tính từ, danh từ:

For certain verbs: Một số động từ được theo sau bởi các mệnh đề giả định (không có sự hòa hợp giữa chủ ngữ và động từ) được thực hiện theo công thức:

S - V - that - S - V(bare infinitive)

Gồm các danh từ như:

advise	demand	prefer	require
ask	insist	propose	stipulate
command	move	recommend	suggest
decree	order	request	urge

- e.g. We urge that he leave now. (other form: We urge him to leave now)
 She asked that the man be punished.
 The judge insisted that the jury return a verdict immediately.
 The university requires that all its students take this course.
 The doctor suggested that his patient stop smoking.
 Congress has decreed that the gasoline tax be abolished.
 We proposed that he take a vacation.
 I move that we adjourn until this afternoon.

Remember: sometimes *should* would be use in the indefinite clause after *that* as a suggestion or advice – Cần lưu ý rằng nhiều khi trong tiếng Anh-Anh (British English) người ta dùng *should* với mệnh đề không xác định sau “*that*” như lời khuyên hay gợi ý như sau:

e.g. We urge that he leave now.

We urge that he should leave now. She asked that the man be punished.

She asked that the man should be punished.

The judge insisted that the jury return a verdict immediately.

The judge insisted that the jury should return a verdict immediately. The university requires that all its students take this course.

The university requires that all its students should take this course. The doctor suggested that his patient stop smoking.

The doctor suggested that his patient should stop smoking. Congress has decreed that the gasoline tax be abolished.

Congress has decreed that the gasoline tax should be abolished.

For certain adjectives: Một số tính từ được theo sau bởi các mệnh đề giả định (không có sự hòa hợp giữa chủ ngữ và động từ) được thực hiện theo công thức:

S – V – adjectives – that – S – V(bare infinitive)

Gồm các động từ như:

advised	necessary	recommended	urgent
important	obligatory	required	imperative
mandatory	proposed	suggested	

- e.g. It is necessary that he find the books.
It was urgent that she leave at once.
It has been proposed that we change the topic.
It is important that you remember this question.
It has been suggested that he forget the election.
It was recommended that we wait for the authorities.

For certain nouns: Một số tính từ được theo sau bởi các mệnh đề giả định (không có sự hòa hợp giữa chủ ngữ và động từ) được thực hiện theo công thức:

It - be - noun - that - S - V(bare infinitive)

(any tense)

- e.g. It is a recommendation from a doctor that the patient stop smoking.
 It was a necessity that you be on time next time.

For other cases: câu giả định dùng trong câu cảm thán, với các thể lực siêu nhiên, đứcc tin như:

- e.g. God save the queen!

God be with you! = good bye (khi chia tay nhau)
 Curse this frog!

- Hoặc: *Come what may*: dù có chuyện gì đi nữa.

e.g. Come what may we will stand by you.

Hoặc: *If need be*: nếu cần thì

e.g. If need be we can take another road.

Hoặc: *if this be*: giả định mà chính người nói chắc chắn là không có. e.g.

If this be proven right, you would be considered innocent.

IV. Subjunctive cases with “It is time”: Dạng giả định với “It is time” được thực hiện theo công thức sau:

It is time It is high time It is about time	} S - V(simple past)
--	----------------------

- e.g. It is time we got everything ready for the start.
 (In fact, we don't get things ready)
 It is about time the train arrived.
 (In fact, the train doesn't arrive)
 It is high time the results of the test were announced.
 (In fact, they aren't announced)

Note: Chú ý cấu trúc sau không phải là giả định:

<p>It is time It is high time It is about time</p>	} for 0 - to infinitives
---	---------------------------------

- e.g. It is time for us to get everything ready for the start.
 (In fact, we have to get things ready now)
 It is about time for the train to arrive.
 (In fact, the train is arriving)
 It is high time for the results of the test to be announced.
 (In fact, they are going to be announced)

V. Subjunctive cases with conditional sentences: Các câu điều kiện loại 2 (unreal present), và loại 3 (unreal past) cũng sử dụng hình thức giả định. (xem Bài 1. Conditional sentences - phần IV. Phrases vs. Clauses trang 252).

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 117. Complete each of the following sentences with the right forms of the verbs shown in brackets.

1. He suggested that I _____ ready by eight o'clock. (to be)
2. We request that she _____ the window. (to open)
3. They demanded that he _____ the room. (to leave)
4. I will ask that she _____ me. (to accompany)
5. They recommended that he _____ to Bermuda. (to fly)
6. The request that we _____ ready to leave at six is a nuisance. (to be)
7. The recommendation that she _____ a holiday was carried out. (to take)
8. It is necessary that you _____ able to come with us. (to be)
9. They asked that we _____ standing. (to remain)
10. The requirement that he _____ work will be hard to meet. (to find)
11. It is important that he _____ everything he can. (to learn)
12. The demand that she _____ the report has been carried out. (to complete)
13. I wish I _____ the answers. (not to lose)
14. They wished they _____ the appointment. (not to forget)
15. He will wish he _____ us the book. (to show)
16. Will they wish we _____ them some food? (to give)
17. We wish it _____ yesterday. (to snow)
18. She wished she _____ the window. (not to open)
19. I wished I _____ the news. (to hear)

20. You wish you _____ what to do. (to know)

Exercise 118. Complete each of the following sentences with the right forms of the verbs shown in brackets.

I wish it _____ possible to finish the work tonight. (to be)

Will he wish he _____ ready? (to be)

She wished she _____ how to sing. (to know)

We wish they _____ to come with us. (to want)

You wished you _____ better. (to feel)

They will wish it _____ warmer. (to be)

Does he wish he _____ younger? (to be)

I wish I _____ the subject more interesting. (to find)

They wished she _____ the arrangements. (to make)

He will wish you _____ him. (to help)

She wishes the mail _____. (to come)

We wished they _____. (to hurry)

You will wish the door _____. (to open)

They wish we _____ for them. (to wait)

I wish you _____ to me. (to write)

Will she wish you _____ her? (to join)

I wish he _____ here now. (to be)

I wish that you _____ here yesterday. (to be)

We wish you _____ tomorrow. (to come)

You will wish you _____ earlier. (to leave)

Exercise 119. Complete each of the following sentences with the right forms of the verbs shown in brackets.

If we were hitchhiking, you _____ to pick us up? (not to stop)

If we waited for him, we _____ on time. (to be)

He _____ us know if we made a mistake? (to let)

I _____ to have a party if you were not there. (to want)

They wished he _____ with them the next day. (not to come)

We wish you _____ yesterday. (to arrive)

I wish that he _____ us next year. (to visit)

She wishes that she _____ at home now. (to be)

You wish that he _____ you last week. (to help)

He will always wish he _____ rich. (to be)

The boy wished that he _____ the competition the next day. (to win)

She will wish she _____ the arrangements earlier. (to make)

I wish the weather _____ warmer now. (to be)

We always wished we _____ fluent in other languages. (to be)

They wish he _____ them next week. (to telephone)

Don't _____ out late. (to stay)

Please _____ ready on time. (to be)

Don't _____ about that. (to worry)

_____ your own business! (to mind)

_____ careful not to trip. (to be)

Exercise 120: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

1. Yesterday evening, while I was watching TV, Mai pays me a visit.

A B C D

2. We went out for a walk after we had our dinner.

A B C D

As soon as the next lecture will end, let's leave.

A B C D

4. Mr. Ba had a daughter who were born in 1950, but who died a few years later.

A B C D 5. After they were playing cards, someone broke into the

house.

A B C D

6. The lion has long been a symbol of strength, power, and it is very cruel.

A B C D

7. Nobody had known before the presentation that Sue and her sister will receive the

A B C D awards for outstanding scholarships.

There is a really good explanation of my favorite field in the chapter two of that book.

A B C D

He knows to repair the carburetor without taking the whole car apart.

A B C D

10. Approximately one-fifth of a worker's income to pay in taxes and social security.

A B C D

11. The Green Garden Restaurant uses fresh produce on their dishes, much of which the

A B C

owners grow in their own garden.

D

A city university professor reported that he discovers a vaccine which could prevent

A B C D

bird flu.

13. Factories discard waste that had polluted air and water, but factories give us jobs.
A B C D

Do you want being woken up tomorrow morning?

A B C D

15. That is a new circus which formed in 1992.
A B C D

16. It is important that you turned off the heater every morning before you leave for class.
A B C D

17. The children had such difficult time when they began school in their new neighborhood
that their parents decided never to move again.
A B C D

Those who had already purchased tickets were instructed to go to gate first at once.

A B C D 19. The bridge was hitting by a large ship during a sudden storm last
week.

A B C D

20. The destruction of most of the city of London made by a fire in 1600s.
A B C D

Exercise 121: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

1. The teacher got angry with him because he sometimes come to class late.
A B C D

2. Up to now, there had been no woman being chosen the US president.
A B C D

The mother had always took good care of her little son.
A B C D

No matter what different, various music types have one thing in common: touching the
A B C D hearts of the listeners.

The computer software industry is one of the most competitive markets in today's
A B C technological advanced society.

D

6. An American woman not always shake hands when she is introduced to a man.
A B C D

Peter has been written the composition for 3 hours and he has not finished yet.

8. We were a few minute late so the film was already started when we got to the cinema.

A B C D

By the time the police come, the robber had run away.

A B C D

Almost all the students were confusing because Ms. Kelly's explanation was unclear.

A B C D

Many news story which deal with TV and film personalities are often exaggerated.

A B C D

12. A secretary told me an important file had left in the lunch room just the other day.

A B C D

Why didn't Peter go to school? What did happened to him?

A B C D

I was listening to the radio when the door bell will ring.

A B C D

15. Why are you so late? I am waiting here for you for more than one hour.

A B C D

Phil never went to bed before he has finished his homework.

A B C D

17. There are many different ways of comparing the economy of one nation with those of
A B C another.

D

18. A basic knowledge of social studies, such as history and geography, are considered a
A B C basic part of the education of every child.

D

So extensive the lakes are that they are viewed as the largest bodies of fresh water in the world.

A B C D

I have learnt English for I was ten years old.

A B C D

Exercise 122: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

1. Did you say that you will have a lot of things to do the following week?

A B C D 2. When we arrived at the station, the

train has already left.

A B C D

3. The rings of Saturn are so distant to be seen from the Earth without a telescope.

Unless you don't have a quiet room, you will not be able to do any work.

A B C D

Did your doctor recommend you that you will stop smoking?

A B C D

Up to now, there had been no woman being chosen the US president.

A B C D

7. The neighbors are having a party. They are making so much noise since 6 o'clock. I can't sleep.

A B C D

Don't leave the house until I will get back.

A B C D

9. With the victory over Germany in the final match, Brazil became the first team won the trophy five times.

A B C D

Because of the long questions, Tom could not hardly finish the test on time.

A B C D

11. I was walking along the pavement when I realized that there has been a man following me.

A B C D

12. Human had struggled against weeds since the beginning of agriculture.

A B C D

Mary said that she do jogging every morning.

A B C D

14. At this time next week, Peter was working in London.

A B C D

Never I have seen such a good film before.

A B C D

This fridge is very old to keep things at a proper temperature.

A B C D

A lunch of soup and sandwiches do not appeal to all of the students.

A B C D

18. All the students are looking forward to spending their free time relax in the sun this summer.

A B C D

Before the 1920s, no women will vote in the US.

A B C D

20. Some students have always complain that they do not have enough money to spend.

A B C D

CHUYÊN ĐỀ IV. PHRASES VS. CLAUSES

CHUYÊN ĐỀ VỀ CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ

Những kiến thức về cụm từ và mệnh đề, các mệnh đề bổ trợ (mệnh đề phụ) cơ bản trong chuyên đề này sẽ giúp người học làm chủ kiến thức, nắm được các yếu tố ngữ pháp cốt lõi để giải rất nhiều các dạng bài tập có liên quan trong đề thi THPT Quốc Gia. Đặc biệt, chuyên đề này còn liên quan rất nhiều đến kỹ năng viết (viết lại câu, viết luận), điều mà lâu nay là điểm yếu cố hữu của học sinh khi làm phần bài thi theo hình thức tự luận (chiếm 20% số điểm toàn bài thi). Nghiên cứu kỹ các kiến thức cơ bản, thực hành đầy đủ các bài tập thực hành, người học sẽ cảm nhận được giá trị lớn mà chuyên đề mang lại.

BÀI 1. DEFINITIONS OF PHRASES AND CLAUSES

KHÁI NIỆM CƠ BẢN VỀ CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ

I. Phrases –definition and kinds: Cụm từ - khái niệm và các loại cụm từ.

Definition: Là một hay một tổ hợp từ vựng, diễn tả một ý, đảm nhận một chức năng ngữ pháp nhất định trong câu.

e.g. *A man who teaches children* is called a teacher.

To tell the truth, he didn't deserve a promotion.

Long long ago, man and the wildlife lived in a harmony.

Kinds: Tùy thuộc vào tính chất đặc điểm và mục đích nói mà ta có thể gọi tên các cụm từ như dưới đây:

a. Noun phrases (nominal phrases): Các ngữ danh từ có chức năng như danh từ, cụ thể như sau:

e.g. *The girl in white* is my close friend.

My close friend is *the girl in white*.

He fell in love with *the girl in white* overthere.

They looked at *the girl in white* suspiciously.

b. Adjectival phrases: Các ngữ tính từ có chức năng như danh từ, cụ thể như sau:

e.g. The man *exhausted after finishing the race* is now lying on the ground.

The jobs *easy to access* are not always bad.

c. Prepositional phrases: Các ngữ giới từ có cấu tạo gồm giới từ và các từ vựng theo kèm, cụ thể như sau:

e.g. *In the past*, Vietnamese people used to get married very young.

There's a garage *to the right of the house*.

d. Adverbial phrases: Các cụm trạng ngữ được cấu tạo từ nhiều hình thức cụm từ khác nhau dùng để chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn, mục đích, nguyên nhân, kết quả,... cụ thể như sau:

e.g. *To tell the truth*, the crisis is now at very high level.

In contrast, the North of the country is more industrialized than the South.

The bridge, in fact, helps reduce the distance between the two cities.

e. Gerund phrases: Các cụm danh động từ có chức năng như danh từ, cụ thể như sau:

e.g. *Getting into the city center at this time* of day is difficult.

Her passion in life is *studying Japanese*.

f. Verb phrases: Các cụm động từ có chức năng như động từ thường dùng chỉ mục đích, cụ thể như sau.

e.g. The house, to be abolished, is in the center of the town.

To sum up, we should do something to preserve the earth for the next generations to live in.

Clauses –definition and kinds:

Definition: Gồm một hay một tổ hợp từ vựng có chủ ngữ, động từ - hoặc có thể viết dưới dạng có chủ ngữ, động từ, diễn tả một ý hoàn chỉnh, có thể đứng độc lập để tạo thành câu (mệnh đề độc lập) hoặc được dùng để bổ nghĩa cho các thành tố trong câu (mệnh đề phụ/ mệnh đề phụ thuộc).

e.g. When I came in, they were having dinner.

dependent clause

independent clause

If you start right now, you will be able to catch the last train.

dependent clause

independent clause

She failed the entrance exam because she didn't change the way she studied.

independent clause

dependent clause

They pass the exam though they do not try hard.

independent clause

dependent clause

Kinds: Tùy thuộc vào tính chất, đặc điểm và mục đích nói mà ta có mệnh đề như dưới đây:

a. Dependent clauses: (subordinate clauses) là những mệnh đề được dùng để bổ nghĩa cho các thành tố khác trong câu:

e.g. Although he was wealthy, he led an unhappy life.

independent clause

Because the storm was so fierce, many trees were blown down.

independent clause

She left the room while I was feeding the pigeons.

independent clause

They decided to move away no matter how hard I try to persuade them to stay.

independent clause

b. Independent clauses: là những mệnh đề có thể đứng độc lập để tạo thành câu đơn hoàn chỉnh về ngữ nghĩa và ngữ pháp:

e.g. Whenever it rains, the room is covered with water.

dependent clause

Whatever you do, she refuses to further your relationship.

dependent clause

She came earlier than usual so that she could be well-prepared for the interview.

The man was bitten by the dog that he bought days ago.

dependent clause

c. Definite clauses: là những mệnh đề có sự hòa hợp giữa chủ ngữ và động từ:

e.g. She will be selected if she pass the interview.

definite clause

She would be ill if she were to work overtime.

definite clause

They insisted that the house be repainted.

definite clause

The man in front of me wishes he were a bit earlier.

definite clause

d. Indefinite clauses: là những mệnh đề có sự hòa hợp giữa chủ ngữ và động từ:

e.g. She would be selected if she were the first to be interviewed.

indefinite clause

She would be ill if she were to work overtime.

indefinite clause

They insisted that the house be repainted.

indefinite clause

The man in front of me wishes he were a bit earlier.

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 123. *Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.*

1. In spite her serve pain, she tried to walk to the auditorium to attend the lecture.

A

B

C

D

2. Friends advised her to stop doing the housework because her old age.

A

B

C

D

I knew him until I was a child.

A B C D

My friend was crazy although he was informed of the news of his mother's death.

A B C D 5. Although our grandfather was old but he could

help us.

A B C D

John didn't go to work because of he was seriously ill.

A B C D

I'll give him a map so as to he can find the way all right.

A B C D

He tried to explain, so she refused to listen.

A B C D

9. He doesn't buy a ticket every day so he has a season ticket.

A B C D

10. Mrs. Green was cooking dinner but her daughter Susan was laying the table.

A B C D 11. Mrs. Young is big and her

husband isn't.

A B C D

12. He decided not to get that job because of the salary was low.

A B C D

Although the bad traffic, I managed to arrive at the meeting on time.

A B C D 14. In spite of my father is old, he

still goes to work.

A B C D

Though he loves her very much, but he can't talk to her.

A B C D

She always behaves childishly despite she has grown up.

A B C D

17. Despite of his broken legs, he was able to get out of the car before exploding.

A B C D

She is learning English so as she will be able to get a better job.

A B C D

19. I knew they were talking about me because of they stopped when I entered the room.

A B C D

Because of his physical handicap, he has become a successful businessman.

A B C D

Exercise 124. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. I bought this new software _____ Chinese.
A. for learning B. learning C. to learn D. learned
 2. The flight from New York to London was delayed _____ the heavy fog.
A. because of B. because C. so D. as a result
- It's _____ city that he's got lost.
4. There are _____ in the universe that we cannot count them.
A. so much stars B. so many stars
C. such stars many D. such stars much
- He has _____ to do that he can't go to the cinema with us.
6. It is _____ book that just a few people like it.
A. so an old B. so old C. such old D. such an old
 7. The satellite travel _____ into space that nobody could see it with naked eyes.
A. so far B. such far C. too far D. far enough
 8. _____ the bad weather, the plan landed safely.
A. In spite B. In spite of
C. Despite the fact that D. Though
 9. It was _____ that we went for a walk.
A. a beautiful weather B. so a beautiful night
C. so nice weather D. such nice weather
 10. He lighted the candle _____ he might read the note.
A. so that B. and C. because D. as a result
 11. _____ his exhaustion, he won the marathon by nearly three minutes.
A. In spite B. Despite C. Although D. However
 12. He has worked for the same company _____ he left school.
A. because B. since C. then D. for
 13. _____ it was raining hard, he went out without a raincoat.
A. Despite B. In spite of C. However D. Although
 14. The coffee was _____ to drink.
A. so strong B. strong C. enough strong D. too strong
 15. It was _____ that we went for a hike in the mountains.
A. so a nice day B. so nice day C. such nice day D. such a nice day
 16. Julie is not _____ to see this film.
A. as old enough B. enough old C. enough old as D. old enough

17. _____ I meet her, she always wears a blue dress.
 A. Whatever B. However C. Whoever D. Whenever
18. The film was _____ through.
 A. too long for us to see B. very long for us to see it
 C. too long for us seeing it D. too long enough for us to see
19. Hoa was late _____ her car was broken down.
 A. if B. whether C. because D. while
- We couldn't sleep last night _____ the noise next door.
 A. although B. since C. because D. because of

Exercise 125. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. Mary jogs everyday _____ lose weight.
 A. so she can B. so that she can C. because she can D. so that to
- We'll be late _____ we hurry.
 A. if B. despite C. unless D. when
3. She failed the test _____ she studied hard.
 A. although B. even though C. as D. A and B
4. You should bring an umbrella _____ it rains.
 A. if B. unless C. in case D. because of
5. He went on working _____ feeling unwell.
 A. although B. unless C. due to D. despite
6. They decided to go _____ the danger.
 A. because B. in spite of C. although D. so
7. _____ they lost, their fans gave them a big cheer.
 A. However B. In spite of C. Although D. if
- Jane has a computer, _____ she doesn't use it.
 A. and B. since C. but D. in spite of
9. _____ we had got on the plane, it started to rain.
 A. If B. While C. Before D. As soon as
10. We have to wait _____ everybody else finishes their turn.
 A. when B. but C. so D. until
11. Mark heard the news on the radio _____ he was driving home.
 A. while B. as C. until D. A and B
12. What are you going to do _____ graduating from university?
 A. before B. after C. so D. because
13. I am not so good at English, _____ I have to practice more.

- A. but B. so C. while D. despite
 _____ the fact that she fail the exam, she didn't look disappointed.
- A. Although B. Despite C. In spite of D. Because of
 We didn't go to France last summer _____ we couldn't afford to.
- A. so B. when C. because D. because of
 You can't drive a car _____ you have a license.
- A. unless B. so C. in case D. if
 _____ the flight delay, they didn't attend the conference.
- A. Because B. As C. Although D. Because of
 18. The storm was so strong. _____, all the crops were destroyed.
- A. However B. As a result C. Consequently D. B and C
 19. Everyone thought she would accept the offer. _____, she turned it down.
- A. However B. So C. Too D. Moreover
 20. You should look up the meaning of the new words in the dictionary _____ misuse it.
- A. so as to B. to C. so as not to D. so that

Exercise 126: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Sorry we're late, we _____ the wrong turning.

- A. had taken B. were taking C. took D. are taking
2. Although he didn't have a ticket, Ken _____ come in.
 A. could B. can C. might D. was allowed to
3. She _____ her holiday in Thailand.
 A. said me about B. told about C. said about D. told me about
4. Every day I _____ up at 6 o'clock, _____ breakfast at 7 o'clock and _____ for work at 8 o'clock.
 A. get/ eat/ leave B. have got/ eating/ leaving
 C. got/ ate/ left D. will get/ have eaten/ left
- Some researchers have just _____ a survey of young people's points of view on contractual marriage.
 A. sent B. directed C. managed D. conducted
6. It is not easy to _____ our beauty when we get older and older.
 A. develop B. maintain C. gain D. collect
7. George is _____ Lisa.
 A. marry with B. marry to C. married with D. married to
8. The making of good habits _____ a determination to keep on training your child.
 A. require B. requires C. requirement D. required
9. Either you or your friend _____ on charge today.

A. are B. is C. was D. were

10. I am flying to the States tonight. I _____ you a ring if I can find a phone.

A. will give B. would give C. could give D. have given

According to research reports, people usually _____ in their sleep 25 to 30 times each night.

A. turn B. are turning C. have turned D. turned

Jane's eyes burned and her shoulders ached. She _____ at the computer for 5 straight hours. Finally, she took a break.

A. is sitting B. has been sitting C. was sitting D. had been sitting

13. We'll need more staff _____ we start the new project.

A. unless B. whether C. in case D. or

14. If the traffic _____ bad, I may get home late.

A. is B. were C. was D. had been

The A-level (short for Advanced Level) is a General Certificate of Education set of exams _____ in the U.K.

A. taken B. spent C. met D. indicated

I _____ you can swim so well and I can't.

A. hate B. hate it that C. hate that D. hate it

17. _____ resigned, we would have been forced to sack him.

A. Had he not B. Hadn't he C. He had not D. He not had

18. I _____ with the performance, but I got flu the day before.

A. was to have helped B. helped C. was to help D. had helped

In all cases, applicants must meet the course requirements _____ by the admitting institution.

A. written B. listed C. typed D. valued

Most universities _____ students who want to attend the university to pass the entrance examination.

A. receive B. tell C. require D. ask

Exercise 127: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

I _____ be at the meeting by 10:00. I will probably _____ take a taxi if I want to be on time.

A. must/ have to B. may/ must C. should/ needn't D. mustn't/ shouldn't

Nobody yet knew what _____ to cause the dam to burst, but the residents of the area organized quickly to protect life and property against the rising floods.

A. happens B. had happened C. happen D. did it happen

You _____ forget to pay the rent tomorrow. The landlord is very strict about paying on time.

- A. needn't B. mustn't C. do not have to D. may not

4. The television isn't working. It _____ during the move.

- A. should have been damaged B. needn't be damaged
C. must have been damaged D. ought not be damaged

5. I am not deaf. You _____ shout.

- A. must B. mustn't C. need D. needn't

6. Many U.S. automobiles _____ in Detroit, Michigan.

- A. manufacture B. have manufactured
C. are manufactured D. are manufacturing

7. Tien was new on the job, but he quickly fit himself into the _____ routine of the office.

- A. established B. establishing C. establishes D. establish

8. Could you please come over? I need you _____ the refrigerator.

- A. help me moving B. helping me to move
C. to help me move D. help me to move

I'll never forget _____ that race. What a thrill!

- A. to win B. win C. being won D. winning

10. John failed again. He _____ harder.

- A. must have tried B. should have tried
C. can tried D. may have tried

_____ I borrow your lighter for a minute? - Sure, no problem. Actually, you _____ keep it if you want to.

- A. May/ can B. Must/ might C. Will/ should D. Might/ needn't

12. I do not mind at all. You _____ apologize.

- A. shouldn't B. needn't C. mustn't D. oughtn't to

Ted's flight from Amsterdam took more than 11 hours. He _____ exhausted after such a long flight now.

- A. must be B. must be being C. must have been D. should have been

If coastal erosion continues to take place at the present rate, in another fifty years this beach _____ anymore.

- A. doesn't exist B. isn't going to exist
C. isn't existing D. won't be existing

Robert has a new car. He _____ it for a very good price. He paid 30 percent less than the regular retail cost.

- A. could buy B. had to buy
C. was supposed to buy D. was able to buy

- **Anh:** "You haven't eaten anything since yesterday night. You _____ be really hungry!"

- **Lan:** "I am."

- A. might B. will C. can D. must
17. The lamp _____ be broken. Maybe the light bulb just burned out.
A. should not B. might not C. must not D. will not
18. It is a top secret. You _____ tell anyone about it.
A. mustn't B. needn't C. mightn't D. won't
19. We have plenty of time for doing the work. We _____ be hurried.
A. needn't B. shouldn't C. mustn't D. mayn't
- All parents are _____ to at least try to behave in ways that will give their own children an important protection
A. decided B. supposed C. followed D. rejected

Exercise 128. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. _____, Peter came to see me.
A. While having dinner B. While I was having dinner
C. When having dinner D. When I am having dinner
2. _____ my homework, I went to bed.
A. After I had finished B. After finished
C. Finished D. After had finished
3. _____ the dance, Jerry said good-bye to his girlfriend.
A. Before left B. Before he leaves
C. Before leaving D. Before he will leave
4. Jones _____ after everyone _____.
A. speaks/ will eat B. will speak/ has eaten
C. is speaking/ eats D. has spoken/ will have eaten
5. _____, Joe stays in bed and reads magazines.
A. Whenever raining B. As it will be raining
C. When it will rain D. Whenever it rains
6. _____ in Rome than he was kidnapped.
A. No sooner he arrived B. Had he no sooner arrived
C. No sooner had he arrived D. No sooner he had arrived
7. _____ Peter gets here, we will congratulate him.
A. As soon as B. After C. No sooner D. Since
8. Mrs. Jones _____ the door before the customers arrived.
A. had opened B. will open C. would open D. has open

9. After Mariana _____ her exam, I _____ her out to eat.
A. was finishing/ would take B. finished/ had taken
C. will finish/ have taken D. has finished/ will take
10. Mary will have finished all her work _____.
A. as soon as her boss returned B. until her boss will return
C. by the time her boss returns D. when her boss will return
- She went on crying, with her head sunk into a pillow, and cried and cried _____ the pillow was wet through.
A. before B. after C. until D. while
- _____ you finish typing that report, make five copies of it and give it to alooof the officers.
A. While B. When C. But D. Although
13. When the passenger _____, will you please give him this package?
A. will arrive B. arrives C. would arrives D. arriving
14. They were playing in the garden when _____.
A. they have heard a scream B. they were hearing a scream
C. they heard a scream D. they had heard a scream
15. He cleaned his shoes _____ they shone.
A. when B. after C. while D. until
16. I had no sooner lit the barbecue _____ it started to rain.
A. as B. while C. than D. that
17. When the paint _____ it'll change from a light to a deep red.
A. dry B. dries C. dried D. will dry
18. When _____ older I'd love to be an artist.
A. I'm B. I'll be C. was D. have been
19. By the time he retires, he _____ \$20,000.
A. will save B. has saved C. had saved D. will have saved
20. When I _____ here for fifteen years I'll be entitled to a pension.
A. work B. am working C. have worked D. had worked
-

BÀI 2. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES - CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN

I. Common conditional sentences: Ba loại câu điều kiện phổ biến

Conditional sentences type 1 (real condition) – Câu điều kiện có thực: *Kết quả có thể được thực hiện ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai khi điều kiện ứng nghiệm (xảy ra).*

If - S - V(simple present), S -	<div style="border: 1px solid black; display: inline-block; padding: 2px;"> <i>will</i> <i>shall</i> <i>can</i> <i>may</i> </div>	- V (bare infinitives)
--	--	-------------------------------

- e.g. If I have the money, I will buy a new car.
 If you try more, you will improve your English.
 We will have plenty of time to finish the project before dinner if the weather stays fine.
 Unless he tries harder, he will fail the exam.
 (if he doesn't try harder, he will fail)

Conditional sentences type 2 (unreal present condition) – Câu điều kiện không có thực ở hiện tại: *Kết quả không thể được thực hiện ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai bởi điều kiện chỉ là giả định (không thể xảy ra).*

If - S - V(simple past), S -	<div style="border: 1px solid black; display: inline-block; padding: 2px;"> <i>would</i> <i>might</i> <i>should</i> </div>	- V
<i>were</i>		

- e.g. If I had enough money now, I would buy this house.
 (but now I don't have enough money)
 If I had the time, I would go to the beach with you this weekend.
 (but I don't have the time, and I'm not going to the beach with you)
 He would tell you about it if he were here.
 (he won't tell you about it, because he is not here)
 If he didn't speak so quickly, you could understand him.
 (in fact, he speaks very quickly, so you can't understand him)

Note. Động từ *to be* được chia là *were* với mọi chủ ngữ.

- e.g. If I were you, I wouldn't do such a thing.
 (but I'm not you)
 If it were not so bad, we could go swimming.
 (in fact, the weather is bad and we can't go swimming)
 She would marry him if she were you.
 (she doesn't marry him because she and you are different people)

Conditional sentences type 3 (unreal past condition) – Câu điều kiện không có thực ở quá khứ: *Kết quả không thể được thực hiện trong quá khứ bởi điều kiện chỉ là giả định (không thể xảy ra).*

<p>If - S - had - past participles, S - } should - have - past participles</p> <p>} could</p> <p>might</p>

- e.g. If we hadn't lost the way we could have been here in time.
(but in fact we lost the way, so we were late)
- If we had known that you were there, we would have written you a letter. (We didn't know that you were there, so we didn't write you a letter)
- She would have sold the house if she had found the right buyer.
(She didn't sell the house because she didn't find the right buyer)
- If we hadn't lost the way, we would have arrived sooner.
(We lost our way, and we didn't arrive early)

More conditional sentence forms: Một số loại câu điều kiện đặc biệt

For a habit: Mẫu câu dùng để chỉ một thói quen của một chủ thể nào đó ta thực hiện theo mẫu câu sau:

If - S - V(simple present) - S - V(simple present)

- e.g. If the doctor has morning office hours, he visits his patients in the hospital in the afternoon
- John usually walks to school if he has enough time.

For a command: Mẫu câu dùng để chỉ một mệnh lệnh, sai khiến hay sự nhờ vả ta thực hiện theo mẫu câu sau:

If - S - V(simple present), command form*
--

- e.g. If you go to the Post Office, please mail this letter for me.
Please call me if you hear from Jane.
If she comes, call me.
(Maybe she is coming or she has promised to come)
- If the weather stays fine, we can arrive on time.
(The weather is now fine and there's no sign of the bad changes)

For a suggestion: Với lời đề nghị, khuyên răn.

- e.g. If she comes, you should call me.
(I suggest calling me when she comes)

You'd better cancel the project if it is possible.
(It's best for you to cancel the project)

For a present subjunctive cases but past unfulfilled result. Với giả định hiện tại mà kết quả không thể xảy ra ở quá khứ. Điều giả định này luôn đúng ở hiện tại.

If - S – V(simple past), S - <div style="display: flex; align-items: center; justify-content: center;"> <div style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black; padding: 0 5px;"> were </div> <div style="margin: 0 10px;">-</div> <div style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black; padding: 0 5px;"> would should could might </div> <div style="margin: 0 10px;">-</div> <div style="padding: 0 5px;"> have - past participles </div> </div>
--

e.g. If I were you, I would have agreed with him yesterday. (The action hadn't been done in the past but the subjunctive case is at present. *Mãi mãi tôi vẫn không thể là cậu được, đây là thực tế nên không cần chuyển điều kiện về quá khứ hoàn thành*)

She would have been at the school if she didn't appear in the park now.

She might have had chance to be successful if she were now in a higher position.

If he had a car now, he could have worked overtime much before.

For a past subjunctive cases but present unfulfilled result. Với giả định quá khứ mà kết quả không thể xảy ra ở hiện tại. Điều giả định này được coi là quá khứ của quá khứ, nhưng kết quả là phi lý.

If - S – had - past participles, S - <div style="display: flex; align-items: center; justify-content: center;"> <div style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black; padding: 0 5px;"> would should could might </div> <div style="margin: 0 10px;">-</div> <div style="padding: 0 5px;"> V </div> </div>

e.g. If I had been there last time, I would agree to lend him the money. (The action hasn't been done up to now, this is only my regret. *Sự tiếc nuối của tôi khi nghe bạn thuật lại vụ việc giả định của tôi rơi vào hoàn cảnh quá khứ, nhưng kết quả này đã không xảy ra trước đó*)

We would be successful if we had taken your advice in the first place.

If he had done all the work, he could now go with us.

They would now be in the classroom if they had hurried up as we told them to.

For other purposes: Với các mục đích nói khác nhau ta có các loại câu điều kiện khác như trình bày sau đây;

a. Inversion of "had": Đảo ngữ với câu điều kiện loại 2

Were - S - (to infinitive), S would -

V e.g. Were I ill, I would not be here now.

Were he to go, he would not be able to finish his project.

b. Inversion of "had": Đảo ngữ với câu điều kiện loại 3

Had - S - past participles, S would have - past participles e.g.

Had we known you were there, we would have written you a letter.

Had she found the right buyer, she would have sold the house.

Hadn't we lost the way, we would have arrived sooner.

c. Special uses of "if" clauses in requests- Cách sử dụng của mệnh đề "If" như đề nghị được diễn giải như dưới đây:

If you will/would, S will - V

e.g. If you would wait a moment, I will see if Mr. John is here.

(Nếu ngài vui lòng đợi, tôi sẽ kiểm tra giúp ngài xem ông John có ở nhà không) I would be very grateful if you will/ would make an arrangement for me.

If you could - V.

hãy vui lòng ... → chấp nhận như tất yếu

e.g. If you could fill in this form.

Hãy vui lòng điền vào mẫu này

If you could open your books.

Vui lòng mở sách.

If - S - will/ would, S - V

nếu chịu (tuân lệnh, nghe lời)

eg. If he will (would) listen to me, I can help him.

Nếu cậu ta chịu nghe lời tôi có thể giúp cậu ấy.

If - S - will, S - V

diễn tả sự ngoan cố

e.g. If you will learn English this way, a failure for TOEFL test is sure awaiting you.

Nếu cậu cứ học tiếng Anh theo kiểu này, thì chắc chắn cậu sẽ trượt TOEFL.

If - S - should, command

khả năng xảy ra rất ít, không tin tưởng vào kết quả

e.g. If you shouldn't know how to use this TV set, please call me up this number.

Nếu bạn không biết sử dụng chiếc TV này, hãy gọi đến số máy này. (Tuy nhiên người nói tin chắc người nghe biết sử dụng TV).

If you should have any difficulties while doing these exercises, please feel free to ask me. Nếu không làm được bài tập này hãy hỏi tôi nhé. (Tuy nhiên người nói tin chắc người nghe làm được bài tập vì chúng rất dễ)

Note: Đảo ngữ như sau:

e.g. Should you have any difficulties while doing these exercises, please feel free to ask me.

Should it be cloudy and gray, the groundhog will supposedly wander around for food - a sign that spring is near.

d. Special conditions:

even if - negative verb (cho dù)

e.g. You must go tomorrow even if you aren't ready.

You have to hand in your paper even if you cannot do the exercises.

Whether or not - positive verb (dù có ... hay không)

e.g. He likes watching TV whether or not the show is good.

They want to enroll whether or not the course suits them well.

unless + positive verb = if ... not (trừ khi = nếu không)

e.g. If you don't start at once, you will be late.

→ You will be late unless you start at once.

You will be late if you are not ready by now.

→ You will be late unless you are ready by now

But for that - unreal condition (nếu không thì)...

e.g. Her father pays her fees, but for that she wouldn't be here (but she is here)

present

unreal present

My car broke down, but for that I could have come in time.

past

unreal past

otherwise - conditional sentence = nếu không thì ...

e.g. We must be back before midnight, otherwise I will be locked out.

Her father pays her fees, otherwise she couldn't be here.

present

unreal present

I used a computer, otherwise it would have taken longer.

past

unreal past

Note. *or... else* được dùng thay cho *otherwise*.

Provided/ providing (that) (Miễn là/ với điều kiện là)

e.g. You can camp here provided (that) you leave no mess.

Suppose/ supposing? = what ... if ...? (giả sử như/ nếu như)

e.g. Suppose the plane is late? = what will happen if the plane is late?

Suppose you ask him = why don't you ask him? – gợi ý

What if I'm- thách thức cực tuyệt

e.g. What if I am the first to leave.

What if I do not follow you.

If only - S - V (simple present), S will V = hope that S will V
hi vọng là

e.g. If only he comes in time (hi vọng là cậu ấy đúng giờ)

If only he will head your advice.

If only - S - V (simple past/ past perfect) = wish that
giả định: giá mà

e.g. If only he didn't smoke. (but he doesn't)

If only she had come in time. (but she didn't)

if only - S would V = ước sao, mong sao

e.g. If only he would drive more slowly (but he drive so fast)

If only it would stop raining.

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 129. Complete each of the following sentences with the right forms of the verbs shown in brackets.

If he had arrived late, we _____ without him? (to begin)

If they had felt thirsty, they _____ the lemonade? (not to drink)

If we had been here, we _____ the fireworks. (not to miss)

If his office had called, he _____ to work? (not to return)

She _____ early if she had not had a good reason. (not to leave)

If they had searched more carefully, they _____ the watch sooner. (to find)

If you had visited Rome, you _____ to the opera? (to go)

If he were here now he _____ to help us. (not to hesitate)

I _____ the book last week if I had known you wanted it. (to finish)

You _____ to him last night if you had seen him? (to speak)

If they were old enough, they _____ the contest next week. (to enter)

She _____ a vacation now if she had more time? (not to take)

If he had sent a message, we _____ it two days ago. (to receive)

I _____ it if you came with me now. (to appreciate)

She _____ grateful if we offered to help her tomorrow? (not to be)

He _____ yesterday if he had entered the race? (to win)

They _____ more books last month if they had noticed the stock was low? (not to order)

She not _____ us now if she knew where we lived? (to visit)

You _____ cucumbers yesterday if they had been on sale? (to buy)

20. If we _____ more attention yesterday, we would know what time to be there. (to pay)

Exercise 130. Complete each of the following sentences with the right forms of the verbs shown in brackets.

1. If he _____ rich, he would travel. (to be)
2. I _____ anxious to meet him, I would stay at home. (not to be)
3. He would have more free time if he _____ so hard. (not to work)
4. If I _____ a car, I would visit Cape Breton. (to have)
5. We would take the bus if it _____ to snow. (to begin)
6. If you _____ him, you would surely recognize him. (to see)
7. I would not confide in him if I _____ him. (not to trust)
8. If we _____ time, we would let you know. (not to have)
9. If he _____ an expedition, I would certainly join it. (to organize)
10. I would not worry about it if I _____ you. (to be)
11. I would not have got lost if I _____ the map. (to study)
12. He _____ at home, we would have visited him. (to be)
13. We would have invited him if we _____ he would come. (to think)
14. He would have applied for the job if he _____ the advertisement. (to see)
15. We would not have ordered tea, we _____ how late it was. (to know)
16. It _____, they would have held the party in the park. (not to rain)
17. We would have agreed with you if we _____ what you meant. (to understand)
18. If you _____ salt on the steps, they would not have been so slippery. (to put)
19. He _____ to us, we would have known when to expect him. (to write)
20. If he _____ to take the course, he would have had to work hard. (to choose)

Exercise 131. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. If it _____ last night, it _____ so hot today.
A. rained/ is not
B. was raining/ were not
C. had rained/ would not have been
D. had rained/ would not be
2. Without your recommendation, we _____ any success last year.
A. had not got
B. did not get
C. will not have got
D. would not have got
3. _____ he gets here soon, we will have to start the meeting without him.
A. Suppose
B. Provided
C. Unless
D. If
4. _____ as much money as Bill Gates of Microsoft, I would retire.
A. Did I have
B. If did I have
C. Unless I had
D. If I had had
5. If I _____ it was a formal party, I wouldn't have gone wearing jeans and a jumper.

- A. knew B. had known C. had been knowing D. could know
6. Tom's company will almost certainly like him_____ he improves his attitude.
A. unless B. or C. otherwise D. if
7. If my client_____ me her fax number, I_____ to post a letter to her.
A. gave/ will not have B. will give/ do not have
C. had given/ wouldn't have had D. had given/ will not have had
8. _____ I had brought my laptop to the meeting yesterday.
A. If B. If only C. Even if D. As if
9. If I_____ the lottery last week, I_____ rich now.
A. had won/ would be B. had won/ would have been
C. won/ would be D. won/ would have been
10. Carrie said she will join the company if the starting salary_____ her expectations.
A. meets B. met C. has met D. had met.
11. If you_____ to my advice, you_____ in trouble now.
A. listened/ were not B. listen/ are not
C. had listened/ would not have been D. had listened/ would not be.
12. If you take the 8 a.m. flight to New York, you_____ change planes.
A. could not have to B. will not have to
C. had not had to D. would not to have to
13. If it_____ warm yesterday, we would have gone to the beach.
A. was B. were C. had been D. could be
14. If it_____ an hour ago, the streets_____ wet now.
A. were raining/ will be B. had rained/ would be
C. rained/ would be D. had rained/ would have be
15. _____ here, he would help us with the troubles.
A. Were Peter B. If were Peter C. Unless were Peter D. Unless Peter were
16. _____ that problem with the car, we wouldn't have missed the speech.
A. If we had had B. If had we had
C. Unless we had had D. Provided that we had had
17. If I were a little taller, I_____ be able to water the plant on the top shelf.
A. did B. would C. had D. would have
18. If you hear from Susan today, _____ her to ring me.
A. tell B. to tell C. telling D. will tell
19. She had to have the operation_____.
A. unless she would dies B. if she would die
C. otherwise she will die D. or she would die
20. If the traffic_____ bad, I may get home late.

A. is

B. were

C. was

D. had been

Exercise 132. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. I am flying to the United States tonight. I _____ you a ring if I can find a phone.
A. will give B. would give C. could give D. have given
2. We'll need more staff _____ we start the new project.
A. unless B. whether C. in case D. or
3. If I _____ 10 years younger, I _____ the job.
A. am/ will take B. was/ have taken
C. had been/ will have taken D. were/ would take
4. _____ I had learnt English when I was at high school.
A. Unless B. Even if C. If D. If only
5. You are not allowed to use the club's facilities _____ you are a member.
A. unless B. if C. provided D. supposed
6. If she _____ the train last night, she _____ here now.
A. took/ were B. were taking/ is
C. had taken/ would have been D. had taken/ would be
7. _____ if a war happened?
A. What you would do B. What would you do
C. What will you do D. What you will do
8. I would send her a fax if I _____ her number.
A. know B. knew C. had known D. could know.
9. _____ it were well paid, I would accept this proposal.
A. Providing B. Unless C. But for D. If only
10. _____ more carefully, he would not have had the accident yesterday.
A. If Peter driven B. If had Peter driven
C. Had Peter driven D. Unless Peter had driven.
11. If I were you, I _____ that.
A. would apply for B. will ask for C. will have change D. can take
12. If I _____ a wish, I'd wish for happiness for my family.
A. have B. been having C. had D. was having
13. If we had had time, we _____ to the party.
A. can go B. will go C. would have gone D. will have gone
14. We couldn't understand the teacher if he _____ too fast.
A. spoke B. has spoken C. doesn't speak D. didn't speak
15. If everything is all right, we _____ our work on time.

- A. complete B. are completing C. have completed D. will complete
16. What _____ if the earth suddenly stopped going around the sun.
A. happens B. will happen C. would happen D. happened
- Unless you _____ quiet, I'll scream.
A. don't keep B. keep C. didn't keep D. kept
18. You'll be able to speak English well if you _____ hard.
A. study B. studied C. would study D. had studied
19. If I _____ you, I _____ invitation.
A. am/ will refuse B. was/ would refuse
C. were/ would refuse D. had been/ will refuse
20. _____, I'd have told you the answer.
A. If you asked me B. Had you asked me
C. You had asked me D. Unless you asked me

Exercise 133. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. If I _____ a lot of money now, I _____ a new car.
A. have/ will buy B. have/ would buy C. had/will buy D. had/would buy
2. If I _____ you, I _____ do that.
A. am/ will B. were/ would C. were/ will D. had been/ would
3. If I were offered the job, I think I _____ it
A. take B. will take C. would take D. would have taken
4. I would be very surprised if he _____.
A. refuses B. refused C. had refused D. would refuse
5. Many people would be out of work if that factory _____ down
A. closes B. had closed C. closed D. would close
6. If she sold the car, she _____ much money.
A. gets B. would get C. will get D. would have got
7. They would be disappointed if we _____.
A. hadn't come B. wouldn't come C. don't come D. didn't come
8. Would John be angry if I _____ his bicycle without asking?
A. take B. took C. had taken D. would take
9. She _____ terribly upset if I lost this ring.
A. will be B. would be C. were D. had been
10. If someone _____ in here with a gun, I would be very frightened.
A. would walk B. walks C. had walked D. walked
11. What would happen if you _____ to work tomorrow?

A. don't go

B. didn't go

C. won't go

D. wouldn't go

If we had lost the map, we would never have found our way.

We will have found our way unless we lost the map.

We found our way because we didn't lose the map.

We would have lost our way if we had lost the map.

If we lost the map, we didn't find our way.

He didn't hurry so he missed the plane.

If he hurried, he wouldn't miss the train.

If he had hurried, he might catch the plane.

If he had hurried, he could have caught the plane.

D. He didn't miss the plane because he hurried.

If I were taller, I could reach the shelf.

I am not tall enough to reach the top shelf.

I am too tall to reach the top shelf.

I cannot reach the top shelf because I am very tall.

In spite of being tall, I cannot reach the top shelf.

I will agree to these conditions provided that they increase my salary.

They did not increase my salary so I quit the job.

I will only agree these conditions if they give me more money.

They give me more money or I will only agree these conditions.

Unless they give me more money, I will only agree these conditions.

If only I had studied hard enough to pass the final exam.

I regret not studying hard enough to pass the exam.

I had studied hard enough and I passed the final exam.

I studied too hard to pass the final exam.

I studied hard otherwise I would fail the final exam.

John speaks Chinese fluently because he used to live in China for ten years.

Suppose John has lived in China for ten years, he can speak Chinese fluently.

Provided that John lived in China for ten years, he could speak Chinese fluently.

Unless John had lived in China for ten years, he could not have spoken Chinese fluently.

John could not speak Chinese fluently if he had not lived in China for ten years.

You didn't tell me your story, so I couldn't help you.

If you told me the story, I could help you.

If only you told me your story.

Had you told me the story, I could have helped you.

Did you tell me your story, I could help you.

There will be a shortage of water unless it rains.

If it doesn't rain, there will be a shortage of water.

There will be a shortage of water if it rains.

There will be a shortage of water if it will rain.

If it doesn't rain, there would be a shortage of water.

He described the accident as if he_____.

A. saw it with his own eyes

B. had seen it with his own eyes

C. sees it with his own eyes

D. has seen it with his own eyes

Exercise 134: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

You washed it in boiling water; that's why it shrank.

Had you not_____.

We missed the train because we were using an out-of-date timetable.

If we_____.

His own men deserted him; that's the only reason why he failed.

He wouldn't_____.

They were driving very quickly. That's why the accident was so terrible.

The accident_____.

It was raining. That's the only reason I didn't take the children to the beach.

But for_____.

My number isn't in the directory so people don't ring me up.

People_____.

The police are not armed so we don't have gun battles in the streets.

Were the_____.

The shops don't deliver now, which makes life difficult.

Life would_____.

He's very thin; perhaps that's why he feels the cold so much.

He wouldn't_____.

We haven't any matches so we can't light a fire.

We could_____.

It rained all the time. Perhaps that's why he didn't enjoy his visit.

He would_____.

I didn't work hard at school so I didn't get a good job when I left.

Had I_____.

They used closed-circuit television. That's how they spotted the shop-lifter.

Had it_____.

They asked him to leave the dining-room because he wasn't wearing a shirt.

If he_____.

It took us a long time to find his house because the streets were not clearly marked.

Had the_____.

My friend advised me to sell it.

My friend said if I_____.

I haven't much time so I read very little.

If I_____.

They don't clean the windows so the rooms look rather dark.

The rooms_____.

He never polishes his shoes, so he never looks smart.

If he_____.

He doesn't pay his staff properly; perhaps that's why they don't work well.

His staff_____.

Exercise 135: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

She is very shy; that's why she doesn't enjoy parties.

She would_____.

He doesn't take any exercise; that's why he is so unhealthy.

He would_____.

I haven't the right change so we can't get tickets from the machine.

If I_____.

They speak French to her, not English, so her English doesn't improve.

Her English_____.

He doesn't work overtime, so he doesn't earn as much as I do.

He would_____.

He never shaves; that's the only reason he looks unattractive.

He would_____.

You work too fast; that's why you make so many mistakes.

If you_____.

I can't park near my office; that's why I don't come by car.

If I_____.

I live a long way from the centre; that's why I am always late for work.

Were I_____.

I haven't a map so I can't direct you.

Were I_____.

It's a pity we haven't a steak to cook over our camp fire.

If we _____.

I'm fat; that's why I can't get through the bathroom window.

I could _____.

He doesn't help me, possibly because I never ask him for help.

If I _____.

I can't drive so we can't take the car.

I would _____.

We have no ladder so we can't get over the wall.

If we _____.

I live near my office, so I don't spend much time travelling to work.

I would _____.

I didn't see the signal, so I didn't stop.

Had I _____.

I didn't know your number, so I didn't ring.

I would _____.

She didn't know you were in hospital, so she didn't visit you.

Had she _____.

We only came by bus because there were no taxis.

Had there _____.

Exercise 136: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

We haven't got central heating, so the house is rather cold.

If we _____.

I have no dog, so I don't like being alone in the house at night.

I would _____.

We got a lift, so we reached the station in time.

If I _____.

I haven't got a vacuum cleaner; that's why I'm so slow.

I would _____.

I don't know his address, so I can't write to him.

If I _____.

We didn't visit the museum because we hadn't time.

Had we _____.

Tom's father was on the Board. That's the only reason he got the job.

But for _____.

He wasn't looking where he was going. That's why he was run over.

Had he _____.

I don't like country life, perhaps because I wasn't brought up in the country.

If I _____.

I didn't know he was so quarrelsome. I'm sorry now that I invited him.

Had I _____.

People drive very fast. That's why there are so many accidents.

If people _____.

English people speak very quickly. Perhaps that's why I can't understand them.

I would _____.

They got the children back alive only because they paid the ransom at once.

Had they _____.

The flats are not clearly numbered, so it is very difficult to find anyone.

It would _____.

You don't wipe your feet, so you make muddy marks all over the floor.

If you _____.

We didn't go by air only because we hadn't enough money.

Had we _____.

The bus didn't stop because you didn't put your hand up.

Had you _____.

I only came up the stairs because the lift wasn't working.

Had the lift _____.

I didn't know how thin the ice was, so I was walking on it quite confidently.

If I _____.

The champion didn't take the fight seriously at first; perhaps that's why he didn't win it.

If the champion _____.

BÀI 3. RELATIVE CLAUSES - MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ

I. Relative pronouns:

	Subject	Object	Possessive
For persons	<i>who</i> <i>that</i>	<i>whom/who</i> <i>that</i>	<i>whose</i>
For things	<i>which</i> <i>that</i>	<i>which</i> <i>that</i>	<i>whose/of which</i>

WHO: Là đại từ quan hệ chỉ người, dùng để thay thế cho danh từ chỉ người, làm chủ ngữ hay tân ngữ cho mệnh đề quan hệ.

- e.g. The man who told you I was out met me in the park.
The person who you wanted to see died days ago.
This is the lady who helped my mom.

WHOM: Là đại từ quan hệ chỉ người, dùng để thay thế cho danh từ chỉ người, làm tân ngữ cho mệnh đề quan hệ.

- e.g. That's the one whom we need to contact.
The person whom you wanted to see died days ago.
The one to whom he wanted to talk was out.
Mr. Ba, from whom we got news, was escaped yesterday.

WHOSE: Là tính từ quan hệ chỉ người, dùng để thay thế cho tính từ sở hữu, kết hợp với một danh từ, làm chủ ngữ hay tân ngữ cho mệnh đề quan hệ.

- e.g. This is the lady whose son cheated me.
The country whose people were struggling against floods announced the situation of disasters yesterday.

WHICH: Là đại từ quan hệ chỉ vật, dùng để thay thế cho danh từ chỉ vật, làm chủ ngữ hay tân ngữ của mệnh đề quan hệ.

- e.g. The book which you liked was sold.
This is the bike which is my birthday present.
The house, which was on fire, was built long ago.

THAT: Là đại từ quan hệ thay thế, dùng để thay thế cho các đại từ quan hệ như WHO, WHICH, làm chủ ngữ hay tân ngữ cho mệnh đề quan hệ, ngoài ra còn được sử dụng trong câu chẻ.

- e.g. The book that you liked was sold.
This is the bike that I want to buy.
The one that told you I was out met me in the park.
The person that you wanted to see died days ago.

WHEN: Là trạng từ quan hệ chỉ thời gian, sử dụng trong mệnh đề quan hệ trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian.

e.g. The day when she left was rainy.

The time when we reunite is uncertain.

WHERE: Là trạng từ quan hệ chỉ nơi chốn, sử dụng trong mệnh đề quan hệ trạng ngữ chỉ nơi chốn.

e.g. This is the house where he lived in his childhood.

The place where we play football is a football ground.

WHY: Là trạng từ quan hệ chỉ lí do, nguyên nhân, sử dụng trong mệnh đề quan hệ trạng ngữ chỉ nguyên nhân.

e.g. The reason why she left was unknown.

That's why we are worrying now.

Relative clauses:

Defining clauses (Restrictive Relative Clauses): Đây là loại mệnh đề quan hệ xác định và cần thiết có mặt để câu có nghĩa, nếu không có nó câu không đảm bảo về ngữ nghĩa (Chủ từ chưa được xác định).

e.g. The man who keeps the library is Mr. Green. (The man is Mr. Green thì rõ, nhưng The man keeps the library thì không rõ là ai)

That is the book that I like best.

(là cuốn mà tôi thích trong vô vàn cuốn sách)

Non-defining clauses (Non-Restrictive Relative Clauses): Đây là loại mệnh đề không cần thiết có mặt mà câu vẫn có nghĩa, nếu không có nó câu vẫn đảm bảo về ngữ nghĩa vì tiền ngữ (chủ từ) đã xác định. Loại mệnh đề này thường cách mệnh đề chính bằng các dấu phẩy, hoặc thường có các tính từ hay đại từ chỉ định hay sở hữu như: *this, that, these, those, his, my,...*

e.g. That man, whom you saw yesterday, is Mr. Pike

This is Mrs. Jones, who helped me last week.

Mary, whose sister I know, has won an Oscar.

Reduced clauses: Mệnh đề rút gọn

Present Participle Phrases: (V-ING phrases replace relative clauses) Có thể dùng một ngữ danh động từ V-ING để thay thế cho mệnh đề quan hệ nếu động từ chính của mệnh đề đó ở thể chủ động.

e.g. The man who is sitting next to you is Mr. Mike.

The man sitting next to you is Mr. Pike.

Do you know the boy who broke the window yesterday?

Do you know the boy breaking the window yesterday?

Past Participle Phrases: (V-ED phrases replace relative clauses) Có thể dùng một ngữ tính từ V-ED để thay thế cho mệnh đề quan hệ nếu động từ chính của mệnh đề đó ở thể bị động.

e.g. The man who was arrested by the police is Mr. Mike.

The man arrested by the police is Mr. Pike.

Do you know the boy who was punished by the headmaster yesterday?

Do you know the boy punished by the headmaster yesterday?

Infinitive Phrases: (to V phrases replace relative clauses) Có thể dùng một ngữ động từ *to infinitives* để thay thế cho mệnh đề quan hệ trong trường hợp mệnh đề có chứa các từ FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, LAST, ONLY... có thể dùng với cấu trúc “for O + to V”, hoặc một số mệnh đề mang tính ràng buộc nhiệm vụ...

e.g. English is an important language which we have to master.

English is an important language to master/ for us to master.

He is the only one who knows the answer.

He is the only one to know the answer.

Noun Phrases: (Noun phrases replace relative clauses) Có thể dùng một hoặc một cụm danh từ để thay thế cho mệnh đề quan hệ nếu mệnh đề đó mang ngữ danh từ (thường chỉ nghề nghiệp).

e.g. Mr. Ba, who is our new form teacher, is a good teacher.

Mr. Ba, our new form teacher, is a good teacher.

The man who is the new manager of the office is still young.

The man - the new manager of the office - is still very young.

Adjectival Phrases: (Adjectival phrases replace relative clauses) Có thể dùng một hoặc một cụm tính từ để thay thế cho mệnh đề quan hệ.

e.g. The streets which are crowded with population have no interest in learning.

The streets crowded with population have no interest in learning.

The jobs which are easy to get are not always well-paid.

The jobs easy to get are not always well-paid.

IV. Cleft sentences: Câu chẻ là hình thức đặc biệt của câu phức sử dụng các mệnh đề quan hệ để nhấn mạnh tới các thành tố của câu như chủ ngữ, tân ngữ, hay trạng ngữ. Dưới đây là ba hình thức câu chẻ điển hình:

Subject focus: Nhấn mạnh tới chủ ngữ, chủ thể của hành động hoặc đối tượng được đề cập.

S - V → It be S that/ who V

e.g. Nam helped me a lot.

It was Nam who helped me a lot.

The book tells us a romantic story.

It is the book that tells us a romantic story.

He showed me the way here.

It was he who showed me the way here.

Object focus: Nhấn mạnh tới tân ngữ, chủ thể nhận hay chịu tác động của hành động.

S - V - O → It be O that - S - V

e.g. She bought the dictionary.

It was the dictionary that she bought.

It was Mai that we saw at the party.

Adverbials focus: Nhấn mạnh tới trạng ngữ, đề cập tới thời gian, nơi chốn, cách thức, phương pháp của hành vi.

S - V - A → It be A that S - V

e.g. We first met in this park.

It was in this park that we first met.

She left on a rainy day.

It was on a rainy day that she left.

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 137. Fill in each gap with a suitable relative pronoun: *which, that, whose, whom, who, where, when, why, or which*.

Here is the beach_____ is the safest for swimmers.

Mr. Bike will buy the house_____ is opposite to my house.

I've ever read the book_____ Huong gave me yesterday.

The man_____ I saw last weekend said something totally different.

The town_____ we are living is noisy and crowded.

Sunday is the day_____ we usually go fishing on.

Sunday is the day_____ we usually go fishing.

The boy_____ sister is in my class can speak Japanese and Korean languages.

The dictionary_____ is on the table belongs to Long.

He wore a hat_____ made him look like a cowboy.

The year _____ we came to live here was 1975.
I wish to see the factory _____ your father used to work.
Mr. David, _____ son studies with us, has never been to Vietnam.
A bricklayer is a person _____ builds houses.
We're going to London, _____ is famous for Big Ben.
This house, _____ Pele used to live, is being made into a museum.
That's the house _____ I was born in.
The student _____ did this exercise might be very intelligent.
Peter couldn't come to the party last night, _____ was really a pity.
Ly Duc, _____ won 2 gold medals at the Games, comes from Vietnam.

Exercise 138. *Fill in each gap with a suitable relative pronoun: which, that, whose, whom, who, where, when, why, or which.*

Stop him. He's the man _____ stole my wallet.
Mr. David, _____ comes from England, has never been to Vietnam.
I'm staying with the boy _____ brother looks very handsome.
He talked about the books and writers _____ made us bored.
The city _____ I lived as a child has been pulled down now.
Henry, _____ you'll meet tomorrow, is also a member of the board.
Can you answer the questions _____ I ask you?
The lady _____ son went on a picnic with us last weekend is a teacher at our school.
The woman _____ book I borrowed is very generous.
He is the only friend _____ I like.
He can't swim, _____ makes me surprised.
We are visiting Ha Long, _____ is in the north of Viet Nam.
This is the place _____ the battle took place 40 years ago.
The town _____ we are living in is noisy.
They have invented a television set _____ is small as a watch.
We visited children _____ parents are dead.
17. I'm talking about Tom, _____ is really friendly.
I'll never forget the day _____ I first met her.
This is the hotel _____ we stayed last summer.
Tell me the reason _____ you have cancelled the tour.

Exercise 139. *Replace the relative clause in each of the following sentences by a suitable phrase using the -ing, -ed, or to infinitive form.*

Neil Armstrong was the first man who walked on the moon.

I come from a city that is located in the southern part of the country.

_____.

The children who attend that school receive a good education.

_____.

The scientists who are researching the causes of cancer are making progress.

_____.

They live in a house that was built in 1980.

_____.

We have an apartment which overlooks the park.

_____.

Yuri Gagarin became the first man who flew into space.

_____.

We stood on the bridge which connects the two halves of the building.

_____.

I come from a city which is located in the southern part of the country.

_____.

The vegetables which are sold in this supermarket are grown without chemicals.

_____.

Do you know the woman who is coming toward us?

_____?

The people who were waiting for the bus in the rain are getting wet.

_____.

I come from a city that is located in the southern part of the country.

_____.

They live in a house that was built in 1890.

_____.

He was the first man who left the burning building.

_____.

The couple who live in the house next door are both college professors

_____.

The people who are waiting for the bus in the rain are getting wet.

_____.

The students who did not come to the class yesterday explain their absence to the teacher.

_____.

Did you get the message which concerned the special meeting?

_____?

Lan is the second student who entered the classroom this morning.

→ _____.

Exercise 140. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. Mr. Pike, _____ is our boss, has just come back from Paris.
A. who B. whom C. which D. that
2. The botanists are examining the plants _____ were brought from Africa.
A. who B. whom C. which D. that
3. Do you know the hotel _____?
A. at which she is staying B. where she is staying
C. she is staying at D. all are correct
4. That is the new teacher about _____ the students are talking.
A. that B. who C. whose D. whom
5. This subject _____ going to discuss, is very important.
A. which we are B. which are we
C. that we are D. A and C are correct
6. The scientist _____ invention was a success became famous.
A. who B. whose C. which D. that
7. I knew some people _____.
A. who could help you B. whom could help you
C. whose help could you D. could help you
8. That is the dress _____.
A. which made by Mary B. which making by Mary
C. was made by Mary D. made by Mary
9. The bicycle _____ is very modern.
A. I told you about which B. which about I told you
C. about I told you which D. about which I told you
10. Many diseases _____ are no longer dangerous today.
A. why people died of year ago B. which people died years ago
C. of that people died years ago D. that people died of years ago
11. Have you made a decision on the day _____?
A. which you will set off B. when you will set off
C. at which you will set off D. where you will set off
12. The road _____ is shaded with trees.
A. on which we go to school every day C. from which we go to school every day
B. at which we go to school every day D. where we go to school every day
13. I'm standing at the window _____.

-
- A. in which I can see the lake B. where I can see the lake
C. at which I can see the lake D. from which I can see the lake

I'll show you the second hand bookshop_____.

- when you can find valuable old books
why you can find valuable old books
where you can find valuable old books
which you can find valuable old books

Lan's marriage has been arranged by her family. She is marrying a man_____.

- A. that she hardly knows him B. whom she hardly knows him
C. she hardly knows D. she hardly knows him

I come from the Seattle area_____ many successful companies such as Microsoft and Boeing are located.

- A. which B. that C. where D. whom

17. They have just visited the town_____ location was little known.

- A. where B. whose C. which D. that

_____ one of the most creative artists in rock 'n roll, came from California.

- A. Frank Zappa, who was B. Frank Zappa was
C. Frank Zappa, that was D. Frank Zappa whom was

He came to the party wearing only a pair of shorts and a T-shirt, _____ was a stupid thing to do.

- A. who B. whom C. which D. that

20. He lives in a small town_____.

- A. where is called Taunton B. which is called Taunton
C. is called Taunton D. that called Taunton

Exercise 141. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. The house_____ is more than 100 years old.

- A. where I live B. in where I live C. in that I live D. where I live in

2. _____ want to get a good job have to have certain qualifications and experience.

- A. Who B. Those which C. Those who D. Those whom

Wild fires are common in the forest areas of Australia, of the US and Canada, _____ the climate is moist.

- A. in where B. in that C. where D. which

4. King Henry, _____ was Elizabeth I, led England into the Age of Empire.

- A. daughter B. whom daughter C. which daughter D. whose daughter

5. Frank invited Janet, _____, to the party.

- A. met in Japan
- B. meeting in Japan
- C. whom he had met in Japan
- D. that he had met in Japan

6. The singer, _____ most recent recording has had much success, is signing autographs.

- A. whose B. that C. who D. whom

7. He likes shopping between 1.00 and 3.00 pm, _____ most people are at home.

- A. when B. where C. in which D. at that

8. Linda, to _____ many of her students are writing, is living happily and peacefully in Canada.

- A. who B. whom C. that D. whose

The fishermen and their boats _____ were off the coast three days ago have just been reported to be missing

- A. which B. that C. who D. whom

10. The banker to _____ I gave my check was quite friendly.

- A. who B. that C. whom D. which

11. Birds make nests in trees _____ they can hide their young in the leaves and branches.

- A. which B. where C. that D. in that

12. He lent me _____ yesterday.

- A. the book I need B. the book when I need
- C. which book I need D. the book whose I need

13. _____ cheat on the exam have to leave the room.

- A. Those B. Who C. Those whom D. Those who

14. _____ really a fish, has no brain, no bones, and no face.

- A. A jelly fish is not B. A jelly fish, it is not
- C. A jelly fish, which is not D. A jelly fish, that is not

Ann had been sleeping in the back of the car. She felt quite fresh and wanted to go on. A.

Ann, that felt quite fresh and wanted to go on, had been sleeping in the back of the car. B.

Ann, who felt quite fresh and wanted to go on, had been sleeping in the back of the car. C.

Ann, felt quite fresh and wanted to go on, had been sleeping in the back of the car.

D. Ann, whom felt quite fresh and wanted to go on, had been sleeping in the back of the car.

She was dancing with a student _____ a slight limp.

- A. who had B. with whom had
- C. with that have D. by whom had.

My father works for a construction company in _____.

Winchester, which is a city in the U.K.

Winchester that is a city in the U.K.

Winchester is a city in the U.K.

Winchester where is a city in the U.K.

I saw a lot of new people at the party, _____ seemed familiar.

-
- A. some of whom B. some of who C. whom D. some of that
19. My friend eventually decided to quit her job, _____ upset me a lot.
A. that B. when C. which D. who
20. He is the man _____ car was stolen last week.
A. whom B. that C. which D. whose

Exercise 142. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. The problem _____ has been discussed in class.

- A. that are very interested in B. which are very interested
C. which we are very interested in D. are very interested

They have just found the couple and their car _____ were swept away during the heavy storm last week.

- A. that B. which C. whose D. when

3. It was the worst winter _____ anyone could remember.

- A. when B. which C. where D. why

4. I would like to know the reason _____ he decided to quit the job.

- A. why B. which C. that D. when

_____ instructed me how to make a good preparation for a job interview.

- John Robbins to that I spoke by telephone,
John Robbins, that I spoke to by telephone,
John Robbins I spoke to by telephone,
John Robbins, whom I spoke to by telephone,

He was always coming up with new ideas, _____ were absolutely impracticable.

- A. most of whom B. that C. most of which D. most of that

7. She always had wanted to go to places _____ she could speak her native tongue.

- A. that B. in that C. which D. where

8. February is the month _____ many of my colleagues take skiing holidays.

- A. when B. that C. in that D. which

9. There was no one _____.

- A. I could ask for help B. when I could ask for help
C. I could ask whom for help D. for that I could ask for help.

The children were quite attracted by the tamer and his animals _____ were performing on the stage.

- A. that B. which C. whom D. who

11. Is there anything else _____ you want to ask?

- A. what B. where C. whom D. that

12. The man _____ 15 minutes measuring our kitchen is very kind.
 A. whom spent B. that spent C. spending D. B and C are correct
13. _____ to the city designed these flats.
 A. Architect who has moved B. The architect who have moved
 C. The architect having moved D. The architect whom having moved
14. Tom, _____ tired, had been driving all day.
 A. that was B. whom was C. of whom he was D. being
15. I am looking after some children _____.
 A. terribly spoilt B. being terribly spoilt
 C. of whom are terribly spoilt D. are terribly spoilt
16. David, _____ you all know, is going to talk about careers.
 A. that B. whom C. by whom D. who

Do you see my pen? I have just written the lesson with it.

- Do you see my pen I have just written the lesson with which?
 Do you see my pen with which I have just written the lesson it?
 Do you see my pen which I have just written the lesson with it?
 Do you see my pen which I have just written the lesson with?

The film is about a spy. His wife betrays him.

- The film is about a spy by whom his wife is betrayed.
 The film is about a spy betraying his wife.
 The film is about a spy who betrays his wife.
 The film is about a spy betrayed by his wife.

He took me to an expensive restaurant _____ we enjoyed a good meal.

- A. where B. which C. when D. that

20. The young man _____ is very kind to my family.

- A. to live next door B. he lives next door
 C. living next door D. lived next door

Exercise 143: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

1. We will go to see the film "Titanic" if the weather is fine or not.

- A B C D

Had he planned on going, he will have let us know.

- A B C D

If you hadn't left the car unlocked, it wouldn't have be stolen.

- A B C D

On the way home, we saw a lot of men, women, and dogs which were playing in the park.

A B C D
Both Mr. and Mrs. Smith are explaining the children the rules of the game.

A B C D
You can enjoy a sport without joining in a club or belonging to a team.

A B C D
Unlike many writings of her time, she was not preoccupied with morality.
A B C D 8. The man whom remained in
the office was the manager.

A B C D
This novel, which written by a well-known writer, should be read.

A B C D
10. My friend George, that arrived late, was not permitted to enter the class.

A B C D
11. The tongue is the principle organ of taste, and is crucial for chewing, swallowed, and speaking.

A B C D
12. If Monique had not attended the party, she never would meet her old friend Dan, whom
she had not seen in years.

D
13. A smaller percentage of British students want to farther or higher education than any
A B C
other European country.

D
14. The proposal has repealed after a thirty-minutes discussion and a number of objections
A B C to its failure to include our district.

D
15. This is the only place which we can obtain scientific information.

A B C D
16. Chemistry is one branch of science on that most of the industries depend.

A B C D
1975 is the year in when the revolution took place.

A B C D
Mr. Brown, that teaches me English, is coming today.

A B C D
Jim is very goodness with his hands.

20. A galaxy, where may include billions of stars, is held together by gravitation attraction.
A B C D

Exercise 144: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

The hotel where we stay in last year was excellent.

A B C D

2. At last they found the woman and her cat which were badly injured by the fire.

A B C D

They have told me some information most of whom is very useful.

A B C D

4. New Year day is the day where all my family members gather and enjoy it together.

A B C D

The little boy was lost and spoke in an afraid voice.

A B C D

Both sides have at last agreed with a United Nations plan to end the fighting.

A B C D

Pupils sometimes suffer in a test when the questions are written in a language which is

A B C not his mother tongue.

D

The country's chief exports is oil and gas.

A B C D

Do you know the reason when English men travel to the left?

A B C D

The car who I bought used to be my father's.

A B C D

11. Alan said that it was she which had stolen his suitcase.

A B C D

12. Stratford is the town there William Shakespeare, a great English playwright was born

A B C

and died.

D

I really don't know the reason on which Sam was sacked.

A B C D

14. The biggest city in Brazil is Sao Paulo which population is over 5 million.

A B C D

15. She is one of my relatives whom get a Ph.D. degree.

A B C D

16. After writing it, the essay must be duplicated by the student himself and handed into
A B C the department secretary before the end of the month.

D

17. They are known that colds can be avoided by eating the right kind of food and taking
A B C exercise regularly.

D

18. Before the invention of the printing press, books have been all printed by hand.

A B C D

19. The medical problems of parents and their children tend to be very similar to because of
A B C D
the hereditary nature of many diseases.

20. Janet, her father is our teacher, is very good at mathematics.

A B C D

BÀI 4. PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF PURPOSE CỤM TỪ & MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ MỤC ĐÍCH

Phrases of purpose: to V/ so as to V/ in order to V và dạng phủ định

S - V - to/ so as/ in order (not) + to infinitives

or: To/ so as/ in order (not) - to infinitives, S - V
--

- e.g. *To be better at English*, he attended an evening class
He attended an evening class *to be better at English*.
In order to be better at English, he attended an extra-class.
He attended an extra-class *so as to be better at English*.

Clause of purpose: Các mệnh đề chỉ mục đích thường có các liên từ như “so that”/ “in order that”/ “so”/ hay “therefore” đi kèm. Đi sau các liên từ này là mệnh đề chỉ kết quả và là tương lai trong mối quan hệ với mệnh đề còn lại.

a. with “so that/ in order that”:

S - V so that S - V hay S - V in order that S - V
--

- e.g. He attended an extra-class in order that he could improve his English.
She came early so that she didn't miss any part of the concert.

b. with “so/ therefore”:

S - V, so S - V hay S - V, therefore S - V

- e.g. It rained so heavily, so we cancelled the trip.
He learned hard, therefore he got better and better grades.

Note: Trên thực tế hầu hết các cụm “*to infinitive*” đều được dùng để diễn tả mục đích.

- e.g. She went to Paris to study fashion, to realize her dream, to become a fashion designer.
→ She went to Paris to study fashion.
(Her purpose to go to Paris is to study fashion)
She went to Paris to realize her dream.
(Her purpose to go to Paris is to realize her dream)
→ She went to Paris to become a fashion designer.
(Her purpose to go to Paris is to become a fashion designer)
→ She studied fashion to realize her dream.
(Her purpose to study fashion is to realize her dream)
She realized her dream to become a fashion designer.
(Her dream is to become a fashion designer)

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 145. *Combine each of the two provided sentences using "so that"/ "in order that"/ "so as to"/ "in order to" where appropriate.*

The boys stood on the desks. They wanted to get a better view.

We learn English. We want to have better communication with other people.

We lower the volume. We don't want to bother our neighbors.

I will write to you. I want you to know my decision soon.

These girls were talking whispers. They didn't want anyone to hear their conversation.

The little girl feigned to be sick. She hoped we didn't make her work.

I spoke loudly. I wanted everybody could hear me clearly.

Mary often goes home as soon as the class is over. She doesn't want her mother to wait for her.

Tom gets up early. He doesn't want to be late for school.

Max hid the sweets under his pillow. He didn't want his mother to see them

Mary prepares her lesson carefully. She wants to get high marks in class.

The thief changed his address all the time. He didn't want to be found by the police.

They did their job well. They hoped to get a higher salary.

You should walk slowly. You can be followed by your sister.

I am studying hard. I want to keep pace with my classmates.

They are climbing higher. They want to get a better view.

He worked late last night. He wanted to be free to go away tomorrow.

Put the milk in the fridge. We want to make sure it won't spoil.

I cashed a check yesterday. I wanted to make sure that I had enough money to go to market.

Danny pretended to be sick. He wanted to stay at home.

Exercise 146. *Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.*

1. Hockey players wear lots of protective clothing_____ they don't get hurt.

A. because of B. after C. in order that D. though

2. She took a computer course_____ she could get a better job.

A. so that B. as if C. if D. though

3. He ran _____ fast_____ I couldn't catch him.

A. such/that B. very/that C. too/to D. so/that

She is learning English because she wants to get a better job.

She is learning English so that she gets a better job.

She is learning English so as she gets a better job.

C. She is learning English in order she can get a better job.

D. She is learning English so that she will be able to get a better job.

5. He got a new alarm clock_____ he'd get up on time.

A. although B. so that C. since D. so

6. A small fish needs camouflage to hide itself_____ its enemies cannot find it.

A. so that B. so C. therefore D. due to

7. The gate was shut_____ the cows won't get out of the cage.

A. so as to B. in order to C. so as not D. so that

The car was easy to recognize, _____ it wasn't difficult for the police to catch the thieves.

A. because B. that C. so D. but

9. He works hard_____ help his family.

A. so as that B. in order to C. in order that D. A and B are correct

10. We moved to the front row_____ we could hear and see better.

A. so B. so that C. such D. such that

11. It was too dark to go on, _____ we found somewhere to stay.

A. so B. but C. however D. because

12. Her mother was sick. _____, Jane had to stay at home to look after her.

A. but B. However C. so D. Therefore

13. You should keep the milk in the refrigerator_____ it doesn't go bad.

A. since B. so that C. because D. after

14. He spoke slowly _____ she would understand.

A. while B. after C. so that D. because

15. He left home early_____ he could arrive at the station on time.

A. because of B. in order to C. although D. so that

16. Our teacher speaks slowly_____ we may understand him.

A. because B. in order to C. so that D. or

17. The play was very boring_____ they walked out.

A. although B. so that C. since D. so

18. He left home early _____ he could arrive at the station on time.

A. because of B. in order to C. although D. so that

19. He works hard_____ help his family.

A. so as that B. in order to C. in order that D. A and B are correct

She turned down the radio so that she wouldn't disturb the neighbors.

She turned down the radio so as not to disturb the neighbors.

She turned down the radio in order not to disturb the neighbors.

She turned down the radio in order that she wouldn't disturb the neighbors.

All are correct.

Exercise 147. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. Jackson was going to study all night, _____ he declined our invitation to dinner.
A. so B. so that C. in order to D. A & C
2. They put video cameras in shops _____ stop people stealing things.
A. not to B. so as not to C. in order to D. so that
3. The highway was under construction, _____ we had to take a different route to work.
A. so that B. so C. in order to D. A & C

He gave me his address. He wanted me to visit him.

He gave me his address so as to visit him.

He gave me his address for me in order to visit him.

He gave me his address in order for me to visit him.

He gave me his address in order to for me visit him.

He studies hard. He doesn't want to fail in the exam. He studies hard _____ fail in the exam.

- A. not to B. so as not to C. in order to D. so that
6. Mary jogs everyday _____ lose weight.
A. so she can B. so that she can C. because she can D. so that to
7. You should look up the meaning of the new in the dictionary _____ misuse it
A. so as to B. to C. so as not to D. so that
8. He lighted the candle _____ he might read the note.
A. so that B. and C. because D. as a result
9. He turned off the lights before going out _____ waste electricity.
A. so that not B. as not to
C. in order that not D. so as not to
10. The school boys are in hurry _____ they will not be late for school.
A. so as to B. to C. in order that D. for
11. He hid that letter in a drawer _____ no one could read it.
A. so that B. because C. although D. than

The teacher was explaining the lesson slowly and clearly _____.

to make his students to understand it

in order that his students can understand it

so as to that his students could understand it

so that his students could understand it

The boy always does his homework before class _____.

so as not to be punished by the teacher

so as to be punished by the teacher

so that not to be punished by the teacher

D. in order that not to be punished by the teacher

“I tried to study English well. I want to get a good job.” means _____.

I tried to study English well so that I can get a good job

I tried to study English well in order that I can get a good job

I tried to study English well to get a good job

All are correct

“They whispered. They didn’t want anyone to hear them.” means _____.

They whispered in order to make anyone hear them

They whispered so that no one could hear them

They whispered to make everyone hear them

They whispered in order that make everyone hear them

“We preserve natural resources. We can use them in the future.” means _____.

We preserve natural resources so that we can use them in the future

We preserve natural resources so as to we can use them in the future

We preserve natural resources for future use

A and C

The students study English _____ they can communicate with foreigners.

A. so that

B. so/ that

C. in order to

D. A & C

He left home early _____.

so that he could arrive at the station on time.

in order that he can arrive at the station on time.

so that he couldn’t arrive at the station on time.

A& C

The teacher explained the lesson again in order that _____.

all the students could understand the lesson.

all the students could drive to school.

all the students could pass the examination.

all the students could exchange the answers.

He failed the exam, _____ he had to do the job he didn’t like.

A. so

B. so that

C. in order to

D. A & C

Exercise 148: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

What would happen if there was no water?

A

B

C

D

If forests had not been destroyed, there will have been no floods.

A

B

C

D

3. They spent money as if they were very rich.

A B C D

4. A thunder usually follows lightning by five seconds for every mile between the flash and
A B C D the observer.

Our civilization is commonplace to us that rarely we stop to think about its complexity.

A B C D

Every city in the U.S has traffic problems because the amount of cars on American streets
is increasing. A B C D

What would you have do if you were in my position?

A B C D

8. If I had knew the time when the match started, I would have told you.

A B C D

9. If had I known you were in financial difficulty, I would have helped you.

A B C D

10. If she had listened to my direction she will not turn down the wrong street.

A B C D

11. It will be next to impossible to return the product again to the shop once you have used
it. A B C D

He likes to listen to music, to go to the cinema, to chat on the phone and going shopping.

A B C D 13. A child of noble birth, his name was famous among
the children in that school.

A B C D 14. My children won't go to bed unless they don't
have some money.

A B C D

15. If you keep on playing games on the computer, I would sell it.

A B C D

Unless it rains, we will stay at home.

A B C D

17. The first rockets to go into space carry no living creatures, but later ones had mice or
even dogs on them.

D

18. When a Vietnamese wants to work part-time in Australia, he needs to get a work
permission.

A B C

D

19. Please accept our sincere apology for the inconvenience this delay causing the passengers here at Pearson International Airport.

A B C

D

20. If I am a director, I would make more film about children.

A B C D

Exercise 149: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

What is the name of the girl whom has just come in?

A B C D

2. Andy was standing among the competitors whose were ready for the competition.

A B C D

During World War II, many Eskimos served in the Army or Navy; another worked on all A B C fields or supplied meat to the armed force.

D

Among the most remarkable eyes are those of the dragonfly; for this insect has compound A B C eyes make up of tiny eyes.

D

The children were playing last night outdoors when it began to rain very hard.

A B C D

She asked why did Mathew look so embarrassed when he saw Carole.

A B C D

7. Many films whose are about violence are harmful to our children.

A B C D

8. The artist whom pictures we saw yesterday is also a concert pianist.

A B C D 9. Since last Monday, I didn't meet Mr. Peter,

who is our form teacher.

A B C D 10. Whom wrote this novel? -

Charles Dickens did.

A B C D

New York is the largest city where I have ever visited.

A B C D

12. The midnight sun is a phenomenon in which the Sun visible remains in the sky for

A B C

twenty-four hours or longer.

D

13. Lawrence Robert Klein received the 1980 Nobel Prize in economics for pioneering the useful of computers to forecast economic activities.

A

B

C

D

14. Estioco, together with her parents, have visited California twice before.

A

B

C

D

Jack had to skip breakfast; otherwise, he will be late for class.

A

B

C

D

The time which we will have another discussion should be appointed as soon as possible.

A

B

C

D

Do you know the boy whose bicycle was stole last night?

A

B

C

D

Mr. Humphry, to that we complained, apologized for the mistake.

A

B

C

D

19. The Thames, when I spent my childhood, is always in my mind.

A

B

C

D

20. Dr. Marti Luther King, clergyman and civil rights leader, won the 1964 Nobel Peace Prize for his work toward racially equality in the United States.

A

B

C

D

Exercise 150: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

1. The prices of accommodation are as big that many people cannot afford to buy a house.

A B

C

D

2. He had smoked so a lot of cigarettes that he died of cancer.

A

B

C

D

3. In spite of my father is old, he gets up early and does morning exercises.

A

B

C

D

Although the bad traffic, I managed to arrive at the meeting on time.

A

B

C

D

5. Despite she was in her middle age, she looked very graceful and charming.

A

B

C

D

6. The workers went on strikes because of they thought their wages were low.

A

B

C

D

Please arrive on time in order to we will be able to start the meeting punctually.

A B C D

It was so a funny film that I burst out laughing.

A B C D

They had to sell their house because of they had been broke.

A B C D

10. They can speak English and use a computer so as to they can easily get a good job.

A B C D

In order that to buy his new car, he had to borrow his friend some money.

A B C D 12. He was tired so that he couldn't continue his

work.

A B C D

13. Those students are trying their best in order that to get the scholarship.

A B C D

14. Sound is carried from the eardrum to the nerves so as to we can hear it.

A B C D

15. Many teachers have devoted all their lives to teaching so teaching is not a well-paid job.

A B C D

16. Mai has such many things to do that she has no time to go out.

A B C D

17. Because it was late, so that he tried to type the contract as fast as possible.

A B C D 18. I was such nervous that I didn't think I would

pass the exam.

A B C D

19. My only regret is that I didn't study English good enough to get a good job.

A B C D 20. The novel was such interesting that I

had read it all night.

A B C D

BÀI 5. PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF CONCESSION

CỤM TỪ & MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ SỰ NHƯỢNG BỘ

Definition (Khái niệm): Là loại mệnh đề có hai vế trái ngược nhau về ý nghĩa và kết nối bằng các liên từ. Mệnh đề và cụm từ chỉ sự nhượng bộ được mô tả như dưới đây.

- e.g. Despite the heavy rain, they arrived on time.
They arrived on time in spite of the heavy rain.
Although it rained heavily, they arrived on time.
They arrived on time though it rained heavily.
Even though it rained heavily, they arrived on time.
No matter how heavily it rained, they arrived on time.
However heavily it rained, they arrived on time.

Phrases of concession with: *despite/ in spite of* (mặc dù) Đi liền sau các thành ngữ này là các danh từ hoặc ngữ danh từ theo công thức:

Despite In spite of hay S - V	} N/ N phrases, S - V } in spite of N/ N phrases } despite
--	--

- e.g. Despite his physical handicap, he has become a successful businessman.
In spite of his physical handicap, he has become a successful businessman.
Jane will be admitted to the university despite her bad grades.
Jane will be admitted to the university in spite of her bad grades.

Clauses of concession: có nhiều hình thức liên từ sử dụng cho mệnh đề chỉ sự nhượng bộ, dưới đây là vài trong số đó;

2.1. with “*though, although, even though*”: mệnh đề chỉ sự nhượng bộ với *though, even though, though*. Đi sau các liên từ này là các mệnh đề đầy đủ, như công thức dưới đây:

Although Though Even though	} S - V, S - V hay S - V -	although though even though	} - S - V
--	----------------------------	--	-----------

- Eg. Although he has a physical handicap, he has become a successful businessman.
Jane will be admitted to the university even though she has a bad grades.

Chú ý: *though* có thể được đặt ở cuối câu ngăn cách bởi dấu “,” và cho nghĩa “tuy nhiên” như *however*.

- e.g. He promised to call me, but till now I haven’t received any call from him, though.

More examples: In spite of the bad weather, we are going to have a picnic.

The child ate the cookie even though his mother had told him not to.
 Although the weather was very bad, we had a picnic.
 The committee voted to ratify the amendment despite the objections.
 Though he had not finished the paper, he went to sleep.
 She attended the class although she did not feel alert.

2.2. with “despite/ in spite of the fact that”: theo công thức dưới đây:

Despite	}	the fact that S - V, S - V
In spite of		
hay S - V	}	the fact that S - V
		in spite of

e.g. In spite of the fact that the weather is bad, we are going to have a picnic.
 The child ate the cookie despite the fact that his mother had told him not to.
 In spite of the fact that he tries hard, he fails the exam.
 Hellen could not catch the bus despite the fact that she arrived at the bus stop early.

2.3. with “however”: However được dùng trong mệnh đề chỉ sự nhượng bộ với ý nghĩa “dù thế nào đi chăng nữa” và tuân theo mẫu câu sau:

However adj/ adv S - V, S - V
Hay S - V however adj/ adv S - V

e.g. However hard he tries, he fails the exam.
 Hellen could not catch the bus however early she arrived at the bus stop.

2.4. with “no matter how”: No matter how được dùng trong mệnh đề chỉ sự nhượng bộ với ý nghĩa “dù thế nào đi chăng nữa” và tuân theo mẫu câu sau:

No matter how adj/ adv S - V, S - V
Hay S - V no matter how adj/ adv S - V

e.g. No matter how hard he tries, he fails the exam.
 Hellen could not catch the bus no matter how early she arrived at the bus stop.

2.5. with “whatever”: whatever được dùng trong mệnh đề chỉ sự nhượng bộ với ý nghĩa “dù bất cứ cái gì đi chăng nữa” và tuân theo mẫu câu sau:

Whatever (N) S - V, S - V
Hay S - V whatever S - V

e.g. Whatever (jobs) he tries, he fails to earn enough to support his family.
 Hellen could not catch the bus whatever (means) she tried.

2.6. with “but”: Được dùng trong mệnh đề chỉ sự nhượng bộ với ý nghĩa “nhưng” và tuân theo mẫu câu:

S - V, but S - V

e.g. He tries hard, but he fails the exam.

Hellen arrived at the bus stop early, but she could not catch the bus.

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 151. *Combine each two sentences using the suggested word(s).*

Matthew doesn't know any French. It was one of his school subjects. (though)

Nick used to smoke. He seems to be in good health. (although)

Our team won by a large margin. No one thought we would win the championship. (but)

Laura felt unwell. She went on working. (in spite of this)

We couldn't get tickets. We queued for an hour. (in spite of)

The goods were never delivered. We had received the promise. (despite)

She earned her living by selling newspaper. She got a B.A. degree. (even though)

I told the absolute truth. No one would believe me. (even though)

I enjoyed the film. The story was silly. (in spite of)

We live in the same street. We hardly ever see each other. (despite)

My foot was injured. I managed to walk to the nearest village. (although)

They have very little money. They are happy. (in spite of)

I got very wet in the rain. I had an umbrella. (even though)

I couldn't sleep. I was tired. (despite)

He liked the sweater. He decided not to buy it. (though)

I didn't get the job. I had all the necessary qualifications. (on spite of)

I had turned on the air conditioner. It was still hot in the room. (even though)

Laura wants to fly. She feels afraid. (in spite of the fact that)

Trevor didn't notice the sign. It was right in front of him. (even though)

I'm no better. I've taken the pills. (despite the fact)

Exercise 152. *Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.*

1. _____ he is old, he wants to travel around the world.

A. In spite of B. Although C. Despite D. Because 2. _____ my father has high blood pressure, he has to watch what he eats.

A. Although B. After C. Since D. Before 3. _____ she's got an English name, she is in fact Vietnamese.

A. Despite B. Although C. In spite of D. More than 4. _____ you subtract 7 from 12, you will have 5.

-
- A. Because B. If C. Though D. As
5. They left the house _____ saying good-bye to their mother.
A. before B. after C. during D. in
6. Mr. Young is not only healthy _____ also cheerful.
A. and B. both C. but D. with
7. The class discussion was short. _____, we gained some new knowledge from it.
A. However B. Moreover C. Although D. Therefore
8. The underground is cheap; _____, it is faster than the train.
A. however B. moreover C. but D. though
9. _____ you study harder, you will not win a scholarship.
A. Unless B. Because C. If D. In order that
10. The country air is fresh. _____, it is not polluted.
A. However B. Moreover C. Whenever D. Beside
11. _____ she spoke slowly, I couldn't understand her.
A. Since B. Although C. If D. As
12. She can't marry her cousin _____ she loves him.
A. though B. so C. despite D. because
13. He's still going to school _____ his injury.
A. even though B. although C. in spite of D. even
14. Thousands of people came to see the Queen _____ the rain.
A. because B. owing to C. in spite of D. according to
15. We could reach the house _____ the road was flooded.
A. although B. whether C. as if D. even
16. _____ it is getting dark, she still waits for him.
A. Unless B. Since C. While D. Although
17. Mary asked her husband: "What would you like for supper?"
He answered " _____ I am so tired, I want to have some shrimp soup".
A. However B. Moreover C. Since D. Although
18. _____ it rained heavily, they went to school on time.
A. Even though B. Despite C. Though D. A and C are correct
19. _____ she's busy, she still helps you.
A. Although B. Because C. Since D. As
20. _____ the traffic was bad, I arrived on time.
A. Although B. In spite of C. Despite D. Even

Exercise 153. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

-
1. He agreed to go climbing _____ he hated heights.
A. although B. in case C. since D. because
2. _____ rain or snow, there are always more than fifty thousand fans at the football games.
A. Despite B. Although C. Despite of D. Although
3. It was raining hard. _____, the match went ahead.
A. Therefore B. However C. But D. Because
- We couldn't get a seat _____ we arrived quite early.
A. but B. however C. nevertheless D. although
5. My car broke down on the way. _____, when I got to the airport the plane had taken off.
A. Because B. However C. But D. Therefore
6. My sister will take the plane _____ she dislikes flying.
A. because B. so that C. although D. before
7. It was late, _____ I decided to phone home.
A. however B. but C. although D. and
8. Minh had a terrible headache. _____, he went to school.
A. Therefore B. But C. However D. Although
9. Tom has a bike, _____ he always walks to work.
A. so B. but C. however D. and
10. _____ he is so busy with his work, he always finds time to go to the concert every week.
A. If B. Since C. Although D. Because
11. _____ these cars are cheap, they last a long time.
A. Because B. In order that C. Although D. After
12. He passed the examination _____ he had been prevented by illness from studying.
A. although B. but C. however D. moreover
13. We have not won yet; _____, we shall try again.
A. although B. but C. however D. moreover
14. Tom was not there; _____, his brother was.
A. since B. and C. however D. but
15. _____ it rained heavily, we enjoyed our holiday.
A. Because of B. Because C. Despite D. Though
16. _____ the dolphin lives in the sea, it is not a fish – it's a mammal.
A. Whether B. So that C. Although D. After
- _____ Jack has a master's degree, he works as a store clerk.
A. Because B. So that C. Where D. Though
18. We took many pictures _____ the cloudy sky.
A. despite of B. even though C. despite D. because
- _____ both his legs were broken, he managed to get out of the car before it exploded.
-

-
- A. Because B. Although C. So that D. Where
20. We understood him _____ he spoke very fast.
- A. because of B. though C. in spite of D. despite

Exercise 154. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. _____ all my warnings, he tried to fix the computer himself.
- A. Because B. Because of C. Although D. In spite of
2. _____ having little money, they are happy.
- A. Despite B. Because of C. Although D. Because
3. _____ she was not well, she still went to work.
- A. Because B. Because of C. Although D. In spite of
4. The student arrived late _____ the traffic jam.
- A. because of B. in spite of C. although D. because
5. We are going to have a picnic _____ the bad weather.
- A. because B. despite C. although D. because of
6. _____ his physical handicap, he has become a successful businessman.
- A. Because of B. Because C. Though D. Despite
7. _____ my father is old, he still goes jogging.
- A. Although B. Because of C. So that D. Despite

We stayed in that hotel despite the noise.

Despite the hotel is noisy, we stayed there.

We stayed in the noisy hotel and we liked it.

Although the hotel was noisy, we stayed there.

Because of the noise, we stayed in the hotel.

Despite the bad weather, people travel by air.

Even though the weather is bad, people travel by air.

Because the weather is bad, people travel by air.

In spite of people travel by air, the weather is bad.

Although the bad weather, people travel by air.

He was very tired but he kept on working.

Despite he was very tired, he kept on working.

In spite of he was very tired, he kept on working.

Though his tiredness, he kept on working.

Although he was very tired, he kept on working.

Although she was very old, she looked very grateful.

Despite she was very old, she looked very grateful.

-
- B. Despite her old age, she looked very grateful.
C. In spite of very old, she looked very grateful.
D. In spite her being old, she looked very grateful.

Although she tells lies, I believe her.

- In spite of telling lies, I believe her.
In spite her telling lies, I believe her.
In spite of her telling lies, I believe her.
In spite of her tell lies, I believe her.

Although he is intelligent, he doesn't do well at school.

- Despite being intelligent, he doesn't do well at school.
In spite he is intelligent, he doesn't do well at school.
Although his intelligence, he does well at school.
In spite of intelligent, he doesn't do well at school.

We stayed in that hotel despite the noise.

- Despite the hotel is noisy, we stayed there.
We stayed in the noisy hotel and we liked it.
Although the hotel was noisy, we stayed there.
Because of the noise, we stayed in the hotel.

Although his legs were broken, he managed to get out of the car before it exploded.

- Despite his legs to be broken, he managed to get out of the car before it exploded.
Despite his broken legs, he was able to get out of the car before exploding.
Despite his legs were broken, he managed to get out of the car before it exploded.
Despite of his broken legs, he managed to get out of the car before it exploded.

I usually drive to work, but today I go by bus.

- Although I can drive to work, I go by bus today.
Although I can go by bus, I drive to work today.
Instead of driving to work, I go by bus today.
Instead of going by bus, I drive to work today.

_____ his poor health, Mr. Brown still works hard to support his family.

- A. Despite of B. Despite C. Although D. Because of

18. I gave up the job, _____ the attractive salary.

- A. because B. because of C. although D. despite

19. Although the sun was shining, _____.

- A. it was very hot B. it wasn't very hot
C. yet it was very hot D. but it was very hot

20. Hans finished school _____ his leg injury.

- A. because of B. despite C. though D. because

Exercise 155: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. She failed the test_____ she studied hard.
A. although B. even though C. as D. A and B
- "I spoke slowly. The foreigner could understand me." means_____.
I spoke slowly so that the foreigner could understand me
I spoke slowly in order to the foreigner could understand me
I spoke such slowly that the foreigner could understand me
I spoke slowly to make the foreigner could understand me
- "We preserve natural resources. We can use them in the future." means_____.
We preserve natural resources so that we can use them in the future
We preserve natural resources so as to we can use them in the future
We preserve natural resources for future use
A and C
- You should bring an umbrella_____ it rains.
A. if B. unless C. in case D. because of
5. He went on working_____ feeling unwell.
A. although B. unless C. due to D. despite
6. We couldn't sleep last night ____ the noise next door.
A. although B. since C. because D. because of
7. _____ he can't afford a car, he goes to work by bicycle.
A. Because B. Since C. As D. all are correct
8. _____ I have time, I will go with you.
A. If B. Unless C. So D. So that
9. They decided to go_____ the danger.
A. because B. in spite of C. although D. so
10. _____ they lost, their fans gave them a big cheer.
A. However B. In spite of C. Although D. If
11. Jane has a computer, _____ she doesn't use it.
A. and B. since C. but D. in spite of
12. _____ we had got on the plane, it started to rain.
A. If B. While C. Before D. As soon as
13. We have to wait_____ everybody else finishes their turn.
A. when B. but C. so D. until
14. Mark heard the news on the radio_____ he was driving home.
A. while B. as C. until D. A and B
15. What are you going to do_____ graduating from university?

- A. before B. after C. so D. because
16. I am not so good at English, _____ I have to practice more.
A. but B. so C. while D. despite
17. _____ the fact that she failed the exam, she didn't look disappointed.
A. Although B. Despite of C. In spite of D. Because of
18. There are _____ in the universe that we cannot count them.
A. so much stars B. so many stars C. such stars many D. such stars much
19. He has _____ to do that he can't go to the cinema with us.
A. so much work B. so many work C. such much work D. such a work.
20. It is _____ book that just a few people like it.
A. so an old B. so old C. such old D. such an old

Exercise 156: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. We didn't go to France last summer _____ we couldn't afford to.
A. so B. when C. because D. because of
2. You can't drive a car _____ you have a license.
A. unless B. so C. in case D. if
3. _____ the flight delay, they didn't attend the conference.
A. Because B. As C. Although D. Because of
4. The storm was so strong. _____, all the crops were destroyed.
A. However B. As a result C. Consequently D. B and C
5. Everyone thought she would accept the offer. _____, she turned it down.
A. However B. So C. Too D. Moreover
6. Mary jogs everyday _____ lose weight.
A. so she can B. so that she can C. because she can D. so that to
7. We'll be late _____ we hurry.
A. if B. despite C. unless D. when
8. You should look up the meaning of the new in the dictionary _____ misuse it
A. so as to B. to C. so as not to D. so that
9. I bought this new software _____ Chinese.
A. for learning B. learning C. to learn D. learned
10. The flight from New York to London was delayed _____ the heavy fog.
A. because of B. because C. so D. as a result
11. It's _____ city that he's got lost.
A. a such big B. such big C. such a big D. a very big
12. The satellite travel _____ into space that nobody could see it with naked eyes.

- A. so far B. such far C. too far D. far enough
13. _____ the bad weather, the plan landed safely.
A. In spite B. In spite of C. Despite the fact that D. Though
14. He was too scare _____ me what he really thought.
A. tell B. telling C. to tell D. told
15. He lighted the candle _____ he might read the note.
A. so that B. and C. because D. as a result
16. _____ his exhaustion, he won the marathon by nearly three minutes.
A. In spite B. Despite C. Although D. However
17. He has worked for the same company _____ he left school.
A. because B. since C. then D. for
18. _____ it was raining hard, he went out without a raincoat.
A. Despite B. In spite of C. However D. Although
19. The coffee was _____ to drink.
A. so strong B. strong C. enough strong D. too strong
20. Hellen was late _____ her car was broken down.
A. if B. whether C. because D. while

BÀI 6. PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF REASON CỤM TỪ & MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ NGUYÊN NHÂN

I. Phrase of reason: Thông thường, để diễn đạt nguyên nhân qua một cụm từ ta dùng mẫu câu:

Because of - N/ N phrase, S - V

Hay S - V because of - N/ N phrase

e.g. Because of the heavy rain, we couldn't go out to get food.

phrase

The students arrived late because of the traffic jam.

phrase

Note: Trong một số trường hợp ta có thể coi các cụm từ sau như cụm từ chỉ nguyên nhân:

a. "Thanks to - N/ N phrase": Nhờ vào một yếu tố ngoại cảnh tích cực

e.g. Thanks to the development of technology, communication has been made easier.

We got good crops thanks to the new farming technique.

b. "due to - N/ N phrase": Bởi một yếu tố chủ quan tiêu cực

e.g. Their trip turned out to be disastrous due to their bad plan.

Due to his carelessness, he was badly-injured.
c. "Owing to – N/ N phrase": Do bởi một yếu tố ngoại cảnh tiêu cực e.g. Owing to the heavy traffic, he was late for the meeting.
We had to evacuate owing to the terrible flood.

Clause of reason: Thông thường, để diễn đạt nguyên nhân qua một mệnh đề ta dùng mẫu câu:

<p>Because S – V, S – V Hay S – V because S – V</p>

e.g. Because it rained heavily, we couldn't go out to get food.

clause

The students arrived late because the traffic was heavy.

clause

Because he got stuck in the traffic jam, he was late for the meeting.

We had to evacuate because the area was badly flooded.

Their trip turned out to be disastrous because they had not carefully planned.

Because he was careless, he was badly-injured.

NOTE: Ngoài việc sử dụng cấu trúc câu "**Because S – V, S – V**" như trình bày ở trên, ta còn dùng các liên từ "**since**" hay "**as**" với ý nghĩa tương tự. Cụ thể như sau:

a. Since: dùng chỉ lí do cho các lựa chọn mang tính thay thế

e.g. Since he had no money with him, he had to walk home.

They had to make use of their old car since they couldn't afford a new one.

b. As: dùng chỉ lí do cho các lựa chọn mang tính thực tế khách quan:

e.g. As he hadn't prepared well for the test, he had bad results.

They had to shelter as they had no rain coat when it suddenly rained.

Causative verbs: Một số động từ trong ác cấu trúc gây nguyên nhân. Các động từ này được sử dụng để chỉ ra một người gây cho người thứ 2 làm một việc mà người thứ nhất muốn, thậm chí mang tính cưỡng ép.

have: Cấu trúc câu với causative verb "have" như sau:

<p>S – have – somebody – V (bare infinitive) Hay S – have – something – past participle</p>

e.g. Mary had John wash the car.

I have my bag carried by my friend.

Mary had the car washed by John.

I have my friend carry my bag.

get: Cấu trúc câu với causative verb “get” như sau:

S - get - somebody - to V
Hay S - get - something - past participle

- e.g. Mary got John to wash the car.
I get my bag carried by my friend.
Mary got the car washed by John.
I have my friend to carry my bag.

make: Cấu trúc câu với causative verb “get” như sau:

S - make- somebody -V (bare infinitive)
= S - force - somebody - to V

- e.g. Mary made John wash the car.
Mary forced John to wash the car.
He makes the boy carry his bag.
He forces the boy to carry his bag.

want/ like: Cấu trúc câu với causative verb “want/ like” như sau:

S - want - somebody - to V
S - like - somebody - to V
S - would like - somebody - to V

- e.g. I want you to post the letters right now.
She liked me to say so.
We would like you to give your own comments.

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 157. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. _____ he always did well on his English tests, his parents were not surprised that he got an B level.
A. When B. Since C. Because of D. Although
2. He doesn't understand _____ he doesn't speak French very well.
A. whenever B. so that C. because D. before
3. She is looking for a new job _____ she is tired of doing a routine job day after day.
A. since B. as C. because D. all are correct
4. I haven't seen Tom _____ he gave me this book.

-
- A. since B. for C. until D. before
5. _____ he has a headache, he has to take an aspirin.
A. How B. Because C. Where D. Although
6. Our visit to Japan was delayed _____ my wife's illness.
A. because B. because of C. thanks to D. though
7. The flight had to be delayed _____ the bad weather.
A. because B. due to C. because of D. B and C are correct
8. I couldn't unlock it _____ I had the wrong key.
A. because B. so that C. since D. so
9. He hasn't written to us _____ he left.
A. as long as B. since C. by the time D. as soon as
10. I made a mistake _____ I was tired.
A. though B. so that C. because D. if
11. You need good shoes to go hiking in the mountains _____ the ground is rough and hard.
A. because B. so that C. before D. even though
12. _____ he is tired, he can't work longer.
A. Because B. Even though C. Although D. Besides
13. _____ he wasn't ready in time, we went without him.
A. When B. Moreover C. As D. So
14. Is that all _____ would you like something else?
A. because B. since C. as D. or
15. You will have to pay higher insurance _____ you buy a sports car.
A. if B. although C. so that D. before
16. I haven't been climbing _____ I broke my leg last summer.
A. although B. since C. so that D. before
17. He went to bed _____ he was sleepy.
A. because B. so that C. because of D. although
18. _____ the storm warnings, we didn't go out last night.
A. Because B. Because of C. Although D. In spite of
19. You may get malaria _____ you are bitten by a mosquito.
A. if B. so that C. though D. before
20. It was difficult to deliver the letter _____ the sender had written the wrong address on the envelop.
A. because B. despite C. though D. because of

Exercise 158. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

-
1. Marcella was awarded a scholarship_____ her superior scholastic ability.
A. because of B. because C. despite D. although
2. I knew they were talking about me_____ they stopped when I entered the room.
A. therefore B. despite C. so that D. because
- Nowadays, the divorce rate is higher than it used to be_____ young people are allowed to decide on their marriage.
A. despite B. but C. even though D. because
4. We turned off the radio_____ the boring program.
A. because B. because of C. however D. In spite of
5. _____ their valuable fur, many animals are hunted .
A. Because B. In spite of C. because of D. therefore
- 6.They can't work and travel because they are old.
A. Because of their old age, they can't work and travel.
B. In spite of their old age, they can work and travel.
C. Despite their old age, they still work and travel.
D. Even though they work and travel, they are old.
- 7.She was so busy that she couldn't answer the phone.
A. Because she was very busy, she couldn't answer the phone.
B. Because she was very busy, she could answer the phone.
C. Although she was very busy, she couldn't answer the phone.
D. Although she was very busy, she could answer the phone.
- 8.Despite feeling cold, we kept walking.
A. Although we felt cold, but we kept walking
B. Although we felt cold, we kept walking
C. However cold we felt, but we kept walking
D. However we felt cold, we kept walking
9. The children laughed a lot because of the funny story.
A. The children laughed because the story is funny.
B. The children laughed because of the story funny.
C. The children laughed because it was funny.
D. The children laughed because the story was funny.
10. The woman was too weak to lift the basket.
A.She was so weak that she couldn't lift the basket
B. The woman shouldn't have lift the basket because she was so weak.
C. Although she was very weak, she could lift the basket
D. The woman lift the basket, so she wasn't very weak.

-
11. I try to do my homework_____ the noise.
A. because of B. although C. despite of D. in spite of
12. _____ a headache, he enjoyed the film.
A. Although B. In spite of C. Because of D. However
13. They asked me to wait for them, _____ they didn't turn up.
A. so B. however C. but D. and
14. You should say goodbye to your brother_____ you leave for Europe.
A. despite B. after C. since D. before
15. _____ I came to this country, I couldn't speak a word of English.
A. Since B. After C. When D. Before
16. He jogs_____ there is very little traffic.
A. however B. so that C. as if D. where
17. I will not lend you a little money_____ you promise to pay me back next week.
A. as if B. unless C. if D. where
18. _____ you save your money, you will be able to go to college.
A. Unless B. Although C. If D. So
19. You have to make up your mind fast, _____ you slip the best opportunity.
A. and B. so that C. if D. or
20. My mother looks_____ she is tired. Perhaps she didn't sleep well last night.
A. like B. although C. until D. as if

Exercise 159. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. He was too scare_____ me what he really thought.
A. tell B. telling C. to tell D. told
2. These boys were punished_____ they went to school late.
A. in spite of B. as if C. even though D. because
3. They were sacked_____ their carelessness.
A. because B. because of C. although D. despite
4. Will you be_____ kind_____ to help me?
A. so/ enough B. too/ enough C. enough/ too D. such/ too
5. It was_____ that we went for a hike in the mountains.
A. so a nice day B. so nice day C. such nice day D. such a nice day
6. Julie is not_____ to see this film.
A. as old enough B. enough old C. enough old as D. old enough
7. _____ I meet her, she always wears a blue dress.
A. Whatever B. However C. Whoever D. Whenever
8. The film was_____ through.

- A. too long for us to see
C. too long for us seeing it
- B. very long for us to see it
D. too long enough for us to see
9. Some workers are so poor that they don't want to quit their job _____ they are ill-treated
A. as though B. since C. although D. if
10. He turned off the lights before going out _____ waste electricity.
A. so that not B. as not to C. in order that not D. so as not to
11. The school boys are in hurry _____ they will not be late for school.
A. so as to B. to C. in order that D. for
12. He _____ I was scared.
A. drove too fast that B. drove so fastly that
C. drove so fast that D. drove such fast that
13. She dances _____ everybody adores her.
A. such beautifully that B. so beautiful that
C. too beautifully that D. so beautifully that
14. _____ to go to the cinema.
A. It was late so that B. That it was late C. It was too late D. Such too late
15. We don't _____ to go there now.
A. have time enough B. enough time C. have too time D. have enough time
16. I don't think our daughter is _____ to understand this matter.
A. too young B. is such young
C. not enough young D. not age enough
17. Mrs. Harrison is _____ he owns many palaces.
A. so a rich man that B. such an rich man that
C. such a rich man that D. that so rich man a
18. He just had to apologize _____ he knew he had made a mistake.
A. before B. wherever C. due to D. because
19. I often feel tired _____ I get up in the morning.
A. although B. so long as C. when D. while
20. No sooner had he come _____ he knew he had dropped his wallet.
A. when B. after C. than D. then

Exercise 160. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. _____ the church service, people keep quiet.
A. While B. During C. When D. As
2. _____ in doubt about taking the medicine, consult your doctor.
A. As B. Though C. As soon as D. When

-
3. _____ I am aware, this is the last talk on the topic.
 A. Where B. As long as C. Since D. As far as
4. He wouldn't have failed his exams _____ he hadn't been ill.
 A. unless B. in case C. if D. although
5. It is _____ to go swimming.
 A. too cold B. so cold C. such a cold D. enough cold that
6. The bed is not clean enough _____.
 A. to lie in it B. to lie in C. for lying in D. in which to lie
7. The piano was too heavy _____.
 A. for nobody to move B. for nobody to moving
 C. for anyone to move D. for anyone to moving
8. He _____ to be offered the job.
 A. was such experienced B. was too experienced
 C. not experienced enough D. B and C
9. These are _____ that I can't finish them.
 A. a such long assignments B. such long assignments
 C. such a long assignments D. too long assignments
10. _____ you change your mind, I won't able to help you.
 A. If only B. Because C. Unless D. Provided
11. He hid that letter in a drawer _____ no one could read it.
 A. so that B. because C. although D. than
12. _____ Tom was unable to see anything, he knew someone was in his room.
 A. Because B. In case C. If D. Even though
13. They were disqualified _____ they fought to the last minute.
 A. as B. since C. though D. once
14. The teacher explained the lesson twice _____ the students understood it clearly.
 A. as long as B. so that C. because D. as if
15. _____ you keep it in good condition, I'll lend you my car.
 A. So long as B. Although C. Because D. While
16. The woman was so beautiful _____.
 A. that I couldn't help looking at B. that I couldn't help looking at her
 C. for me looking at her D. that for me to look at
17. It is such an important matter _____ I can't decide anything about it myself.
 A. so B. because C. that D. if
18. Marian didn't participate in the contest _____ her lack of confidence.
 A. because B. because of C. since D. despite
19. It is _____ that I have read it twice.
-

A. such an interesting book

B. so interesting a book

C. too interesting a book

D. A and B

20. Lawrence is _____ to do this exercise.

A. no intelligence enough

B. not intelligent enough

C. not enough intelligent

D. so intelligent enough

Exercise 161. *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

1. Mary came to class late. Her motorbike had a puncture.

Because _____.

2. Due to the cold weather, we stayed home.

Because _____.

3. People like to live in this country because of its healthy climate.

Because _____.

4. A computer can be used for various purposes, so it becomes very popular nowadays.

Because _____.

5. Stacey retired in 1987, partly because of ill health.

Because _____.

6. We were late for the meeting due to the heavy traffic.

Because _____.

7. Harry had to stay in hospital because of his broken leg.

Because _____.

8. Our leader couldn't attend the meeting, so it was canceled.

Because _____.

9. The young couple decided not to buy the house because of its dilapidated condition.

Because _____.

10. I always enjoyed mathematics in high school, so I decided to major in it in college.

Because _____.

11. Jim had to give up jogging because he had sprained his ankle severely.

Because of _____.

12. The water in most rivers is unsafe to drink because it's polluted.

Because of _____.

13. We had to stay in London an extra day because it was foggy at the airport.

Because of _____.

14. Bill has to do all of the cooking and cleaning because his wife is ill.

Because of _____.

15. We all have received the best of everything because our parents are generous.

-
- Because of_____.
- 16.I couldn't get to sleep last night because it was noisy in the next apartment.
Because of_____.
- 17.John has to sit in the front row in class because he has poor eyesight.
Because of_____.
- 18.We stopped our car because the traffic lights turned red.
Because of_____.
- 19.She couldn't see the road because the wall was too high.
Because of_____.
- 20.We postponed our trip because the driving conditions were bad.
Because of_____.

Exercise 162. Complete the sentences with *because/ because of/ although/ in spite of*.

- We delayed our trip_____ the bad weather.
- Sue's eyes were red_____ she had been crying.
- My mother is always complaining_____ the untidiness of my room.
- The water in most rivers is unsafe to drink_____ it's polluted.
- The trees were bent over_____ the wind.
- You can't enter this secure areas_____ you don't have an official permit.
- It's unsafe to travel in that country _____ the ongoing civil war.
- Several people in the crowd became ill and fainted_____ the extreme heat.
- Mark didn't go to work yesterday_____ he didn't feel well
- We couldn't get into the disco_____ the enormous crowd.
- _____ it rained a lot, we enjoyed our holiday.
- Daniel forgot his passport_____ having it in his list.
- I couldn't get to sleep_____ the noise.
- _____ I had nothing for lunch but an apple, I ate dinner early.
- A lot of things went wrong_____ all our careful plans.
- She wasn't wearing a coat_____ it was quite cold.
- He only accepted the job_____ the salary, which was very high.
- I went home early_____ I was feeling unwell.
- _____ I knew the truth, I decided not to tell them.
- The villagers refused to leave_____ the drought.
-

BÀI 7. CLAUSES OF CAUSES AND EFFECTS

MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ KẾT QUẢ

Cause and effect with “too”/ “enough”:

a. **too:** Thường với “*too*” ta có cấu trúc câu sau:

S - be (look/ seem/ get/ become/...) - too adj (for O) - to V
--

S - V - too adv (for O) - to V

- e.g. He is too short to play football.
The car was too expensive for him to buy.
He drove too fast to stop immediately.
He ran too slowly to become the winner of the race.

b. **enough:** ta có cấu trúc câu sau:

S - be - adj enough (for O) - to V

hay S - V - adv enough (for O) - to V
--

- e.g. She isn't old enough to drive a car.
The exercises were not easy enough for us to do them without difficulty.
He spoke English well enough to be an interpreter.
He drove slowly enough to avoid crashing.

Lưu ý: “TOO” mang hàm ý phủ định “quá...không thể” nhưng “ENOUGH” lại có nghĩa “đủ...để”

Cause and effect with “so adj/ adv that”:

S - V - so - adj/ adv - that S - V

- e.g. The soprano sang so well that she received a standing ovation.
Terry ran so fast that he broke the previous speed record.
Judy worked so diligently that she received an increase in salary.
The soup tastes so good that everyone will ask for more.
The little boy looks so unhappy that we all feel sorry for him.
The students had behaved so badly that he was dismissed from the class.

Cause and effect with “so few/ many - Ns that”:

S - verb - so - few/ many - Ns - that - S - V
--

- e.g. The Smiths had so many children that they formed their own baseball team.
I had so few job offers that it wasn't difficult to select one.
We have so many guests that we have to borrow chairs from our neighbors.
He had received so few agreements that he couldn't be appointed.

Cause and effect with “so much/ little - uncountable N - that”:

S - verb - so - much/ little - uncountable N - that - S - V

e.g. He has invested so much money in the project that he cannot abandon it now.
The grass received so little water that it turned brown in the heat.

Cause and effect with “such - a(n) - adj - N - that”:

S - verb - such - a(n) - adjective - N - that S - V

e.g. It was such a hot day that we decided to stay indoors.
It was such an interesting book that he couldn't put it down.

Cause and effect with “so - adj - a(n) - N - that”:

S - V - so - adjective - a(n) - N - that S - V

e.g. It was so hot a day that we decided to stay indoors.
It was so interesting a book that he couldn't put it down.

Cause and effect with “such - adj - Ns/ uncountable N - that”:

S - verb - such - adjective - Ns/ uncountable N - that S - V

e.g. She has such exceptional abilities that everyone is jealous of her.
They are such beautiful pictures that everybody will want one.
Perry has had such bad luck that he's decided not to gamble.
This is such difficult homework that I will never finish it.

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 163: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

The furniture was too old to keep.

It was _____.

He can't afford to buy the car.

The car _____.

The play is so popular that the theatre is likely to be full every night.

Such is _____.

Alice lost all her hope; she decided to stop her business.

Such was _____.

He is very strong. He can lift the box.

He is _____.

He ate a lot of food. He became ill.

He ate _____.

He bought lots of books. He didn't know where to put them.

He bought _____.

He is a very lazy boy. No one likes him.

He is such _____.

The coffee is too hot . I can't drink it.

The coffee is too _____.

Her voice is very soft. Everyone likes her.

Her voice is so _____.

He is so weak. He can't run.

He is too _____.

The tea was very hot. He couldn't drink it.

The tea was so _____.

The weather is so bad that we can't go out.

The weather is too _____.

The film was so boring that we couldn't go on seeing it.

It was such _____.

He was so old that he couldn't run fast.

He was such _____.

He spoke so fast that we couldn't understand him.

So fast _____.

The fair was so noisy that we couldn't hear each other.

The fair was too _____.

You speak so fast that I can't catch up with your words.

You are such _____.

It is so early that we can't go out.

It is too _____.

The water is too hot for me to drink.

The water is so _____.

The restaurant is expensive so we can't eat in that restaurant.

The restaurant is so _____.

Exercise 164: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

He studied badly and he couldn't pass the exam.

He studied so _____.

He isn't very intelligent. He can do it.

He isn't _____.

He has a lot of money. He can buy a car.

He has so _____.

The room is so untidy that it took us one hour to clean it.

It is _____.

The man is so fool that no one took any notice of him.

He is _____.

The film is so long that they can't broadcast it on one night.

It is _____.

The books are so interesting that we have read them many times.

They are _____.

The news was so bad that she burst into tears on hearing it.

It was _____.

The food was so hot that it burned my tongue.

It was _____.

There is so much rain that we can't go out.

It _____.

The boy is so fat that every calls him Stuffy.

He is _____.

The milk is so excellent that all the children want some more.

It is _____.

The weather was so warm that they had a walk in the garden.

It was _____.

There were so many people in the hall that we couldn't see him.

So many people _____.

The match was so exciting that all the fans shouted loudly.

It was _____.

They drank so much coffee that they couldn't sleep all night.

So much _____.

Alice had so many exercises to do that she couldn't go out.

Alice had such _____.

The woman was so poor that she needed everyone's help.

She was _____.

The boy is too young to walk to school alone.

He was so young _____.

The car was very rusty and they could travel far in that car.

The car was too _____.

Exercise 165. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. He had to leave his family _____ when he went abroad to work.

- A. behind B. at a loss C. at all costs D. out

2. No child _____ the age of sixteen will be admitted to this film.

- A. below B. except C. before D. lacking

I have lived near the railway for so long now that I've grown _____ to the noise of the trains.

- A. familiar B. accustomed C. aware D. unconscious

The young soldier _____ a dangerous mission across the desert, although he knew that he might be killed.

- A. entered B. undertook C. agreed D. promised

5. From the hotel there is a good _____ of the mountains.

- A. view B. sight C. vision D. picture

6. There is a fault at our TV station. Please do not _____ your set.

- A. repair B. change C. adjust D. switch

7. It is usually better not to _____ things, in case they are not returned.

- A. offer B. lend C. borrow D. lose

She applied for training as a pilot, but they turned her _____ because of her poor eyesight.

- A. down B. over C. up D. back

9. I lost too much money betting at the races last time, so you won't _____ me to go again.

- A. impress B. urge C. convince D. persuade

10. We've _____ of time to catch the train so there's no need to rush.

- A. great deal B. enough C. very much D. plenty

11. _____ goes the bus; now we will have to walk!

- A. Early B. There C. At once D. On time

12. The police have asked that _____ who saw the accident should get in touch with them.

- A. somebody B. someone C. anyone D. one

As the streets of our cities become busier, people are turning more and more to the _____ bicycle.

- A. historical B. old aged C. elderly D. old fashioned

14. We'll play tennis and _____ we'll have lunch.

- A. then B. straight away C. so D. immediately

15. _____ of all of us who are here tonight. I would like to thank Mr. Jones for his talk.

- A. On behalf B. On account C. In person D. Instead

He soon received promotion, for his superior realized that he was a man of considerable _____.

- A. opportunity B. ability C. possibility D. future
17. Take the number 7 bus and get _____ at Forest Road.
A. off B. up C. down D. outside
18. Some people think it is _____ to use long and little -known words.
A. sensitive B. clever C. intentional D. skilled
19. Don't touch the cat, he may _____ you.
A. scratch B. kick C. tear D. scream
20. These old houses are going to be _____ soon.
A. run down B. knocked out C. pulled down D. laid out

Exercise 166. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. The explorers walked all the way along the river from its mouth to its _____.
A. cause B. well C. outlet D. source
2. They haven't beaten me yet. I still have one or two _____ up my sleeve.
A. defenses B. jokes C. traps D. tricks
- The law states that heavy goods delivery vehicles may not carry _____ of more than fifteen tons.
A. sizes B. loads C. measures D. masses
4. The Chairman was so angry with the committee that he decided to _____ from it
A. postpone B. resign C. prevent D. cancel
5. The boy fell into the river and was _____ along the fast current.
A. swept B. thrown C. swung D. caught
6. There is no _____ in going to school if you're not willing to learn.
A. point B. reason C. aim D. purpose
7. Mr. Smith was _____ in a road accident.
A. damaged B. injured C. wounded D. wronged
8. The child was so noisy that his mother told him not to be such a _____.
A. bother B. worry C. trouble D. nuisance
- I expect it will rain again when we're on holiday this year, but at least we are properly prepared _____ it this time.
A. about B. for C. at D. with
10. I'm sorry, I haven't got _____ change. Why don't you try the bank?
A. lots B. any C. all D. some
11. You _____ go to the dentist's before your toothache gets worse.

- A. rather B. better C. ought D. ought to
12. I saw a thief take Norman's wallet so I ran_____ him but I didn't catch him.
A. over B. near C. after D. into
13. The meal was excellent; the pears were particularly_____.
A. flavored B. tasteful C. delicious D. desirable
14. She ranked to make an early_____ at the hairdresser.
A. date B. appointment C. order D. assignment
- The safety committee's report recommended that all medicines should be kept out of the _____ of children.
A. hold B. reach C. grasp D. hand
16. He stood on one leg, _____ against the wall, while he took off his shoe.
A. staying B. stopping C. leaning D. supporting
17. Is it worth waiting for a table at this restaurant or shall we go_____ else?
A. anywhere B. otherwise C. everywhere D. somewhere
- Last year the potato harvest was very disappointing, but this year it looks as though we shall have a better_____.
A. crop B. amount C. product D. outcome
19. He opened the letter without_____ to read the address on the envelope.
A. fearing B. worrying C. bothering D. caring
20. That's a nice coat, and the color_____ your well.
A. fits B. show C. matches D. suits

Exercise 167. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. He put a_____ against the tree and climbed up to pick the apples.
A. grade B. scale C. ladder D. staircase
2. If he drinks any more beer, I don't think he'll be_____ to play this afternoon.
A. possible B. skilled C. capable D. fit
3. There was a big hole in the road which_____ the traffic.
A. sent back B. stood back C. held up D. kept down
4. Is there a bank where I can_____ these pounds for dollars?
A. turn B. alter C. exchange D. arrange
5. She complained_____ when she heard that she had to work on Sunday.
A. terribly B. extremely C. severely D. bitterly
6. I am not sure, but_____ I know he has decided to accept the new job in London.
A. on the whole B. according C. as long as D. as far as
7. Do you know what time the train_____ to Birmingham?

-
- A. comes B. reaches C. gets D. arrives
8. He was an _____ writer because he persuaded many people to see the truth of his ideas.
A. accurate B. unlimited C. influential D. ordinary
9. Workers who do not obey the safety regulations will be _____ immediately.
A. rejected B. refused C. dismissed D. disapproved
10. As far as I'm _____ it's quite all right for you to leave early.
A. concerned B. regarded C. bothered D. consulted
11. _____ from Bill, all the students said they would go.
A. Except B. Only C. Separate D. Apart
12. The blue curtains began to _____ after they had been hanging in the sun.
A. melt B. fade C. dissolve D. die
13. To our _____, Geoffrey's illness proved not to be as serious as we had feared.
A. relief B. anxiety C. eyes D. judgment
14. It's six years now since the Socialists came to _____ in that country.
A. control B. command C. power D. force
15. He has just taken an examination _____ chemistry.
A. about B. in C. for D. on
16. In spite of her protests, her father _____ her train for race three hours a day.
A. insisted B. caused C. made D. let
17. The shop assistant was _____ helpful, but she felt he could have given her more advice.
A. totally B. exactly C. entirely D. quite
18. I know him by _____ but I have no idea what his name is.
A. myself B. chance C. heart D. sight
19. He enjoyed the dessert so much that he accepted a second _____ when it was offered.
A. helping B. sharing C. load D. pile
20. When the time came to _____ the bill at the hotel she found her purse had been stolen.
A. pay for B. pay up C. pay out D. pay

Exercise 168. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. You must _____ that your safety belt is fastened.
A. secure B. check C. examine D. guarantee
- Learners of English as a foreign language often fail to _____ between unfamiliar sounds in that language.
A. differ B. distinguish C. solve D. separate
3. The old sailing boat was _____ without trace during the fierce storm.
A. lost B. crashed C. disappeared D. vanished
-

-
4. He _____ a rare disease when he was working in the hospital.
A. suffered B. caught C. infected D. took
5. Buy the new _____ of soap now on sale; it is softer than all others!
A. model B. brand C. manufacture D. mark
6. _____ you do better work than this, you won't pass the exam.
A. If B. Although C. When D. Unless
7. If you want to join the History Society, you must first _____ this application form.
A. fill in B. write down C. do up D. make up
- He was afraid of losing his suitcase so he tied a _____ on it on which he had written his name and address.
A. notice B. mark C. badge D. label
9. Having looked the place _____, the gang went away to make their plans.
A. over B. down C. out D. through
10. The play was very long, but there were two _____.
A. interruptions B. rests C. gaps D. intervals
11. The traffic lights _____ to green, and the cars drove on.
A. removed B. shone C. turned D. exchanged
- The junior Minister's remarks on television about the strike _____ the Prime Minister so much that he was sacked.
A. disagreed B. disordered C. disliked D. displeased
13. It's a good idea to see your doctor regularly for _____.
A. a revision B. a check - up C. an investigation D. a control
14. It is a good idea to be _____ dressed when you go for an interview.
A. smartly B. boldly C. clearly D. finely
15. A small _____ of students was waiting outside the class to see the teacher.
A. gang B. team C. group D. crowd
16. When he retired from his job the directors _____ him with a clock.
A. presented B. offered C. satisfied D. pleased
- The new manager explained to the staff that she hoped to _____ new procedures to save time and money.
A. establish B. manufacture C. control D. restore
18. The policeman _____ me the way.
A. said B. directed C. explained D. told
19. It's an awful _____ your wife couldn't come. I was looking forward to meeting her.
A. shame B. harm C. shock D. sorrow
20. He was in _____ of a large number of men.
A. direction B. leadership C. management D. charge
-

BÀI 8. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF TIME

MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGỮ CHỈ THỜI GIAN

When: “When” means “at that moment, at that time, etc.” Notice the different tenses used in relationship to the clause beginning with when. It is important to remember that “when” takes either the simple past OR the present.

“When” được dùng với ý nghĩa “lúc ấy, thời điểm ấy”. “When” cũng được dùng với nhiều thì ngữ pháp khác nhau trong mệnh đề thời gian, có thể là quá khứ đơn, quá khứ tiếp diễn, lẫn hiện tại đơn. Cụ thể như các ví dụ minh họa sau:

He was talking on the phone when I arrived.

When she called, he had already eaten lunch.

I washed the dishes when my daughter fell asleep. We’ll go to lunch when you come to visit.

When we were playing on the swings, it started to rain.

Before: “Before” means “before that moment”. It is important to remember that “before” takes either the simple past OR the present.

“Before” được dùng với ý nghĩa “trước lúc ấy, trước thời điểm ấy”. “Before” cũng được dùng với nhiều thì ngữ pháp khác nhau trong mệnh đề thời gian, có thể là quá khứ đơn, lẫn hiện tại đơn. Cụ thể như các ví dụ minh họa sau:

We will finish before he arrives.

She (had) left before I telephoned.

Before you come back, the new hospital will have been built. Before we came, they had gone.

After: “After” means “after that moment”. It is important to remember that “after” takes the present for future events and the past OR past perfect for past events.

“After” được dùng với ý nghĩa “sau lúc ấy, sau thời điểm ấy”. “After” cũng được dùng với nhiều thì ngữ pháp khác nhau trong mệnh đề thời gian, có thể là quá khứ đơn, quá khứ hoàn thành. Cụ thể như các ví dụ minh họa sau:

We will finish after he comes.

She ate after I (had) left.

After he arrives, he will certainly make a speech. After we had done all our homework, we played chess.

While, as: “While” and “as” mean “during that time”. “While” and “as” are both usually used with the past continuous because the meaning of “during that time” which indicates an action in progress.

“While/ As” được dùng với ý nghĩa “trong lúc, trong khoảng thời gian”. “While/ As” được dùng với thì quá khứ tiếp diễn trong mệnh đề thời gian, dùng để diễn tả sự diễn tiến của hành động. Cụ thể như các ví dụ minh họa sau:

She began cooking while I was finishing my homework.

As I was finishing my homework, she began cooking.

While I was walking home, I met with my long-lost friend, Nga.

He had an accident as he was walking on the street.

By the time: “By the time” expresses the idea that one event has been completed before another. It is important to notice the use of the past perfect for past events and future perfect for future events in the main clause. This is because of the idea of something happening up to another point in time.

“By the time” dùng để diễn đạt một hành động, sự kiện đã hoàn tất trước một sự kiện khác, hành động khác. “By the time” dùng với mệnh đề thời gian ở quá khứ (mệnh đề chính ở quá khứ hoàn thành) diễn tả một sự kiện trong quá khứ, tuy nhiên “by the time” sẽ diễn tả tương lai khi mệnh đề thời gian với “by the time” chia ở hiện tại (mệnh đề chính chia ở tương lai).

By the time he finished, I had cooked dinner.

We will have finished our homework by the time they arrive.

Until, till: “Until” and “till” express “up to that time”. We use either the simple present or simple past with “until” and “till”. “Till” is usually only used in spoken English.

“Until/ Till” được dùng để diễn đạt ý nghĩa “đến thời gian đó, đến thời điểm đó”. “Until/ Till” cũng được dùng với nhiều thì ngữ pháp khác nhau trong mệnh đề thời gian, có thể là quá khứ đơn, quá khứ hoàn thành. “Till” được dùng trong ngôn ngữ nói nhiều hơn. Cụ thể như các ví dụ minh họa sau:

We waited until he finished his homework.

I didn’t realize who he was until he took off his

sunglasses. I’ll wait till you finish.

We will continue to work till it is dark.

Since: “Since” means “from that time”. We use the present perfect (continuous) with “since”. “Since” can also be used with a specific point in time.

“Since” nghĩa là “kể từ thời điểm đó”, hoặc dùng với các mốc thời gian. “Since” được dùng với các dạng hoàn thành. Cụ thể minh họa qua các ví dụ sau:

I have learned English since I was a young

boy. They have worked here since 1987.

We have been waiting for him since early this morning.

As soon as/ Once: “As soon as” means “when something happens - immediately afterwards”. “As soon as” is very similar to “when” it emphasizes that the event will occur immediately after the other. We usually use the simple present for future events, although present perfect can also be used.

“As soon as” diễn tả sự việc diễn ra ngay sau đó có một sự kiện, hành động khác tiếp nối, nó có ý nghĩa tương đối giống với “when”, hay “once”. Mệnh đề thời gian với “as soon as” được chi ở hiện tại để diễn tả tương lai. Ví dụ cụ thể:

He will let us know as soon as he decides (or as soon as he has decided). As soon as I hear from Tom, I will give you a telephone call.
Once I have a chance, I will throw you an ice ball.

NOTE: *No sooner ... than ...* or *hardly/scarcely/barely ...when. .* is used in the meaning of *As soon as...* but when the sentence starts with them, that part is used in “**inversion**” like the question form and in the past perfect tense.

No sooner ... than ... hay *hardly/scarcely/barely ...when..* được dùng với ý nghĩa như “*as soon as*”, nhưng mệnh đề sẽ phải đảo ngữ khi *No sooner ... than ...* hay *hardly/ scarcely/ barely ...when...* được đặt ở đầu mệnh đề. Ví dụ minh họa như dưới đây:

Examples:

As soon as I entered the room, I noticed her.

No sooner had I entered the room **than** I noticed her.

Hardly had I entered the room **when** I noticed her.

As soon as he approached the house, the policeman stopped him.

No sooner had he approached the house **than** the policeman stopped him.

Hardly had he approached the house **when** the policeman stopped him.

Whenever, every time: “Whenever” and “every time” mean “each time something happens”. We use the simple present (or the simple past in the past) because “whenever” and “every time” express habitual action.

“Whenever” và “every time” được dùng với ý nghĩa “khi/ mỗi khi”, thì hiện tại thường hay quá khứ thường được dùng trong mệnh đề chỉ thời gian với “whenever” hay “every time” để diễn đạt một hành động mang tính thói quen hay lặp lại. Ví dụ:

Whenever he comes, we go to have lunch at Dick's. We take a hike every time he visits.

Whenever/Every time Susan feels nervous, she chews her nails.

The first, second, third, fourth etc., next, last time: The first, second, third, fourth etc., next, last time means “that specific time”. We can use these forms to be more specific about which time of a number of times something happened.

Các cụm từ trên dùng để diễn đạt “thời điểm cụ thể xác định”. Ví dụ:

*The first time I went to New York, I was intimidated by the city. I saw Jack the last time I went to San Francisco.
The second time I played tennis, I began to have fun.*

Punctuation: Dấu câu

When an adverb clause begins the sentence use a comma to separate the two clauses.

Ta dùng dấu phẩy “,” để tách mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian với mệnh đề chính khi mệnh đề chỉ thời gian được đặt ở đầu câu, và bỏ dấu “,” trong trường hợp ngược lại.

When an adverb clause begins the sentence use **a comma** (dấu “,”) to separate the two clauses.

e.g. *As soon as he arrives, we will have some lunch.*

When we came, they were playing cards.

While he was walking in the park, he met Anh.

When the adverb clause finishes the sentence there is no need for a comma.

e.g. He gave me a call *when he arrived in town*.

We will wait here *until she comes back*.

She has been living in this city *since she was born*.

The time in the sentence is future but we use a present tense.

e.g. Wait here *until I come back*.

When she arrives, I will tell her to phone you.

We will start *as soon as the weather turns fine*.

We can also use the present perfect tense after: when/after/as soon as/until or till

e.g. Can I borrow that book when you **have finished** it?

But it is often possible to use the present tense or the present perfect tense

e.g. I will come as soon as I finish. Or I will come as soon as I have finished.

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 169. Put the verbs in brackets into correct tense.

How long do you want me to heat the oil? –heat it till it (begin) to smoke.

How long are you going to stay here? – I’m going to stay here until my brother (finish) his exams.

When I (get) to the cinema, the film (start).

By the time you (read) this book, your meal will get cold.

Please tell me how to get to the hospital? - Go till you (come) to a square with a statue in the middle; then turn left and you (find) it on your right.

I (read) book while my sister (do) her homework.

When he (come), I (watch) a football match on TV.

When I (walk) down the street, I (see) her.

We will go with him as soon as we (finish) the task.

I (learn) English since I (be) six years old.

When we (see) them last night, they (sing). They (say) they (sing) since 6 o'clock.

I hope it (not rain) when the bride (leave) the church tomorrow.

In a few minutes" time, when the clock (strike) six, I (wait) here for 3 hours.

John (do) the test again at the moment because he (not pass) it the first time.

I wish I (listen) to your advice last night. When I (be) able to leave hospital, doctor?

I will stay with you until your mother (come) home.

After he had got the money, he (leave) home immediately.

When he (arrive), he will tell us the truth.

Mary was dancing while John (sing).

The train left as we (arrive).

Exercise 170. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. The little girl wouldn't go into the sea _____ her father went to.

- A. except B. but C. also D. unless

2. The ceiling is _____.

- A. too high for me to reach B. too high for me to reach it.
C. so high for me reaching D. enough high of me to reaching

3. _____ other workers' constant objection, the director dismissed the workers.

- A. Because B. Because of C. Although D. In spite of

"I tried to study English well. I want to get a good job." means _____.

I tried to study English well so that I can get a good job

I tried to study English well in order that I can get a good job

I tried to study English well to get a good job

all are correct

_____ some scientists use lasers for military purposes, others use them in medicine.

- A. When B. While C. Until D. However

It seems _____ those students haven't learnt this grammar point before.

- A. so that B. as if C. such that D. even though 7. You will become

ill _____ you stop working so hard.

A. until B. if C. unless D. when
8. She remembered the correct address only_____ she had posted the letter.

A. since B. following C. after D. afterwards

9. He goes to England_____.

A. so that he learns English B. so that he may learn English

C. so to learn English D. so he learns English

She hid the present_____.

A. so that the children wouldn't find it B. in order to the children not to find it

C. for the children not find it D. in order that the children not to find it

The teacher was explaining the lesson slowly and clearly_____.

to make his students to understand it

in order that his students can understand it

so as to that his students could understand it

so that his students could understand it

They are_____.

so lazy boys as they are punished

so lazy boys that they are punished

such lazy boys that they are punished

such lazy that they are punished

13._____ I ask him for the money he owes me, he says he will bring it in a few days, but I don't think he has got it at all.

A. However B. Wherever C. Whatever D. Whenever

14. It was too late_____.

A. to go for them to the party

B. for them to go to the party

C. because they go to the party

D. so they go to the party

Cindy is sick. She can't go to work.

Cindy is too sick to go to work

Cindy is sick enough to go to work

Cindy is such sick that she can't go to work

Cindy is sick so that she can't go to work

The boy always does his homework before class_____.

so as not to be punished by the teacher

so as to be punished by the teacher

so that not to be punished by the teacher

in order that not to be punished by the teacher

"They whispered. They didn't want anyone to hear them." means_____.

They whispered in order to make anyone hear them

- B. They whispered so that no one could hear them
 C. They whispered to make everyone hear them
 D. They whispered in order that make everyone hear them
18. The party, _____ I was the guest of honor, was extremely enjoyable.
 A. to which B. at which C. for which D. by which
19. He retired early _____ ill health.
 A. in front of B. ahead of C. on account of D. on behalf of
20. It's _____ long time since he last saw his brothers and sisters.
 A. such a B. too C. very D. so

Exercise 171. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. I am going to speak with the boss when the meeting _____.
 A. will end B. ends C. is ending D. would end
2. When we _____ him tomorrow, we will remind him of that.
 A. will see B. see C. am seeing D. saw.
3. When he comes, I _____ her the news.
 A. tell B. will tell C. would tell D. would have told
4. When the police came, they _____.
 A. are fighting B. fought C. be fighting D. were fighting
5. Before she came to England, she _____ English.
 A. studied B. will study C. had studied D. was studying
6. I have lost touch with him _____ he left for London.
 A. as soon as B. after C. before D. since
7. My mother is washing the dishes _____ my father is watching television.
 A. when B. while C. as D. since
8. Lan has learnt English since she _____ a small girl.
 A. is B. was C. has been D. had been
- Don't go anywhere until I _____ back.
 A. come B. came C. will come D. am coming
10. Before cars _____, people _____ horses and bicycles.
 A. were discovered/ had used B. discovering/ had used
 C. had discovered/ used D. discovered/ had used
11. _____, I will give him the report.
 A. When he will return B. When he returns
 C. Until he will return D. No sooner he returns
12. _____ the firemen arrived to help, we had already put out the fire.

-
- A. Until B. No sooner C. By the time D. After
13. I have earned my own living_____ I was seven.
A. since B. when C. while D. as soon as
14. _____ the dance, Jerry said good-bye to his girlfriend.
A. Before left B. Before he leaves
C. Before leaving D. Before he will leave
15. Jones_____ after everyone_____.
A. speaks / will eat B. will speak / has eaten
C. is speaking / eats D. has spoken / will have eaten
16. _____, Joe stays in bed and reads magazines.
A. Whenever raining B. As it will be raining
C. When it will rain D. Whenever it rains
17. _____ in Rome than he was kidnapped.
A. No sooner he arrived B. Had he no sooner arrived
C. No sooner had he arrived D. No sooner he had arrived
18. We saw many beautiful birds_____ in the lake.
A when we are fishing B. while fishing
C. while fished D. fishing
19. _____, Peter came to see me.
A. While having dinner B. While I was having dinner
C. When having dinner D. When lam having dinner
20. _____ my homework, I went to bed.
A. After I had finished B. After finished
C. Finished D. After had finished

Exercise 172. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. _____ I came to this country, I couldn't speak a word of English.
A. Since B. After C. When D. Before
2. I'll let you know_____ I come back.
A. though B. since C. because D. before
3. They left the house_____ saying good-bye to their mother.
A. before B. after C. during D. in
4. We will wait here_____ he comes back.
A. while B. until C. before D. after
5. Mozart could write music_____ he was only five.
A. because B. although C. when D. however

-
6. _____ Peter gets here, we will congratulate him.
 A. As soon as B. After C. No sooner D. Since
7. Mrs. Pike _____ the door before the customers arrived.
 A. had opened B. will open C. would open D. has open
8. After Mariana _____ her exam, _____ her out to eat.
 A. was finishing/ would take B. finished/ had taken
 C. will finish/ have taken D. has finished/ will take
9. Mary will have finished all her work _____.
 A. as soon as her boss returned B. until her boss will return
 C. by the time her boss returns D. when he-r boss will return
- She went on crying, with her head sunk into a pillow, and cried and cried _____ the pillow was wet through.
 A. before B. after C. until D. while
11. He cleaned his shoes _____ they shone.
 A. when B. after C. while D. until
12. I had no sooner lit the barbecue _____ it started to rain.
 A. as B. while C. than D. that
13. I will wait _____ he comes.
 A. however B. until C. so that D. in spite of
14. You should give the iron time to heat up _____ you iron your clothes.
 A. because B. so that C. even though D. before
15. When the paint _____, it'll change from a light to a deep red.
 A. dry B. dries C. dried D. will dry
16. When _____ older I'd love to be an artist.
 A. I'm B. I'll be C. was D. have been
17. _____ you finish typing that report make five copies of it and give it to aloof the officers.
 A. While B. When C. But D. Although
18. When the passenger _____, will you please give him this package?
 A. will arrive B. arrives C. would arrives D. arriving
19. They were playing in the garden when _____.
 A. they have heard a scream B. they were hearing a scream
 C. they heard a scream D. they had heard a scream
20. By the time he retires, he _____ \$20,000.
 A. will save B. has saved C. had saved D. will have saved

Exercise 173. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

-
1. Mark heard the news on the radio_____ he was driving home.
 A. while B. as C. until D. A and B
2. What are you going to do_____ graduating from university?
 A. before B. after C. so D. because
3. I am not so good at English, _____ I have to practice more.
 A. but B. so C. while D. despite
- _____ the fact that she fail the exam, she didn't look disappointed.
 A. although B. despite C. in spite of D. because of
- We didn't go to France last summer_____ we couldn't afford to.
 A. so B. when C. because D. because of
- You can't drive a car_____ you have a license.
 A. unless B. so C. in case D. if
- _____ the flight delay, they didn't attend the conference.
 A. Because B. As C. Although D. Because of
8. The storm was so strong. _____ all the crops were destroyed.
 A. However B. As a result C. Consequently D. B and C
9. Everyone thought she would accept the offer. _____, she turned it down.
 A. However B. So C. Too D. Moreover
10. You should look up the meaning of the new words in the dictionary_____ misuse it
 A. so as to B. to C. so as not to D. so that
11. I bought this new software_____ Chinese.
 A. for learning B. learning C. to learn D. learned
12. The flight from New York to London was delayed_____ the heavy fog.
 A. because of B. because C. so D. as a result
- It's_____ city that he's got lost.
 A. a such big B. such big C. such a big D. a very big
14. There are_____ in the universe that we cannot count them.
 A. so much stars B. so many stars C. such stars many D. such stars much
- He has_____ to do that he can't go to the cinema with us.
 A. so much work B. so many work C. such much work D. such a work.
16. It is_____ book that just a few people like it.
 A. so an old B. so old C. such old D. such an old
17. The satellite travel_____ into space that nobody could see it with naked eyes.
 A. so far B. such far C. too far D. far enough
18. _____ the bad weather, the plan landed safely.
 A. in spite B. in spite of C. despite the fact that D. though
19. It was_____ that we went for a walk.
-

-
- A. a beautiful weather
C. so nice weather

- B. so a beautiful night
D. such nice weather

20. He lighted the candle_____ he might read the note.

- A. so that B. and C. because D. as a result

Exercise 174. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. Fail to pay the bill_____ they will cut off the electricity.

- A. unless B. and C. so D. if

It is such an important matter_____ I can't decide anything about it myself.

- A. so B. because C. that D. if

3. He hid that letter in a drawer_____ no one could read it.

- A. so that B. because C. although D. than

4. _____ Tom was unable to see anything, he knew someone was in his room.

- A. Because B. In case C. If D. Even though

_____ other workers' constant objection, the director dismissed the workers.

- A. Because B. Because of C. Although D. In spite of

6. _____ some scientists use lasers for military purposes, others use them in medicine.

- A. When B. While C. Until D. However

It seems_____ those students haven't learnt this grammar point before.

- A. so that B. as if C. such that D. even though

8. They were disqualified_____ they fought to the last minute.

- A. as B. since C. though D. once

9. The teacher explained the lesson twice_____ the students understood it clearly.

- A. as long as B. so that C. because D. as if

She didn't participate in the contest_____ her lack of confidence.

- A. because B. because of C. since D. despite

11. It is_____ that I have read it twice.

- A. such an interesting book B. so interesting a book
C. too interesting a book D. A and B

12. Hellen is_____ to do this exercise.

- A. no intelligence enough B. not intelligent enough
C. not enough intelligent D. so intelligent enough

13. I am_____ a car.

- A. not rich enough to buy B. too rich enough to buy
C. too poor to buy D. A and C

14. The ceiling is_____.

-
- A. too high for me to reach
 - C. so high for me reaching

- B. too high for me to reach it.
- D. enough high of me to reaching

15. The woman was so beautiful_____.

- A. that I couldn't help looking at
- C. for me looking at her

- B. that I couldn't help looking at her
- D. that for me to look at

16. It is_____ that I would like to go to the beach.

- A. such a nice weather
- C. such nice weather

- B. too nice weather
- D. such weather nice

These are_____ that I can't finish them.

- A. a such long assignments
- C. such a long assignments

- B. such long assignments
- D. too long assignments

18. He goes to England_____.

- A. so that he learns English
- C. so to learn English

- B. so that he may learn English
- D. so he learns English

19. It was too late_____.

- A. to go for them to the party.
- C. because they go to the party.

- B. for them to go to the party.
- D. so they go to the party.

Cindy is very sick. She can't go to work.

- Cindy is too sick to go to work
 - Cindy is sick enough to go to work
 - Cindy is such sick that she can't go to work
 - Cindy is sick so that she can't go to work
-

BÀI 9. COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGES

MẪU CÂU GIAO TIẾP

Requests or asking for help: Đề nghị sự giúp đỡ ta sử dụng các mẫu câu kèm các hình thức đáp lời khẳng định hoặc phủ định như sau:

Requests Đề nghị	Agreements Trả lời đồng ý	Disagreements Không đồng ý
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - V....., please. - Can you V.....? - Could you V.....? - Would you please V.....? - Will you V.....? - I wonder if you'd V.... - I wonder if you could V... 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Certainly - Of course - Sure - No problem - What can I do for you? - How can I help you? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I'm sorry. (I'm busy) I'm afraid I can't. I'm afraid I couldn't
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Would you mind – V-ing...? - Do you mind - V-ing....? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - No I don't mind. - No, of course not. - Not at all. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - I'm sorry, I can't.

2. Offer to help: Ngỏ ý giúp đỡ

Offers Đề nghị	Agreements Trả lời đồng ý	Disagreements Không đồng ý
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Shall I – V.....? - Would you like me to V...? - Do you want me to V...? - What can I do for you? - May I help you? - Do you need any help? - Let me help you. - Can I help you? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Yes, thank you - That's very kind of you. - Yes, please. - Oh, would you really? - Thanks a lot. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - No. Thank you - No, thank you. I can manage. - No, there's no need. But thanks all the same. - Well, that's very kind of you, but I think I can manage, thanks.

3. Asking for permissions:

Asking ways Cách hỏi	Agreements Trả lời đồng ý	Disagreements Không đồng ý
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - May I – V? - Can I – V.....? - Could I – V.....? (May I go out?) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Certainly. - Of course. - Please do. - Please go ahead 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - I'd rather you didn't - I'd prefer You didn't - No, I'm afraid you can't - I'm sorry, but you can't.

- Do you think I could – V...? -I wonder if I could – V... -Is it all right if I – V...?	- Yes, by all means.	
- Would you mind if I V-ed? (Would you mind if I smoked?) - Do you mind if I – V....? (Do you mind if I smoke?)	- No, of course not. - Not at all. - Please do - Please go ahead	

4. Suggestions: Gợi ý hoặc rủ ai đó làm gì

Suggestions Gợi ý	Agreements Trả lời đồng ý	Disagreements Không đồng ý
1. Shall I/ we – V...? 2. Let's – V... . 3. Why don't I/ we – V...? 4. How about – V-ing...? 5. What about – V-ing...? 6. I think we should – V... . 7. I suggest that we – V... . 8. It might be a good idea if we/ you – V... . 9. I think the best way of dealing with this situation would be to – V... . 10. If you ask me, I think we/ you should/ could – V... .	1. Yes, I think that's a good idea. 2. That's probably the best option. 3. Sure, why not? 4. Yes, definitely. 5. By all means. 6. Good idea	No, let's not.

5. Thanking: Tỏ ý cảm ơn, nói cảm ơn

Thanking Cảm ơn	Responses Trả lời
- Thank you. - Thank you very much. - Thanks a lot. - Thanks a lot for	- You're welcome. - That's all right. - Not at all. - It's my pleasure

Request for a repeat: Yêu cầu nhắc lại điều gì

Pardon? (Cách này thông dụng trong tiếng Anh – Mỹ)

Yes? (Cách này thông dụng trong tiếng Anh – Anh)

Please say that again.

Could you repeat that?

Invitations, offers: Cho, mời

a) Invite something: Mời thứ gì đó - **Would you like - something?**

e.g. A: Would you like a cup of tea?

B: - Yes, please. (or - No, thanks.)

b) Invite to somewhere: Mời đi đâu đó - **Would you like + to inf.?**

e.g. Would you like to go to the cinema with me? (mời bạn đi xem phim với tôi)

Would you like to go to the party? (mời bạn đi dự tiệc)

8. Warnings: Cảnh báo

Don't move!

Mind your head!

Watch out!

Look out!

Be careful!

Take care!

Showing concerns: Bày tỏ sự quan tâm nào đó

Showing interest (Thể hiện sự quan tâm)	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Uh-huh!2. Right!3. Really?4. That's interesting!5. And?6. What then?7. Oh?8. What happened next?
Showing that you're listening (Thể hiện bạn đang lắng nghe)	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Now, you mentioned...2. So, that's how...?3. Yes, I was going to ask you about that...4. Could you give me / us an example of...?5. Could you explain in more detail...?
Thanking and responding (Cảm ơn và đáp lại lời cảm ơn)	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Many thanks.2. Thanks a lot.3. Cheers!4. That's very kind of you.5. Thank you very much6. Not at all.7. It's a pleasure. / My pleasure.8. You're welcome.9. Don't mention it.10. Any time.

	11. That's OK / all right. 12. I'm glad to have been of some help
Apologizing (Xin lỗi)	1. Sorry 2. I'm very/awfully/so/extremely sorry. 3. Excuse me. 4. Sorry, (it was) my fault. 5. I do apologize. 6. Please accept my apologies
Accepting an apology (Chấp nhận lời xin lỗi)	1. That's all right/OK. 2. Not to worry. 3. That's quite/perfectly all right. 4. No reason/need to apologize. 5. Don't worry about it
Giving instructions (Đưa ra lời hướng dẫn/ chỉ dẫn)	1. Make sure... 2. Remember... (to do). 3. Be careful... (not to do). 4. Don't forget... (to do) 5. Giving directions 6. Go straight on. 7. Take the first/second on the left / right. 8. Turn left / right. 9. Go along... as far as... 10. Take the number 7 bus / tram. 11. Get off (the bus / tram) at... (place). 12. Carry on until you see... 13. Look out for..
Checking someone has understood (Kiểm tra xem ai đã hiểu hay chưa)	1. Are you with me? 2. Did you follow that? 3. Have you got that? 4. Is everything clear so far? 5. Does that seem to make sense

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 175. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. Mike: "More coffee? Anybody?"
 A. I don't agree. I'm afraid"

Jane: " _____."
 B. I'd love to

- C. Yes, please
2. Mike: "Do you like the weather here?"
A. doesn't rain B. didn't rain
3. Mike: "Oh, I'm really sorry"
A. It was a pleasure
C. Thanks
4. Mike: "What's your hobby, Hoa?"
A. Well, I like collecting stamps
C. Well, I want stamps
5. Mike: "You look nice today. I like your new hairstyle"
Jane: "_____."
A. It's nice of you to say so
C. Oh, Well done
6. Mike: "A motorbike knocked Ted down."
A. What is it now?
C. How terrific!
- Mike: "I have bought you a toy. Happy birthday to you!"
Jane: "_____."
A. The same to you
C. What a pity!
8. Mike "_____"
A. How is the English competition?
B. Would you like the English competition?
C. What do you like about the English competition?
D. What do you think of the English competition?
- Peter: "Do you feel like going to the cinema this evening?"
Mary: "_____."
A. I don't agree. I'm afraid.
C. That would be great
10. Laura: "What a lovely house you have"
A. Of course not, it's not costly
C. I think so
- Peter: "Has an announcement been made about the eight o'clock flight to Paris?"
Mary: "_____."
A. Yes, it was B. Sorry, I don't C. I don't think that D. Not yet
- Peter: "Would you mind lending me your bike?"
Mary: "_____."
- D. It's right. I think
- Jane: "I wish it_____."
C. won't rain D. hadn't rained
- Jane: "_____."
B. That's all right
D. Yes, why?
- Hoa: "_____."
B. Oh, with computers
D. Oh, on the phone
- B. Shall I? Thanks
D. I feel interesting to hear that
- Jane: "_____."
B. Poor Ted!
D. What a motorbike!
- B. Have a nice day!
D. What a lovely toy! Thanks
- Jane: "Oh, it's great"
- Mary: "_____."
B. Thank you. Hope you will drop in
D. No problem

- A. Yes. Here it is B. Not at all C. Yes, let's D. Great
- Peter: "_____ detective stories?"
- Mary: "In my opinion, they are very good for teenagers"
- A. How about B. Are you fond of
C. What do you think about D. What do people feel about?
14. Hellen: "Congratulations!" Jane: "_____."
- A. What a pity B. Thank you C. I'm sorry D. You are welcome
15. Linda: "Excuse me! Where 's the post office?"
- Maria: "_____."
- A. It's over there B. I'm afraid not C. Don't worry D. Yes, I think so
16. Tom: "How did you get there?" John: "_____."
- A. Is it far from here? B. I came here by train
C. I came here last night D. The train is so crowded
17. Alice: "What shall we do this evening?" Carol: "_____."
- A. Let's go out for dinner B. No problem
C. Thank you D. Not at all
- Mark: "I'm sorry. It's late. I must go now." Mary: "_____."
- A. You are welcome B. Good bye. See you soon
C. Not at all D. Hello
19. Mary: "Whose bike is that?" Tom: "_____."
- A. No, It's over there B. It's Jane
C. It's just outside D. It's Jane's
20. Peter: "How do you go to school?" Mary: "_____."
- A. I go there early B. Every day, Except Sunday
C. I don't think so D. I go there by bus

Exercise 176. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

1. Peter: "Bye." Mary: "_____."
- A. See you lately B. Thank you C. Meet you again D. See you later
2. Peter: "I've passed my driving test" Mary: "_____."
- A. Congratulations! B. That's a good idea
C. It's nice of you to say so D. Do you?
- Mike: "Would you like to have dinner with me?"
- Mary: "_____."
- A. Yes, I love to B. Yes, so do I C. I'm very happy D. Yes, it is
4. Ann: "_____ where the nearest post office is?"

- Linda: "Turn left and then turn right."
 A. Could you tell me
 C. Do you tell me
5. Peter: "How do you do?"
 A. How do you do? B. Not too bad
6. Peter: "I enjoy listening to pop music"
 A. I'm too B. I don't
7. Mike: "It's hot in here?"
 A. Did B. Shall
8. David: "James is a very brave man."
 A. had B. will have
9. Anna: "_____"
 A. What do you do for a living?
 C. How do you live?
10. David: "You've got a beautiful dress!"
 A. I do B. Thank you
11. Sue: "I love music."
 A. So do I B. No, I won't
- Maria: "I'm taking my end term examination tomorrow."
 Mary: "_____"
 A. Good luck B. Good day
 C. Good time D. Good chance
13. Hang: "Thank for your help, Lan."
 A. With all my heart
 C. It's my pleasure
14. Ann: "Do you think it will rain?"
 A. I don't hope B. I hope not
 C. I don't hope so D. It's hopeless
- Ann: "Do you think you will get the job?" Mary: "_____"
 A. Yes, that's right B. I think not
 C. I know so D. Well, I hope so
16. David: "Happy Christmas!"
 A. The same to you!
 C. You are the same!
17. Mike: "_____ going on a picnic this weekend?"
 Jane: "That's great!"
 A. Why don't we B. Would you like C. How about D. Let's
- Mike: "What an attractive hair style you have got, Mary!"
 Mary: "_____"
 A. Thank you very much. I am afraid C. You are telling a lie
- B. Should you show me
 D. Will you say me
 Mary: "_____"
 C. I'm well. Thank D. Yeah, OK
 Mary: "_____"
 C. Neither do I D. So am I
 Mary: "_____ I open the window?"
 C. Would D. Do
 Jane: "Yes, I wish I_____ his encourage."
 C. have had D. have
 Mary: "I am teaching."
 B. What do you earn for a living?
 D. What are you working?
 Mary: "_____"
 C. You, too D. Okay
 Mary: "_____"
 C. Yes, I like it D. Neither do I

- B. Thank you for your compliment D. I don't like your sayings
19. Laura: "You look great in this new dress." Mary: "_____."
- A. With pleasure B. Not at all
- C. I am glad you like it D. Do not say anything about it
20. Mark: "How well you are playing!" Mary: "_____."
- A. Say it again. I like to hear your words
- B. I think so. I am proud of myself
- C. Thank you too much
- D. Many thanks. That is a nice compliment

Exercise 177: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

- Jane:** "I'm sorry. It's late. I must go now." **Mike:** "_____."
- A. You are welcome B. Good bye. See you soon
- C. Not at all D. Hello
2. **Jane:** "What a lovely hat you have!" **Jimmy:** "Thanks. _____."
- A. that's OK B. I don't care C. I'm glad you like it D. certainly
3. **Jane:** "How's life?" **Mike:** "_____."
- A. Sure B. Not too bad, but very busy
- C. Very well, thank you D. Pleased to meet you
- Jane:** "Thank you for the lovely present." **Mike:** "_____."
- A. Go ahead B. Not at all
- C. Come on D. I'm pleased you like it
5. **Jane:** "Thank you very much." **Mike:** "_____."
- A. Not at all B. You are well come
- C. That's all right D. All are correct
6. **Jane:** "Do you fancy a coffee?" **Mike:** "_____."
- A. Oh, dear B. Everything is ok
- C. Oh, yes. I'd love one D. How do you do
7. **Jane:** "You look nice in that red shirt." **Mike:** "_____."
- A. It's nice of you to say so B. Am I? Thanks
- C. Oh, poor me D. I'm interesting to hear that
- Jane:** "Peter had an accident. He's been in hospital for 5 days."
- Mike:** "_____."
- A. Poor it B. Poor him C. How terrific D. Oh, Is he?
- Jane:** "Happy birthday! This is a small present for you."
- Mike:** "_____."

- A. What a pity!
C. Have a good time
10. **Jane:** "How are you getting on?"
A. All right B. Not bad C. It's Ok D. All are correct

Jane: "I'm sorry. It's late. I must go now. Bye-bye."

- Peter:** "_____."
- A. You are welcome B. Goodbye. See you soon
C. Not at all D. Hello
12. **Jane:** "Thank you for a lovely evening."
A. You are welcome B. Have a good day C. Thanks D. Cheer
13. **Jane:** "Do you mind if I use your bike?"
A. Yes do you B. Yes, it's my pleasure
C. No, you don't D. No, you can use it
14. **Jane:** "Congratulations!"
A. What a pity! B. Thank you C. I'm sorry D. You are welcome
15. **Jane:** "_____."
A. What do you do for a living?
C. How do you live?

Anna: "I saw Grace this morning at the bank."

- Pete:** "It _____ Grace. She has been to Paris on her honeymoon."
A. can't be B. must be C. can't have been D. must have been

Max: "I locked myself out of my apartment. I didn't know what to do."

- Michel:** "You _____ your roommate."
A. could have called B. may have called
C. would have called D. must have called

Anh: "You haven't eaten anything since yesterday night. You _____ be really hungry!"

- Lan:** "I am."
A. might B. will C. can D. must

John: "Can you show me the way to the nearest post office, please?"

- Passer-by:** "_____"
A. Not way, sorry. B. Just round the corner over there.
C. Look it up in a dictionary! D. There's no traffic near here.

Jane: "You look great in that red skirt, Lora!"

- Lora:** "_____"
A. No, I don't think so. B. Oh, you don't like it, do you?
C. Thanks, I bought it at Macy's. D. Thanks, my mum bought it.

CHUYÊN ĐỀ V. WRITING SKILLS

CHUYÊN ĐỀ VIẾT

Chuyên đề này đề cập đến một trong những điểm yếu cố hữu của hầu hết học sinh, đây cũng là trở ngại lớn trong việc đạt điểm cao hoặc làm các câu hỏi mang tính phân hóa đối tượng, đó là chuyên đề về kỹ năng viết. Trên thực tế, việc cải thiện kỹ năng viết không hề khó khăn như chúng ta nghĩ, mà trái lại, nếu có nền tảng kiến thức ngữ pháp, một vốn từ khá, một sự hiểu biết tương đối về các chủ đề cuộc sống, các vấn đề thời sự của thời đại thì việc đạt điểm cao phần này là không quá khó (tuy vậy trên thực tế số học sinh đạt trên 50% số điểm phần này là rất hiếm). Việc thực hiện nghiêm túc bốn chuyên đề trước đã nêu trong tài liệu này sẽ giúp học sinh tự tin hoàn thành tốt yêu cầu cải thiện kỹ năng viết và đạt kết quả thật cao trong kì thi HSG môn Tiếng Anh. Trong chuyên đề này các hình thức chuyển đổi câu cơ bản nhất được hệ thống hóa cùng các bài tập minh họa điển hình, các bước thực hành viết luận được hướng dẫn tường minh, kèm theo đó 16 chủ đề viết luận kèm theo là những chủ đề có liên quan đến chương trình PT hiện hành, được sử dụng trong hầu hết các kì kiểm tra chuyên đề, các kì thi học sinh giỏi của các trường THCS, THPT.

BÀI 1. SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION

VIẾT LẠI CÂU

I. Introduction: Trong tiếng Anh, cũng như nhiều ngôn ngữ khác, ta có thể dùng nhiều cấu trúc lời nói khác nhau để diễn đạt cùng một ý, hay một lời nói. Nói cách khác một câu nói không đơn thuần chỉ có ý nghĩa duy nhất theo một cấu trúc ngữ pháp, mà câu nói ấy có thể được truyền tải theo một hình thức cấu trúc ngữ pháp khác nào đó mà vẫn giữ nguyên được nghĩa gốc của nó. Hình thức viết lại câu (sentence transformation) chính là hình thức viết lại một câu cho trước bằng một cấu trúc mới nhưng không làm thay đổi ý nghĩa ban đầu của câu ấy. Ví dụ như:

Câu gốc: He has lived here since 1990. (the present perfect tense)

Câu viết lại: He moved here in 1990. (the simple past tense)

Chuyển đổi câu sử dụng thì của động từ, động từ thay thế và trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian.

Câu gốc: We can find him nowhere. (affirmative sentence)

Câu viết lại: Nowhere can we find him. (inversion sentence)

Chuyển đổi câu sử dụng hình thức đảo ngữ (inversion) để nhấn mạnh.

Câu gốc: She is the most intelligent student in my class. (superlative degree) Câu viết lại: No one in my class is as intelligent as she is. (negative positive degree) →

Chuyển đổi câu sử dụng các hình thức so sánh với một tính từ.

Câu gốc: "Don't touch the wire, boys!" said Mr. Hung. (direct speech)

Câu viết lại: Mr. Hung told the boys not to touch the wire. (indirect speech)

Chuyển đổi câu sử dụng cách chuyển từ câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp.

II. Some transformative forms: Vài hình thức biến đổi câu trong tiếng Anh được miêu tả như sau:

1. Tense sentence transformation: Chuyển đổi câu qua chuyển đổi thì của động từ:

- e.g. a. *We started working here three years ago.*
We have worked here for three years.
b. *This is the first time I have been on a plane.*
I have never been on a plane before. c.
That's strange! My pen isn't here!
That's strange! My pen has disappeared!
d. *Nicky and Jan aren't at this school any more.*
Nicky and Jan have left this school.

Transformations using comparisons: Chuyển đổi câu sử dụng các hình thức so sánh.

- e.g. a. *She is taller than I am.*
I am not as tall as she is.
b. *He worked harder than his friends.*
His friends did not work as hard as he did. c.
This is the best film I have ever seen.
I have never seen a better film than this one.
d. *She is the most kind-hearted woman among the ones you met.*
→ *No one among those you met is as kind-hearted as her.*

Chú ý: Để làm tốt bài tập chuyển đổi câu liên quan đến kiến thức so sánh, hãy xem phần bài viết Chuyên đề II, Bài 3, tài liệu này.

Transformations using inversions: Chuyển đổi câu sử dụng các hình thức đảo ngữ.

- e.g. a. *She can hardly understand what the teacher is saying.*
Hardly can she understand what the teacher is saying. b.
Although he worked hard, he couldn't feed the family.
Hard as he worked, he couldn't feed the family.
c. *They could not find the man anywhere.*
Nowhere could they find the man. d.
She rarely eats out.
Rarely does she eat out.

Chú ý: Phần viết lại câu này đã được sử dụng trong các bài tập từ Exercise 41 đến Exercise 42 trang 91 đến 93. (Chuyên đề II, Bài 4, tài liệu này)

4. Transformations using the passive voice: Chuyển đổi câu sử dụng câu bị động.

- e.g. a. She can make a decision soon.
A decision can be made soon by her. b.
Their car was stolen long ago.
Someone stole their car long ago.
c. They will build a new school here.
→ A new school will be built here.
d. She had her friends translated the message.
She had the message translated by her friends.

Chú ý: Phần viết lại câu này đã được sử dụng trong các bài tập từ Exercise 103 đến Exercise 106 trang 206 đến 210. (Chuyên đề III, Bài 5, tài liệu này)

Transformations using the indirect speech: Chuyển đổi câu sử dụng câu gián tiếp.

- e.g. a. "Go out, boys!" said the mother.
→ The mother told her sons to go out.
b. "Would you like a cigar, Peter?" said Mike.
→ Mike invited Peter a cigar.
c. "Do you live here?" said the stranger.
→ The stranger asked if I lived there.
d. The man said, "what do you do for a living, Nam?" →
The man wanted to know what Nam did for a living.

Chú ý: Phần viết lại câu này đã được sử dụng trong các bài tập từ Exercise 111 đến Exercise 112 trang 220 đến 223. (Chuyên đề III, Bài 6, tài liệu này)

6. Transformations using conditional sentences: Chuyển đổi câu sử dụng câu điều kiện.

- e.g. a. If you don't study hard, you will fail the final exam.
Unless you study hard, you will fail the final exam. b.
The test was too difficult for him to do well.
He could do well if the test were not difficult.
c. He isn't here to help me.
If he were here, he could help me.
d. I did not know the answer to tell him.
→ I would have told him if I had known the answer.

Chú ý: Phần viết lại câu này đã được sử dụng trong các bài tập từ Exercise 134 đến Exercise 136 trang 264 đến 267. (Chuyên đề IV, Bài 2, tài liệu này)

Transformations using other structures: Chuyển đổi câu sử dụng các mẫu câu khác.

-
- e.g. a. Mr. Ba is living next door. He teaches me English. (relative clause)
→ Mr. Ba, who teaches me English, is living next door.
b. Although it rained heavily, we arrived on time. (clause of concession)
→ Despite the heavy rain, we arrived on time.
c. He came early so that he could get a good seat. (clause of purpose)
→ He came early to get a good seat.
d. The test was too difficult for them to do well.
→ The test was not easy enough for them to do well. (cause & effect)

Chú ý: Phần viết lại câu này đã được sử dụng trong các bài tập từ Exercise 139, 151, 161, 163, 164 từ trang 273 đến 313. (Chuyên đề IV, Bài 3-9, tài liệu này)

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 178: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

1. We couldn't have managed without my father's money.
If it _____.
2. He hasn't eaten this kind of food since 1991.
He last _____.
3. I had only just put the phone down when the boss rang back.
Hardly _____.
4. Nick joined a golf club a year ago.
Nick has been _____.
5. While I strongly disapprove of your behavior, I will help you this time.
Despite my _____.
6. This will be my first visit to Brazil.
I've never _____.
7. I'm sorry I missed your lecture.
I'm sorry not _____.
8. I joined a yoga club six months ago.
I have been _____.
9. We may not be able to give the concert.
The concert _____.
10. This will be her first time in Spain.
She has not _____.
11. I was not surprised to hear that he had failed his driving test.
It came _____.
12. When did he start work?
How long is _____?

-
13. I only recognized him when he came into the light.
Not until _____.
14. Our meeting is tomorrow.
We will _____.
15. That rumor about the politician and the construction contract is absolutely false.
There is _____.
16. David went home before we arrived.
When we _____.
17. One runner was too exhausted to complete the last lap of the race.
One runner was so _____.
18. How long ago did you buy your car?
How long _____?
19. My mother was the most warm-hearted person I've ever known.
I've _____.
20. I've only recently started wearing glasses.
I didn't _____.

Exercise 179: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

1. He bought his computer one year ago.
He has _____.
2. They never made us do anything we didn't want to do.
We were _____.
3. They started playing tennis three months ago.
They have _____.
4. The only thing that prevented the passing of the bill was the death of the man.
Had it not _____.
5. They had not been to South Korea before.
It is the _____.
6. It is quite pointless to complain.
There's no _____.
7. I haven't been to the beach for a long time.
It's a _____.
8. The workers only called off the strike after a new pay offer.
Only after _____.
9. He had not been to ballet classes before.
It was the _____.
10. He was sentenced to six months in prison for his part in the robbery.
He received a _____.
11. I have never watched such a boring film.

-
- It's the most _____.
12. You can eat as much as you like for \$5 at the new lunch-bar.
There is no _____.
13. My parents haven't reached London yet.
My parents still haven't _____.
14. She wore a hearing-aid, even though she could hear the phone ring perfectly well.
She wasn't so _____.
15. I haven't had a Chinese meal for ages.
It's ages _____.
16. You will never meet anyone more generous than Mrs. Hoa.
Mrs. Hoa is _____.
17. She's been living in this village since 2009.
She moved _____.
18. My parents let me go abroad alone for the first time last year.
I was _____.
19. I last travelled to Mui Ne in January.
I haven't _____.
20. It was his incompetence which led to their capture.
If he _____.

Exercise 180: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

1. I'm certainly not going to give you any more money.
I have no _____.
2. Charles has never had a tablet before.
This is the _____.
3. Our hotel booking hasn't been confirmed.
We haven't received _____.
4. They moved to this village five months ago.
They has been _____.
5. The sales man told me that my new car would be delivered next Wednesday.
According _____.
6. It's a long time since we went out.
We haven't _____.
7. The Yeti has very rarely been seen at this altitude.
There have _____.
8. She started cooking as soon as her husband (had) left home.
She started _____.
9. It's not certain that Jones will get the job.

-
- It is open _____.
10. I met my husband in 2001.
I have _____.
11. Everyone started complaining the moment the announcement was made.
No sooner _____.
12. When you phoned me, it was my lunchtime.
When you phoned me, I _____.
13. As I get older, I want to travel less.
The older _____.
14. We started working here three years ago.
We have _____.
15. A house in that district will cost you at least a million dollars.
You won't be able _____.
16. My mother has been studying English for 15 days.
My mother started _____.
17. Alan worked too hard at the office, and this led to his illness.
Alan's illness _____.
18. Hurry up! We'll get to the theatre after the beginning of the play.
By the time we get _____.
19. Keeping calm is the secret of passing your driving test.
As long as _____.
20. This is the first time I have been on a plane.
I have _____.

Exercise 181: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

She has never had a smartphone before.

This is _____.

Immediately after his appointment to the post, the new editor fell ill.

No sooner _____.

We haven't been to the theatre for a long time.

It's a long _____.

The protest has been so vociferous that the committee has had to reconsider.

There has been _____.

I haven't been to the football match for three years.

The last time _____.

You think that fat people are always jolly but you are wrong.

Contrary _____.

He has never eaten this kind of food before.

It's the first time _____.

My boss works better when he's pressed for time.

The less _____.

They got married ten years ago.

They have _____.

The patient recovered more rapidly than expected.

The patient made _____.

There's a party at Mary's house next week.

Next week _____.

There isn't a pair of thermal socks left in the shop, Madam.

We are completely _____.

I started working for this company three years ago.

I've been _____.

Their chances of success are small.

It is not _____.

I became head of the university four years ago.

I have _____.

The rail workers do not intend to call off their strike.

The rail workers have no _____.

The arrival time of Helen's flight is 8.00.

Helen's flight will _____.

Mrs. Scott is proud of her cooking.

Mrs. Scott prides _____.

Oh no! My wallet is missing.

Oh no! I have _____.

It was the goalkeeper who saved the match for us.

If it hadn't _____.

Exercise 182: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

They are big, they fall fast.

The _____.

I look into your eyes much, I love you much.

The _____.

She is mature, she becomes beautiful.

The _____.

He drinks much water, he becomes thirsty.

The _____.

You speak English much, your English will be good.

The _____.

People save much paper, much wood pulp is preserved.

The _____.

You make much money, you spend much.

The _____.

Means of transport are cheap, they become popular.

The _____.

We leave early, we will arrive soon.

The _____.

You are young, you learn easily.

The _____.

She is older, she becomes more beautiful.

The _____.

I waited long. I got angry.

The _____.

The sun is high, the shadow is low.

The _____.

I know a lot, I forget much.

The _____.

I forget much, I know little.

The _____.

Susan isn't as good at chemistry as Sarah.

Sarah is _____.

No one in the group is younger than he.

He is the _____.

Stone isn't as hard as iron.

Iron is _____.

Tom is the best football player in the team.

No one in the team is _____.

I don't play the guitar as well as he does.

He plays _____.

Exercise 183: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

My house is bigger than your house.

Your house is _____.

The black car is cheaper than the red car.

The red car _____.

This film is more interesting than that one.

That film is _____.

My kitchen is smaller than yours.

Your kitchen _____.

My grandmother is older than everyone in my family.

My grandmother is the _____.

No one in my class is as tall as Tam.

Tam is the _____.

I can't cook as well as my mother.

My mother can cook _____.

He does not play tennis as well as Jack.

Jack can _____.

I did not spend as much money as you.

You spent _____.

I don't think this book is as expensive as it is.

This book is _____.

He is the tallest boy in his class.

No one in _____.

This is the most interesting film of all.

No other films are _____.

No cars in the world are more expensive than Japanese ones.

Japanese cars _____.

This exercise is easier than that one.

That exercise is not _____.

He drives more carefully than Jack does.

Jack _____.

No one in the group plays better than he.

He can _____.

No hotel in the city is as comfortable as this.

This hotel is the _____.

Other oceans in the world aren't as large as the Pacific one.

The Pacific Ocean is _____.

They travel a lot. They know much about the world.

The more _____.

He practices hard. He performs well.

The harder _____.

Exercise 184: Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

My sister is taller than any other student in the class.

My sister is the _____.

No other cities in Vietnam is as large as Ho Chi Minh city.

Ho Chi Minh city _____.

This story is more interesting than any other story that I have ever heard.

This is the _____.

My father can't cook as well as my mother does.

My mother cooks _____.

My brother is shorter than any other student in the class.

My brother is the _____.

Daisy writes slowly. She makes a few mistakes.

The _____.

That writer wrote many stories. She became famous.

The _____.

She started later. She got much into traffic jam.

The _____.

I am as tall as Tam.

Tam and I are the _____.

He knows more than I do.

I don't _____.

Taking by taxi is more quickly than taking by bus.

Taking by bus isn't _____.

Linh is a better cook than Hoa.

Hoa can't _____.

Apples are usually cheaper than oranges.

Apple are not _____.

The bus takes longer than the train.

The train _____.

I can't cook as well as my mother does.

My mother _____.

He is the most punctual person she has ever met.

She has _____.

That is the most interesting book they have ever had.

They have _____.

We have never eaten a more delicious dish than this one.

This _____.

Jimmy has never been in a more difficult situation than this.

This is _____.

Dick seems to spend more when he earns more.

The more _____.

Exercise 185: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

“Where is the station car park?” Mrs. Smith asked.

Mrs. Smith asked _____.

Miss Taylor doesn't like living in such a small house.

Miss Taylor wishes _____.

He didn't hurry, so he missed the train.

If _____.

The fire has destroyed many houses.

Many houses _____.

I have studied English for 3 years.

I began _____.

They are building a new school in that village.

A new school _____.

Unless you water those flowers regularly, they will wither.

If you _____.

The driver said; “Don't get off the bus while it's moving!”

The driver asked the passengers _____.

The robbers made the bank manager hand over the money.

The bank manager _____.

“Why don't you put a better lock on the door, Barry?” said John.

John suggested _____.

I haven't eaten this kind of food before.

This is the _____.

“Can I borrow your bicycle?” asked Peter.

Peter asked if _____.

We couldn't have managed without my father's money.

If it _____.

I had only just put the phone down when the boss rang back.

Hardly _____.

It was Walter Raleigh who introduced potatoes and tobacco into England.

The English owe _____.

I only made that terrible mistake because I wasn't thinking.

If I _____.

While I strongly disapprove of your behavior, I will help you this time.

Despite my _____.
I'm sorry I missed Professor Baker's lecture.
I'm sorry not _____.
We may not be able to give the concert.
The concert _____.
I was not surprised to hear that Harry had failed his driving test.
It came _____.

Exercise 186: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

We had planned to visit grandmother, so we left early in the morning.
We were _____.
Someone rang the alarm as soon as the burglars left the building.
No sooner _____.
As television program become more popular, they seem to get worse.
The more _____.
"I think the whole idea's ridiculous," he said.
He dismissed _____.
The authorities will prosecute anyone they find trespassing on this land.
Anyone found _____.
I prefer going out for a meal to staying at home.
I'd rather _____.
It would have been a super weekend if it hadn't been for the weather.
But _____.
She had hardly begun to speak before people started interrupting her.
Hardly _____.
It was a bit difficult to get into work this morning.
Getting _____.
"Nothing will persuade me to sleep in that haunted house," she said.
She flatly _____.
He knows really everything there is to know about whales.
There's _____.
If we can solve the problem soon, it will be better for an concerned.
The sooner _____.
The demand was so great that they had to reprint the book immediately.
So _____.
I'm absolutely sure that they weren't playing in this weather.
They can't _____.
"I didn't steal the car," he said, "I just borrowed it".
He denied _____.
It wasn't necessary for them to call for help after all.
They _____.

When the police caught him, he was climbing over the garden wall.

The police caught _____.

It's sad, but unemployment is unlikely to go down this year.

Sad _____.

It is believed that the man escaped in a stolen car.

The man is _____.

Since we had nothing else to do, we decided to go for a walk.

Having _____.

Exercise 187: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

You won't find a more dedicated worker anywhere than Mrs. Jones.

Nowhere _____.

No one has challenged his authority before.

This is the first time _____.

"If Brian doesn't train harder, I won't select him for the team," said the manager.

The manager threatened _____.

The hurricane blew the roof off the house.

The house _____.

You'll certainly meet lots of people in your new job.

You are _____.

I left without saying goodbye as I didn't want to disturb the meeting.

Rather _____.

There aren't many other books which explain this problem so well.

In few other books _____.

I dislike it when people criticize me unfairly.

I object _____.

Robert is sorry now that he didn't accept the job.

Robert now wishes _____.

The film star wore dark glasses so that no one would recognize him.

The film star avoided _____.

I am amazed by the mistakes he makes.

What _____.

We weren't surprised by his success.

It came _____.

"That's a lovely new dress, Jean" said her mother.

Jean's mother complimented _____.

We couldn't relax until all the guests had gone home.

Only _____.

We couldn't find George anywhere.

George was _____.

Customs officials are stopping more travellers than usual this week.

An increased _____.
She listens more sympathetically than anyone else I know.
She is a _____.
You're under no obligation to accept their offer.
You can please _____.
Martin may not be very well but he still manages to enjoy life.
Martin's poor _____.
The company presents a gold watch to each of its retiring employees.
Each _____.

Exercise 188: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

The only thing that kept us out of prison was the way he spoke the local dialect.
But for his command _____.
The Pacific Ocean is on average deeper than the Atlantic.
The average _____.
My father finds maps hard to follow.
My father has _____.
Under no circumstances should you phone the police.
The last _____.
House prices have risen dramatically this year.
There has _____.
This affair does not concern you.
This affair is no _____.
You must submit articles for the magazine by June 18th.
The final date _____.
Although Jimmy was the stronger of the two, his attacker soon overpowered him.
Despite his _____.
What a surprise to see you here!
Fancy _____.
I don't intend to apologize to either of them.
I have _____.
It was only when I left home that I realized how much my father meant to me.
Not until _____.
The rail workers do not intend to call off their strike.
The rail workers have no _____.
Mrs. Scott is proud of her cooking.
Mrs. Scott prides _____.
It was the goalkeeper who saved the match for us.
If it hadn't _____.
It wasn't a bit surprised to hear that Karen had changed her job.
It came _____.

John didn't celebrate until he received the offer of promotion in writing.

Not until _____.

I don't really like her, even though I admire her achievements.

Much _____.

It's thought that the accident was caused by human error.

The accident _____.

Keeping calm is the secret of passing your driving test.

As long as _____.

Immediately after his appointment to the post, the new editor fell ill.

No sooner _____.

Exercise 189: *Finish each of the following sentences using a phrase including the given bold word in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

1. John inflated the tyres of his bicycle. (blew)

John _____ of his bicycle.

We'd better leave them a note, because it's possible they'll arrive later. (case)

We'd better _____ they arrive later.

3. Before he came here he worked for Mr. Smith. (previous)

→ Before he came here, his _____ was Mr. Smith.

4. He speaks German extremely well (command)

→ He _____ German.

5. His criticisms are quite unfair. (justification)

→ There is no _____ his criticisms.

6. I can't understand why they are reluctant to sign the contract (baffled)

→ I _____ their reluctance to sign the contract.

7. I always find chess problems like that quite impossible. (defeat)

→ Chess problems like that _____ me!

8. This must be kept secret. (know)

→ You mustn't _____ this.

9. I can't afford a new dress, that old blue one will have to do. (make)

→ I can't afford a new dress. I'll have _____ that old blue one.

10. You can't possibly expect me to have supper ready by 8 o'clock. (question)

→ There is _____ by 8 o'clock.

11. It is my opinion that there is no advantage in further discussion. (see)

As far _____, there is no advantage in further discussion.

Please excuse Jane's poor typing. She's only been learning for a month. (allowances)

Please _____ only been learning for a month.

13. There is no way that young man can achieve success in this test. (bound)

That young _____ this test.

Although the dog appeared harmless, it was, in fact, quite dangerous. (contrary)

_____ appearance, the dog was in fact quite dangerous.

15. He wasn't to blame for the accident. (fault)

-
- The accident was _____.
16. This hotel is inaccessible in winter. (possible)
It's not _____ this hotel in winter.
17. As far as I know he is still working in Bristol. (knowledge).
To _____, he is still working in Bristol.
18. I don't think there will be any applicants for this post. (likelihood)
There _____ that there will be applicants for this post.
19. It was difficult for Susan to believe the good news (hardly)
Susan could _____ good news.
20. You must make allowances for his inexperience. (account)
You must _____.

Exercise 190: Finish each of the following sentences using a phrase including the given bold word in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. This contract is not binding until we both sign it. (bound)
Neither (one) of us _____ contract until we both sign it.
2. You shouldn't take his help for granted. (assume)
You should/do not _____ will help you.
3. Nobody is infallible. (mistakes)
We all _____.
4. The last Olympic Games were held in Seoul. (took)
The last Olympic Games _____ in Seoul.
5. He talked about nothing except the weather (sole)
His _____ conversation was the weather.
6. In the end, I felt I had been right to leave the club. (regrets)
I had no _____ leaving the club in the end.
7. It is stupid of you to refuse Richard's offer of a loan. (idiot)
You are _____ Richard's offer of a loan.
8. The company has decided to replace this model. (intention)
It's the company's _____ this model.
9. Their problems are all self-inflicted. (making)
Their problems are all _____.
10. If you take that job, you'll have to get up at 6a.m every morning. (mean)
Taking that job _____ have to get up at 6a.m every morning.
11. The only thing they could do was to look for a new flat. (alternative)
They had _____ but to look for a new flat.
12. His last letter to me was written three years ago. (heard)
I haven't _____ for 3 years.
13. If only one could rely on what she says. (pity)
It's _____ we cannot rely on what she says.
14. An open fire can't be compared to central heating. (comparison)

-
- There is no _____ an open fire and central heating.
15. I remember very few things about my childhood. (scarcely)
I can _____ about my childhood.
16. Some people say that Tsiolkovsky invented the space rocket. (credited)
Tsiolkovsky is _____ the invention of the space rocket.
17. I daren't turn on the TV because the baby might wake up. (fear)
I daren't turn on the TV _____ waking up the baby.
18. Some people will do anything to lose weight. (lengths)
Some people will _____ to lose weight.
19. The two theories appear to be completely different. (common)
The 2 theories _____.
20. The river Volta overflowed last year. (burst)
The river Volta _____ last year.

Exercise 191: Finish each of the following sentences using a phrase including the given bold word in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. He doesn't appreciate his wife. (granted)
He takes _____.
- The number of people out of work has been going down little by little. (gradual)
There has been _____ in the number of people out of work.
3. William decided that an actor's life was not for him. (cut)
William (decided that he) was not _____ an actor.
4. My cat has lost its appetite. (off)
My cat has _____ its food.
5. The children made every effort to please their father (best)
The children _____ please their father.
6. His behavior was rather a shock to me. (aback)
His behavior _____.
7. The bank robbers escaped in a stolen car. (getaway)
The bank robbers made _____ stolen car.
8. People don't want to buy cars with large engines any more. (call)
There isn't much _____ large engines.
9. The prime Minister is unlikely to call an early general election. (likelihood)
There _____ the PM calling a(n) (early general) election.
10. Nobody could possibly believe the story he told us (beyond)
The story he _____ belief.
11. The project received the unanimous approval of the committee. (favour)
The whole committee _____ the project.
12. Scientists say forests are being destroyed by air pollution. (blame)
Scientists _____ the destruction of the forests.
13. His reactions are quite unpredictable (knows)
One never _____ going to/will/may/might react.
-

-
14. The minister's popularity suffered as a result of the scandal. (effect)
The scandal _____.
15. The teachers agreed to introduce the new methods. (agreement)
There was _____ the teachers to introduce new methods.
16. Jenny didn't feel like going to the party. (mood)
Jenny wasn't _____ to the party/for (going to) the party.
17. The councilor answered every question frankly. (frank)
→ The councilor _____ every question.
18. It is said that he has been to prison several times (reputed)
→ He is _____ been (sent) to prison.
19. Most stores will accept a credit card instead of cash. (alternative)
→ Most stores will accept a credit card _____ cash.
20. Our opinions on the subject are identical. (difference)
→ There is no _____ our opinions on the subject.

Exercise 192: *Finish each of the following sentences using a phrase including the given bold word in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

1. Local residents said they were against the new traffic scheme. (disapproval)
Local residents expressed their _____ traffic scheme.
2. If interest rates are cut, the economic situation may improve. (reduction)
A _____ rates may improve the economic situation.
3. The architect's new design was heavily criticized. (criticism)
→ There _____ the architect's new design.
4. Very little money was raised by the charity appeal. (response)
There was very _____ the charity appeal.
5. Ours is the only company allowed to import these chemicals. (monopoly)
Our company has got _____ the importation of these chemicals.
6. The coach's tactics were directly responsible for the team's defeat. (consequence)
→ The team's defeat was a _____ the coach's tactics.
7. We have no idea where he is. (whereabouts)
→ We don't know _____.
8. The policeman acted quickly and averted an accident. (prompt)
→ The _____ the policeman averted an accident.
9. This new record is certain to sell a lot of copies. (doubt)
There _____ this new record will sell a lot of copies.
10. I want to be left alone (disturbed)
→ I don't want _____.
11. He took the company to court on the grounds of unfair dismissal. (unfairly)
→ He took the company _____.
12. We're likely to be a little late, I'm afraid. (every)
→ There's _____ that we'll be late.
13. The Committee said they liked the first proposal best. (preference)
-

-
- The committee _____ the first proposal.
14. I really must answer all these letters. (get down)
I really must _____ all these letters.
15. It's not your fault. (blame)
You _____ yourself.
16. People seem to be criticizing the police quite a lot nowadays. (criticism)
There's quite a lot _____ at the police nowadays.
17. In a nutshell, the man's an idiot. (bluntly)
Quite _____ an idiot.
18. I'm dying to meet them. (wait)
I (just) can't _____ them.
19. They lay on the beach the whole week sunbathing. (spent)
They _____ on the beach sunbathing.
20. I seriously doubt whether this will work. (doubts)
I have serious _____ this will work.
-

BÀI 2. WRITING A PARAGRAPH, AN ESSAY VIẾT ĐOẠN VĂN, BÀI VĂN

Trong kì thi THPT Quốc gia đây có lẽ là phần yếu nhất và phần có rất ít thí sinh có điểm. Trên thực tế không quá khó để có điểm, thậm chí đạt điểm cao hoặc điểm tuyệt đối cho phần này nếu học sinh nắm chắc kĩ năng tổ chức ý tưởng, vận dụng kiến thức, thực hiện tốt các bước xây dựng dàn ý và viết bài. Trong kì thi THPT Quốc Gia năm 2015, học sinh được yêu cầu viết một đoạn văn không dưới 140 từ về một chủ đề quen thuộc đã được đề cập trong chương trình Tiếng Anh cấp THPT đặc biệt chương trình lớp 12. Bài này trình bày các thủ thuật viết đoạn văn và giới thiệu một số đề luyện tập, bài viết mẫu để các em tham khảo. Và cũng để đề phòng yêu cầu mới, những đòi hỏi cao hơn về phần viết luận trong đề thi THPT Quốc Gia những năm kế tiếp, phần viết bài luận và các bài viết mẫu cũng được giới thiệu ở phần cuối của bài này.

I. What is a paragraph? Thế nào là một đoạn văn?

Definitions: Định nghĩa - Một đoạn văn là một loạt câu phát triển, ủng hộ, chứng minh một ý nào đó, và ý này thường là câu chủ đề (topic sentence) của đoạn văn. Các câu còn lại (supporting sentences) phát triển, giải thích, minh họa cho câu chủ đề. Câu kết luận (concluding sentence) của đoạn văn là câu khẳng định lại câu chủ đề, tóm tắt lại các ý chính của đoạn văn.

A paragraph is a group of sentences that deal with a single topic with the length (as required in the GCSE) of around 150 words. Đoạn văn trong tiếng Anh là một tổ hợp câu với độ dài (yêu cầu thi THPT Quốc Gia) chừng 150 từ, diễn tả hay bàn thảo về một chủ đề nhất định.

Normally (but not always), the first sentence introduces the topic. Other sentences give the definitions, examples, information, reasons, restatements, and summaries.

Thông thường (không phải là luôn luôn), câu đầu tiên diễn tả chủ đề. Các câu còn lại là sự giải trình, dẫn chứng, tái khẳng định, thêm thông tin và tóm lược.

The parts of the paragraph are linked together by the phrases and conjunctions.

They guide the readers through the argument presented. Xuyên suốt đoạn văn, các cụm từ, liên từ được sử dụng để kết nối và dẫn dắt độc giả theo chủ đề được bàn thảo.

Parts of a Paragraph: Các phần của đoạn văn

2.1. Topic Sentence: Câu chủ đề - đưa ra chủ đề để bàn thảo

2.2. Supporting Details: Các câu văn hỗ trợ cho câu chủ đề - là sự giải trình, dẫn chứng, tái khẳng định, hay thêm thông tin cho câu chủ đề, hay chủ đề.

2.3. Closing Sentence: Câu kết - là tóm lược lại hay tái khẳng định lại chủ đề.

How to Write a Paragraph: Kỹ năng viết một đoạn văn

Prewriting Paragraphs: Chuẩn bị trước khi viết

The prewriting stage is when you *think* carefully and *organize* your ideas for your paragraph before you begin writing. Là quá trình ta động não suy nghĩ, tìm và sắp xếp các ý tưởng cho đoạn văn sẽ được viết. quá trình này tuân theo 6 bước cơ bản sau: **Six**

Prewriting Steps: 6 bước chuẩn bị viết một đoạn văn:

Step 1. Think carefully about what you are going to write. Hãy tự hỏi các câu hỏi:

What question am I going to answer in this paragraph or essay?

How can I best answer this question? What is the most important part of my answer?

How can I make an introductory sentence (or thesis statement) from the most important part of my answer?

What facts or ideas can I use to support my introductory sentence?

How can I make this paragraph or essay interesting?

Do I need more facts on this topic?

Where can I find more facts on this topic?

Step 2. Open your notebook. Hãy trả lời cho các câu hỏi ở bước 1.

Không cần phải sử dụng quá nhiều thời gian để thực hiện bước này, thay vì thế hãy liệt kê những ý tưởng quan trọng (2-3 ý chính).

Step 3. Collect facts related to your paragraph or essay topic.

Tìm và liệt kê các ý tưởng sẽ giúp bạn trả lời các câu hỏi và là ý cho bài viết, hãy chắc chắn rằng những điều bạn liệt kê ra trùng khớp hoàn toàn với chủ đề được yêu cầu.

Step 4. Write down your own ideas. Để viết các ý chính hãy tự hỏi các câu hỏi sau:

What else do I want to say about this topic?

Why should people be interested in this topic?

Why is this topic important?

Step 5. Find the main idea of your paragraph.

Hãy chọn câu chủ đề cho đoạn văn, viết câu chủ đề một cách hoàn chỉnh.

Step 6. Organize your facts and ideas in a way that develops your main idea. Sắp xếp các ý, các giải trình, ví dụ, hay những ý kiến bổ trợ sao cho hợp logic, khoa học, chú ý cách dùng từ ngữ, các cụm từ, liên từ (tránh lặp lại các từ đã dùng).

Writing Paragraphs: Kỹ năng viết đoạn văn

Writing process: Tiến hành viết

Đây là bước chuyển hóa từ các ý tưởng (đã làm ở phần chuẩn bị trên đây) thành một bài viết hoàn chỉnh (sản phẩm cuối cùng). Tuân thủ 5 bước sau:

Five Writing Steps:

Open your notebook and word processor.

Write the topic sentence, supporting sentences, and closing sentence.

Write clear and simple sentences to express your meaning.

Focus on the main idea of your paragraph.

Use the dictionary to help you find additional words to express your ideas.

2.2. Editing Paragraphs: Sửa lỗi bài viết gồm 2 bước sau:

a. Grammar and Spelling: Chữa các lỗi ngữ pháp và chính tả

Check your spelling.

Check your grammar.

Read your essay again.

Make sure each sentence has a subject.

See if your subjects and verbs agree with each other.

Check the verb tenses of each sentence.

Make sure that each sentence makes sense.

b. Style and Organization: Chữa các lỗi về hành văn

Make sure your paragraph has a topic sentence.

Make sure your supporting sentences focus on the main idea.

Make sure you have a closing sentence.

Check that all your sentences focus on the main idea.

See if your paragraph is interesting.

Useful expressions: Những liên từ, hay các cụm từ hữu ích khi viết đoạn văn:

Useful expressions	
Sequencing/ Listing	First of all, First(ly), Initially, To begin with; Second(ly); Third(ly); Next; Then; After that (this); Following this (that); Finally; The first reason is.../ The second is...; Last but not least...
Adding to what you have said	Also, Furthermore, In addition, Additionally, Moreover, Besides, As well as, Similarly, not only...but also..., even beside this/ that,...
Contrasting	In contrast to this, On the contrary, In contrast, Conversely, On the other hand, While, Whereas, However, Despite/ In spite of, Although, Even though, Otherwise, Nonetheless,...
Expressing similarity	Similarly; Likewise, In the same way
Showing results	As a result, As a consequence, Consequently, Hence, Thus, Therefore, So,...
Giving examples	For example, For instance, In particular, Particularly, That is to say, Namely, Such as,...
Restating	In other words, That is to say, To put it simply,...
Inferring	In other words, In that case, or else, Otherwise,...
Summarizing	In summary, To sum up, To conclude, To recapitulate, In conclusion, In short, In brief, In a nutshell, Lastly, Finally,...

Kinds of Paragraphs: Các loại đoạn văn cơ bản

Definition Paragraph: Đoạn văn để định nghĩa về một sự vật, hiện tượng.

e.g. Write a paragraph giving the definition of a pest.

Classification Paragraph: Đoạn văn để nhóm, hay phân loại các sự vật, hiện tượng.

e.g. Write a paragraph discussing two types of energy resources.

Description Paragraph: Đoạn văn miêu tả về một sự vật, hiện tượng.

e.g. Write a paragraph to talk about your most favorite subject.

Compare and Contrast Paragraph: Đoạn văn để diễn tả sự so sánh hay tương phản về các sự vật, hiện tượng.

e.g. Write a paragraph comparing the weather in Vancouver and Halifax.

Sequence Paragraph: Đoạn văn mô tả một chuỗi, hay một tiến trình của sự vật, sự việc.

e.g. Write a paragraph outlining how a person becomes the prime minister.

Choice Paragraph: Đoạn văn mô tả sự chọn lựa.

e.g. Write a paragraph stating whether you would prefer to play hockey or lacrosse.

7. Explanation Paragraph: Đoạn văn để giải thích

e.g. Write a paragraph explaining why so many Europeans moved to Canada during the nineteenth century.

Evaluation Paragraph: Đoạn văn để đánh giá về sự vật, hiện tượng.

e.g. Write a paragraph evaluating whether pesticides should be used on farms.

IV. Writing an essay: Viết bài luận

Một bài luận là một bài viết dài hơn và thường gồm nhiều đoạn và mỗi đoạn văn thường theo cấu trúc đoạn văn trình bày trên. Tuy nhiên, cách viết đoạn mở đầu (introductory paragraph) và đoạn kết (concluding paragraph) đặc thù như sau:

1. The introductory paragraph: Đoạn văn chủ đề

- The attention getter

a sentence that gets the reader interested

- The main idea

the topic or thesis of the essay

- The guide/ thesis statement (the last sentence of the introductory paragraph)

a list of the points that will be discussed, thus showing the organization of the composition

e.g. There are many things that symbolize the Vietnamese culture. Among these is the conical leaf hat, a symbol of traditional Vietnamese girls. The hat is very special because of its physical features and its use.

Attention getter:

e.g. There are many things that symbolize the Vietnamese culture.

- Topic/ thesis:

e.g. Among these is the conical leaf hat, a symbol of traditional Vietnamese girls.

- The guide/ thesis statement:

e.g. The hat is very special because of its physical features and its use.

Bodies: Các đoạn văn nội dung

Các đoạn tiếp theo sau đoạn mở đầu sẽ phát triển tương ứng các ý được đề cập trong câu chủ đề của bài luận, và cách viết tuân thủ theo cách viết đoạn văn đã được đề cập trên. Ví dụ, đối với phần mở bài trên, phần thân bài sẽ có 2 đoạn:

Paragraph 1: physical features

Paragraph 2: its use

3. The concluding paragraph: Đoạn văn kết

Là đoạn cuối của bài luận. Thường có 3 cách để viết đoạn kết.

A summary repeats the main points of the essay.

A prediction discusses what will happen in the future.

An evaluation compares the main points and states what is best.

V. Summary: Tóm lược các bước và cấu trúc của bài luận:

Structure of the Paragraph and the Essay

Main idea (topic sentence or thesis)

Support for the main idea (a number of supporting details in a paragraph or a number of paragraphs in an essay)

Conclusion (summary of the main points of support for the main idea)

The writing process for the Paragraph and the

Essay • First steps

understanding the assignment

narrowing the topic

determining the writing context

formulating a main idea

• *Generating ideas*

stating the main idea

brainstorming

freewriting

listing

clustering

diving

Organizing ideas

• Drafting •

Revising •

Editing

BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH

Exercise 193. *With around 160 words, write a paragraph describing a person you admire most.*

Your writing should include:

Who the person is?

Why you admire him or her?

How he/she affects your life and work?

Exercise 194. *With around 160 words, write a paragraph giving your opinions of what makes a person successful in life.*

Your writing should include:

What success is?

The main factors that make people success?

How you think about success?

Exercise 195. *With around 160 words, write a paragraph giving your opinions of the benefits of being able to use English.*

Your writing should include:

What the main benefits of being able to use English?

What the examples to illustrate your ideas?

Exercise 196. *With around 160 words, write a paragraph describing your homeland.*

Your writing should include:

What your homeland is like?

What the main features of your homeland are?

How you love your homeland?

Exercise 197. *With around 160 words, write a paragraph describing your favorite school subject.*

Your writing should include:

What your favorite school subject is?

Why the subject interests you?

How well you learn that subject?

Exercise 198. *With around 160 words, write a paragraph giving your opinions on the idea of controlling the access to electronic services.*

Your writing should include:

How the electronic services affect people's life?

Why the access to electronic services should be controlled?

How people control the access to electronic services?

Exercise 199. *With around 160 words, write a paragraph giving your opinions about the formal school education system in Vietnam.*

Your writing should include:

How many stages there are?

The students' ages, the length of each stage, the examination if there is?

The tuition fee or other requirements?

Exercise 200. *With around 160 words, write a paragraph giving your opinions on the benefits of working for an International Organization.*

Your writing should include:

How your life will be like when working for an International Organization?

Why you choose to work overseas?

How you realize your dream?

Exercise 201. *With around 200 words, write a paragraph giving your opinions on the solutions to the commuting problems among people who live in the country to drive to work in the city.*

Your writing should include:

The problems caused by people commute to work?

Your solutions to offer?

Your own ideas?

Exercise 202. *With around 220 words, write to discuss the issue “**Families now are not as close-knit as they were in the past**”.*

Your writing should include:

The causes that separate family members?

The supported ideas or illustrations?

Your own ideas?

Exercise 203. *With around 200 words, write a letter to apply for an overseas university. Your writing should include:*

How you find the information about the university?

Why you choose to apply for that university?

What your abilities are?

Begin with “Dear Sir/ Madam”, ending with “Yours faithfully,”

Exercise 204. *With around 200 words, write a letter to apply for a job as a local tour guide.*

Your writing should include:

How you find the information about the vacancy?

Why you choose to work as a tour guide?

What your abilities are?

Begin with “Dear Sir/ Madam”, ending with “Yours faithfully,”

Exercise 205. *With around 230 words, write a letter to tell your friend about your family life.*

Your writing should include:

What are your family rules?

What is each member’s responsibility?

How do you think and live?

Begin with “Dear Jim”, ending with “Best wishes,”

Exercise 206. *With around 250 words, write a letter to a friend to tell her/ him about the one who influenced you most. Your writing should include:*

Who the person is?

Why you think he/she is the most important to you?

How he/she influenced you?

Begin with “Dear Linda”, ending with “Yours,”

Exercise 207. *The widespread use of the Internet has brought many problems.*

What do you think the main problems associated with the use of the web? What solutions can you suggest?

Your writing must have a length of over 220 words and includes:

The problems related to free access to the internet?

The harmful effects of surfing websites too much and uncontrollably?

Your suggested own ideas.

Exercise 208. *Young people are much more aware of and concerned about the issues like the environment, poverty, and animal welfare than previous generations. What is your own opinion?*

Your writing must have a length of over 220 words and includes:

The issues and the community’s concern?

The generations’ thinking?

Your own ideas.

Exercise 209. *It is important for travelers and business people to understand the cultures they come into contact with, however briefly. What are the main advantages of doing so? What do you think is the main disadvantage of doing so?*

Your writing must have a length of over 220 words and includes:

The importance of culture to visitors and businessmen?

The advantages and disadvantages?

Your own ideas.

Exercise 210. *More and more city workers are deciding to live in the country and travel into work every day. The result is increased traffic congestion and damage to the environment. What measures do you think could be taken to encourage people not to travel much long distance into work?*

Your writing must have a length of over 220 words and includes:

The trend of living in the country and working in the city?

The advantages and disadvantages?

Your own ideas.

Exercise 211. *Write an essay to discuss the benefits of doing exercise.*

Your writing must have a length of over 220 words and includes:

The importance of doing exercises?

The benefits of having a habit of taking exercise?

Your own ideas.

Exercise 212. *Write an essay to talk about the situations and to offer the solutions to protect the wildlife from being all disappearing.*

Your writing must have a length of over 220 words and includes:

The importance of the biodiversity?

The rights of the wildlife and measures to take to protect the environment?

Your own ideas.

Exercise 213. *Write an essay to talk about the reason why people want to have college or university education.*

Your writing must have a length of over 220 words and includes:

The main reasons for which people want to have higher education?

The supporting ideas or illustrations?

Your own ideas.

Exercise 214. *Write an essay to talk about the topic "Parents are our first teachers in life".*

Your writing must have a length of over 220 words and includes:

The things that we learn from parents?

How good are parents as teachers?

Your own ideas.

Exercise 215. *Individuals can do nothing to change society. Any new developments can only be brought about by governments and large institutions. How far do you agree or disagree?*

Your writing must have a length of over 220 words and includes:

The things individuals and government can do?

How do individuals and government cooperate to better the society?

Your own ideas.

PHẦN II. ĐÁP ÁN CÁC BÀI TẬP THỰC HÀNH THEO CÁC CHUYÊN ĐỀ ÔN THI

CHUYÊN ĐỀ I. PHONETICS

BÀI 1. PHONETIC SYMBOLS – KÍ HIỆU NGỮ ÂM

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 1** đến **Exercise 4** các tổ hợp chữ cái được gạch dưới đã được phiên âm bằng các kí hiệu ngữ âm cụ thể. Phần lựa chọn có các kí hiệu phiên âm khác biệt so với ba lựa chọn còn lại chính là đáp án đúng và các chữ cái thể hiện là: **A**, **B**, **C**, hoặc **D**.

Exercise 1: Find the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others of the same group.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------|
| 21. A. / æ / | B. / æ / | <u>C.</u> / e / | D. / æ / |
| 22. A. / ɜ: / | B. / ɜ: / | <u>C.</u> / ɜ: / | <u>D.</u> / ɪə / |
| 23. A. / eɪz / | B. / eɪz / | <u>C.</u> / ez / | D. / eɪz / |
| 24. A. / ɪ / | B. / ɪ / | <u>C.</u> / ɪ / | <u>D.</u> / aɪ / |
| 25. <u>A.</u> / ɔ: / | B. / ʌ / | C. / ʌ / | D. / ʌ / |
| 26. <u>A.</u> / æ / | B. / æ / | C. / æ / | <u>D.</u> / ɔ / |
| 27. <u>A.</u> / ð / | B. / θ / | C. / θ / | D. / θ / |
| 28. <u>A.</u> / g / | B. / g / | <u>C.</u> / dʒ / | D. / g / |
| 29. A. / ɔ: / | B. / ɔ: / | <u>C.</u> / aʊ / | D. / ɔ: / |
| 30. <u>A.</u> / s / | B. / z / | <u>C.</u> / z / | D. / z / |
| 31. <u>A.</u> / ɪd / | <u>B.</u> / t / | C. / ɪd / | D. / ɪd / |
| 32. A. / k / | B. / k / | <u>C.</u> / s / | D. / k / |
| 33. A. / ð / | B. / ð / | <u>C.</u> / ð / | <u>D.</u> / θ / |
| 34. A. / æ / | B. / æ / | C. / æ / | <u>D.</u> / eɪ / |
| 35. <u>A.</u> / s / | B. / ɪz / | C. / ɪz / | D. / ɪz / |
| 36. <u>A.</u> / jʊ / | B. / jʊ / | <u>C.</u> / ʌ / | D. / jʊ / |
| 37. A. / θ / | B. / θ / | <u>C.</u> / ð / | D. / θ / |
| 38. A. / ɪ / | B. / ɪ / | <u>C.</u> / aɪ / | D. / ɪ / |
| 39. A. / dʒ / | B. / dʒ / | <u>C.</u> / dʒ / | <u>D.</u> / g / |
| 40. A. / e / | B. / e / | <u>C.</u> / i: / | D. / e / |

Exercise 2: Find the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others of the same group.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------|
| 21. A. / ɪ / | B. / ɪ / | <u>C.</u> / aɪ / | D. / ɪ / |
| 22. <u>A.</u> / ɪ / | B. / aɪ / | / aɪ / C. | / aɪ / |
| 23. <u>A.</u> / ɪ / | B. / aɪ / | / aɪ / <u>C.</u> | D. / aɪ / |
| 24. A. / θ / | B. / θ / | / ð / | D. / θ / |
| 25. A. / t / | B. / t / | C. / t / | <u>D.</u> / ɪd / |
| 26. A. / eɪ / | <u>B.</u> / æ / | C. / eɪ / | D. / eɪ / |
| 27. <u>A.</u> / ʌ / | B. / u: / | C. / u: / | D. / u: / |
| 28. A. / Ø / | B. / Ø / | C. / Ø / | <u>D.</u> / b / |

- | | | | |
|----------------------|------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| 29. A. / θ / | <u>B.</u> / Ø / | C. / θ / | D. / θ / |
| 30. A. / aʊ / | B. / aʊ / | C. / aʊ / | <u>D.</u> / ɔ: / |
| 31. A. / ʃn / | B. / ʃn / | C. / ʃn / | <u>D.</u> / tʃn / |
| 32. A. / jʊ / | B. / jʊ / | <u>C.</u> / əʊ / | D. / jʊ / |
| 33. A. / t / | B. / t / | <u>C.</u> / t / | <u>D.</u> / d / |
| 34. A. / z / | <u>B.</u> / s / | C. / z / | <u>D.</u> / z / |
| 35. A. / ɪd / | B. / ɪd / | C. / ɪd / | <u>D.</u> / d / |
| 36. A. / e / | <u>B.</u> / eɪ / | C. / e / | <u>D.</u> / e / |
| 37. <u>A.</u> / ʌ / | B. / u: / | C. / u: / | D. / u: / |
| 38. <u>A.</u> / aɪ / | B. / aɪ / | C. / aɪ / | <u>D.</u> / ɪ / |
| 39. A. / θ / | <u>B.</u> / ð / | C. / θ / | D. / θ / |
| 40. A. / ɔ: / | <u>B.</u> / ʌ / | C. / ɔ: / | D. / ɔ: / |

Exercise 3: Find the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others of the same group.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| 21. A. / u: / | B. / u: / | <u>C.</u> / ɔ: / | D. / u: / |
| 22. <u>A.</u> / e / | B. / æ / | <u>C.</u> / æ / | D. / æ / |
| 23. <u>A.</u> / ʊ / | <u>B.</u> / ʌ / | C. / ʊ / | D. / ʊ / |
| 24. A. / æ / | <u>B.</u> / ə / | C. / æ / | D. / æ / |
| 25. A. / eɪ / | B. / eɪ / | C. / eɪ / | <u>D.</u> / æ / |
| 26. A. / əʊ / | B. / əʊ / | <u>C.</u> / ɔ / | <u>D.</u> / əʊ / |
| 27. A. / ɪə / | B. / ɪə / | <u>C.</u> / ɪə / | <u>D.</u> / ɜ: / |
| 28. <u>A.</u> / ɜ: / | B. / əʊ / | C. / əʊ / | <u>D.</u> / əʊ / |
| 29. <u>A.</u> / eɪ / | B. / eɪ / | <u>C.</u> / æ / | D. / eɪ / |
| 30. A. / aʊ / | B. / aʊ / | <u>C.</u> / aʊ / | <u>D.</u> / əʊ / |
| 31. <u>A.</u> / a: / | B. / ɔ / | C. / ɔ / | D. / ɔ / |
| 32. <u>A.</u> / ɔ: / | B. / ɔ: / | C. / ɔ: / | <u>D.</u> / əʊ / |
| 33. A. / k / | B. / k / | <u>C.</u> / s / | <u>D.</u> / k / |
| 34. A. / ʒ / | B. / ʒ / | <u>C.</u> / ʒ / | <u>D.</u> / ʃ / |
| 35. <u>A.</u> / aʊ / | B. / ɔ: / | C. / ɔ: / | <u>D.</u> / ɔ: / |
| 36. <u>A.</u> / z / | B. / z / | C. / z / | <u>D.</u> / s / |
| 37. A. / i: / | B. / i: / | <u>C.</u> / eɪ / | <u>D.</u> / i: / |
| 38. <u>A.</u> / ɪd / | B. / t / | <u>C.</u> / t / | D. / t / |
| 39. A. / jʊ / | <u>B.</u> / u: / | C. / jʊ / | D. / jʊ / |
| 40. A. / ø / | B. / ø / | C. / ø / | <u>D.</u> / b / |

Exercise 4: Find the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others of the same group.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 21. A. / d / | B. / d / | C. / d / | <u>D.</u> / t / |
| 22. <u>A.</u> / ð / | B. / θ / | C. / θ / | D. / θ / |
| 23. A. / tʃ / | <u>B.</u> / k / | C. / tʃ / | D. / tʃ / |
| 24. <u>A.</u> / ɪd / | B. / t / | C. / t / | D. / t / |
| 25. A. / aʊ / | B. / aʊ / | <u>C.</u> / ɔ / | D. / aʊ / |
| 26. A. / dʒ / | <u>B.</u> / g / | C. / dʒ / | D. / dʒ / |

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| 27. A. /ʃ/ | B. /ʃ/ | <u>C.</u> /tʃ/ | D. /ʃ/ |
| 28. A. /i:/ | <u>B.</u> /e/ | C. /i:/ | D. /i:/ |
| 29. A. /æ/ | B. /æ/ | C. /æ/ | <u>D.</u> /ɔ/ |
| 30. A. /aɪ/ | <u>B.</u> /ɪ/ | /aɪ/ | /aɪ/ |
| 31. A. /ʊ/ | <u>B.</u> /ʌ/ | C. /ʊ/ | D. /ʊ/ |
| 32. A. /ɔ:/ | B. /ɔ:/ | <u>C.</u> /aʊ/ | D. /ɔ:/ |
| 33. A. /d/ | B. /d/ | <u>C.</u> /t/ | D. /d/ |
| 34. A. /ə/ | <u>B.</u> /ɜ:/ | C. /ə/ | D. /ə/ |
| 35. A. /z/ | <u>B.</u> /s/ | C. /z/ | D. /z/ |
| 36. <u>A.</u> /k/ | B. /tʃ/ | C. /tʃ/ | D. /tʃ/ |
| 37. A. /s/ | B. /s/ | C. /s/ | <u>D.</u> /z/ |
| 38. <u>A.</u> /aʊ/ | B. /ɔ:/ | C. /ɔ:/ | D. /ɔ:/ |
| 39. A. /z/ | B. /z/ | C. /z/ | <u>D.</u> /s/ |
| 40. A. /eɪ/ | B. /eɪ/ | C. /eɪ/ | <u>D.</u> /æ/ |

BÀI 2. STRESS - XÁC ĐỊNH TRỌNG ÂM

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 5** đến **Exercise 10**, các từ cụ thể ở mỗi câu hỏi có vị trí trọng âm được đánh số thứ tự 1,2,3,4,... Đáp án đúng là đáp án có số thứ tự vị trí trọng âm khác biệt so với các đáp án còn lại trong cùng một câu hỏi và được kí hiệu là: **A**, **B**, **C**, hoặc **D**.

Exercise 5: Find the word whose stress pattern is different from the others of the same group.

- | | | | | | | | |
|----------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-----------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. A. 2 | B. 2 | <u>C.</u> 1 | D. 2 | 11. <u>A.</u> 1 | B. 2 | C. 2 | D. 2 |
| 2. A. 1 | <u>B.</u> 2 | C. 1 | D. 1 | 12. A. 1 | B. 1 | C. 1 | <u>D.</u> 2 |
| 3. A. 3 | <u>B.</u> 1 | C. 3 | D. 3 | 13. A. 2 | B. 2 | C. 2 | <u>D.</u> 4 |
| 4. A. 2 | B. 2 | <u>C.</u> 1 | D. 2 | 14. A. 1 | <u>B.</u> 2 | C. 1 | D. 1 |
| 5. A. 1 | B. 1 | <u>C.</u> 2 | D. 1 | 15. A. 2 | B. 2 | C. 2 | <u>D.</u> 1 |
| 6. A. 2 | <u>B.</u> 3 | C. 2 | D. 2 | 16. A. 2 | B. 2 | C. 2 | <u>D.</u> 1 |
| 7. A. 2 | B. 2 | <u>C.</u> 3 | D. 2 | 17. A. 2 | B. 2 | <u>C.</u> 1 | D. 2 |
| 8. A. 3 | <u>B.</u> 1 | C. 3 | D. 3 | 18. A. 2 | B. 2 | C. 2 | <u>D.</u> 1 |
| 9. A. 2 | B. 2 | <u>C.</u> 1 | D. 2 | 19. A. 2 | B. 2 | <u>C.</u> 3 | D. 2 |
| 10. A. 1 | B. 1 | C. 1 | <u>D.</u> 2 | 20. A. 2 | B. 2 | C. 2 | <u>D.</u> 1 |

Exercise 6: Find the word whose stress pattern is different from the others of the same group.

- | | | | | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-----------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. A. 1 | <u>B.</u> 2 | C. 1 | D. 1 | 11. A. 2 | B. 2 | <u>C.</u> 1 | D. 2 |
| 2. A. 1 | B. 1 | <u>C.</u> 2 | D. 1 | 12. <u>A.</u> 2 | B. 1 | C. 1 | D. 1 |
| 3. A. 2 | <u>B.</u> 1 | C. 2 | D. 2 | 13. <u>A.</u> 1 | B. 1 | <u>C.</u> 2 | D. 1 |
| 4. <u>A.</u> 2 | B. 1 | C. 1 | D. 1 | 14. A. 2 | <u>B.</u> 1 | C. 2 | D. 2 |
| 5. <u>A.</u> 2 | B. 1 | C. 1 | D. 1 | 15. A. 1 | B. 1 | <u>C.</u> 2 | D. 1 |
| 6. A. 1 | B. 1 | C. 1 | <u>D.</u> 2 | 16. <u>A.</u> 1 | B. 2 | C. 2 | D. 2 |
| 7. A. 2 | B. 2 | C. 2 | <u>D.</u> 1 | 17. A. 3 | B. 3 | <u>C.</u> 1 | D. 3 |
| 8. A. 1 | B. 1 | C. 1 | <u>D.</u> 2 | 18. A. 1 | B. 1 | C. 1 | <u>D.</u> 2 |

9. A. 2 B. 2 C. 1 D. 2 19. A. 1 B. 1 C. 1 D. 3
 10. A. 1 B. 1 C. 1 D. 2 20. A. 1 B. 2 C. 2 D. 2

Exercise 7: Find the word whose stress pattern is different from the others of the same group.

1. A. 1 B. 2 C. 2 D. 2 11. A. 2 B. 3 C. 2 D. 2
 2. A. 2 B. 2 C. 2 D. 1 12. A. 3 B. 2 C. 2 D. 2
 3. A. 1 B. 2 C. 1 D. 1 13. A. 2 B. 2 C. 2 D. 1
 4. A. 1 B. 1 C. 1 D. 2 14. A. 3 B. 2 C. 2 D. 2
 5. A. 1 B. 2 C. 1 D. 1 15. A. 3 B. 2 C. 2 D. 2
 6. A. 1 B. 2 C. 1 D. 1 16. A. 2 B. 1 C. 1 D. 1
 7. A. 2 B. 1 C. 1 D. 1 17. A. 2 B. 1 C. 2 D. 2
 8. A. 1 B. 3 C. 3 D. 3 18. A. 1 B. 2 C. 1 D. 1
 9. A. 2 B. 2 C. 1 D. 2 19. A. 2 B. 2 C. 2 D. 1
 10. A. 3 B. 3 C. 2 D. 3 20. A. 2 B. 3 C. 2 D. 2

Exercise 8: Find the word whose stress pattern is different from the others of the same group.

1. A. 2 B. 1 C. 1 D. 1 11. A. 1 B. 2 C. 1 D. 1
 2. A. 1 B. 1 C. 2 D. 1 12. A. 1 B. 2 C. 2 D. 2
 3. A. 2 B. 2 C. 2 D. 1 13. A. 1 B. 2 C. 1 D. 1
 4. A. 2 B. 2 C. 1 D. 2 14. A. 1 B. 2 C. 2 D. 2
 5. A. 2 B. 2 C. 1 D. 2 15. A. 2 B. 2 C. 2 D. 1
 6. A. 1 B. 2 C. 1 D. 1 16. A. 1 B. 2 C. 2 D. 2
 7. A. 1 B. 1 C. 2 D. 1 17. A. 1 B. 1 C. 2 D. 1
 8. A. 1 B. 2 C. 1 D. 1 18. A. 2 B. 2 C. 1 D. 2
 9. A. 1 B. 2 C. 2 D. 2 19. A. 1 B. 1 C. 2 D. 1
 10. A. 1 B. 2 C. 1 D. 1 20. A. 3 B. 2 C. 2 D. 2

Exercise 9: Find the word whose stress pattern is different from the others of the same group.

1. A. 1 B. 2 C. 1 D. 1 11. A. 1 B. 1 C. 1 D. 2
 2. A. 2 B. 1 C. 1 D. 1 12. A. 1 B. 2 C. 1 D. 1
 3. A. 2 B. 2 C. 2 D. 1 13. A. 2 B. 2 C. 1 D. 2
 4. A. 1 B. 1 C. 1 D. 2 14. A. 2 B. 1 C. 1 D. 1
 5. A. 2 B. 4 C. 2 D. 2 15. A. 2 B. 2 C. 3 D. 2
 6. A. 2 B. 2 C. 2 D. 1 16. A. 2 B. 1 C. 1 D. 1
 7. A. 1 B. 1 C. 2 D. 1 17. A. 2 B. 1 C. 2 D. 2
 8. A. 2 B. 1 C. 1 D. 1 18. A. 1 B. 1 C. 1 D. 2
 9. A. 1 B. 2 C. 1 D. 1 19. A. 2 B. 1 C. 1 D. 1
 10. A. 1 B. 2 C. 1 D. 1 20. A. 1 B. 2 C. 1 D. 1

Exercise 10: Find the word whose stress pattern is different from the others of the same group.

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-------------|------|-------------|-------------|-----|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. | A. 1 | B. 1 | C. 1 | <u>D.</u> 2 | 11. | A. 1 | <u>B.</u> 2 | C. 1 | D. 1 |
| 2. | <u>A.</u> 2 | B. 1 | C. 1 | D. 1 | 12. | A. 1 | B. 1 | <u>C.</u> 2 | D. 1 |
| 3. | A. 2 | B. 2 | <u>C.</u> 1 | D. 2 | 13. | A. 2 | <u>B.</u> 1 | C. 2 | D. 2 |
| 4. | <u>A.</u> 1 | B. 2 | C. 2 | D. 2 | 14. | A. 1 | <u>B.</u> 3 | C. 1 | D. 1 |
| 5. | A. 1 | B. 1 | C. 1 | <u>D.</u> 2 | 15. | A. 1 | B. 1 | C. 1 | <u>D.</u> 2 |
| 6. | A. 1 | B. 1 | <u>C.</u> 2 | D. 1 | 16. | <u>A.</u> 2 | B. 1 | C. 1 | D. 1 |
| 7. | <u>A.</u> 1 | B. 2 | C. 1 | D. 1 | 17. | A. 3 | B. 3 | <u>C.</u> 1 | D. 3 |
| 8. | A. 2 | B. 2 | <u>C.</u> 1 | D. 2 | 18. | A. 1 | B. 1 | C. 1 | <u>D.</u> 2 |
| 9. | A. 1 | B. 1 | C. 1 | <u>D.</u> 2 | 19. | A. 1 | <u>B.</u> 2 | C. 1 | D. 1 |
| 10. | A. 1 | B. 1 | <u>C.</u> 2 | D. 1 | 20. | <u>A.</u> 2 | B. 1 | C. 1 | D. 1 |

CHUYÊN ĐỀ II. WORD CLASS CHUYÊN ĐỀ VỀ TỪ VỰNG HỌC

BÀI 1. NOUNS - DANH TỪ

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 11** đến **Exercise 13** được cung cấp bằng một danh từ phái sinh tương ứng với mỗi từ gốc cho trước (một từ gốc có thể có hơn một danh từ phái sinh, nhưng phần đáp án chỉ cung cấp một danh từ trong số các danh từ có thể có ở **Exercise 11**, chỉ một danh từ đúng cho các câu hỏi ở các bài tập **Exercise 12** và **Exercise 13**).

Exercise 11: Give ONE of the derived nouns of the given words.

<u>roots</u>	<u>nouns</u>	<u>roots</u>	<u>nouns</u>
1. able	ability	16. imitate	imitation
2. anxious	anxiety	17. know	knowledge
3. attract	attraction	18. like	likeness
4. announce	announcement	19. lonely	loneliness
5. believe	belief	20. maintain	maintenance
6. careful	carefulness	21. manage	management
7. certain	certainty	22. modernize	modernization
8. child	childhood	23. organize	organization
9. discover	discovery	24. pollute	pollution
10. excite	excitement	25. popular	popularity
11. explain	explanation	26. prove	proof
12. friendly	friendliness	27. short	shortage
13. free	freedom	28. solid	solidity
14. hospitable	hospitability	29. stupid	stupidity
15. imagine	imagination	30. warm	warmth

Exercise 12: Give ONE of the derived nouns of the given words to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 1. PERSONALITY | 11. MEMBERSHIP |
| 2. ENVIRONMENTALIST | 12. REFUSAL |
| 3. APPEARANCE | 13. AGREEMENT |
| 4. MAJORITY | 14. ECONOMICS |
| 5. HUMILIATION | 15. UPBRINGING |
| 6. STABILITY | 16. SURVIVORS |
| 7. TERRORIST | 17. INSTALLATION |
| 8. DESTRUCTION | 18. ATTENDANCE |
| 9. VARIETY | 19. COMPETITORS |
| 10. ATTRACTION | 20. FRIENDSHIP |

Exercise 13: Give *ONE* of the derived nouns of the given words to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. FAILURE | 11. EXPLANATION |
| 2. ACQUAINTANCES | 12. AGREEMENTS |
| 3. SPEECH | 13. SICKNESSES |
| 4. BORDOM | 14. ADAPTATION |
| 5. PROSPERITY | 15. PASSERS-BY |
| 6. ELECTRIFICATION | 16. DISAPPROVAL |
| 7. ANTIBIOTICS | 17. DETERMINATION |
| 8. BEHOLDER | 18. BREAKDOWN |
| 9. PRECISION | 19. POOR |
| 10. APPLICANTS | 20. REDUCTION |

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 14** đến **Exercise 18** cung cấp các đáp án đúng cụ thể kèm theo phần giải thích đáp án qua giảng nghĩa của từ, đưa ra cấu trúc câu hay các cụm ngữ cố định.

Exercise 14: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	automation (tự động hóa)
2.	B	concentration (n) sự tập trung
3.	D	pleasure (n) giải trí
4.	B	produce electricity (n) sx điện
5.	D	employment (n) làm việc
6.	A	book review (n) tóm lược
7.	C	distributing fertilizers
B		pollutants (n) tác nhân

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	equality (n) bình đẳng giới
12.	C	responsibility (n) bổn phận
13.	B	conservation (n) việc bảo tồn
14.	C	industrial development
15.	B	extinction (n) sự diệt chủng
16.	C	integration (n) hội nhập
17.	D	civilization (n) nền văn minh
D		destruction (n) sự hủy hoại

C	subject (n)	môn học
A	power (n)	quyền lực

19.	B	pages (n) (trang sách)
20.	B	receive + danh từ chỉ sự vật

Exercise 15: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	biology (n) môn sinh học
2.	B	night shift (n) ca đêm
3.	B	to take responsibility for
4.	C	solutions (n) giải pháp
5.	D	special dishes (n) đặc sản
6.	B	first attempt (n) lần đầu
7.	B	share the household chores
8.	C	burn garbage (v) đốt rác
9.	B	make a decision (v) quyết định
	D	values (n) giá trị

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	construction (n) hướng dẫn
12.	B	university education
13.	D	subject (n) môn học English
14.	B	Geography (n) môn Địa Lí
15.	B	History (n) môn Lịch Sử
16.	C	durability (n) độ bền
17.	B	subject (n) môn học
18.	D	vacancies (n) vị trí công việc
19.	C	vacant positions (n) việc
	C	certificate (n) bằng cấp

Exercise 16: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	laws (n) luật pháp
2.	D	protection (n) sự bảo vệ
3.	A	wildlife (n) thú hoang
4.	C	review (n) bản tóm lược
5.	B	disappointedly (adv) thất vọng
6.	D	politician (n) chính trị gia
7.	A	penalty (n) phạt đền
8.	D	shot (n) cú sút (cứu thua)
9.	C	exploitation (n) khai thác bừa
	A	romance (n) truyện lãng mạn

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	entertainment (n) giải trí
12.	B	novel (n) tiểu thuyết
13.	B	tendency (n) xu hướng
14.	C	tsunami (n) sóng thần
15.	D	comfortable and relaxed
16.	C	verge of extinction (n)
17.	C	biography (n) tự truyện
18.	C	for pleasure (n) để giải trí
19.	C	enterprises (n) tổ hợp CN
	C	decision (n) quyết định

Exercise 17: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp	Giải thích
-----	-----	------------

Câu	Đáp	Giải thích
-----	-----	------------

	án	
1.	C	variety of (n) nhiều
2.	B	terrorism (n) chủ nghĩa k. bố
3.	B	disappearance (n) biến mất
4.	C	medicine (n) y học
5.	A	responsibility (n) trách nhiệm
6.	D	security (n) an ninh nghiêm
7.	A	Constant threat (n) đe dọa
8.	A	top priority (n) ưu tiên đầu
9.	A	device (n) thiết bị
10.	C	investment (n) đầu tư

	án	
11.	B	living standards (n) mức sống
12.	D	friendship (n) tình bạn
13.	A	policy (n) chính sách mở cửa
14.	D	sectors (n) thành phần kinh tế
15.	C	development (n) sự phát triển
16.	D	shuttle (n) tàu con thoi
17.	B	depression (n) suy thoái k. tế
18.	A	Telecommunication (n) l. lạc
19.	A	science (n) khoa học
20.	D	breath (n) sự hít thở

Exercise 18: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	preference (n) sở thích
2.	C	course (n) khóa học
3.	C	graduation (n) lễ tốt nghiệp
4.	D	institute (n) học viện
5.	A	requirements (n) yêu cầu
6.	D	Veterinary (n) Bác sĩ thú y
7.	C	applicant (n) ứng viên
8.	B	take a course (v) theo học
9.	A	curriculum (n) chương trình học
10.	D	selection (n) sự chọn lựa

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	applicants (n) ứng viên
12.	B	optional (adj) tự chọn
13.	C	pressure (n) áp lực
14.	B	position(n) vị trí công việc
15.	D	disappointment (n) thất vọng
16.	A	impression (n) gây ấn tượng
17.	C	Vacant (n) quảng cáo việc làm
18.	A	out of work (n) thất nghiệp
19.	D	interest (n) hứng thú
20.	C	inflation (n) lạm phát

BÀI 2. VERBS - ĐỘNG TỪ

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 19** đến **Exercise 20** được cung cấp bằng một động từ phái sinh đúng cả về ngữ nghĩa và ngữ pháp tương ứng với mỗi từ gốc cho trước.

Exercise 19: Give ONE of the derived verbs of the given words to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1. LESSENERD | 11. GATE-CRASHED |
| 2. COMPUTERIZE | 12. WORSENERD |
| 3. EXPECTED | 13. UNINFORMED |
| 4. UNEMPLOYED | 14. RESURFACING |

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 5. DISQUALIFIED | 15. ENCOURAGED |
| 6. DISORGANISING | 16. MODERNIZE |
| 7. ENDANGERED | 17. IMMOBILIZE |
| 8. UNACCOMPANIED | 18. REARRANGE |
| 9. OUTNUMBER | 19. DISREGARDING |
| 10. VALIDATED | 20. UNDERESTIMATED |

Exercise 20: Give ONE of the derived verbs of the given words to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. DIFFERENTIATE | 11. CRITICIZED |
| 2. RIPENED | 12. SPECIALIZE |
| 3. MASTERING | 13. FASTEN |
| 4. SOLIDIFY | 14. TIGHTEN |
| 5. SUCCEDED | 15. REALIZED |
| 6. POLLUTED | 16. FERTILIZE |
| 7. LOOSEN | 17. INDUSTRIALIZED |
| 8. INDUSTRIALIZED | 18. POPULARIZED |
| 9. ENRICH | 19. STANDARDIZE |
| 10. THREATENED | 20. ENDANGER |

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 21** đến **Exercise 26** cung cấp các đáp án đúng cụ thể kèm theo phần giải thích đáp án qua giảng nghĩa của từ, đưa ra cấu trúc câu hay các cụm ngữ cố định.

Exercise 21: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	confirmed = xác nhận
2.	C	vote = bỏ phiếu, bầu cử
3.	A	finish = mệnh đề không chia
4.	D	remain + adj = vẫn giữ điều gì
5.	A	bring along = mang theo
6.	B	cấu trúc "be allowed to V"
7.	C	cấu trúc "feel like + V-ing"
8.	B	keep on V-ing
9.	C	be visible = can be seen
A		outnumber (v) vượt trội

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	needn't have made: không cần
12.	D	take off (v) cất cánh
13.	B	can't = deduction (suy luận)
14.	C	put on: mang, đeo
15.	C	come in for: đối mặt, chịu
16.	C	accelerate = promote thúc đẩy
17.	D	do the V-ing: làm việc gì đó
18.	B	recycled: tái chế
19.	A	might: không chắc về suy luận
A		make s.b V: bắt ai làm gì

Exercise 22: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	Put down (v) bỏ xuống, buông
2.	B	are going to= intension
3.	C	had been working: trước q.khứ
4.	D	will be sitting: plan, đoán trước
5.	C	needn't: unnecessary
6.	A	imagine: tưởng tượng
7.	A	Should: giả sử điều kiện xảy ra
8.	C	defend title: bảo vệ danh hiệu
9.	A	stuck: gắn vào, dán tem
10.	C	take part in: tham gia

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	suppose S V-ed: giả định
12.	D	broke (up): tan vỡ
13.	A	Not only→đảo ngữ nhấn mạnh
14.	C	Don't be: mệnh lệnh thức
15.	A	wear out(v)become exhausted
16.	C	let off: tha, thả
17.	A	call (v) phone, telephone, dial
18.	D	turn out: kết quả
19.	D	make for (v) tẩu thoát, tránh
20.	C	diverted (chuyển hướng)

Exercise 23: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	has broken–cấu trúc “either...or”
2.	C	pull through – vượt qua khỏi
3.	D	addressing – gọi, chỉ danh
4.	D	draw up – rà soát, kiểm tra
5.	B	turn off – tắt các thiết bị
6.	D	insist that = qui định rằng
7.	A	did – giả định
8.	C	needn't – sự không cần thiết
9.	C	May I V? xin phép
10.	D	limit to V-ing = hạn chế

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	seem to V (bị động với vật)
12.	B	need V-ing = bị động
13.	C	Cấu trúc hiện tại hoàn thành
14.	A	touch = đụng/ sờ vào
15.	A	decide = quyết định điều gì
16.	C	must have been – speculation
17.	B	stand for = dùng thay thế cho
18.	A	catch up on = bù đắp
19.	C	sleep and eat = không gì ngoài
20.	A	danced wildly = chủ động

Exercise 24: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	used to be – thói quen ở quá khứ
B	aren't I?	– question tag

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	keep off = xua đuổi
B	sit down	– ngồi xuống ghế

3.	A	plays softball and tennis
4.	B	soared – thuật lại một sự việc
5.	B	took – ai đó mất thời gian để...
6.	C	non-stop – không ngừng nghỉ
7.	D	weigh (v) cân nặng
8.	D	to go to – đến đâu đó
9.	C	put on (v) mặc
10.	A	throw (v) ném bóng

13.	C	done – dùng trợ động từ thay
14.	B	come up = xảy đến
15.	A	took off = cất cánh
16.	C	fit = vừa vặn
17.	B	believe = tin vào
18.	C	throw away = ném bỏ
19.	C	could = giả định, giả mà
20.	D	broke down = hỏng

Exercise 25: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	left – reduced clause (mã lược)
2.	C	taken – cấu trúc “have st done”
3.	D	preparing = who prepares
4.	C	understood: cấu trúc với “wish”
5.	B	amusing bổ nghĩa cho “the film”
6.	A	hears – time clause “whenever”
7.	C	begins – sự thật, sự lặp
8.	C	liked: cấu trúc với “wish”
9.	A	knocked down – phá bỏ, dỡ bỏ
10.	D	freed – giải thoát, giải phóng

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	Must: bốn phần/ needn't
12.	B	speed up – đi nhanh, tăng tốc
13.	C	would be floating – đk trộn
14.	B	swallow – đọc ngẫu nhiên
15.	B	staggering – “see s.b V-ing/ V”
16.	D	want s.t to be done – cấu trúc
17.	C	it's no good V-ing – cấu trúc
18.	D	should be cleaned – necessity
19.	B	cannot be allowed - forbidden
20.	B	refuse to V – từ chối việc gì đó

Exercise 26: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	could – possibility or permit
2.	D	had been repaired – bị động
3.	B	can be turned – bị động
4.	B	Don't – nghi vấn về sự thật
5.	C	advance (v) dẫn bóng
6.	D	have been carrying – đến giờ
7.	C	melted – tan chảy
C	type	cấu trúc cố định

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	are always making – phàn nàn
12.	C	cut off – cắt, ngừng cung cấp
13.	D	astounding (adj) chỉ sự vật
14.	A	looked – câu điều kiện loại 2
15.	B	get on with – sống hòa thuận
16.	D	will be employed – kế hoạch
17.	B	take up – thực hành môn
A	has been	leaking – đến giờ

A	get through – kết nối, liên lạc
C	appreciate help – đánh giá cao

19.	B	ought to be made – nhất thiết
20.	D	do a favor – làm ơn làm giúp

BÀI 3. ADJECTIVES - TÍNH TỪ

Phần lời giải cho bài tập **Exercise 27** được cung cấp bằng một tính từ phái sinh tương ứng với mỗi từ gốc cho trước (một từ gốc có thể có hơn một tính từ phái sinh, nhưng phần đáp án chỉ cung cấp một tính từ trong số các tính từ phái sinh đó).

Exercise 27: Give ONE of the derived adjectives of the given words.

	<u>roots</u>	<u>adjectives</u>		<u>roots</u>	<u>adjectives</u>
1.	accident	accidental	16.	mean	meaningful
2.	industry	industrial	17.	home	homeless
3.	inform	informative	18.	poison	poisonous
4.	history	historical	19.	danger	dangerous
5.	politics	political	20.	value	valuable
6.	parent	parental	21.	understand	understandable
7.	essence	essential	22.	advice	advisable
8.	confide	confidential	23.	eat	eatable
9.	act	active	24.	tire	tired
10.	affect	affective	25.	bore	bored
11.	destroy	destructive	26.	excite	excited
12.	defend	defensive	27.	avoid	avoidable
13.	produce	productive	28.	benefit	beneficial
14.	compete	competitive	29.	success	successful
15.	thank	thankful	30.	chaos	chaotic

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 28** đến **Exercise 29** được cung cấp bằng một tính từ phái sinh tương ứng với mỗi từ gốc cho trước sao cho câu được hoàn tất đúng về mặt ngữ nghĩa và ngữ pháp.

Exercise 28: Give ONE of the derived adjectives of the given words to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. INFORMATIVE | 11. TOLERANT |
| 2. DECISIVE | 12. ATTRACTIVE |
| 3. AVOIDABLE | 13. ADVISABLE |
| 4. UPSET | 14. EDUCATIVE |
| 5. DISASTROUS | 15. DEPENDENT |
| 6. HYPOCRITICAL | 16. KNOWLEDGEABLE |
| 7. PREFERENTIAL | 17. TROUBLE |
| 8. CONFIDENTIAL | 18. INCONSISTENT |

9. VOLUNTARY

19. UNRECONGNISABLE

10. BENEFICIAL

20. UNSUCCESSFUL

Exercise 29: Give ONE of the derived adjectives of the given words to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

1. PROUD

11. ACQUAINTED

2. UNPOLLUTED

12. SINGLE-MINDED

3. ALIVE

13. HURTFUL

4. THEATRICAL

14. UNCHARACTERISTIC

5. MAMMALIAN

15. DANGERED

6. UNPLEASANT

16. OBEDIENT

7. CHAOTIC

17. UNPREDICTABLE

8. INDISPENSABLE

18. THRILLING

9. UNDERESTIMATED

19. WIDESPREAD

10. RACIAL

20. AWAKE

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 30** đến **Exercise 34** cung cấp các đáp án đúng cụ thể kèm theo phần giải thích đáp án qua giảng nghĩa của từ, đưa ra cấu trúc câu hay các cụm ngữ cố định.

Exercise 30: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	be appreciative of - biết ơn
2.	D	humanitarian (adj) nhân đạo
3.	A	averse to = ghét, chống lại
4.	B	Defensive player = hậu vệ
5.	D	apt to V = có xu hướng
6.	B	northerly (adj) về phía bắc
7.	A	in particular = nói riêng
8.	C	rural = vùng nông thôn
9.	A	water runs deep = thành ngữ
10.	D	be interested in V-ing: cấu trúc

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	less than: so sánh về giá cả
12.	B	it be adj (for O) to V
13.	D	petty theft = trộm vặt
14.	B	optional = tự chọn
15.	B	industrious (adj) cần mẫn
16.	B	informative (adj) đủ thông tin
17.	B	once in a blue moon: cấu trúc
18.	B	voluntary (adj) tình nguyện
19.	C	childlike (adj) tính trẻ con
20.	C	academic degree: học vị, bằng

Exercise 31: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
-----	--------	------------

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
-----	--------	------------

1.	A	be (un)fit for : cấu trúc cố định
2.	C	endangered species: collocation
3.	A	be (un)able to V: cấu trúc
4.	B	agricultural: chỉ đặc trưng vùng
5.	D	so sánh thăng tiến: the..., the...
6.	B	medical (adj) thuộc y tế, y học
7.	B	agricultural subsidies
8.	B	intense feeling : cảm giác mạnh
9.	C	be suitable for: phù hợp
10.	C	obedient (adj) ngoan, biết nghe

11.	B	attractive >< plain
12.	A	diverse cultures: văn hóa khác
13.	C	stressful (adj) căng thẳng
14.	A	tasteful (adj) có khiếu
15.	A	life-developing diseases
16.	C	discriminatory: tính kì thị
17.	C	worthless: không giá trị
18.	B	look confident (link verb)
19.	C	impressive (adj) gây ấn tượng
20.	A	a thorough examination

Exercise 32: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	adventurous (adj) phiêu lưu
2.	B	epidemic: bệnh dịch
3.	B	priceless: vô giá, rất giá trị
4.	C	narrow-minded: hẹp hòi
5.	B	pessimistic: bi quan
6.	A	nicer and more attractive
7.	D	cụm cố định "as far as I know"
8.	D	insufficient: không đủ, thiếu
9.	B	anxious: lo lắng
10.	C	supportive: ủng hộ, tương trợ

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	initial: tiên quyết, hàng đầu
12.	D	favourable: tốt, thuận lợi
13.	C	better than: so sánh
14.	A	informal gatherings
15.	B	S be adj that - clause
16.	B	slight hesitation: lưỡng lự
17.	B	impolite: bất nhã
18.	C	productive use: tận dụng
19.	A	content to: hài lòng
20.	B	powerful: mạnh mẽ

Exercise 33: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	rude: thô lỗ khi không cảm ơn
2.	A	independent: tự do, tự thực
3.	C	be capable of : có năng lực
4.	D	required examination: thi tuyển
5.	B	technological advances
6.	B	influential person: ảnh hưởng

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	objection to: phản đối
12.	B	natural rates: tỉ lệ tự nhiên
13.	D	another: một cái khác
14.	C	interesting: so sánh tính từ
15.	C	out of ordinary: bất thường
C		imaginative: óc tưởng tượng

7.	C	scientific experiments: cụm từ
8.	B	traditional crafts: nghề thủ công
9.	B	mysterious disease: bệnh lạ
10.	B	sensitive: nhạy cảm

17.	D	competent to V: đủ khả năng
18.	A	deep-seated: ăn sâu, bám rễ
19.	D	scary: sợ hãi, nhút nhát
20.	B	optimistic: lạc quan

Exercise 34: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	light: vắng, thưa; heavy: đông
2.	C	independent: tự do
3.	B	exhausted = very tired
4.	B	active: năng động, hiếu động
5.	C	many thousands of: cụm từ
6.	D	special dishes: đặc sản
7.	C	consistent with: phù hợp
8.	B	supportive of: ủng hộ
9.	C	loyal: trung thành
10.	A	supportive: ủng hộ, tương trợ

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	be (un)aware of: cấu trúc
12.	C	contractual: dàn xếp
13.	B	ordinary people: dân thường
14.	A	be obliged to V: bổn phận phải
15.	B	romantic: lãng mạn
16.	B	bad-tempered: mất bình tĩnh
17.	A	it be difficult to V: khó để
18.	B	determined: quyết tâm
19.	A	allergic to: dị ứng
20.	B	non-verbal: vô ngôn, không lời

BÀI 4. ADVERBS - TRẠNG TỪ

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập **Exercise 35** chỉ cung cấp các đáp án đúng là một trạng từ phái sinh từ từ gốc cho trước để hoàn tất mỗi câu còn khoảng trống.

Exercise 35: Give ONE of the derived adverbs of the given words to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. EXTREMELY | 11. REASONABLY |
| 2. ALIVE | 12. INTENTIONALLY |
| 3. SOCIALLY | 13. PLEASANTLY |
| 4. IRRESPONSIBLY | 14. DEADLY |
| 5. BREATHLESSLY | 15. OFFICIALLY |
| 6. EXCEPTIONALLY | 16. DANGEROUSLY |
| 7. ECONOMICALLY | 17. ORIGINALLY |
| 8. ENJOYABLY | 18. CAREFULLY |
| 9. ECONOMICALLY | 19. UNEXPECTEDLY |
| 10. UNSUCCESSFULLY | 20. HIGHLY |

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 36** đến **Exercise 40** cung cấp các đáp án đúng cụ thể kèm theo phần giải thích đáp án qua giảng nghĩa của từ, đưa ra cấu trúc câu hay các cụm ngữ cố định.

Exercise 36: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	regardless of – không kể đến
2.	D	obediently – ngoan, hiền
3.	C	barely just to V – chỉ để
4.	B	rely heavily on – dựa chủ yếu
5.	B	unwisely (adv) thiếu suy nghĩ
6.	C	Or else – nếu không thì (đk)
7.	A	đảo ngữ với “only with/ by”
8.	B	appropriately (adv) phù hợp
9.	D	almost certainly – cụm cố định
10.	C	Honestly – chỉ cách thức nói

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	economically – hiệu quả
12.	B	constantly (adv) không ngừng
13.	D	completely- hoàn toàn (m. độ)
14.	D	unexpectedly – không lường
15.	A	respectively – lần lượt
16.	A	efficiently – hiệu quả
17.	B	by no means – ngữ cố định
18.	D	carefully – chỉ cách thức
19.	B	cấu trúc so_that/ to be P.P
20.	A	danced wildly – mô tả

Exercise 37: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	so adj/adv that – cấu trúc câu
2.	C	personally (my point of view)
3.	A	concentration (n) sự tập trung
4.	D	Surprisingly – trạng ngữ câu
5.	B	repeatedly – trạng từ bổ nghĩa
6.	A	financially – về tài chính
7.	A	Theoretically – xét về lí thuyết
8.	C	Twice a year – độ thường xuyên
9.	B	cụm từ only after
10.	A	all your life – suốt đời

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	one each – phân phối
12.	D	đảo ngữ với Seldom
13.	C	whereas – trong khi
14.	B	work hard/ could hardly V
15.	C	expectedly – không lường trước
16.	B	each other: đại từ tương hỗ
17.	B	cụm từ only when
18.	A	comparatively easy – rất dễ
19.	A	cụm từ: not only_ but_ as well
A	slowly (adv) chậm chạp	

Exercise 38: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
-----	--------	------------

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
-----	--------	------------

	án	
1.	D	từ đúng là: which (sau dấu “,”)
2.	C	bỏ “hardly” vì đã có “not”
3.	A	từ đúng là: Despite
4.	B	từ đúng là: had gone
5.	B	từ đúng là: carefully (adv)
6.	D	từ đúng là: been interested
7.	B	từ đúng là: leads (chủ ngữ số ít)
8.	A	từ đúng là: trying (sau giới từ)
9.	B	từ đúng là: to get
10.	B	từ đúng là: dirty road

	án	
11.	A	từ đúng là: told
12.	C	từ đúng là: is (S=information)
13.	C	từ đúng là: destroying
14.	A	từ đúng là: Efforts to improve
15.	C	từ đúng là: forward to spending
16.	B	từ đúng là: on my own
17.	A	từ đúng là: Would you mind
18.	B	bỏ “a” vì news (uncount noun)
19.	B	từ đúng là: smoking – từ bỏ
20.	D	từ đúng là: not to go

Exercise 39: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	từ đúng là: easily (adv)
2.	A	từ đúng là: death (n)
3.	D	bỏ to give vì đã có including
4.	B	từ đúng là: most of
5.	A	từ đúng là: occasionally (adv)
6.	B	từ đúng là: shamed (adj)
7.	D	từ đúng là: instruction (n)
8.	B	từ đúng là: scientific (adj)
9.	A	từ đúng là: Supposed – giả sử
10.	B	từ đúng là: Therefore – vậy nên

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	từ đúng là: pleasure (n)
12.	A	từ đúng là: sad (adj)
13.	B	từ đúng là: not
14.	B	từ đúng là: oppositions – nhiều
15.	D	từ đúng là: nationalities (n)
16.	B	từ đúng là: encourage (v)
17.	C	từ đúng là: equality (n)
18.	A	từ đúng là: Because of (phrase)
19.	B	từ đúng là: folded (bị động)
20.	C	từ đúng là: which (sau dấu “,”)

Exercise 40: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	từ đúng là: industrially (adv)
2.	D	từ đúng là: automatically (adv)
3.	C	từ đúng là: manufactured (P.P)
4.	C	từ đúng là: consequently (adv)
5.	C	từ đúng là: enrich (v)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
A	từ đúng	là: hearing (sau on)
D	từ đúng	là: need + repairing
B	từ đúng	là: to unlock
C	từ đúng	là: prevent
C	từ đúng	là: I was (chủ thể cụ thể)

6.	B	từ đúng là: disappointed (adj)	16.	A	bỏ I think (= in my judgment)
7.	A	từ đúng là: who sau dấu “,”	17.	A	từ đúng là: In order that
8.	A	từ đúng là: economics - môn	18.	D	từ đúng là: so annoying
9.	A	từ đúng là: despite – cụm từ	19.	A	từ đúng là: had he entered
10.	B	từ đúng là: had better learn	20.	A	từ đúng là: Published

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 41** đến **Exercise 42** cung cấp hình thức viết lại các câu gốc theo gợi ý sao cho câu viết lại giữ nguyên nghĩa của câu gốc – phần này chú trọng luyện viết dưới hình thức đảo ngữ sử dụng các trạng từ mang nghĩa phủ định và các cụm trạng ngữ đi với cấu trúc câu đảo ngữ.

Exercise 41: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

- No longer do the women nowadays depend on their husband.
- At no time did he suspect that she was a witch.
- Never before had she been so happy.
- No longer do women in developed countries bear many children.
- Not until John received the offer of promotion in writing did he celebrate.
- Never have I never heard such nonsense!
- Hardly did the teacher leave when the students started shouting again.
- Never have I never seen such a mess in my life.
- Never before are there more tourists in the city this year than ever.
- Seldom has public borrowing been so high.
- Seldom had they participate in such a fascinating ceremony.
- Little did they suspect that the musical was going to be a runaway success.
- Little did the embassy staff realize that Ted was a secret agent.
- Hardly had I begun to apologize when the door closed.
- In no way can the shop be held responsible for customers' lost property.
- No sooner had the couple arrived than the priest started the ceremony.
- Only when he saw his wife's face, did Tom understand the meaning of the comment.
- Under no circumstances can the restaurant accept animals.
- Rarely did the artist pay any attention to his agent's advice.
- So enormous was the crowd that all traffic came to a standstill.

Exercise 42: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

- So great was her grief that she almost fainted.
- No sooner had he returned from his walk he got down to writing the letter.

- Hardly had she begun to speak when people started interrupting her.
- Only when I realized what I had missed did they tell me about it.
- Nowhere will you find a more dedicated worker anywhere than Mrs. John.
- At no time was the outcome of the election in doubt.
- Not until he got home did he forget about the gun.
- Only by training hard every day, can you become a good athlete.
- Hardly can I keep my eyes open.
- No sooner had I shut the door than I realized I'd left the key inside.
- So tired was I that I don't feel like eating.
- Not only does he sing well but he also plays the guitar well.
- So fierce a dog did they have that nobody would visit them.
- Not only did she pass the exam, but she also got a prize.
- So expensive was the Picasso painting that nobody could buy it.
- Such a great problem is that everybody is concerned of it.
- Such uncertainty is there that I will not invest my money.
- Hardly could he know what had happened to his car.
- Nowhere will we find this kind of book.
- Seldom could they do anything better than what they had finished.

BÀI 5. ARTICLES - MẠO TỪ

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 43** đến **Exercise 45** cung cấp các đáp án đúng cụ thể là các mạo từ "a"/ "an"/ "the", hoặc các vị trí không sử dụng mạo từ (∅)- phần bài tập này rất cơ bản và được thể hiện rõ qua phần lý thuyết bài Articles.

Exercise 43. In the following sentences supply the articles (a, an, or the) if they are necessary. If no article is needed, leave the space blank (∅).

1.	a
2.	The/ the
3.	∅/ ∅
4.	a/ ∅/ ∅/ ∅
5.	The/ the

6.	the/ a/ ∅/ a
7.	∅/ the
8.	a/ ∅/ the
9.	∅/ the/ ∅
10.	∅

11.	∅/ ∅/ ∅
12.	the/ the
13.	∅
14.	∅/ ∅
15.	the/ an

Exercise 44. In the following sentences supply the articles (a, an, or the) if they are necessary. If no article is needed, leave the space blank (∅).

1.	a
2.	the
3.	∅/ the
4.	an/ ∅/ ∅
5.	the/ ∅

6.	∅/ ∅
7.	the
8.	∅/ the
9.	∅/ the/ ∅
10.	∅/ the

11.	the/ a
12.	the
13.	∅
14.	a/ ∅
15.	∅/ ∅

Exercise 45. In the following sentences supply the articles (a, an, or the) if they are necessary. If no article is needed, leave the space blank (∅).

1.	∅/ the
2.	∅/ a
3.	the
4.	The/ the
5.	∅/ a

6.	the/ ∅
7.	∅/ an
8.	the/ the/ ∅
9.	∅/ the
10.	∅/ the

11.	∅/ the
12.	∅
13.	∅/ the
14.	∅/ the
15.	the/ the

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 46** đến **Exercise 48** cung cấp các đáp án đúng cụ thể dựa trên các lựa chọn A, B, C, hoặc D, là các mạo từ “a”/ “an”/ “the”, hoặc (∅)- phần bài tập này rất cơ bản và được thể hiện rõ qua phần lí thuyết bài Articles.

Exercise 46: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

câu	đáp án
1.	C
2.	C
3.	B
4.	D

câu	đáp án
5.	C
6.	C
7.	A
8.	D

câu	đáp án
9.	D
10.	C
11.	C
12.	A

câu	đáp án
13.	C
14.	C
15.	A
16.	D

câu	đáp án
17.	C
18.	D
19.	D
20.	A

Exercise 47: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

câu	đáp án
1.	B
2.	D
3.	B
4.	A

câu	đáp án
5.	A
6.	A
7.	A
8.	C

câu	đáp án
9.	B
10.	C
11.	C
12.	B

câu	đáp án
13.	B
14.	B
15.	A
16.	D

câu	đáp án
17.	B
18.	A
19.	D
20.	D

Exercise 48: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

câu	đáp án
1.	B
2.	C
3.	D
4.	D

câu	đáp án
5.	D
6.	A
7.	C
8.	C

câu	đáp án
9.	B
10.	C
11.	C
12.	C

câu	đáp án
13.	C
14.	A
15.	C
16.	C

câu	đáp án
17.	B
18.	A
19.	B
20.	C

BÀI 6. PREPOSITIONS - GIỚI TỪ

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 49** đến **Exercise 51** cung cấp các đáp án đúng cụ thể dựa là các giới từ, kèm theo phần chú giải bằng các ngữ cố định sử dụng các giới từ đó, trong các ngữ cảnh câu cụ thể được đề cập.

Exercise 49: In the following sentences supply the suitable preposition to each of the gaps.

1.	at	at: dùng cho dịp lễ	9.	by	by: viết, tạo (bởi ai đó)
2.	on	on the floor: sàn nhà	10.	of	It be adj of s.b to V: (cấu trúc)
3.	at	at the end: cuối (của)	11.	at	furious at: tức giận
4.	in	in the street: trên phố		for	for: vì (lí do nào đó)
	on	on the street: trên phố	12.	by	disappointed by: thất vọng
5.	of	of: chỉ mệnh giá, giá trị	13.	by	shocked by: sốc bởi
6.	in	decrease in: giảm (về số lượng)	14.	at	scared at: sợ hãi
7.	of	cause of: căn nguyên		of	scared of: sợ hãi
8.	to	solution to problem: giải pháp	15.	of	ashamed of: xấu hổ, nhục nhã

Exercise 50: In the following sentences supply the suitable preposition to each of the gaps.

1.	at	at: tại thời điểm	9.	for	care for: để tâm, quan tâm
2.	to	engage to: đính hôn với	10.	on	concentrate on: tập trung
3.	for	responsible for: trách nhiệm	11.	into	crash into: đâm, va vào
4.	to	similar to: giống, tương đồng	12.	on	depend on: phụ thuộc vào
5.	on	keen on: thích	13.	of	hear of: nghe nói về
6.	with	crowded with: đông, chật	14.	after	look after: chăm sóc
7.	with	get along with: hòa thuận		of	dream of: mơ về điều gì
8.	for	apply for: xin, ứng cử cho			

Exercise 51: In the following sentences supply the suitable preposition to each of the gaps.

1.	for	pay for: chi trả	8.	to	next to: sát, kề, cạnh
2.	from	suffer from: khổ đau vì	9.	out	out door: ngoài trời
3.	out	shout out: la lên, gọi to	10.	With	With no doubt: (cụm từ)
4.	for	search for: tìm kiếm	11.	on	on strike: đình công
5.	about	think about: nghĩ về	12.	among	among a group: trong đám
6.	for	pay for: chi trả		in	in the corner: trong góc
7.	to	go to: đi tới đâu	13.	at	at: tại quầy, quán, nhà,...ai đó
	on	on foot: walk (đi bộ)	14.	in	fall in love: yêu đương
				onto	jump onto: nhảy lên

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 52** đến **Exercise 56** cung cấp các đáp án đúng cụ thể A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo phần chú giải bằng các ngữ cố định sử dụng các giới từ đó, trong các ngữ cảnh câu cụ thể được đề cập.

Exercise 52: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp	Giải thích	Câu	Đáp	Giải thích
-----	-----	------------	-----	-----	------------

	án	
1.	A	interested in: thích, hứng thú
2.	D	in fact: thực ra, thực tế là
3.	B	source of: nguồn
4.	D	pick s.t up: cầm lấy, nhặt lên
5.	D	At the start: khởi đầu
6.	A	excited about: hứng thú với
7.	D	float on: trôi nổi
8.	A	in team: trong đội hình
9.	A	pay attention to: chú ý đến
10.	D	look at: nhìn, quan sát

	án	
11.	A	save__from: cứu thoát khỏi
12.	D	put s.b off: làm cho ai ghê, sợ
13.	A	recognized as/ a threat of
14.	B	On V-ing = when/while V-ing
15.	C	result in: gây ra
16.	B	see it through: lờng trước
17.	B	on subject: về chủ đề
18.	D	under obligation to V: bổn phận
19.	A	at the same time as: cùng thời
20.	B	out of the ordinary: bất thường

Exercise 53: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	in different ways: nhiều cách
2.	C	By the time: mệnh đề thời gian
3.	D	bring forward: dời đến, lùi đến
4.	C	important to: quan trọng với
5.	C	excited about: hào hứng với
6.	A	friendly with: thân thiết với
7.	B	belong to: thuộc về ai đó
8.	A	ahead of: phía trước, đằng trước
9.	A	pick up: nhặt, cầm lên
10.	B	set out: khởi sự, bắt đầu

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	On defense: tự vệ, phòng vệ
12.	C	throw to: truyền tới ai
13.	B	It be adj of s.b to V: (cấu trúc)
14.	C	out of position: ngoài tầm với
15.	A	player on the field: trên sân
16.	B	plenty of: rất nhiều
17.	B	turn down: khước từ
18.	D	go off: nổ, đổ (chuông), thiu
19.	A	famous for: nổi tiếng về/ vì
20.	A	accessible to: đạt được

Exercise 54: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	in context: trong một ngữ cảnh
2.	B	wait for: đợi/ listen to: nghe
3.	A	hang on: treo
4.	B	for: mục đích/ in space: vũ trụ
5.	B	independent from: độc lập

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
	D	depend on: nhờ cậy/ dựa vào
	B	dispose of: thải, xả thải
	A	wear in: mặc đồ màu gì
	C	hold s.t with hand: cầm tay
	D	thành ngữ: Đếm cua trong lỗ

6.	D	take care of/ be on business
7.	D	move__ to: chuyển từ__ đến
8.	C	according to/ wrong with: sai
9.	C	marry to: lấy/ kết hôn với ai
10.	C	depend on s.b for st: dựa dẫm

16.	A	depend on: nhờ cậy/ dựa vào
17.	C	derived from: chiết xuất từ
18.	A	travel/ go by (vehicle): đi lại
19.	A	at risk of extinction: nguy cơ
20.	B	drive__ to: đẩy/ xô__ đến

Exercise 55: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	slow down: chậm lại, giảm tốc
2.	D	bad effect on: tác động xấu đến
3.	A	light up: chiếu sáng
4.	A	It be adj of s.b to V: cấu trúc
5.	C	because of: vì/ lack of: thiếu
6.	C	continuation of: sự tiếp nối
7.	B	good at/ spend time on
8.	C	give back: trả lại
9.	D	go on holiday: đi nghỉ/ du lịch
10.	D	fed up with: chán ngấy

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	think of: nghĩ đến/ về
12.	C	look up: tra cứu
13.	D	try on: thử
14.	B	pick s.b up: đón/ rước ai đó
15.	D	come from/ refer to: đề cập
16.	C	on fire: cháy/ call for help
17.	A	stand for: thay, đại diện cho
18.	B	keep on/ complain about
19.	C	run out: cạn kiệt, hết
20.	C	acquainted with: quen với

Exercise 56: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	think over: cân nhắc
2.	C	object to: phản đối/ on time
3.	A	aware of: nhận thức rõ/ late for
4.	B	knock at: gõ vào/ at night: đêm
5.	D	available for: sẵn sàng
6.	B	keen on: thích/ good at: giỏi
7.	D	similar to: tương tự, giống
8.	B	devote to: cống hiến
9.	B	buy s.t for s.b/ at supermarket
A		surprised at/ by: ngạc nhiên

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	depend on: phụ thuộc/ dựa
12.	D	spend money on s.t: tiêu tiền
13.	D	warn s.b of/ about/ against s.t
14.	C	translate into: dịch sang
15.	B	dependent on: lệ thuộc vào
16.	A	accustomed to: quen
17.	C	compose of: gồm, cấu thành từ
18.	B	famous for: nổi tiếng về/ vì
19.	A	afraid of: sợ
B		essential for: thiết yếu với

BÀI 7. SYNONYM & ANTONYM - TỪ ĐỒNG NGHĨA TRÁI NGHĨA

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 57** đến **Exercise 60** cung cấp các đáp án đúng cụ thể A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo phần chú giải nghĩa các từ tương ứng đồng nghĩa.

Exercise 57. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	dull: tẻ nhạt, buồn = boring
2.	C	assemblies: tụ họp = gatherings
3.	D	identify: xác định, định hình = recognize
4.	C	rescued: cứu sống = save the life of s.b
5.	A	occupied: bận rộn, bị chiếm hết thời gian = busy
6.	B	didn't bat an eye: không thèm để ý = didn't want to see
7.	A	conspicuous: dễ nhận thấy = easily seen: dễ thấy
8.	D	immediately: ngay lập tức, tức khắc = right away
9.	D	obtaining: đạt được, lấy được
10.	C	abandon: rời bỏ, từ bỏ = leave

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	postponed: hủy, hoãn = put off
12.	B	threats: hiểm họa = risks
13.	A	pave the way for: mở đường, vạch ra đường lối = initiate
14.	A	cashless: không dùng tiền mặt = cash-free
15.	C	vicissitudes: đầy thăng trầm = ups and downs: lên/ xuống
16.	A	inure: làm cho quen = accustom: quen với
17.	D	made use of: tận dụng, lợi dụng = taken advantage of
18.	A	gives me a hand with: giúp ai = assists me by: trợ giúp cho ai
19.	D	contaminating = polluting
20.	C	resulted in: gây ra = caused

Exercise 58. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	absent-minded: đãng trí = often forgetting things
2.	A	convenient: tiện lợi = practical
3.	C	make progress: tiến bộ = do better: làm tốt hơn
4.	A	available: sẵn có, sẵn sàng = present for the event
A		overwhelming: mạnh, tràn lan =

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	delay: hoãn, trì hoãn = put off
12.	B	established: thiết lập = set up
13.	C	recover from: phục hồi, khỏi bệnh = get over
14.	A	detriment: tổn hại, phương hại = harm: sự hại, độc hại
D		jot down = ghi chép lại = write

		powerful: mạnh mẽ
B catastrophe:		thảm họa = disaster
B fret over:		ưu tư, lo lắng = worry about
D wounded:		bị thương = injured
B exploded:		phát nổ = went off: phát nổ
D is greater than = exceeds:		vượt

		down
C affected:		xúc động, cảm động = touched: cảm động
D identify:		xác định, định hình = recognize
D foul play = unfair play:		chơi xấu
B adventurous:		phiêu lưu, mạo hiểm =
		willing to take risks
C penalty = punishment:		phạt

Exercise 59. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	Be careful: cẩn thận = Look out
2.	C	play: chơi = take up: nhận chơi môn thể thao
3.	D	take it easy: làm dịu nhẹ, đơn giản hóa = relax: thư giãn
4.	C	functions = roles: vai trò, chức năng
5.	A	speaking his mind: từ suy nghĩ, đúng như suy nghĩ
6.	C	go on: tiếp tục = continue
7.	C	terrified = frightened: sợ hãi
8.	C	enormous = immense: rộng lớn
9.	A	commercials: quảng cáo
C flora and fauna:		động, thực vật

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	are entitled to = are given the right to: cho, cấp
12.	A	corporations = companies tập đoàn kinh tế
13.	A	flourishing = growing well: mọc tươi tốt
14.	D	effect = impact: hiệu quả
15.	D	bad-tempered=easily annoyed or irritated: dễ nổi nóng/ cáu
16.	A	appreciate – be thankful: ơn
17.	C	habitat: môi trường sống
18.	C	endangered: gặp nguy hiểm
19.	D	identify: xác định, tìm ra
B collapsed:		đổ, sụp đổ

Exercise 60. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	privilege: đặc ân = favor
C thorough:		kĩ lưỡng = complete

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	more or less = approximately
C response = reply:		đáp lại

3.	D	service station = petrol station
4.	C	provide = supply: cung cấp
5.	D	awareness = knowledge: nhận thức, kiến thức
6.	A	truthfully: chính xác như thực tế
7.	C	rushed = went quickly: vội vã
8.	C	meteorologist = TV weatherman: dự báo khí tượng
9.	A	give me a hand = help me
10.	A	come up = happen: xảy đến

13.	A	accomplished: giỏi = skillful
14.	B	endeavoring: cố = trying to V
15.	A	diversity: sự đa dạng = variety
16.	D	liberated from = freed from
17.	D	appropriate: hợp = suitable
18.	B	inevitable: không lường được = unavoidable: không tránh đc
19.	A	instance = situation
20.	C	assistance: trợ giúp = help

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 61** đến **Exercise 62** cung cấp các đáp án đúng cụ thể A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo phần chú giải nghĩa các từ tương ứng trái nghĩa.

Exercise 61. *Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word or phrase that is OPPOSITE in meaning to the italic part in each of the following questions.*

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	keep secret: giữ bí mật reveal: lộ tẩy
2.	C	integrate: hội nhập separate: tách rời
3.	A	insufficient: không đủ/ hiệu quả adequate: đầy đủ
4.	B	more & more: ngày càng nhiều fewer and fewer: ngày càng ít
5.	C	materialistic: thực dụng spiritual: mang tính tinh thần
6.	C	successful: thành công faulty: hỏng, lỗi
7.	C	friendly: thân mật hostile: thù địch, không thân
8.	A	dilapidated: đổ nát, xiêu vẹo renovated: mới, hiện đại
9.	D	extravagant: ngông cuồng practical: thực tế
10.	D	taxing: mệt mỏi, đòi hỏi

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	hostility: sự thù địch serenity: trầm lặng, thanh tịnh
12.	C	ostracize: tẩy chay, đày patronize: bảo trợ, đỡ đầu
13.	B	vary: biến đổi stay unchanged: nguyên trạng
14.	C	dismay: mất tinh thần happiness: vui, hưng phấn
15.	D	optional: tự chọn, không bắt mandatory: ủy thác, phải làm
B	secure:	an toàn unsure: không chắc chắn
D	sufferings:	sự đau khổ happiness: niềm hạnh phúc
18.	C	innocent: vô tội guilty: có dính líu, liên quan
19.	D	generous: hào phóng mean: keo kiệt
20.	B	rapidly: nhanh

	relaxing: thư thái, thoải mái
--	-------------------------------

	sluggishly: chậm, lè mề
--	-------------------------

Exercise 62. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word or phrase that is *OPPOSITE* in meaning to the italic part in each of the following questions.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	threatened: bị đe dọa defended: được bảo vệ
2.	D	starving: đói full: no
3.	A	pay some money into: gửi tiền withdraw: rút tiền
4.	B	secure: an toàn unsure: không an tâm
5.	A	temporary: tạm permanent: lâu dài
6.	B	inordinate: quá mức limited: hạn chế, giới hạn
7.	A	discourtesy: không xương sống with backbones: có xương sống
8.	A	discourtesy: vô phép, bất nhã politeness: lịch thiệp
9.	B	safe: an toàn unsafe: không an toàn
10.	B	arrogant: kiêu ngạo humble: khiêm nhường

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	beneficial: có lợi ích detrimental: bất lợi
12.	B	give up: từ bỏ continue: tiếp tục
13.	C	Advanced: tiến bộ of low level: cấp độ thấp
14.	C	abundance: nhiều, đa dạng small quantity: số lượng ít
15.	C	concern: sự quan tâm ease: sự thờ ơ
16.	B	merge: gộp lại separate: tách ra
17.	A	accomplished: tài năng unskilled: không có kỹ năng
18.	D	Affluent: giàu có Impoverished: nghèo hèn
19.	A	cozy: đầm ấm/ uncomfortable: không thoải mái
20.	A	illiterate: mù chữ/ able to read and write: biết đọc, viết

BÀI 8. SENTENCE ELEMENTS - CÁC THÀNH TỐ CỦA CÂU

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 63** đến **Exercise 70** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo phần chú giải nghĩa các đáp án, các cụm từ hoặc cấu trúc cố định.

Exercise 63: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	What the woman was: mệnh đề làm chủ ngữ (That/ What/ All)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	Most of Ns: hầu hết, hầu như tất cả

2.	A	be fed up with: chán ngấy
3.	A	find it/O adj: nhận thấy
4.	C	for fear that: vì sợ rằng
5.	A	be interested in: thích
6.	B	incompetent: không đủ khả năng
7.	B	success: sự thành công
8.	C	đảo ngữ với Only
9.	C	được giảng dạy "to be taught"
10.	B	only a few Ns left: còn lại vài ...

12.	A	having heard (reduced clause)
13.	B	Plants grown (reduced clause)
14.	C	mistake s.b for: nhầm lẫn
15.	C	to arrive: cấu trúc "used to V"
16.	B	since: kể từ thời điểm/ mốc
17.	A	if: nếu (câu điều kiện loại 1)
18.	A	elder brother/ sister: anh/ chị
19.	C	It take O time to V (cấu trúc)
20.	B	preoccupying: lo âu, bận tâm

Exercise 64: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	fire alarm: chuông báo hỏa hoạn
2.	D	only after: ngay khi (cụm từ)
3.	A	make s.b V: bắt ai làm gì
4.	D	neither...nor: chia V cho S sau
5.	B	cost of living: chi phí sống
6.	D	unconvincing: không thuyết phục
7.	A	further = more detailed: chi tiết
8.	B	in case: đề phòng, phòng khi
9.	B	with suspicion: sự nghi ngờ
10.	D	live on one's own: tự lập

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	application form: mẫu đơn từ
12.	A	It be adj (for O) to V (cấu trúc)
13.	D	differences: sự khác biệt
14.	D	It be adj (for O) to V (cấu trúc)
15.	D	give a lecture: giảng bài
16.	A	do such damage: gây hại
17.	D	comes out: xuất hiện, có mặt
18.	C	applicants: ứng viên, người xin
19.	A	different ways: cách khác nhau
20.	A	stop V-ing: từ bỏ

Exercise 65: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	heavy storm: bão lớn/mạnh
2.	D	would rather V than V: thích
3.	C	ask s.b for s.t: hỏi xin ai cái gì
4.	D	gave up: từ bỏ
5.	B	apply for: xin việc
6.	C	unemployment benefit: trợ cấp
A	make O	adj: làm cho... (cấu trúc)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	was cooking: hành động đan xen
12.	B	be/ get used to V-ing: quen với
13.	A	busy with: bận rộn
14.	C	strong wind: gió lớn
15.	B	be good at: giỏi (cấu trúc)
16.	D	the highest/ the Himalayas
B	has been	moved: bị di chuyển

B	heavy smoker: nghiện thuốc lá
9.	C can't stand V-ing: không chịu được
D	be tired of V-ing: mệt mỏi vì

A	play a vital part: đóng vai trò
B	so sánh với tính từ đa âm
C	economical: tiết kiệm, kinh tế

Exercise 66: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	would join: (suy đoán)
2.	C	dedicated: tận tâm
3.	A	is going to retire: (chỉ dự kiến)
4.	D	which: mệnh đề quan hệ
5.	C	were inhabited: bị xâm chiếm
6.	C	speak language: nói (ngôn ngữ)
7.	A	recognize (nguyên thể sau could)
8.	C	be different from: khác biệt
9.	D	foreign language: ngoại ngữ
C	on:	vào ngày cụ thể

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	miss (vehicle): nhớ (tàu, xe)
12.	D	S wish S would/ could V
13.	A	endangered: có nguy cơ
14.	D	were: giả định với (as if)
15.	C	is spoken: được nói (thực tế)
16.	D	favorite: ưa chuộng, yêu thích
17.	B	like V-ing: thích làm gì
18.	D	hate V-ing: ghét làm gì
19.	D	stop V-ing: từ bỏ việc gì
C	gerund:	danh động từ

Exercise 67: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	tell lies: nói dối (cụm từ cố định)
2.	D	stop V-ing = give up V-ing: từ bỏ
3.	C	would like (O) to V: (cấu trúc)
4.	B	be/ get used to V-ing: quen với
5.	C	students is: (S = One/ those Ns)
6.	B	like best: thích nhất
7.	A	very little: rất ít
8.	D	since: kể từ
9.	A	would like (O) to V: (cấu trúc)
10.	B	school are (S = classes/ this N)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	sau câu mệnh lệnh progressive
12.	D	find it adj to V: (cấu trúc)
13.	B	would come: lời nói gián tiếp
14.	B	enjoy watching (cấu trúc)
15.	A	be afraid of V-ing: (cấu trúc)
16.	D	schooling: việc học hành
17.	C	biologist: nhà sinh vật học
18.	B	would have introduced: (tiếc)
19.	D	laboratories: phòng thí nghiệm
20.	C	be good at: giỏi môn/ việc gì

Exercise 68: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp	Giải thích
-----	-----	------------

Câu	Đáp	Giải thích
-----	-----	------------

	án	
1.	C	every + singular noun
2.	D	strength (n) sức/ điểm mạnh
3.	B	cause difficulties: gây khó khăn
4.	D	have difficulty+ V-ing: (cấu trúc)
5.	A	recognized: hành động liên tiếp
6.	B	apologize to O for V-ing
7.	B	orbit (n/v) quỹ đạo
8.	C	take advantage of: lợi dụng
9.	B	boring (adj) tẻ nhạt (chỉ vật)
10.	B	should(n't) V: (không) nên

	án	
11.	B	widely used: sử dụng rộng rãi
12.	A	pen-name: bút danh
13.	B	encouraged: động viên
14.	A	put an end to: finish =kết thúc
15.	B	teaches: dạy (chủ từ số ít)
16.	D	falls (in love with): yêu ai đó
17.	B	was rescued: được cứu sống
18.	B	notorious criminal: tội rõ ràng
19.	C	death: cái chết
20.	D	have influence on: ảnh hưởng

Exercise 69: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	cause difficulties: gây khó khăn
2.	A	evaporate (v) bay/ bốc hơi
3.	B	Approximately = About: khoảng
4.	A	written (v) viết, sang tác
5.	C	to reduce: cắt giảm
6.	B	on my own: tự tôi (cụm từ)
7.	D	spend time V-ing: ngữ cố định
8.	D	be good at: giỏi môn/ việc gì
9.	A	enjoy V-ing: hào hứng, thích
B		since + mốc/ mệnh đề thời gian

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	high (adj) độ cao "How adj"
12.	D	cost: chi phí hết bao nhiêu
13.	C	take place: xảy ra, diễn ra
14.	B	On: vào ngày cụ thể
15.	D	It be adj for O to V: (cấu trúc)
16.	B	would like (O) to V: (cấu trúc)
17.	B	musical instruments: nhạc cụ
18.	A	southern accent: giọng Nam
19.	D	population: dân số
C		longer: so sánh tính từ đơn âm

Exercise 70: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	current (adj) hiện tại, hiện hành
2.	A	much better than: so sánh
3.	C	emotional (adj) cảm động
4.	B	be attentive: chú ý, tập trung
5.	B	ample (adj) đáp ứng mong mỏi

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
C		imaginative: óc tưởng tượng
A		polite (adj) lịch sự, tinh tế
A		a little: một chút, ít
B		acceptable: có thể chấp nhận
A		be (un)aware of (cấu trúc)

6.	A	slight tremble: hơi run run
7.	C	subtle changes: thay đổi nhỏ
8.	A	rude (adj) thô lỗ, bất nhã
9.	B	tedious: chán ngắt, tẻ nhạt
10.	D	sociable: hòa đồng

16.	D	academic (adj) kiến thức
17.	D	illegible (adj) không rõ
18.	D	public school: trường tư
19.	A	the cleverer: so sánh với 2 vật
20.	C	informative: giàu thông tin

CHUYÊN ĐỀ III. GRAMMAR NGỮ PHÁP

BÀI 1. TENSES OF VERBS - THÌ CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 71** đến **Exercise 78** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo phần chú giải nghĩa các đáp án, các cụm từ hoặc cấu trúc cố định, các key words để nhận dạng các thì ngữ pháp.

Exercise 71: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	hành động xảy ra trước quá khứ
2.	D	tính cho đến thời điểm nói
3.	D	cho rằng một việc đã xảy ra
4.	C	"get tired" chỉ có thể đi với "Do"
5.	B	for 2 years now: hoàn thành
6.	A	went (ago); have not been (since)
7.	A	thường xuyên, và thực tại
8.	A	key words: In the past/ in the last
9.	D	a fact with "can" as possibility
10.	C	hành động đan xen ở quá khứ

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	key words: By this time next....
12.	B	key words: Right now...
13.	B	key words: Last night at....
14.	D	hành động lần lượt ở quá khứ
15.	A	mệnh đề thời gian ở quá khứ
16.	C	sequence of tense
17.	C	mệnh đề thời gian ở quá khứ
18.	D	mệnh đề thời gian
19.	D	dùng to V sau the first/ last...
20.	B	hành động liên tục ở quá khứ

Exercise 72: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	chỉ nguyên nhân (xảy ra trước)
2.	A	hiện tại hoàn thành cho thực tại
3.	B	mệnh đề thời gian với "while"
4.	D	key words: After all = kết luận

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	mệnh đề thời gian với "after"
12.	D	key words: so far
13.	A	key words: by the end of next
14.	A	hiện tại tiếp diễn sau mệnh lệnh

5.	C	key words: since = ht hoàn thành
6.	B	key words: No sooner__than
7.	A	key words: ago/ since
8.	D	key words: by the end of this ...
9.	C	mệnh đề thời gian với “when”
10.	B	mệnh đề thời gian với “before”

15.	A	chỉ dự định hay kế hoạch
16.	C	kết quả đang ở hiện tại
17.	B	showing the truths
18.	A	hội thoại tức thời
19.	D	mệnh đề thời gian với “when”
20.	C	tell s.b (not) to V

Exercise 73: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	reported time expression
2.	D	reported general question
3.	A	instruction, promise
4.	C	reported general question
5.	D	reported statement
6.	A	tell s.b (not) to V
7.	D	reported statement
8.	C	reported statement
9.	D	tell s.b (not) to V
10.	B	reported WH- question

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	reported general question
12.	D	reported statement
13.	A	reported general question
14.	C	reported general question
15.	B	reported WH- question
16.	D	reported WH- question
17.	A	reported general question
18.	B	reported WH- question
19.	C	advice s.b (not) to V
20.	A	report a truth, true action

Exercise 74: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	reported statement
2.	C	reported statement
3.	A	intension or plan, schedule
4.	D	cấu trúc “be said/ believed...”
5.	B	hate V-ing
6.	C	be said/ believed; take time
7.	C	passive voice
8.	B	passive voice/ place/ gender
9.	A	present perfect passive voice

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	simple past passive voice
12.	D	simple past passive voice
13.	B	simple present passive voice
14.	C	publicize: công bố trước công chúng
15.	C	be divided into: chia ra
16.	D	modal verb passive
17.	A	key words: by the time
18.	D	simple present passive
19.	A	present perfect passive

10.	B	it is used for: được dùng trong...
-----	---	------------------------------------

20.	B	be reported: được ghi nhận
-----	---	----------------------------

Exercise 75: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	Was that book written: bị động
2.	A	should be done: nên; prevent O from V-ing: ngăn cản khỏi
3.	A	nơi sản xuất – nhà sản xuất
4.	C	bị động
5.	C	đảo ngữ 2 vế
6.	B	bị động với first trước V-ed
7.	B	mệnh đề quan hệ bị động
8.	A	chỉ dự định: be going to V
9.	B	bị động và phân từ dùng như adj
10.	D	bị động hiện tại hoàn thành

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	bị động
12.	D	bị động dưới hình thức suy đoán (speculation)
13.	C	tương lai bị động (kế hoạch)
14.	D	make s.t past participle
15.	B	be told to V: được bảo phải
16.	A	be made to V: bị bắt phải làm
17.	A	be advised (not) to V: được khuyên nên làm gì
18.	D	câu điều kiện loại 2
19.	D	giả định với "If only": giá mà
20.	A	câu điều kiện loại 1

Exercise 76: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	mệnh đề thời gian
2.	A	Do you want: hỏi về kế hoạch
3.	B	will you be doing: hỏi về kế hoạch
4.	A	what marriage is: câu hỏi gián tiếp
5.	D	câu điều kiện trộn
6.	B	câu điều kiện loại 2
7.	B	câu điều kiện loại 2
8.	A	Providing: (câu điều kiện loại 2)
9.	C	câu điều kiện loại 3 đảo ngữ
10.	A	either S1 or S2: chia động từ theo S2

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	câu điều kiện trộn
12.	B	câu điều kiện loại 1
13.	C	câu điều kiện loại 3
14.	B	câu điều kiện trộn
15.	A	câu điều kiện loại 2 đảo ngữ
16.	C	câu điều kiện loại 3
17.	A	mệnh đề với after/ before
18.	A	câu điều kiện loại 1, mệnh lệnh
19.	D	câu điều kiện loại 2 với "or"
	D	câu điều kiện loại 1

Exercise 77: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	make excuses: xin xỏ hoài
2.	A	send for: phái đi
3.	B	should not (advice) không nên; might (possibility) có thể
4.	C	deepen (v) làm sâu hơn
5.	A	must have left (speculation)
6.	A	must (speculation) chắc phải
7.	D	should (advice) nên; might (possibility) có thể
8.	C	will be wearing: nhận dạng
9.	A	clap one's hands: vỗ tay
10.	C	broke out: nổ ra

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	ask O to V: yêu cầu ai làm gì
12.	D	if it hadn't been for: nếu không
13.	D	has: hiện tại hoàn thành
14.	A	needn't: không cần thiết
15.	B	be required to V: được yêu cầu
16.	C	take exam: thi, dự thi
17.	D	take in: hiểu, nhận thức được
18.	A	be to V: convey ideas (phải)
19.	A	reduce pressure: giảm áp lực
20.	B	should not be put (bị động)

Exercise 78: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	chia động từ theo chủ ngữ đứng trước "as well as"
2.	C	interviewed for job: phỏng vấn
3.	C	restructure: tái cấu trúc kinh tế
4.	B	interact with each other: tương tác
5.	D	producing (reduced clause)
6.	A	enable O to V: giúp.... làm gì
7.	C	could fly (câu điều kiện loại 2)
8.	D	can't (deduction: suy luận) không thể
9.	D	warn s.b (not) to V: cảnh báo
10.	C	can: possibility; should (advice)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	would rather O V (simple past) (không có thực)
12.	B	must (deduction: suy luận)
13.	D	Hardly...when: ngay khi
14.	A	commit a foul/ a mistake/ a crime: phạm lỗi/ tội
15.	A	cannot (deduction: suy luận)
16.	B	has been studying: tính đến giờ
	B	should have gone: tiếc nuối
	C	can (ability) khả năng; needn't (unnecessity) không cần thiết
	D	must (deduction: suy luận) can (possibility) khả năng
	C	tell O (not) to V: bảo ai làm gì

BÀI 2. EMPHASIS - THỨC NHẤN MẠNH

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 79** đến **Exercise 85** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo phần chú giải nghĩa các đáp án, các cụm từ hoặc cấu trúc cố định.

Exercise 79. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	đảo ngữ với "No longer___"
2.	A	cấu trúc "No sooner__than"
3.	C	cấu trúc "hardly_when"
4.	A	đảo ngữ với "Never before___"
5.	A	đảo ngữ với "Rarely___"
6.	D	đảo ngữ với "Hardly_when"
7.	C	cấu trúc "hardly ever"
8.	B	đảo ngữ với "Hardly_when"
9.	B	cấu trúc "No sooner__than"
10.	D	cấu trúc "Not only__but also"

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	cấu trúc "No sooner__than"
12.	D	đảo ngữ với "Hardly_when"
13.	C	cấu trúc "Not only_but_as well "
14.	C	đảo ngữ với "No longer___"
15.	B	đảo ngữ với "Only___"
16.	D	đảo ngữ với "Hardly_when"
17.	A	đảo ngữ với "So adj/adv___"
18.	C	cấu trúc "Not only__but also"
19.	D	cấu trúc "hardly ever"
20.	A	cấu trúc "Not only__but also"

Exercise 80. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	cấu trúc "Never before___"
2.	B	cấu trúc "It be only then that___"
3.	A	cấu trúc "Only by ___"
4.	B	As soon as = No sooner __than
5.	B	đảo ngữ với "At no time___"
6.	D	cấu trúc "Not only__but also"
7.	A	đảo ngữ với "Seldom ___"
8.	C	đảo ngữ với "Rarely ___"
9.	B	đảo ngữ với "Nowhere ___"
10.	B	cấu trúc "Not only_but_aso well"

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	đảo ngữ với câu điều kiện loại 3
12.	D	biến đổi câu so sánh = điều kiện
13.	A	đảo ngữ với câu điều kiện loại 2
14.	A	đảo ngữ với câu điều kiện trộn
15.	A	đảo ngữ với câu điều kiện loại 3
16.	A	nhấn mạnh dùng câu chẻ
17.	C	nhấn mạnh dùng câu chẻ
18.	C	nhấn mạnh dùng cause and effect
19.	B	nhấn mạnh dùng "Here"
20.	B	đảo ngữ với câu điều kiện loại 3

Exercise 81: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp	Giải thích
-----	-----	------------

Câu	Đáp	Giải thích
-----	-----	------------

	án	
1.	C	nationality: quốc tịch
2.	C	instruction: chỉ dẫn, hướng dẫn
3.	D	respect: kính trọng, tôn trọng
4.	D	importance: tầm quan trọng
5.	C	communicative satellites: vệ tinh thông tin
6.	C	necessity: sự cần thiết
7.	A	widely used: sử dụng rộng rãi
8.	A	cụm từ: at the age of = ở độ tuổi
9.	D	explanation: sự giải thích
10.	D	attraction: lực hút, sức hút

	án	
11.	C	make O adj: làm cho __
12.	D	beyond my expectation
13.	B	Bodybuilding: môn thể hình
14.	A	enthusiast: người hâm mộ
15.	D	status: địa vị (xã hội, kinh tế, chính trị)
16.	D	Philosophy: triết học, triết lí
17.	B	There's no need: không cần
18.	C	champion: nhà vô địch
19.	A	offer reward: phần thưởng
20.	C	gold medal: huy chương vàng

Exercise 82: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	limitation (n) hạn chế, giới hạn
2.	D	applicants (n) người tham dự
3.	D	letter of recommendation: thư giới thiệu
4.	B	experience: kinh nghiệm
5.	C	responsibility: trách nhiệm
6.	B	Unemployment: nạn thất nghiệp
7.	B	temporary employment: việc làm tạm thời
8.	C	make an application: làm/ nộp đơn xin việc
	C	certificate: bằng, chứng chỉ
	A	undergraduate: học sinh đại học chưa tốt nghiệp

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	in agreement: đồng quan điểm
12.	D	marriage: hôn nhân, đám cưới
13.	C	physical attractiveness: diện mạo, vẻ đẹp hình thể
14.	B	bride: cô dâu
15.	D	equality: bình đẳng
16.	C	in the majority: số đông
17.	B	language and communication: ngôn ngữ và giao tiếp
18.	C	catch eye: bắt gặp ánh mắt, nhìn
	D	signal: tín hiệu
	C	educator: nhà giáo dục

Exercise 83: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
-----	--------	------------

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
-----	--------	------------

1.	B	developments: sự phát triển
2.	B	depression: khủng hoảng, lo âu
3.	C	encouragement: sự khích lệ
4.	B	subsidy: tiền/ khoản trợ cấp
5.	A	initial challenge: thách thức đầu
6.	B	economies: nền kinh tế
7.	D	sand: cát
8.	C	explorers: nhà thám hiểm
9.	C	corridors: thung lũng, rãnh
10.	A	computing technology: công nghệ máy tính

11.	B	hummock: đỉnh gò (explanation)
12.	D	expedition đi với explore
13.	B	territory: vùng đất, lãnh thổ
14.	D	camel: lạc đà (explanation)
15.	B	legal protection: luật bảo vệ
16.	B	reserves (n) khu sinh thái
17.	A	Biodiversity: đa dạng sinh học
18.	B	experiences: sự trải nghiệm
19.	D	desertification: sa mạc hóa
20.	A	Biology: môn/ ngành sinh học

Exercise 84: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	must have been caused (đoán)
2.	D	were: câu điều kiện loại 2
3.	A	the first/ last/ only to V
4.	A	beat = defeat: đánh bại
5.	A	it will snow (prediction dự đoán/ dự báo - tương lai)
6.	C	can't have been taken (đoán)
7.	B	S wish S would/ could V
8.	A	qui trình bắt buộc
9.	A	be able to V: có khả năng
10.	B	needn't be watered: unnecessary

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	can't be (negative deduction)
12.	D	relate to: liên quan đến
13.	D	well-prepared: chuẩn bị kỹ
14.	B	have trouble V-ing: gặp rắc rối
15.	B	take responsibility for: chịu trách nhiệm về
16.	A	enjoy V-ing: thích làm gì
17.	C	join hands: chung tay/ sức
18.	A	happened đi với yesterday
19.	B	prediction dự đoán/ dự báo
20.	D	make sure: hãy chắc chắn rằng

Exercise 85: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	It is said/ believed...(cấu trúc)
2.	D	depends: (thực tế khách quan)
3.	A	reaches: mệnh đề phụ "when"
C		enjoy V-ing: thích làm gì

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	love V-ing: thích làm gì
12.	C	was buried: bị chôn vùi
13.	B	key words: In the last... (htht)
A		key words: In the 19th century

5.	D	Being/ As NP: mệnh đề lược
6.	C	will: (promise or swear)
7.	B	lately đi với hiện tại hoàn thành
8.	C	key words: during the 1970s
9.	D	keeps – in accordance with fails
10.	B	want s.t: muốn điều gì

15.	C	be busy V-ing = be busy with
16.	A	showing possibility “could”
17.	D	agree: đồng ý
18.	B	be willing to V: sẵn sàng làm gì
19.	A	To become (purpose: mục đích)
20.	C	Does/ Do/ Did S V__?

Phần lời giải cho bài tập **Exercise 86** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo phần chú giải nghĩa các từ được thay thế để câu đúng về ngữ nghĩa và ngữ pháp.

Exercise 86: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	sửa là: went (quá khứ)
2.	D	sửa là: thought (xảy ra trước)
3.	B	sửa là: visit (vì có every year)
4.	C	sửa là: since (present perfect)
5.	A	sửa là: will have got... (by the end)
6.	A	sửa là: involved (passive voice)
7.	B	sửa là: is causing (Air pollution)
8.	D	sửa là: doing to (do damage to)
9.	A	sửa là: Unlike: không như
10.	D	sửa là: as (work as)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	sửa là: at (arrive at the gate)
12.	C	sửa là: to lie: nằm
13.	B	sửa là: ask question
14.	C	sửa là: ask (mệnh đề phụ when)
15.	B	sửa là: air-conditioned (adj)
16.	B	sửa là: was (chủ ngữ What I...)
17.	B	sửa là: arrive (mệnh đề when)
18.	A	sửa là: told – phù hợp với was
19.	B	sửa là: is (chủ ngữ Dreaming)
20.	D	sửa là: indicate (cần động từ)

BÀI 3. GERUNDS - DANH ĐỘNG TỪ

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 87** đến **Exercise 93** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo phần chú giải nghĩa các đáp án, các cụm từ hoặc cấu trúc cố định.

Exercise 87. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	remember V-ing: nhớ quá khứ
2.	C	be going to V: intension
3.	D	to go to: tới đâu đó
4.	C	put on clothes; mặc quần áo
5.	B	encourage that S should V

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	apologize for: xin lỗi
12.	D	S suggest (that) S V(bare inf)
13.	D	look after: chăm sóc
14.	C	Reducing (danh động từ làm S)
15.	A	need V-ing: cần được

6.	B	hate it that S V: ghét cái điều mà
7.	C	make s.b V: bắt ai làm gì
8.	B	watch s.b/s.t V/ V-ing: quan sát
9.	B	S wish S would/ could V (muốn)
10.	B	expect to V: mong muốn làm gì

16.	A	S require (that) S V(bare inf)
17.	C	resent V-ing: chống đối việc gì
18.	C	bring down: kìm hãm, giảm
19.	A	get adj = be adj
20.	C	need V-ing: cần được

Exercise 88. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	like V-ing: thích làm gì
2.	D	Would you mind V-ing?
3.	C	Windsurfing: lướt ván nhờ gió
4.	C	feel like V-ing: thích làm gì
5.	B	enjoy V-ing: thích làm gì
6.	D	regret to V: tiếc phải (làm gì)
7.	B	having = who has (reduced clause)
8.	D	forget V-ing: tiếc vì đã (làm gì)
9.	D	stand there V-ing: ở đó (làm gì)
10.	A	stop V-ing: bỏ đi thói quen

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	standing = who stands
12.	D	stop to V: dừng việc này để
13.	A	Do you mind V-ing: làm ơn
14.	C	insist on V-ing: nài nỉ
15.	B	life-threatening (adj) đe dọa
16.	D	limit oneself to V-ing: cắt giảm
17.	A	afraid of V-ing: e sợ (làm gì)
18.	D	deny V-ing: chối bỏ việc đã làm
19.	B	have trouble V-ing: gặp rắc rối
20.	A	enjoy V-ing: thích làm gì

Exercise 89. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	hate V-ing: ghét (làm việc gì đó)
2.	A	instead of V-ing: thay vì
3.	B	recall V-ing: nhớ lại
4.	A	sau giới từ dùng V-ing
5.	B	have an excuse of V-ing: tiếc
6.	B	consider V-ing: xem xét/ tính đến
7.	C	be busy V-ing = be busy with V-ing
8.	D	Scuba-diving: môn lặn có thiết bị
9.	D	When V-ing: mệnh đề lược
B	Before V-ing: mệnh đề lược	

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	who prepares: mệnh đề lược
12.	D	produce goods: sản xuất hàng
13.	C	It's no good V-ing: không đáng
14.	A	Rowing: bơi thuyền
15.	B	need V-ing: (bị động) nên làm
16.	C	Collecting: gerund làm chủ ngữ
17.	D	sitting = who sits: (reduced)
18.	B	spend time V-ing: dùng--- làm
19.	C	resist V-ing: cự lại
A	reduced	clause using V-ing

Exercise 90: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	look forward to V-ing: mong chờ
2.	C	let O V: thả, cho phép
3.	C	remember V-ing: nhớ việc đã làm
4.	B	remember to V: ghi nhớ nhiệm vụ
5.	C	suggest V-ing: gợi ý việc gì
6.	C	mind V-ing: phiền (đề nghị)
7.	C	give up V-ing: từ bỏ việc gì
8.	B	stop to V: dừng việc này để làm
9.	D	stop V-ing: từ bỏ thói quen
10.	C	prevent from V-ing: ngăn cản

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	promise not to V: hứa sẽ không
12.	B	want s.b to V: muốn ai làm gì
13.	A	remember V-ing: nhớ đã làm gì
14.	A	can't/ couldn't help V-ing
15.	C	like/ would like to V: thích làm
16.	A	avoid V-ing: tránh việc gì
17.	D	stop to V: dừng để làm gì
18.	C	enjoy V-ing: thích làm gì
19.	C	finish V-ing: hoàn tất/ kết thúc
20.	D	risk V-ing: liều mạng làm gì

Exercise 91: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	allow s.b to V: cho phép ai làm gì
2.	D	be allowed to V: được cho phép
3.	A	had better V = should V (nên)
4.	D	need to be P.P/ V-ing
5.	A	can't/ couldn't help V-ing
6.	A	help s.b to V/ V/ with s.t (giúp)
7.	C	use money to V: dùng tiền để
8.	B	finish V-ing: hoàn tất/ kết thúc
9.	C	for o to V: đối với ai làm gì
10.	A	stop s.b from V-ing: ngăn ai làm

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	carry on V-ing: thực hiện
12.	A	fancy to V: vui vì
13.	D	put off V-ing: hoãn, hủy việc gì
14.	C	imagine to V: tưởng tượng việc
15.	C	give up V-ing: từ bỏ việc gì
16.	B	in order to V: để mà làm gì
17.	A	can't bear V-ing: không chịu nổi
18.	A	consider V-ing: tính/ xét đến
19.	D	suggest V-ing: gợi ý làm gì
20.	C	cause to V: gây ra điều gì

Exercise 92: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	quit V-ing: từ bỏ
B	go on V-ing: tiếp tục	

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	seem to V: dường như
A	tend to V: có xu hướng làm gì	

3.	A	allow s.b to V: cho phép ai làm gì
4.	D	admit V-ing: thú nhận đã làm gì
5.	A	decide to V: quyết định làm gì
6.	C	agree to V: đồng ý làm gì
7.	A	learn how to V: học cách làm gì
8.	B	fail to V: thất bại
9.	B	decide not to V: quyết định không
10.	A	encourage s.b to V: khích lệ

13.	D	pretend not to V: giả vờ không
14.	C	happen to V: tình cờ
15.	D	to lose weight: giảm cân
16.	C	know to V: biết nên làm gì
17.	C	understand what to V: biết việc
18.	D	show how to V: chỉ/ bày cách
19.	A	forget to V: quên nhiệm vụ
20.	C	manage to V: cố làm gì

Exercise 93: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	charge for: ra giá, bắt trả
2.	D	consider V-ing; change job
3.	D	touch s.t: chạm vào
4.	D	might have been delayed (đoán)
5.	C	should be cleaned (suggestion)
6.	B	must be taken: (điều bắt buộc)
7.	A	can't have seen (suy đoán)
8.	C	score a goal: ghi điểm/ ghi bàn
9.	A	last: kéo dài (độ dài thời gian)
D		must have started (suy đoán)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	needn't have studied (đoán)
12.	A	faded: mờ, bạc màu
13.	D	toss the coin: tung xu xấp ngửa
14.	A	needn't be taken (unnecessity)
15.	C	cooled off: làm mát – swim
16.	C	will be cancelled (kế hoạch)
17.	A	the first/ last/ only to V
18.	D	explore: khám phá
19.	B	has risen (thống kê)
B		apply for; xin việc

Phần lời giải cho bài tập **Exercise 94** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo phần chú giải nghĩa các từ được thay thế để câu đúng về ngữ nghĩa và ngữ pháp.

Exercise 94: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	sửa là: going out (sau giới từ)
2.	B	sửa là: learn (had better V)
3.	A	sửa là: On hearing (sau giới từ)
4.	D	sửa là: repairing (need V-ing)
5.	D	sửa là: to do (nothing to V)
6.	A	sửa là: Getting (reduced clause)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	sửa là: prevent (it be adj to V)
12.	D	sửa là: polluting (can't help)
13.	D	sửa là: watching (sau suggest)
14.	B	sửa là: settle (have s.b V)
15.	C	sửa là: visiting (reduced clause)
B		sửa là: to enrich (chỉ mục đích)

7.	A	sửa là: not helping (đã xảy ra)
8.	B	sửa là: to unlock (try to V: cố)
9.	A	sửa là: Opening (reduced clause)
10.	B	sửa là: using (stop V-ing: từ bỏ)

17.	D	sửa là: to fight (it be adj to V)
18.	B	sửa là: to conserve (care to V)
19.	A	sửa là: giving (mind V-ing)
20.	B	sửa là: finish (have to V)

BÀI 4. INFINITIVES - ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN THỂ

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 95** đến **Exercise 70** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo phần chú giải nghĩa các đáp án, các cụm từ hoặc cấu trúc cố định.

Exercise 95. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	keep pace with: bắt kịp
2.	D	recommend that S V(bare inf)
3.	B	to be caught V: bị bắt quả tang
4.	C	provide s.t for s.b: cung cấp cho
5.	D	opposes: chống đối/ phản đối
6.	B	take responsibility for (cấu trúc)
7.	C	let s.b off: thả, phóng thích
8.	B	take up: nhận/ chơi môn thể thao
9.	C	acknowledge: chứng nhận
10.	A	catch up on: bắt kịp

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	pass exam: vượt qua kì thi
12.	D	get dressed up: mặc
13.	B	keep pace with: bắt kịp
14.	A	To be good (chỉ mục đích)
15.	D	put out: dập, tắt
16.	C	abide: tuân thủ
17.	B	maintain beauty: duy trì sắc đẹp
18.	C	childless: vô sinh
19.	A	nothing but to V: không_ngoài
20.	B	convey: truyền tải, dịch

Exercise 96. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	stand up for: thay thế, đảm nhận
2.	C	keep up: giữ nguyên sắc mặt
3.	A	part with: chia sẻ, nhường
4.	B	tell s.b (not) to V: bảo ai làm gì
5.	B	Look no further!: ngay trước mắt
6.	D	do s.b a favor: làm ơn giúp
7.	B	Put s.t down: bỏ xuống, buông
8.	C	would like s.b to V: muốn ai làm
9.	B	be allowed to V: cho phép làm

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	get s.b to V/ let s.b V
12.	D	Make sure: hãy chắc chắn rằng
13.	A	insist that S V(bare inf)
14.	B	refuse to V: từ chối việc gì
15.	B	reject the offer: từ chối đề nghị
16.	B	engage: lấy ý kiến chuyên gia
17.	B	be willing to V: sẵn sàng làm gì
18.	C	back you up: ủng hộ, chống lưng
C	have s.b V: nhờ ai làm gì	

10.	D	offer to V: sẵn lòng làm gì
-----	---	-----------------------------

20.	D	promote: thúc đẩy
-----	---	-------------------

Exercise 97. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	To become (chỉ mục đích)
2.	C	Raise hands: giơ tay xung phong
3.	A	seem to be V-ed: dường như được
4.	B	sit down: ngồi xuống (ghế)
5.	C	refuse to V: từ chối làm gì đó
6.	B	cut down on: cắt giảm, giảm
7.	C	need s.b to V: cần ai giúp đỡ
8.	B	run out of: cạn kiệt, hết
9.	A	exchange money: đổi tiền
A		To win (chỉ mục đích)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	tell__apart: phân biệt
12.	B	make no differences: không làm thay đổi
13.	A	take part in: tham gia, tham dự
14.	A	attract attention: thu hút sự chú ý
15.	A	make s.b to V: bắt ai làm gì đó
16.	D	vote for: bầu cử, bỏ phiếu
17.	B	attract: thu hút, hấp dẫn
18.	B	commute: di chuyển, đi làm
19.	B	It take O time to V: mất thời gian để ai đó làm gì
A		the first/ last/ only to V

Exercise 98: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	afford to V: đủ tiền để
2.	A	how to V: học làm gì
3.	D	dare to V: dám làm gì
4.	D	have s.b V: nhờ/ có ai làm gì
5.	B	get s.t past participle: có việc gì được làm bởi
6.	C	hope to V: hi vọng sẽ làm gì
7.	C	sau modal verbs dùng bare verbs
8.	D	having and working (nối bởi "and")
9.	D	claim to V: khẳng định, cho rằng
D		wh - words S should V (cấu trúc)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	advice s.b (not) to V: khuyên bảo
12.	B	would rather (not) V
13.	D	spend time V-ing (cấu trúc)
14.	A	offer to V: đề nghị làm giúp
15.	D	prove to V: chứng minh việc gì
16.	B	There's no point in V-ing
17.	D	delay/ risk + V-ing
18.	A	be willing to V: sẵn sàng làm gì
19.	C	keep on V-ing: tiếp tục làm gì
A		make s.b to V: bắt ai làm gì đó

Exercise 99: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	It be adj (for O) to V (cấu trúc)
2.	B	It's up to O to V: tùy ai làm gì
3.	B	be fed up with V-ing: chán ngấy
4.	C	be ready to V: sẵn sàng làm gì
5.	C	sitting = who sit (reduced clause)
6.	C	enjoy V-ing: thích làm gì
7.	B	Collecting: gerund làm chủ ngữ
8.	C	It's no use V-ing: không đáng để
9.	C	giới từ V-ing/ it's adj for O to V
10.	C	Looking: gerund làm chủ ngữ

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	When V-ing (reduced clause)
12.	A	On V-ing = When/ While V-ing
13.	D	gerund/ infinitive – chủ ngữ
14.	B	regret to V: tiếc vì phải làm
15.	C	make s.t adj; ploughing (gerund)
16.	D	remember V-ing: việc đã làm
17.	C	would you mind V-ing (cấu trúc)
18.	A	tell O (not) to V): bảo ai làm gì
19.	C	want O to V: muốn ai làm gì
20.	B	any thing to V: có gì để

Exercise 100: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	passed – mệnh đề sau when
2.	C	postpone: hoãn, hủy (put off)
3.	B	will be held: kế hoạch tương lai
4.	D	blame s.b for N/ V-ing
5.	D	had better V= should V: nên làm
6.	D	chỉ khả năng possibility
7.	B	must be observed (trách nhiệm)
8.	B	question tag
9.	A	can be picked (bị động với “can”)
10.	A	put up with: chịu đựng (tolerate)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	should be typed: điều nên làm
12.	A	mustn't: không được phép
13.	B	couldn't (past ability)
14.	A	needn't (unnecessity)
15.	D	hadn't been: điều kiện loại 3
16.	C	protect s.t: bảo vệ thứ gì đó
17.	D	interfere with: can thiệp, cản
18.	C	must still be sitting (bổn phận)
19.	C	make film: làm phim
20.	A	must: chắc (deduction: suy ra)

Exercise 101: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	mệnh đề điều kiện với “or”
A		was stressed (bị động)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	take care of: chăm sóc
C		labor-saving: tiết kiệm sức

3.	A	dip into: chú ý đầu, vùi đầu
4.	C	can't (speculation – suy đoán)
5.	D	belong to: thuộc về
6.	C	chia theo chủ ngữ sau
7.	A	to prevent from: ngăn cản
8.	D	contribute to: đóng góp
9.	C	có "so far" - hiện tại hoàn thành
10.	D	go over: kiểm tra lại

13.	C	knock down: phá, dỡ
14.	B	separated by: bị chia tách
15.	C	prefer to be taught: muốn được
16.	C	remain a mystery: bí mật
17.	B	needn't be typed (unnecessity)
18.	D	dismissed: hủy, bỏ
19.	D	can be visited (bị động)
20.	B	penalty awarded: thưởng penalty

Phần lời giải cho bài tập **Exercise 102** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo phần chú giải nghĩa các từ được thay thế để câu đúng về ngữ nghĩa và ngữ pháp.

Exercise 102: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	sửa là: eating (feel like V-ing)
2.	B	sửa là: creep/ creeping
3.	D	sửa là: to give (forget to V)
4.	C	sửa là: to send (adj enough to V)
5.	C	sửa là: saying (without V-ing)
6.	D	sửa là: to tell (something to do)
7.	B	sửa là: getting (can't help V-ing)
8.	D	sửa là: to learn (adj to V)
9.	B	sửa là: not having (enjoy V-ing)
10.	B	sửa là: eating (recommend V-ing)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	sửa là: from entering (sau stop)
12.	A	sửa là: Knowing (reduced clause)
13.	C	sửa là: to enter (allow to V)
14.	B	sửa là: to read (advice O to V)
15.	B	sửa là: falling (keep V-ing)
16.	B	sửa là: interested (cấu trúc)
17.	D	sửa là: to do (how to V)
18.	C	sửa là: go (let s.b V)
19.	D	sửa là: wait (do nothing but V)
20.	C	sửa là: by working (sau giới từ)

BÀI 5. THE PASSIVE VOICE - THỂ BỊ ĐỘNG

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 103** đến **Exercise 106**, cung cấp một hình thức viết lại câu gốc đã cho sao cho không làm thay đổi ngữ nghĩa của câu gốc (sử dụng cấu trúc câu bị động).

Exercise 103: Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

→ I had the gate painted last week.

→ It is recommended that we should stay at the city center.

→ Jack is going to be served breakfast in bed on his birthday.

→ It is thought that Maradona is the best football player in the 20th century.

→ They have the story told again.

-
- This flower *is watered by my father every morning.*
 - John gets *his shirt cleaned.*
 - This dish *is brought to me by the waiter.*
 - Fiona *was invented to John's birthday party last month.*
 - I will *get a new dress made.*
 - She will *have her car washed tomorrow.*
 - Anne has *had her composition typed.*
 - It is *found that the job is not suitable for a girl like her.*
 - Her ticket *was showed to the airline agent by her.*
 - The dinner *is being prepared by her mother in the kitchen.*
 - Rick *will have his hair cut.*
 - These postcards *are sent to us by our friend.*
 - Our teeth *should be cleaned twice a day.*
 - He had *his car repaired.*
 - Five million *pounds was left to her relatives by her.*

Exercise 104: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

- It was *explained that this powerful engine pulled the train.*
- The English *grammar has been explained by our teacher.*
- The accident *was caused in this city by some drunk drivers.*
- This story *was told to them by their grandmother when they visited her last week.*
- Tom's *parents will be visited by him next month.*
- This train *ticket was ordered for Tim's mother.*
- The *secretary wasn't phoned by the manager this morning.*
- It has been *decided that the company will go to the beach together at the weekend.*
- Alice was *appointed secretary for the meeting by the committee.*
- I was *told that his football team had played well last season.*
- Was *this beautiful dress bought by Mary?*
- A cookery *book is going to be bought by her next month.*
- These *old pictures won't be hung in the living room by me.*
- The new *project is found worthless.*
- This factory *wasn't built by the German during the Second World War.*
- I have *been persuaded that they will go with me to the stadium.*
- The note *wasn't taken to the manager by the secretary.*
- This house *and these cars are going to be painted for Christmas day by the Greens.*
- The farm *is going to be enlarged by the farmer.*

→ The cats had been fed by Ann before she went to the cinema.

Exercise 105: Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

- The pollution problems have been discussed by the students since last week.
- Those slums are going to be cleared.
- All the workers are notified that they will have to work extra hard this month.
- Has the most valuable painting in the national museum been stolen by the thieves.
- The roof is going to be mended tomorrow morning.
- The new president will be interviewed on TV.
- She often gets the heater maintained.
- I must have my teeth checked.
- She will have her dog examined.
- These boxes were handed to the customer by the shop assistant.
- How many languages are spoken in Canada?
- Alice was believed to pass the driving test.
- They had the shoplifter arrested.
- Have the Christmas cards been sent to your family?
- Are those shoes going to be repaired?
- Are you going to have your shoes repaired?
- The special cameras weren't showed to me.
- His nose has been broken in a football match by him.
- His new shoes are lent to his friends by him.
- Have above sentences been finished?

Exercise 106: Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

- It was discovered that this cotton was grown in Egypt.
- The first prize was awarded to the reporter by the board.
- We had this photograph taken when we were on holiday last summer.
- The broken cup is hidden in the drawer by him.
- It is promised that the performance will start on time.
- This room is kept tidy all the time.
- The Greens had their carpet cleaned.
- It was announced that the meeting was delayed until next week.
- The party was voted a great success.
- We had our car repaired.
- I am informed that the director is going to take a business trip to England.
- I have my hair cut by the hairdresser.
- Ann was given some bananas and some flowers by us.
- The flowers were reported to be killed by frost.
- Lan got the window cleaned last week by her brother.

- The fridge was moved into the living room.
 → I was told that you were the architect in this city.
 → Jill got her new dress made by the tailor.
 → Some cups of tea were brought to the visitors in the next room by her.
 → The wine should be opened three hours before it is used.

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 107** đến **Exercise 108** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo phần chú giải nghĩa các đáp án, các cụm từ hoặc cấu trúc cố định.

Exercise 107. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	keep s.b occupied: bận rộn
2.	D	cấu trúc "be said/ believed..."
3.	B	đảo ngữ nhấn mạnh "Up/ Down"
4.	C	divert: điều chuyển hướng
5.	C	Founded: được thành lập
6.	B	is cleaned: present passive
7.	A	key words: right now
8.	D	have s.t done by s.b (form)
9.	C	was broken: past passive
10.	A	were called: past passive

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	hai mệnh đề chia ở bị động
12.	D	active to passive voice
13.	A	active to passive voice
14.	A	is disappeared: present passive
15.	C	have s.t done by s.b (form)
16.	B	be taken down: bị thuyết phục
17.	A	almond-shaped (tính từ ghép)
18.	C	stolen: bị đánh cắp, lấy cắp
19.	B	I was given (hậu quả điếm xấu)
20.	B	being excited: hào hứng

Exercise 108. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	demand to be V-ed: đòi được
2.	A	when interviewed (mệnh đề lược: khi được phỏng vấn)
3.	B	invited: người được mời
4.	B	Drunken: người bị say
5.	A	run business: điều hành công việc kinh doanh, làm ăn
6.	D	people concerned: người quan tâm
7.	B	Founded: được thành lập
8.	A	damaged: tổn hại, hủy hoại

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	It is important that S V(bare inf)
		A đảo ngữ nhấn mạnh với Only ở đầu câu
		A be recommended to V: đề nghị
14.	A	be used to s.t/ V-ing: quen với
15.	B	the first/ last to V (cấu trúc)
16.	A	It's imperative that S V(bare inf)
17.	A	Unused to s.t: không quen
		A are examined: present passive

9.	B	What is needed (mệnh đề làm chủ ngữ cho câu)
10.	A	question raised: câu hỏi được đưa ra, đề xuất

19.	B	avoid V-ing: tránh khỏi
20.	D	have been laid off: bị sa thải, mất việc

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 109** đến **Exercise 110** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm cvvcvc vc vc theo sửa lỗi với các phương án thay thế cho từ, cụm từ cho trước để câu trở nên đúng.

Exercise 109: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	of: die of = chết vì lí do nào đó
2.	A	divided: divide into = chia ra
3.	B	sửa là: are arrested: bị bắt giữ
4.	C	sửa là: was attacked: bị tấn công
5.	C	sửa là: are made: được làm để
6.	C	leading: dẫn đầu, hàng đầu
7.	D	their hiking: việc leo núi của họ
8.	A	It is generally believed that
9.	B	none vì either dùng cho 2 vật
10.	B	to be vì S be said to V (cấu trúc)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	must not be touched (bị động)
12.	A	sửa là: has not been examined
13.	B	will be discussed (bị động)
14.	A	sửa là: was thought (bị động)
15.	D	are be widened (bị động)
16.	D	sửa là: known (tính từ)
17.	B	sửa là: gets (thực tế)
18.	D	sửa là: by pushing (by V-ing)
19.	C	sửa là: washed (have s.t done)
20.	C	sửa là: was stolen (bị động)

Exercise 110: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	sửa là: had been sold (đã bán)
2.	B	sửa là: typed (được đánh máy)
3.	A	sửa là: is considered (được coi là)
4.	A	sửa là: believed (được tin là)
5.	C	sửa là: expression (biểu hiện)
6.	A	sửa là: are contained (được lưu)
7.	A	sửa là: Following (theo, tiếp theo)
8.	C	sửa là: made (have s.t V-ed)
9.	D	sửa là: was written (được viết)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	sửa là: only be answered
12.	D	sửa là: had disappeared
13.	B	sửa là: takes (either số ít)
14.	D	sửa là: no (dùng như tính từ)
15.	C	sửa là: had been seen (bị động)
16.	B	sửa là: has been built
17.	D	sửa là: transtated (have s.t V-ed)
18.	C	sửa là: are impressed
19.	B	sửa là: repaired (have s.t V-ed)

10.	B	sửa là: are used (được sử dụng)
-----	---	---------------------------------

20.	B	sửa là: is/ has been
-----	---	----------------------

BÀI 6. INDIRECT SPEECH - CÂU GIÁN TIẾP

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 111** đến **Exercise 112**, cung cấp một hình thức viết lại câu gốc đã cho sao cho không làm thay đổi ngữ nghĩa của câu gốc (sử dụng cấu trúc câu chuyển từ trực tiếp sang gián tiếp và ngược lại).

Exercise 111: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

- He told me not to make such a silly mistake again.
- She said she hadn't known me.
- The boy said he didn't what he would do.
- Paul reminded Sue to buy some bread.
- The man ordered the children not to touch anything in that room.
- Mary said that she had to go home to make the dinner.
- Tom asked me if/whether I was going to Ho Chi Minh City the next week/ the following week.
- Mom asked if I had finished my homework.
- She told me that she couldn't do it by herself.
- Lan wanted to know if Nam's brother lived in London.
- His father warned him not to repeat that mistake again.
- The photographer told me to give a smile.
- The librarian told the students not to leave those books on the table.
- He asked me if I had travelled abroad much.
- The boss asked the secretary who had written that note.
- My friend told me she had just received a postcard from his sister.
- He said that story had happened long before.
- He advised me not to buy that car.
- Nam offered to carry Lan's suitcase.
- Ann agreed to share the food with Dave.

Exercise 112: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

- The instructor warned the sportsman not to repeat that mistake again.
- The assistant told me to leave the address with the secretary.
- The manager asked the client to phone to him for an answer the next day/the following day.
- The father told the kid not to be so silly.

- The photographer told me to give a smile.
- Ann asked her friend to help her make a decision.
- The librarian told the student not to leave those books on the table, but to put them back on the shelf.
- The nurse told the child to be a good girl and to sit quietly for five minutes.
- My companion advised me to leave my things there.
- The chairman asked the participants not to discuss that question at the moment.
- We asked the guide if it would be safe to stay in the mountains for the night if the weather didn't changed for the better.
- The porter told me he would wake me up when the train arrived in Leeds.
- My wife told me that she would do the packing while I was away.
- He told me not to leave until he phoned me.
- The doctor said that after he left hospital they would take him to the South.
- The man explained to me that they would wait for the fisherman to return until it got dark.
- My neighbour told me she would let me know as soon as she heard from him.
- She said that she would live in town until her husband returned from the expedition and that when he returned, they would go to the seaside together.
- The mother told her son to sit still.
- John asked/told his friend to come and spend a week with him.

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 113** đến **Exercise 116** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo phần chú giải nghĩa các đáp án, các cụm từ hoặc cấu trúc cố định.

Exercise 113. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích	Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	tell s.b that (reported speech)	11.	A	tell s.b that (reported speech)
2.	B	lùi thì động từ "said that S V-ed"	12.	D	ask if/ whether S V (question)
3.	D	ask wh- S V (reported question)	13.	D	want to know wh-S V (question)
4.	A	tell s.b that (reported speech)	14.	B	ask wh- S V (reported question)
5.	C	ask wh- S V (reported question)	15.	A	wonder if/ whether (question)
6.	D	lùi thì động từ "said that"	16.	B	suggest that S V (bare inf)
7.	C	ask wh- S V (reported question)	17.	A	showing a truth (không đổi)
8.	C	advice s.b (not) to V (reported)	18.	A	advice s.b (not) to V (reported)
9.	C	want to know wh-S V (question)	19.	B	reported conditional sentence

10.	C	remind s.b to V (reported speech)
-----	---	-----------------------------------

20.	A	the previous day (reported time)
-----	---	----------------------------------

Exercise 114. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	ask if/ whether S V (question)
2.	A	ask s.b (not) to V (reported)
3.	B	showing a truth (không dối)
4.	C	ask if/ whether S V (question)
5.	A	discovered : thời điểm xác định
6.	C	warn s.b (not) to V: cảnh báo
7.	C	lùi thì động từ (reported)
8.	B	indirect to direct speech
9.	B	ask if/ whether S V (question)
D		deny V-ing: chối bỏ việc đã làm

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	mệnh đề thời gian với "when"
12.	A	suggest s.t (reported)
13.	C	ask wh- S V (reported question)
14.	B	reported speech statement
15.	A	advice s.b (not) to V (reported)
16.	D	would try (promise/ swear)
17.	B	promise to V: hứa hẹn điều gì
18.	D	ask wh- S V (reported question)
19.	C	asked (động từ dẫn)
D		ask wh- S V (reported question)

Exercise 115. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	ask wh- S V (reported question)
2.	A	suggest that S should V
3.	D	wants to know if/ whether S V
4.	A	wonder wh- S V (reported)
5.	B	promise to V: hứa hẹn điều gì
6.	A	ask wh- S V (reported question)
7.	B	pleaded with s.b (not) to V
8.	B	there (trạng ngữ chỉ nơi chốn)
9.	B	directed speech statement
A		offer s.b s.t: cho/ tặng ai, cái gì

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	wants to know if/ whether S V
12.	C	ask if/ whether S V (question)
13.	D	invite s.b to somewhere: mời
14.	B	ask wh- S V (reported question)
15.	D	ask wh- S V (reported question)
16.	A	ask if/ whether S V (question)
17.	A	advice s.b (not) to V (reported)
18.	B	ask wh- S V (reported question)
19.	A	invite s.b to somewhere: mời
C		advice s.b (not) to V (reported)

Exercise 116. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
A		live reporting or interpreting

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
B		advice s.b (not) to V (reported)

2.	A	the summer before (reported time)
3.	B	criticize s.b for V-ing: chỉ trích
4.	A	ask s.b (not) to V: yêu cầu làm gì
5.	C	threaten to V: đe dọa làm gì đó
6.	B	tell s.b that S V (reported)
7.	C	nave s.t V-ed (passive)
8.	C	tell s.b that S V (reported)
9.	A	beg s.b (not) to V: cầu xin ai
10.	D	ask wh- S V (reported question)

12.	B	tell s.b (not) to V: khuyên bảo
13.	B	remind s.b to V: nhắc nhở ai
14.	A	directed speech statement
15.	A	reproach s.b for (not) V-ing
16.	B	directed speech statement
17.	B	persuade s.b to V: thuyết phục
18.	A	showing the truth
19.	A	threaten to V: đe dọa làm gì
20.	C	tell s.b (not) to V: khuyên bảo

BÀI 7. SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES - MỆNH ĐỀ GIẢ ĐỊNH

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 117** đến **Exercise 119** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là các động từ được chia theo các hình thái giả định. Phần đáp án này rất dễ hiểu nếu người học xem phần lý thuyết liên trước.

Exercise 117. Complete each of the following sentences with the right forms of the verbs shown in brackets.

Câu	Đáp án
1.	(should) be
2.	(should) open
3.	(should) leave
4.	(should) accompany
5.	(should) fly
6.	(should) be
7.	(should) take
8.	(should) be
9.	(should) remain
10.	(should) find

Câu	Đáp án
11.	(should) learn
12.	(should) complete
13.	had not lost
14.	had not forgotten
15.	had shown
16.	had given
17.	had snowed
18.	had not opened
19.	had heard
20.	had known

Exercise 118. Complete each of the following sentences with the right forms of the verbs shown in brackets.

câu	đáp án
1.	were
2.	were
3.	knew
4.	wanted
5.	felt

câu	đáp án
6.	were
7.	were
8.	found
9.	would make
10.	would help

câu	đáp án
11.	would come
12.	would hurry
13.	would open
14.	would wait
15.	would write

câu	đáp án
16.	would join
17.	were
18.	had been
19.	would come
20.	had left

Exercise 119. Complete each of the following sentences with the right forms of the verbs shown in brackets.

câu	đáp án
1.	would you stop
2.	would not be
3.	Would he let
4.	would not want
5.	would come

câu	đáp án
6.	had arrived
7.	would visit
8.	were
9.	had helped
10.	were

câu	đáp án
11.	would win
12.	had made
13.	were
14.	were
15.	would telephone

câu	đáp án
16.	stay
17.	be
18.	worry
19.	Mind
20.	Be

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 120** đến **Exercise 122** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo các gợi ý sửa chữa phần sai, các chú giải nghĩa các đáp án, các cụm từ hoặc cấu trúc cố định.

Exercise 120: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	sửa là: paid (time clause)
2.	D	sửa là: had had (time clause)
3.	C	sửa là: end (time clause)
4.	B	sửa là: was (sự hòa hợp S-V)
5.	A	sửa là: had been (time clause)
6.	D	sửa là: cruelty (liệt kê danh từ)
7.	C	sửa là: would receive (quá khứ)
8.	D	sửa là: the two chapters
9.	A	sửa là: know how to repair
C		sửa là: is paid (động từ chia)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	sửa là: its (số ít Restaurant)
12.	B	sửa là: had discovered
13.	A	sửa là: has (tác động)
14.	B	sửa là: to be (want to V)
15.	C	sửa là: was formed (thành lập)
16.	B	sửa là: turn (it's important...)
17.	A	sửa là: such a difficult time
18.	C	sửa là: one/ number one
19.	A	sửa là: was hit (bị động)
C		sửa là: was caused

Exercise 121: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	sửa là: came (statement)
2.	B	sửa là: has been (vì Up to now)
3.	A	sửa là: had always taken
4.	A	sửa là: how different (No matter)
5.	D	sửa là: technologically advanced

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
A		sửa là: news stories
B		sửa là: had been left
C		sửa là: happened
D		sửa là: rang (time clause)
B		sửa là: has been waiting

A	sửa là: does not always
A	sửa là: has been writing
C	sửa là: had already started
C	sửa là: came (time clause)
C	sửa là: confused (bổ ngữ cho người)

16.	C	sửa là: had finished (time clause)
C	sửa là: that (vì economy số ít)	
C	sửa là: is (knowledge – số ít)	
A	sửa là: are the lakes (đảo ngữ)	
B	sửa là: since (mệnh đề mốc thời gian)	

Exercise 122: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	sửa là: would (reported speech)
2.	D	sửa là: had already left
3.	B	sửa là: too (too adj for O to V)
4.	A	sửa là: have (vì unless= if_not)
5.	C	sửa là: stop (vì recommend that S V(bare inf))
6.	B	sửa là: has been (vì Up to now)
7.	B	sửa là: have been making (vì since dùng cho present perfect)
8.	D	sửa là: get (time clause)
9.	C	sửa là: to win (first/ last to V)
10.	C	sửa là: could hardly (negative)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	sửa là: had been (trước quá khứ)
12.	A	sửa là: has struggled (since)
13.	C	sửa là: does (truth)
14.	C	sửa là: will be working
15.	A	sửa là: have I seen (đảo ngữ với Never ở đầu câu)
16.	A	sửa là: too (too adj for O to V)
17.	B	sửa là: does not (chủ ngữ là a lunch)
18.	C	sửa là: relaxing (tương đồng)
19.	C	sửa là: would vote (1920s)
A	sửa là: complained (phân từ)	

CHUYÊN ĐỀ IV. PHRASES VS. CLAUSES CHUYÊN ĐỀ VỀ CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ

BÀI 1. DEFINITIONS OF PHRASES AND CLAUSES KHÁI NIỆM CƠ BẢN VỀ CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ

Phần lời giải cho bài tập **Exercise 123** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo các gợi ý sửa chữa phần sai, các chú giải nghĩa các đáp án, các cụm từ hoặc cấu trúc cố định.

Exercise 123. Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
A	sửa là: In spite of (cụm từ)	

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
B	sửa là: but/ while	

2.	D	sửa là: because of (cụm từ)
3.	B	sửa là: when (time clause)
4.	B	sửa là: when/ because (clause)
5.	B	sửa là: bỏ but thay bằng dấu “,”
6.	B	sửa là: because (clause of reason)
7.	B	sửa là: so that (clause of purpose)
8.	B	sửa là: but (clause of concession)
9.	C	sửa là: because (clause of reason)
10.	B	sửa là: when (time clause)

12.	B	sửa là: because (clause of reason)
13.	A	sửa là: Despite/ In spite of
14.	A	sửa là: Although/ Though
15.	C	sửa là: bỏ but vì có Though
16.	C	sửa là: Although/ Though
17.	A	sửa là: Despite (phrase)
18.	B	sửa là: so that (clause of purpose)
19.	C	sửa là: because (clause of reason)
20.	A	sửa là: Despite/ In spite of

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 124** đến **Exercise 128** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo các chú giải nghĩa các đáp án, các cụm từ hoặc cấu trúc cố định.

Exercise 124. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	to learn (chỉ mục đích)
2.	A	because of (phrase of reason)
3.	C	S be such a(n) adj N that S V
4.	B	so many Ns that (quá nhiều đến)
5.	A	so much N that (quá nhiều đến)
6.	D	S be such a(n) adj N that S V
7.	A	S V so adv that S V (quá đến nỗi)
8.	B	In spite of N, S V (concession)
9.	D	S be such a(n) adj N that S V
10.	A	so that (clause of purpose)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	Despite (phrase of concession)
12.	B	since (time clause with since)
13.	D	Although (clause of concession)
14.	D	too adj/adv (for O) to V
15.	D	S be such a(n) adj N that S V
16.	D	(not) adj/adv enough to V
17.	D	Whenever (time clause)
18.	A	too adj/adv (for O) to V
19.	C	because (clause of reason)
20.	D	because of (phrase of reason)

Exercise 125. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	so that she can (clause of purpose)
2.	C	unless (conditional sentences 1)
3.	D	A and B (clause of concession)
4.	C	in case: phòng khi (điều kiện)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	while (adverbial time clause)
12.	B	after (adverbial phrase of time)
13.	B	so: nên, vậy nên (chỉ kết quả)
14.	C	In spite of (phrase of concession)

5.	D	despite (phrase of concession)
6.	B	in spite of (phrase of concession)
7.	C	Although (clause of concession)
8.	C	but (as a clause of concession)
9.	D	As soon as (adverbial time clause)
10.	D	until (adverbial time clause)

15.	C	because (clause of reason)
16.	A	unless (conditional sentences 1)
17.	D	Because of (phrase of reason)
18.	D	B and C: kết quả/ hậu quả là...
19.	A	However: tuy nhiên, tuy vậy
20.	C	so as not to (phrase of purpose)

Exercise 126: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	kể lại sự việc (take turning: rẽ)
2.	D	be allowed to v: được phép
3.	D	tell s.b about s.t: kể cho ai điều gì
4.	A	hiện tại với "Every day"
5.	D	conduct a survey: làm khảo sát
6.	B	maintain one's beauty:
7.	D	married to: lập gia đình với ai
8.	B	requires (chỉ thực tế)
9.	B	Either S1 or S2 V(chia theo S2)
10.	A	will give: chỉ kế hoạch

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	turn (hiện tại với usually)
12.	D	had been sitting (xảy ra trước)
13.	C	in case: phòng khi
14.	A	điều kiện loại 1 có thực
15.	A	taken = which are taken
16.	B	hate it that S V: ghét điều gì
17.	A	điều kiện loại 3 đảo ngữ
18.	A	be to V: phải làm gì (truyền ý)
19.	B	listed = which are listed
20.	C	require: yêu cầu (thực tế)

Exercise 127: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	schedule (lịch trình)
2.	B	sequence of tense (phối thì)
3.	B	mustn't (bổn phận, trách nhiệm)
4.	C	speculation (suy đoán quá khứ)
5.	D	needn't (unnecessity: không cần)
6.	C	are manufactured (thực tế)
7.	A	established (phân từ =tính từ)
8.	C	need s.b to V: cần ai giúp
9.	D	forget V-ing: quên việc đã làm
10.	B	should have tried (khuyên, trách)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	May -xin phép; can - cho phép
12.	B	needn't (unnecessity: không cần)
13.	A	must be (deduction: suy luận)
14.	B	isn't going to exist (suy diễn)
15.	D	was able to buy (chỉ khả năng)
16.	D	must (deduction: suy luận)
17.	B	might not (uncertainty)
18.	A	mustn't (lời nhắc nhở)
19.	A	needn't (unnecessity: không cần)
20.	B	be supposed to V: cho rằng

Exercise 128. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	While S was/were V-ing, S V-ed
2.	A	After S had V-ed, S V-ed
3.	C	Before V-ing, S V-ed
4.	B	After S has/ have V-ed, S will V
5.	D	Whenever S V, S V
6.	C	No sooner had S V-ed than S V-ed
7.	A	As soon as S V, S will V
8.	A	S had V-ed before S V-ed
9.	D	After S had V-ed, S V-ed
10.	C	As soon as S V, S will V

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	mệnh đề thời gian với “until”
12.	B	When (future time clause)
13.	B	When (future time clause)
14.	C	When (past time clause)
15.	D	mệnh đề thời gian với “until”
16.	C	mệnh đề với “no sooner_than”
17.	B	When (future time clause)
18.	A	When (future time clause)
19.	D	By the time S V, S will V
20.	C	When (future time clause)

BÀI 2. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES - CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 129** đến **Exercise 130** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là các động từ được chia theo các loại câu điều kiện phù hợp. Phần đáp án này rất dễ hiểu nếu người học xem phần lí thuyết liền trước.

Exercise 129. Complete each of the following sentences with the right forms of the verbs shown in brackets.

Câu	Đáp án
1.	would we have begun
2.	would they not have drunk
3.	would not have missed
4.	would he not have returned
5.	would not have left
6.	would have found
7.	would you have gone
8.	would not hesitate
9.	would have finished
10.	Would you have spoken

Câu	Đáp án
11.	would enter
12.	Would she not take
13.	would have received
14.	would appreciate
15.	Would she not be
16.	Would he have won
17.	Would they not have ordered
18.	Would she not visit
19.	Would you have bought
20.	had paid

Exercise 130. Complete each of the following sentences with the right forms of the verbs shown in brackets.

Câu	Đáp án
1.	were
2.	Were
3.	did not work
4.	had
5.	began
6.	saw
7.	did not trust
8.	did not have
9.	organized
10.	were

Câu	Đáp án
11.	had studied
12.	Had he been
13.	had thought
14.	had seen
15.	had we known
16.	Had it not rained
17.	had understood
18.	had put
19.	Had he written
20.	had chosen

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 131** đến **Exercise 133** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo các chú giải nghĩa các đáp án, các cụm từ hoặc cấu trúc cố định.

Exercise 131. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	câu điều kiện mixed
2.	D	câu điều kiện loại 3 với "Without"
3.	C	Unless (câu điều kiện loại 1)
4.	D	If I had had (câu điều kiện mixed)
5.	B	had known (câu điều kiện loại 3)
6.	D	if (câu điều kiện loại 1)
7.	C	câu điều kiện loại 3
8.	B	If only: giá như, giá mà (nuối tiếc)
9.	A	câu điều kiện mixed
A		meets (câu điều kiện loại 1)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	câu điều kiện mixed
12.	B	câu điều kiện loại 1
13.	B	were (câu điều kiện mixed)
14.	B	câu điều kiện mixed
15.	D	câu điều kiện loại 2
16.	C	câu điều kiện loại 3
17.	B	would (câu điều kiện loại 2)
18.	A	tell (câu điều kiện loại 1: truth)
19.	D	câu điều kiện loại 2
A		is (câu điều kiện loại 1: truth)

Exercise 132. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	will give (câu điều kiện loại 1)
2.	C	in case (câu điều kiện loại 1)
D		giá mà (câu điều kiện loại 2)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	câu điều kiện loại 2
12.	C	had (câu điều kiện loại 2)
C		câu điều kiện loại 3

4.	D	If only: giá mà (đã không xảy ra)
5.	A	unless (câu điều kiện loại 1: truth)
6.	D	câu điều kiện mixed
7.	B	câu điều kiện loại 2
8.	B	knew (câu điều kiện loại 2)
9.	A	Providing (câu điều kiện loại 2)
10.	D	câu điều kiện loại 3

14.	A	spoke (câu điều kiện loại 2)
15.	D	will complete (điều kiện loại 1)
16.	C	would happen (điều kiện loại 2)
17.	B	keep (câu điều kiện loại 1)
18.	A	study (câu điều kiện loại 1)
19.	C	câu điều kiện loại 2
20.	B	câu điều kiện loại 3 đảo ngữ

Exercise 133. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	câu điều kiện loại 2
2.	B	câu điều kiện loại 2
3.	C	câu điều kiện loại 2
4.	B	câu điều kiện loại 2
5.	C	câu điều kiện loại 2
6.	B	câu điều kiện loại 2
7.	D	câu điều kiện loại 2
8.	B	câu điều kiện loại 2
9.	B	câu điều kiện loại 2
10.	D	câu điều kiện loại 2

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	câu điều kiện loại 2
12.	B	chuyển đổi giả định ở quá khứ
13.	C	chuyển đổi giả định ở quá khứ
14.	A	chuyển đổi giả định ở hiện tại
15.	B	câu điều kiện loại 1
16.	A	chuyển đổi giả định ở hiện tại
17.	D	chuyển đổi giả định ở hiện tại
18.	C	chuyển đổi giả định ở quá khứ
19.	A	chuyển if__not = unless loại 1
20.	B	giả định quá khứ với "as if"

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 134** đến **Exercise 136**, cung cấp một hình thức viết lại câu gốc đã cho sao cho không làm thay đổi ngữ nghĩa của câu gốc (sử dụng cấu trúc câu điều kiện và các mệnh đề phụ có liên quan).

Exercise 134: Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

→ Had you not washed it in boiling water, it wouldn't have shrunk.

→ If we had not been using an out-of-date timetable, we wouldn't have missed the train.

→ He wouldn't have failed if his own men had not deserted him.

→ The accident wouldn't have been so terrible if they hadn't driven very quickly.

→ But for the rain, I would have taken the children to the beach. _____

→ People would ring me up if my number were in the directory.

→ Were the armed, we would have gun battles in the streets.

→ Life would not be made difficult if the shops delivered now. _____

→ He wouldn't feel the cold so much if he were not very thin. _____

-
- We could light a fire if we had matches.
 - He would have enjoyed his visit if it hadn't rained all the time.
 - Had I worked hard at school, I would have got a good job when I left.
 - Had it been for the closed-circuit television, they couldn't have spotted the shop-lifter.
 - If he had been wearing a shirt, they wouldn't have asked him to leave the dining-room.
 - Had the streets been clearly marked, it hadn't taken us a long time to find his house.
 - My friend said "if I were you I would sell it".
 - If I had much time, I would read more.
 - The rooms wouldn't look rather dark if they cleaned the windows.
 - If he polished his shoes, he would look smart.
 - His staff would work well if he paid them properly.

Exercise 135: Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

- She would enjoy parties if she were not shy.
- He would be healthy if he took regular exercise.
- If I had the right change, we could get tickets from the machine.
- Her English would improve if they didn't speak French to her.
- He would earn as much as I do if he worked overtime.
- He would not look unattractive if he shaved.
- If you didn't work too fast, you wouldn't make so many mistakes.
- If I could park near my office, I would come by car
- Were I not to live a long way from the centre, I were not always late for work. _____
- Were I to have a map, I could direct you. _____
- If we had a steak, we could cook over our camp fire.
- I could get through the bathroom window if I were not fat. _____
- If I asked him for help, he would help me.
- I would take the car, if I could drive.
- If we had a ladder, we could get over the wall.
- I would spend more time travelling to work if I didn't live near my office.
- Had I seen the signal, I would have stopped.
- I would have rung you if I had known your number.
- Had she known you were in hospital, she would have visited you.
- Had there been taxis, we wouldn't have come by bus.

Exercise 136: Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

- If we had got central heating, the house wouldn't be rather cold.
- I would like being alone in the house at night, if I had a dog. _____
- If I we hadn't got a lift, we wouldn't have reached the station in time.
- I would not be slow if I had got a vacuum cleaner.
- If I knew his address, I could write to him.
- Had we had time, we would have visited the museum.
- But for Tom's father's being on the Board, he wouldn't have got the job.
- Had he looked where he was going, he wouldn't have been run over.
- If I had been brought up in the country, I would have liked country life.
- Had I known he was so quarrelsome, I would not have invited him.
- If people didn't drive very fast, there would not be so many accidents.
- I would understand the English people if they spoke more slowly. _____
- Had they not paid the ransom at once, they might not have got the children back alive.
- It would be easy to find someone if the flats were clearly numbered. _____
- If you wiped your feet, you wouldn't make muddy marks all over the floor.
- Had we had enough money, we would have gone by air.
- Had you put your hand up, the bus would have stopped. _____
- Had the lift been working, I wouldn't have come up the stairs.
- If I had known how thin the ice was, I wouldn't have walked on it quite confidently
- If the champion had taken the fight seriously at first, they would win it.

BÀI 3. RELATIVE CLAUSES - MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 137** đến **Exercise 138**, cung cấp các đáp án đúng là các từ *which, that, whose, whom, who, where, when, why, or which* được điền vào các khoảng trống thích hợp để hoàn tất các câu cho trước.

Exercise 137. Fill in each gap with a suitable relative pronoun: *which, that, whose, whom, who, where, when, why, or which.*

câu	đáp án
1.	which
2.	which/ that
3.	which/ that
4.	whom/ that
5.	where

câu	đáp án
6.	which
7.	when
8.	whose
9.	which/ that
10.	which/ that

câu	đáp án
11.	when
12.	where
13.	whose
14.	who/ that
15.	which

câu	đáp án
16.	where
17.	which
18.	who/ that
19.	which
20.	who

Exercise 138. Fill in each gap with a suitable relative pronoun: *which, that, whose, whom, who, where, when, why, or which.*

câu	đáp án	câu	đáp án	câu	đáp án	câu	đáp án
1.	who/ that	6.	who	11.	which	16.	whose
2.	who	7.	which/ that	12.	which	17.	who
3.	whose	8.	whose	13.	where	18.	when
4.	that	9.	whose	14.	which	19.	where
5.	where	10.	who/ that	15.	which/ that	20.	why

Phần lời giải cho bài tập **Exercise 139**, cung cấp một hình thức viết lại câu gốc đã cho sao cho không làm thay đổi ngữ nghĩa của câu gốc (sử dụng cấu trúc câu có các mệnh đề quan hệ hoặc mệnh đề phụ có liên quan).

Exercise 139. Replace the relative clause in each of the following sentences by a suitable phrase using the *-ing, -ed, or to infinitive form.*

- Neil Armstrong was the first man to walk on the moon.
- I come from a city located in the southern part of the country.
- The children attending that school receive a good education.
- The scientists researching the causes of cancer are making progress.
- They live in a house built in 1980.
- We have an apartment overlooking the park.
- Yuri Gagarin became the first man flying into space.
- We stood on the bridge connecting the two halves of the building.
- I come from a city located in the southern part of the country.
- The vegetables sold in this supermarket are grown without chemicals.
- Do you know the woman coming toward us?
- The people waiting for the bus in the rain are getting wet.
- He lives in a city located in the southern part of the country.
- They have just bought a house built in 1890.
- He was the first man leaving the burning building.
- The couple living in the house next door are both college professors
- The people working in the rain are getting wet.
- The students not coming to the class yesterday explain their absence to the teacher.
- Did you get the message concerning the special meeting?
- Lan is the second student entering the classroom this morning.

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 140** đến **Exercise 142** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo các chú giải nghĩa các đáp án, các cụm từ hoặc cấu trúc cố định (chủ yếu liên quan đến các loại mệnh đề quan hệ).

Exercise 140. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	who (subject relative pronoun)
2.	C	which (subject relative pronoun)
3.	D	all are correct
4.	D	whom (object relative pronoun)
5.	D	A and C are correct
6.	B	whose (relative adjective)
7.	A	who could help you (relative clause)
8.	D	made by Mary (reduced clause)
9.	D	about which I told you (relative clause)
10.	D	that people died of years ago

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	which you will set off
12.	A	on which (sau giới từ)
13.	B	where I can see the lake
14.	C	why you can find valuable ...
15.	C	she hardly knows (lược)
16.	C	where (relative adverb)
17.	B	whose (relative adjective)
18.	A	Frank Zappa, who was
19.	C	which (sau dấu “,” dùng which)
20.	B	which is called Taunton

Exercise 141. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	where I live (relative clause)
2.	C	Those who (subject relative pronoun)
3.	C	where (relative adverb)
4.	D	whose daughter (relative adj)
5.	C	whom he had met in Japan
6.	A	whose (relative adjective)
7.	A	when (relative adverb of time)
8.	B	whom (object relative pronoun)
9.	B	that (both person and thing)
	C	whom (object relative pronoun)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	when (relative adverb of time)
12.	A	the book I need (mệnh đề quan hệ không giới hạn)
13.	D	Those who (see 2)
14.	C	A jelly fish, which is not
15.	B	non-defining relative clause
16.	A	who had (subject relative pronoun)
17.	A	non-defining relative clause
18.	B	some of who (subject pronoun)
19.	C	which (subject relative pronoun)
	D	whose (relative adjective)

Exercise 142. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp	Giải thích
-----	-----	------------

Câu	Đáp	Giải thích
-----	-----	------------

	án	
1.	C	which we are...(relative clause)
2.	B	which (subject relative pronoun)
3.	B	which (subject relative pronoun)
4.	A	why (theo sau "the reason")
5.	D	John Robbins, whom I spoke...
6.	C	most of which (relative clause)
7.	D	where (relative adverb)
8.	A	when (relative adverb of time)
9.	A	I could ask for help (lược)
10.	A	that (both person and thing)

	án	
11.	D	that (dùng sau đại từ bất định)
12.	D	B and C are correct (mệnh đề lược - reduced clause)
13.	C	The architect having moved
14.	D	being (reduced clause)
15.	A	terribly spoilt (reduced clause)
16.	B	whom (object relative pronoun)
17.	D	nối câu sử dụng relative clause
18.	D	nối câu sử dụng relative clause
19.	A	where (relative adverb)
20.	C	living next door (reduced clause)

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 143** đến **Exercise 144** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo các từ, cụm từ thay thế, các cụm từ hoặc cấu trúc cố định sao cho câu trở nên đúng (chủ yếu liên quan đến các loại mệnh đề quan hệ).

Exercise 143: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	whether (dùng với "or")
2.	C	would have let (điều kiện loại 3)
3.	D	been (điều kiện loại 3)
4.	C	that (thay cho cả người và vật)
5.	D	rules of the game to the children
6.	C	joining a club (join (v) without a preposition)
7.	A	writers (chỉ người - nhà văn)
8.	B	who (đại từ quan hệ chủ ngữ)
9.	A	which was written (bị động)
10.	A	who (đại từ quan hệ chủ ngữ chỉ người)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	swallowing (cùng từ loại)
12.	B	would never meet (split)
13.	C	further: học nâng cao
14.	B	thirty-minute (tính từ ghép)
15.	C	where (trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn)
16.	C	which (luôn dùng which/whom sau các giới từ)
17.	B	which (xem câu 16)
18.	A	who (đại từ quan hệ chủ ngữ)
19.	C	good (tính từ sau "to be")
		A which (đại từ quan hệ chủ ngữ chỉ vật)

Exercise 144: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

Câu	Đáp	Giải thích
-----	-----	------------

Câu	Đáp	Giải thích
-----	-----	------------

	án	
1.	B	stay (không dùng giới từ)
2.	C	that (thay cho cả người và vật)
3.	C	most of which (chủ ngữ chỉ vật)
4.	B	when (relative adverb of time)
5.	D	a frightening voice: giọng sợ hãi
6.	D	the United Nations' plan
7.	D	which is not their mother tongue
8.	D	are (chủ ngữ số nhiều)
9.	B	why (đi với "the reason")
10.	A	which (đại từ quan hệ chỉ vật)

	án	
11.	C	who (câu chẻ: it' S who/that)
12.	B	where (trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn)
13.	C	for which: vì điều đó
14.	C	whose (tính từ quan hệ sở hữu)
15.	C	who (đại từ quan hệ chủ ngữ)
16.	A	After being written (bị động)
17.	A	It is known (cấu trúc cố định)
18.	C	had been (quá khứ của quá khứ)
19.	C	similar: giống nhau
20.	A	whose (relative adjective)

BÀI 4. PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF PURPOSE CỤM TỪ & MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ MỤC ĐÍCH

Phần lời giải cho bài tập **Exercise 145**, cung cấp một hình thức viết lại câu gốc đã cho sao cho không làm thay đổi ngữ nghĩa của "so that"/ "in order that"/ câu gốc (sử dụng "so as to"/ "in order to" đã cho).

Exercise 145. Combine each of the two provided sentences using "so that"/ "in order that"/ "so as to"/ "in order to" where appropriate.

- The boys stood on the desks so that they could get a better view.
- We learn English so that we can have better communication with other people.
- We lower the volume so that we will not bother our neighbors.
- I will write to you so that you can know my decision soon.
- These girls were talking whispers so that no one could hear their conversation.
- The little girl feigned to be sick in order that we wouldn't make her work.
- I spoke loudly in order that everybody could hear me clearly.
- Mary often goes home as soon as the class is over in order that mother will not have to wait for her.
- Tom gets up early in order that he will not be late for school.
- Max hid the sweets under his pillow in order that his mother couldn't see them.
- Mary prepares her lesson carefully in order to get high marks in class.
- The thief changed his address all the time so as not to be found by the police.
- They did their job well in order to get a higher salary.
- You should walk slowly in order to be followed by your sister.
- I am studying hard in order to keep pace with my classmates.
- They are climbing higher in order to get a better view.

- He worked late last night so as to be free to go away tomorrow.
 → We put the milk in the fridge so as to make sure it won't spoil.
 → I cashed a check yesterday so as to make sure that I had enough money to go to market.
 → Danny pretended to be sick so as to stay at home.

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 146** đến **Exercise 147** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo các chú giải nghĩa các đáp án, các cụm từ hoặc cấu trúc cố định.

Exercise 146. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	in order that (clause of purpose)
2.	A	so that (clause of purpose)
3.	D	so/that (clause of cause & effect)
4.	D	clause of cause & effect
5.	B	so that (clause of purpose)
6.	A	so that (clause of purpose)
7.	D	so that (clause of purpose)
8.	C	so: vậy nên, thế nên (result)
9.	B	in order to (phrase of purpose)
10.	B	so that (clause of purpose)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	so: vậy nên, thế nên (result)
12.	D	Therefore: vì thế nên (result)
13.	B	so that (clause of purpose)
14.	C	so that (clause of purpose)
15.	D	so that (clause of purpose)
16.	C	so that (clause of purpose)
17.	D	so: vậy nên, thế nên (result)
18.	D	so that (clause of purpose)
19.	B	in order to (phrase of purpose)
20.	D	clause and phrases of purpose

Exercise 147. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	so: vậy nên, thế nên (result)
2.	C	in order to (phrase of purpose)
3.	B	so: vậy nên, thế nên (result)
4.	C	in order for O to V (purpose)
5.	B	so as not to (phrase of purpose)
6.	B	so that she can (clause of purpose)
7.	C	so as not to (phrase of purpose)
8.	A	so that (clause of purpose)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	so that (clause of purpose)
12.	D	so that.... (clause of purpose)
13.	A	so as not to (phrase of purpose)
14.	D	clause and phrases of purpose
15.	B	so that.... (clause of purpose)
16.	D	clause and phrases of purpose
17.	A	so that (clause of purpose)
18.	A	so that... (clause of purpose)

9.	D	so as not to (phrase of purpose)
10.	C	in order that (clause of purpose)

19.	A	in order that (clause of purpose)
20.	A	so: vậy nên, thế nên (result)

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 148** đến **Exercise 150** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo các từ, cụm từ thay thế, các cụm từ hoặc cấu trúc cố định sao cho câu trở nên đúng.

Exercise 148: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	sửa là: were (điều kiện loại 2)
2.	C	sửa là: would have been (loại 3)
3.	D	sửa là: had been (past subjunctive)
4.	A	sửa là: Thunder (uncount noun)
5.	B	sửa là: the number of Ns
6.	C	sửa là: the number of Ns
7.	B	sửa là: we rarely stop
8.	B	sửa là: had known (đk loại 3)
9.	A	sửa là: I had known (đk loại 3)
D		sửa là: would not have turned

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	sửa là: bỏ again vì return to
12.	D	sửa là: to go shopping (and)
13.	B	sửa là: whose (relative adjective)
14.	C	sửa là: if (dạng phủ định đã có)
15.	A	sửa là: kept (điều kiện loại 2)
16.	A	sửa là: If (điều kiện loại 1)
17.	B	sửa là: carrying (reduced clause)
18.	D	sửa là: work permit: giấy phép
19.	C	sửa là: caused (đã xảy ra)
B		sửa là: were (điều kiện loại 2)

Exercise 149: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	who (đại từ quan hệ chủ ngữ)
2.	C	who (đại từ quan hệ chủ ngữ)
3.	C	others: những người khác
4.	D	made up (bị động)
5.	B	outdoors last night (thứ tự)
6.	B	Mathew looked (câu hỏi gián tiếp)
7.	B	who (đại từ quan hệ chủ ngữ)
8.	A	whose (tính từ quan hệ sở hữu)
9.	B	haven't met (hiện tại hoàn thành)
10.	A	who (đại từ nghi vấn chủ ngữ)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	which (đại từ quan hệ)
12.	B	remains visible (V+C)
13.	C	use of (sử dụng danh từ)
14.	C	has visited (chia V cho Estioco)
15.	C	would be (điều kiện loại 2)
16.	B	when (trạng từ quan hệ)
17.	D	was stolen (câu bị động)
18.	A	to whom (mệnh đề quan hệ)
19.	B	where (chỉ địa danh)
D		racial (tính từ - danh từ)

Exercise 150: Find the ONE among the underlined and marked A, B, C, D in each of the following sentences that needs correcting:

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	so__that (cause & effect)
2.	A	such a lot of: nhiều đến mức
3.	A	Although (clause of concession)
4.	A	Despite (phrase of concession)
5.	A	Although (clause of concession)
6.	B	because (clause of reason)
7.	B	in order that (clause of purpose)
8.	A	such__that (cause & effect)
9.	C	because (clause of reason)
C		so that (clause of purpose)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	in order to (phrase of purpose)
12.	B	so (clause of result)
13.	C	in order to (phrase of purpose)
14.	C	so that (clause of purpose)
15.	C	though (clause of concession)
16.	A	so many Ns that (effect)
17.	C	so (clause of result)
18.	A	so__that (cause & effect)
19.	C	well (trạng từ chỉ thể cách)
A		so__that (cause & effect)

BÀI 5. PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF CONCESSION CỤM TỪ & MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ SỰ NHƯỢNG BỘ

Phần lời giải cho bài tập **Exercise 151**, cung cấp một hình thức viết lại câu gốc đã cho sao cho không làm thay đổi ngữ nghĩa của câu gốc (sử dụng cấu trúc câu có các mệnh đề quan hệ hay cụm từ chỉ sự nhượng bộ với các liên từ *although/ though/ even though/ in spite of/ despite*).

Exercise 151. Combine each two sentences using the suggested word.

Matthew doesn't know any French though it was one of his school subjects.

Although Nick used to smoke, he seems to be in good health.

Our team won by a large margin but no one thought we would win the championship.

Laura felt unwell in spite of this she went on working.

We couldn't get tickets in spite of queuing for an hour.

The goods were never delivered despite the promise we had received.

Even though she got a B.A. degree, she earned her living by selling newspaper.

Even though I told the absolute truth. No one would believe me.

I enjoyed the film in spite of the silly story.

We hardly ever see each other despite living in the same street.

Although my foot was injured, I managed to walk to the nearest village.

In spite of having very little money. They are happy.

I got very wet in the rain even though I had an umbrella.

I couldn't sleep despite being tired.

Though he liked the sweater, he decided not to buy it.
 I didn't get the job in spite of having all the necessary qualifications.
 It was still hot in the room even though I had turned on the air conditioner.
 Laura wants to fly in spite of the fact that she feels afraid.
 Trevor didn't notice the sign even though it was right in front of him.
 I'm no better despite the fact that I've taken the pills.

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 152** đến **Exercise 156** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo các chú giải nghĩa các đáp án, các cụm từ hoặc cấu trúc cố định.

Exercise 152. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	Although (clause of concession)
2.	A	Although (clause of concession)
3.	B	Although (clause of concession)
4.	B	If (conditional sentences type 1)
5.	B	after (adverbial time clause)
6.	C	not only _but also (cấu trúc)
7.	A	However: tuy nhiên (concession)
8.	A	however: tuy nhiên (concession)
9.	A	Unless (conditional type 1)
10.	B	Moreove: hơn nữa

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	Although (clause of concession)
12.	A	though (clause of concession)
13.	B	although (clause of concession)
14.	C	in spite of (phrase of concession)
15.	A	although (clause of concession)
16.	D	Although (clause of concession)
17.	D	Although (clause of concession)
18.	D	A and C are correct (clause)
19.	A	Although (clause of concession)
20.	A	Although (clause of concession)

Exercise 153. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	although (clause of concession)
2.	A	Despite (phrase of concession)
3.	B	However: tuy nhiên (concession)
4.	D	although (clause of concession)
5.	B	However: tuy nhiên (concession)
6.	C	although (clause of concession)
7.	B	but (clause of concession)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	Although (clause of concession)
12.	A	although (clause of concession)
13.	C	however: tuy nhiên (concession)
14.	C	however: tuy nhiên (concession)
15.	C	Despite (phrase of concession)
16.	C	Although (clause of concession)
17.	D	Though (clause of concession)

8.	C	However: tuy nhiên (concession)
9.	B	but (clause of concession)
10.	C	Although (clause of concession)

18.	C	despite (phrase of concession)
19.	B	Although (clause of concession)
20.	B	though (clause of concession)

Exercise 154. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	In spite of (phrase of concession)
2.	A	Despite (phrase of concession)
3.	D	In spite of (phrase of concession)
4.	C	although (clause of concession)
5.	B	despite (phrase of concession)
6.	D	Despite (phrase of concession)
7.	A	Although (clause of concession)
8.	C	phrase to clause of concession
9.	A	phrase to clause of concession
10.	D	phrase to clause of concession

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	clause to phrase of concession
12.	C	clause to phrase of concession
13.	A	clause to phrase of concession
14.	C	phrase to clause of concession
15.	B	clause to phrase of concession
16.	A	clause to clause of concession
17.	B	Despite (phrase of concession)
18.	D	despite (phrase of concession)
19.	B	clause of concession
20.	B	despite (phrase of concession)

Exercise 155: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	A and B (clause of concession)
2.	A	so that (clause of purpose)
3.	D	A and C (clause of purpose)
4.	C	in case (conditional case)
5.	D	despite (phrase of concession)
6.	D	because of (phrase of reason)
7.	D	all are correct (clause of reason)
8.	A	If (conditional sentences type 1)
9.	B	in spite of (phrase of concession)
10.	C	Although (clause of concession)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	but (clause of concession)
12.	D	As soon as (time clause)
13.	D	until (adverbial time clause)
14.	A	while (adverbial time clause)
15.	B	after (adverbial time clause)
16.	B	so (clause of result)
17.	C	In spite of (phrase of concession)
18.	B	so many stars (cause & effect)
19.	A	so much work (cause & effect)
20.	D	such an old (cause & effect)

Exercise 156: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	because (clause of reason)
2.	A	unless (conditional sentence)
3.	D	Because of (phrase of reason)
4.	D	B and C (clause of result)
5.	A	However (clause of result)
6.	B	so that she can (clause of purpose)
7.	C	unless (conditional sentence)
8.	C	so as not to (phrase of purpose)
9.	C	to learn (clause of purpose)
A	because	of (phrase of reason)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	such a big (cause & effect)
12.	A	so far (cause & effect)
13.	B	In spite of (phrase of concession)
14.	C	to tell (cause & effect)
15.	A	so that (clause of purpose)
16.	B	Despite (phrase of concession)
17.	B	since (adverbial time clause)
18.	D	Although (clause of concession)
19.	D	too strong (cause & effect)
C	because	(clause of reason)

BÀI 6. PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF REASON CỤM TỪ & MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ NGUYÊN NHÂN

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 157** đến **Exercise 160** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo các chú giải nghĩa các đáp án, các cụm từ hoặc cấu trúc cố định.

Exercise 157. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	Since (clause of reason)
2.	C	because (clause of reason)
3.	C	because (clause of reason)
4.	A	since (adverbial time clause)
5.	B	Because (clause of reason)
6.	B	because of (phrase of reason)
7.	D	B and C are correct (phrase of reason)
8.	A	because of (phrase of reason)
9.	B	since (clause of reason)
10.	C	because of (phrase of reason)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	because of (phrase of reason)
12.	A	Because of (phrase of reason)
13.	C	As (phrase of reason)
14.	D	or (lựa chọn còn lại)
15.	A	if (conditional sentences type 1)
16.	B	since: kể từ khi
17.	A	because of (phrase of reason)
18.	B	Because of (phrase of reason)
19.	A	if (conditional sentences type 1)
20.	A	because of (phrase of reason)

Exercise 158. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	because of (phrase of reason)
2.	D	because (clause of reason)
3.	D	because (clause of reason)
4.	B	but (clause of concession)
5.	C	because of (phrase of reason)
6.	A	because S V – because of Np
7.	A	so__that – because of Np
8.	B	Despite Np – Although S V
9.	D	because of Np - because S V
	A	too adj to V – so adj that

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	in spite of (phrase of concession)
12.	B	In spite of (phrase of concession)
13.	C	but (clause of concession)
14.	D	before (adverbial time clause)
15.	D	Before (adverbial time clause)
16.	D	where (adverbial time clause)
17.	B	unless (conditional sentence)
18.	C	If (conditional sentence)
19.	D	or (conditional sentence)
	D	as if (subjunctive case)

Exercise 159. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	too adj to V: quá__ đến nỗi
2.	D	because (clause of reason)
3.	B	because of (phrase of reason)
4.	A	adj enough to V: có đủ__ để
5.	D	such__that: quá__ đến nỗi
6.	D	adj enough: đủ__ để
7.	D	Whenever (adverbial time clause)
8.	A	too adj for O to V: quá__ đến nỗi
9.	C	although (clause of concession)
10.	D	so as not to (phrase of concession)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	in order that (phrase of concession)
12.	C	so adv that: quá__ đến nỗi
13.	D	so__that: quá__ đến nỗi
14.	C	too adj to V: quá__ đến nỗi
15.	D	adj enough to V: có đủ__ để
16.	A	too adj to V: quá__ đến nỗi
17.	C	such__that: quá__ đến nỗi
18.	D	because (clause of reason)
19.	C	when (adverbial time clause)
20.	C	No sooner__than: ngay khi

Exercise 160. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	During (adverbial time clause)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	so that (clause of purpose)

2.	D	When (adverbial time clause)	12.	D	Even though (clause of concession)
3.	C	Since (clause of reason)	13.	A	as (clause of reason)
4.	C	such__that: quá__đến nỗi	14.	B	so that (clause of purpose)
5.	A	unless (conditional sentence)	15.	A	So long as (conditional sentence)
6.	B	adj enough: đủ__để	16.	B	so__that: quá__đến nỗi
7.	C	too adj to V: quá__đến nỗi	17.	C	such__that: quá__đến nỗi
8.	B	too adj to V: quá__đến nỗi	18.	B	since (clause of reason)
9.	B	such__that: quá__đến nỗi	19.	A	such__that: quá__đến nỗi
10.	C	Unless (conditional sentence)	20.	B	adj enough: đủ__để

Phần lời giải cho bài tập **Exercise 161**, cung cấp một hình thức viết lại câu gốc đã cho sao cho không làm thay đổi ngữ nghĩa của câu gốc (sử dụng cấu trúc câu có các mệnh đề chỉ nguyên nhân thay cho các cụm từ chỉ nguyên nhân).

Exercise 161: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

- Because her motorbike had a puncture, Mary came to class late.
- Because the weather was cold, we stayed home.
- Because its climate is healthy, people like to live in this country.
- Because it can be used for various purposes, a computer becomes very popular nowadays.
- Because his health was ill, Stacey retired in 1987.
- Because the traffic was heavy, we were late for the meeting.
- Because he broke his leg, Harry had to stay in hospital.
- Because our leader couldn't attend the meeting, it was canceled.
- Because it was in dilapidated condition, the young couple decided not to buy the house.
- Because I always enjoyed mathematics in high school, I decided to major in it in college.
- Because of his severely sprained ankle, Jim had to give up jogging.
- Because of its pollution, the water in most rivers is unsafe to drink.
- Because of the fog at the airport, we had to stay in London an extra day.
- Because of his wife's illness, Bill has to do all of the cooking and cleaning.
- Because of our parents' generosity, we all have received the best of everything.
- Because of the noise in the next apartment, I couldn't get to sleep last night.
- Because of his poor eyesight, John has to sit in the front row in class.
- Because of the red traffic lights, we stopped our car.
- Because of the high wall, she couldn't see the road.

20. → Because of the bad driving conditions, we postponed our trip.

Phần lời giải cho bài tập **Exercise 162**, cung cấp một từ hoặc cụm từ thích hợp để điền vào mỗi khoảng trống, dựa trên kiến thức của các loại cụm từ hoặc mệnh đề phụ chỉ nguyên nhân hay sự nhượng bộ.

Exercise 162. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

câu	đáp án	câu	đáp án	câu	đáp án	câu	đáp án
1.	because of	6.	because	11.	although	16.	although
2.	because	7.	because of	12.	in spite of	17.	because of
3.	because of	8.	because of	13.	because of	18.	because
4.	because	9.	because	14.	because	19.	although
5.	because of	10.	because of	15.	in spite of	20.	in spite of

BÀI 7. CLAUSES OF CAUSE AND EFFECT MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ NGUYÊN NHÂN KẾT QUẢ

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 163** đến **Exercise 164**, cung cấp một hình thức viết lại câu gốc đã cho sao cho không làm thay đổi ngữ nghĩa của câu gốc (sử dụng cấu trúc câu có các mệnh đề chỉ nguyên nhân và kết quả).

Exercise 163: Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

- It was such old furniture that we couldn't keep it
- The car is too expensive for him to buy. _____
- Such is the popularity of the play that the theatre is likely to be full every night.
- Such was her hopelessness that Alice decided to stop her business.
- He is strong enough to lift the box.
- He ate such a lot of food that he became ill.
- He bought so many books that he didn't know where to put them.
- He is such a very lazy boy that no one likes him.
- The coffee is too hot for me to drink.
- Her voice is so soft that everyone likes her.
- He is too weak to run.
- The tea was so hot that he couldn't drink it.
- The weather is too bad for us to go out.
- It was such a boring film that we couldn't go on seeing it.
- He was such an old person that he couldn't run fast.

- So fast did he speak that we couldn't understand him.
- The fair was too noisy for us to hear each other.
- You are such a fast speaker that I can't catch up with your words.
- It is too early for us to go out.
- The water is so hot that I can't drink it.
- The restaurant is so expensive that we can't eat in that restaurant.

Exercise 164: Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

- He studied so badly that he couldn't pass the exam.
- He isn't intelligent enough to do it.
- He has so much money that he can buy a car.
- It is such an untidy room that it took us one hour to clean it.
- He is such a fool man that no one took any notice of him.
- It is such a long film that they can't broadcast it on one night
- They are such interesting books that we have read them many times.
- It was such bad news that she burst into tears on hearing it.
- It was such hot food that it burned my tongue.
- It rains so much that we can't go out.
- He is so fat a boy that every calls him Stuffy. _____
- It is such excellent milk that all the children want some more.
- It was so warm a day that they had a walk in the garden. _____
- So many people were there in the hall that we couldn't see him.
- It was such an exciting match that all the fans shouted loudly.
- So much coffee did they drink that they couldn't sleep all night.
- Alice had such a lot of exercises to do that she couldn't go out. _____
- She was so poor a woman that she needed everyone's help. _____
- He was so young that he can't walk to school alone.
- The car was too rusty for them to travel far in.

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 165** đến **Exercise 168** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo các chú giải nghĩa các đáp án, các cụm từ hoặc cấu trúc cố định.

Exercise 165. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích	Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
-----	--------	------------	-----	--------	------------

1.	A	leave behind (v) bỏ lại sau
2.	A	below the age of: dưới độ tuổi
3.	B	accustomed to: quen thuộc với
4.	B	undertake: thực thi, tiến hành
5.	A	a good view of: dễ quan sát
6.	C	adjust (v) điều chỉnh, chỉnh
7.	B	lend >< return: cho mượn><trả
8.	A	turn down: khước từ
9.	D	persuade s.b to V: thuyết phục
10.	D	plenty of (uncountable noun)

11.	B	There/ Here (chỉ định nhấn mạnh)
12.	C	anyone: bất cứ ai
13.	D	old fashioned: cổ, không hợp thời
14.	A	and then: và rồi (tính liên tiếp)
15.	A	On behalf of: thay mặt/ đại diện
16.	B	ability (n) năng lực, khả năng
17.	A	get on/off: lên/ xuống (tàu/ xe)
18.	B	be clever to V: sang suốt
19.	A	scratch (v) cào (đặc tính của mèo)
20.	C	pull down (v) dỡ bỏ

Exercise 166. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	source (n) nguồn, đầu nguồn
2.	D	tricks up my sleeve: mẹo, mách
3.	B	loads (n) tải trọng
4.	B	resign from: từ chức, thoái vị
5.	A	swept: bị trôi dạt, cuốn đi
6.	A	There is no point in V-ng
7.	B	injured: thương tật do tai nạn
8.	D	nuisance: phiền nhiễu
9.	B	be prepared for: chuẩn bị tinh thần, sẵn sàng cho công việc
10.	B	not_ any = no: đại từ bất định

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	ought to V: trách nhiệm phải...
12.	C	run after: chạy/ đuổi theo
13.	C	delicious: ngon
14.	B	make an appointment: hẹn
15.	B	out of the reach: ngoài tầm với
16.	C	lean against: dựa, tựa vào
17.	D	somewhere (undefined place)
18.	A	crop: vụ, mùa màng
19.	C	bother to V: không để tâm
20.	D	suit one's taste: hợp thị hiếu

Exercise 167. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	put ladder against: dựa thang
2.	D	be fit to V: phù hợp để làm gì
C	held up	= slow down: làm chậm

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	Apart from: ngoài, ngoại trừ
12.	B	fade (v) mờ, bạc (theo thời gian)
A	To our relief	(cấu trúc)

4.	C	exchange: đổi tiền, trao đổi
5.	D	bitterly: cay đắng (chỉ thái độ)
6.	D	as far as I know: như tôi biết
7.	C	get to somewhere: đến đâu đó
8.	C	influential (adj) có ảnh hưởng
9.	C	dismiss = sack: sa thải
10.	A	As far as I'm concerned (structure)

14.	C	come to power: nắm quyền
15.	B	take exam in: thi môn gì đó
16.	C	make s.b V: bắt/ ép ai làm gì
17.	D	quite: hoàn toàn (đánh giá)
18.	D	know by sight: biết mặt, gặp
19.	A	helping: lần tiếp thức ăn
20.	D	pay for: chi trả

Exercise 168. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	check safety: kiểm tra an toàn
2.	B	distinguish between: phân biệt
3.	A	lost without trace: mất dạng
4.	B	catch a disease: nhiễm bệnh
5.	B	brand of: nhãn hiệu (hàng hóa)
6.	D	Unless (conditional sentence 1)
7.	A	fill in form: điền thông tin vào mẫu đơn
8.	D	tie a label on: gắn nhãn
9.	A	look over: quan sát, khảo sát
10.	D	intervals: giải lao (nghỉ giữa giờ)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	turn red/ green (traffic lights)
12.	D	displease: làm mất lòng
13.	B	a check-up: kiểm tra sức khỏe
14.	A	smartly dressed: ăn mặc bảnh
15.	C	group of students: nhóm
16.	A	present: trao quà, tặng
17.	A	establish procedures: thiết lập chương trình/ lịch trình
18.	D	tell s.b the way: chỉ đường
19.	A	it's an awful shame: thật đáng tiếc/ xấu hổ
20.	D	in charge of: chịu trách nhiệm

BÀI 8. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF TIME - MỆNH ĐỀ THỜI GIAN

Phần lời giải cho bài tập **Exercise 169**, cung cấp một hình thức chia động từ thích hợp cho mỗi động từ được cung cấp trong dấu ngoặc.

Exercise 169. Put the verbs in brackets into correct tense.

Câu	Đáp án
1.	begins
2.	has finished/ finishes
3.	got/ had started
4.	read
5.	come/ will find

Câu	Đáp án
11.	saw/ were singing/ said/ had been singing
12.	will not rain/ leaves
13.	stroke/ had been waiting
14.	is doing/ did not pass
15.	had listened/ will I be

6.	was reading / was doing
7.	came/ was watching
8.	was walking / saw
9.	have finished
10.	have learned / was

16.	comes
17.	left
18.	arrives
19.	was singing
20.	were arriving

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 170** đến **Exercise 174** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo các chú giải nghĩa các đáp án, các cụm từ hoặc cấu trúc cố định.

Exercise 170. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	unless (conditional sentence 1)
2.	A	too adj for O to V: quá_đến nỗi
3.	B	Because of (phrase of reason)
4.	D	all are correct (clauses of purpose)
5.	B	While (adverbial time clause)
6.	B	as if (subjunctive case)
7.	C	unless (conditional sentence 1)
8.	C	after (adverbial time clause)
9.	A	so that (clause of purpose)
10.	A	so that (clause of purpose)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	in order that (clause of purpose)
12.	C	such_that (cause & effect)
13.	D	Whenever (time clause)
14.	B	too adj for O to V: quá_đến nỗi
15.	A	too adj to V: quá_đến nỗi
16.	A	so as not to (phrase of purpose)
17.	B	so that (clause of purpose)
18.	B	at which (relative clause)
19.	C	on account of (reason)
20.	A	such__that (cause & effect)

Exercise 171. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	ends (when - time clause)
2.	B	see (when - time clause)
3.	B	will tell (when - time clause)
4.	D	were fighting (when - time clause)
5.	C	had studied (adverbial time clause)
6.	D	since (adverbial time clause)
B		while (adverbial time clause)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	adverbial time clause
12.	C	adverbial time clause
13.	A	since (adverbial time clause)
14.	B	adverbial time clause
15.	B	adverbial time clause
16.	D	adverbial time clause
C		adverbial time clause

8.	B	was (adverbial time clause)
9.	A	come (adverbial time clause)
10.	A	adverbial time clause

18.	B	adverbial time clause
19.	B	adverbial time clause
20.	A	adverbial time clause

Exercise 172. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	Before (adverbial time clause)
2.	D	before (adverbial time clause)
3.	B	since (adverbial time clause)
4.	B	until (adverbial time clause)
5.	C	when (adverbial time clause)
6.	A	As soon as (adverbial time clause)
7.	A	had opened (adverbial time clause)
8.	D	after (adverbial time clause)
9.	C	by the time... (adverbial time clause)
10.	C	until (adverbial time clause)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	until (adverbial time clause)
12.	C	no sooner_than (time clause)
13.	B	until (adverbial time clause)
14.	D	before (adverbial time clause)
15.	B	dries (adverbial time clause)
16.	A	I'm (adverbial time clause)
17.	B	When (adverbial time clause)
18.	B	arrives (adverbial time clause)
19.	C	when they heard a scream (adverbial time clause)
20.	D	will have saved (adverbial time clause)

Exercise 173. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	A	while (adverbial time clause)
2.	B	after (adverbial time clause)
3.	B	so (clause of result)
4.	C	despite (phrase of concession)
5.	C	because (clause of reason)
6.	A	unless (conditional sentence)
7.	D	Because of (phrase of reason)
8.	D	B and C (clause of result)
9.	A	However (clause of concession)
10.	C	so as not to (phrase of purpose)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	C	to learn (purpose)
12.	A	because of (phrase of reason)
13.	C	such_that (cause & effect)
14.	B	so many....that (cause & effect)
15.	A	so much work (cause & effect)
16.	D	such an old (cause & effect)
17.	A	so far (cause & effect)
18.	B	in spite of (phrase of concession)
19.	D	such_that (cause & effect)
20.	A	so that (clause of purpose)

Exercise 174. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	so (clause of result)
2.	C	such_that (cause & effect)
3.	A	so that (clause of purpose)
4.	D	Even though (clause of concession)
5.	B	Because of (phrase of reason)
6.	B	While (adverbial time clause)
7.	B	as if: có vẻ như (subjunctive case)
8.	C	though (clause of concession)
9.	B	so that (clause of purpose)
B		because of (phrase of reason)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	such_that (cause & effect)
12.	B	adj enough (cause & effect)
13.	A	adj enough (cause & effect)
14.	A	too adj for O to V (cause & effect)
15.	A	so_that (cause & effect)
16.	C	such_that (cause & effect)
17.	B	such_that (cause & effect)
18.	A	so that (clause of purpose)
19.	B	too adj for O to V (cause & effect)
A		too adj to V (cause & effect)

BÀI 9. COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGES – MẪU CÂU GIAO TIẾP

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 175** đến **Exercise 177** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp cụ thể là A, B, C, hoặc D, kèm theo các chú giải nghĩa các đáp án, các cụm từ hoặc cấu trúc cố định.

Exercise 175. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	C	thể hiện sự đồng tình
2.	B	wish – giả định không thực tế
3.	B	sự không tính toán, bận tâm
4.	A	nói về sở thích – câu trả lời
5.	A	lời cảm ơn cho một lời đánh giá
6.	B	Poor Ted! – sự cảm thông
7.	D	thể hiện sự yêu thích hào hứng
8.	A	hỏi về tình tiết, mức độ
9.	C	sự tán đồng, tán thưởng
10.	B	cảm ơn, và mời ghé thăm

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	D	Not yet: trả lời cho “Has_made”
12.	B	Not at all (sự sẵn lòng)
13.	C	hỏi “think” trả lời “In my...”
14.	B	Thank you: cảm ơn (đáp lễ)
15.	A	It’s over there (chỉ đường)
16.	B	by train (chỉ phương tiện đi)
17.	A	Let’s go... (gợi ý về việc...)
18.	B	Good bye. See... (lời chia tay)
19.	D	It’s Jane’s: là của Jane
D		by bus (chỉ phương tiện đi)

Exercise 176. Choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C, or D that best complete the preceding sentence.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	D	See you later (đáp từ chia tay)
2.	A	Congratulations! Chúc mừng
3.	A	Yes, I love to – tôi rất thích
4.	A	Could you tell me (hỏi đường)
5.	A	How do you do? (lời chào – đáp)
6.	B	I don't (quan điểm trái ngược)
7.	B	Shall (đề nghị lịch sự)
8.	A	wish – giả định không thực tế
9.	A	do for a living: kiếm sống
10.	B	Thank you – cảm ơn (lời khen)

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	A	So do I (quan điểm đồng nhất)
12.	A	Good luck: chúc may mắn
13.	C	It's my pleasure (sẵn lòng giúp đỡ)
14.	B	I hope not (đoán và mong)
15.	D	Well, I hope so (hi vọng điều gì)
16.	A	The same to you! (chúc lại)
17.	C	How about V-ing? (hỏi ý kiến)
18.	B	lời cảm ơn cho một lời khen
19.	C	lời cảm ơn cho một lời khen
20.	D	lời cảm ơn cho một lời khen

Exercise 177: Choose the best answer among the A, B, C, or D provided to finish each of the incomplete sentences below.

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
1.	B	Good bye. See... (lời tạm biệt)
2.	C	lời cảm ơn cho một lời khen
3.	C	Very well, thank you (đáp từ)
4.	D	lời cảm ơn cho một lời khen
5.	D	đáp từ lời cảm ơn
6.	C	Oh, yes. I'd love one (quan điểm)
7.	A	lời cảm ơn cho một lời khen
8.	B	Poor him (sự cảm thông, chia sẻ)
9.	B	cảm tạ và thể hiện quan điểm
10.	D	trả lời một câu hỏi thường ngày

Câu	Đáp án	Giải thích
11.	B	Good bye. See... (lời tạm biệt)
12.	A	đáp từ lời cảm ơn
13.	B	thể hiện sự sẵn lòng giúp đỡ
14.	B	Thank you (đáp từ lời chúc)
15.	B	do for a living: kiếm sống
16.	C	can't have been (suy đoán)
17.	D	must have called (suy đoán)
18.	D	must (suy luận logic)
19.	B	chỉ đường
20.	C	nêu địa chỉ mua hàng

CHUYÊN ĐỀ V. WRITING SKILLS

CHUYÊN ĐỀ VIẾT

BÀI 1. SENTENCES TRANSFORMATION - VIẾT LẠI CÂU

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 178** đến **Exercise 192** các đáp án đúng được cung cấp là các câu viết lại sao cho không làm thay đổi nghĩa của câu gốc và phù hợp các yêu cầu ngữ pháp, dựa trên các mẫu câu chuyển đổi thông dụng đã trình bày ở phần lí thuyết.

Exercise 178: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

- If it hadn't been for my father's money, we couldn't have managed.
- He last ate this kind of food in 1991.
- Hardly had I put the phone down when the boss rang back.
- 4. → Nick has been a member of a golf club for a year.
- Despite my strong disapproval of your behavior, I will help you this time.
- I've never been to Brazil before.
- I'm sorry not to have heard/attended your lecture.
- I have been a member of the yoga club for six months now.
- The concert may have to be cancelled.
- She has not been to Spain before.
- It came as no surprise to me that he had failed his driving test.
- How long is it since he started work?
- Not until he came into the light did I recognize him.
- We will have a meeting tomorrow.
- There is no truth in that rumour about the politician and the construction contract.
- When we arrived, David had gone home.
- One runner was so exhausted that he couldn't complete the last lap of the race.
- How long have you had your car?
- I've never known a more warm-hearted person than my mother
- I didn't use to wear glasses until recently.

Exercise 179: *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.*

- He has had his computer for one year
- We were never made to do anything we didn't want to.
- They have played /been playing tennis for three months.
- Had it not been for the death of the man the bill would have been passed.
- It is the first time they had been to South Korea.
- There's no point in complaining.
- It's a long time since I went to the beach.

-
- Only after a new pay offer did the workers call off the strike.
 - It was the first time he had been to ballet classes.
 - He received a sentence of six months for his part in the robbery.
 - It's the most boring film I have ever watched.
 - There is no limit/restriction to how much you eat at the new lunch-bar.
 - My parents still haven't reached London.
 - She wasn't so deaf that she couldn't hear the phone.
 - It's ages since I had a Chinese meal.
 - Mrs. Hoa is the most generous person you will/could ever meet.
 - She moved to this village in 2009.
 - I was allowed to go abroad alone for the first time last year.
 - I haven't been to Mui Ne since January.
 - If he hadn't been so incompetent they wouldn't have been captured.

Exercise 180: Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

- I have no intention of giving you any more money.
- This is the first time that Charles has had a tablet.
- We haven't received confirmation of/about our hotel booking (yet).
- They has been in this village for five months.
- According to the salesman my new car would be delivered next Wednesday.
- We haven't been out for a long time.
- There have been very few sightings of the Yeti at this altitude.
- She started cooking when her husband left.
- It is open to question (as to) whether Jones will get the job.
- I have known my husband since 2001.
- No sooner had the announcement been made than everyone started complaining.
- When you phoned me, I was having lunch.
- The older I get, the less I want to travel.
- We have worked here for three years.
- You won't be able to buy a house in that district for less than a million dollars.
- My mother started studying English 15 days ago.
- Alan's illness was caused by the result of his working too hard at the office.
- By the time we get to the theatre, the play will have begun.
- As long as you keep calm, you will pass your driving test.
- I have never been on a plane before.

Exercise 181: Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

-
- This is *the first time that she has had a smartphone.*
 - No sooner *had he been appointed to the post than the new editor fell ill.*
 - It's a long *time since we last went to the theatre.*
 - There has been *such a vociferous protest that the committee has had to reconsider.*
 - The last time *I went to a football match was three years ago.*
 - Contrary *to your belief/opinion, fat people are not always jolly.*
 - It's the first time *he has ever eaten this kind of food.*
 - The less *time my boss has, the better he works.*
 - They have *been married for ten years.*
 - The patient made *a more rapid/a quicker/faster recovery than expected.*
 - Next week *Mary will give a party at her house.*
 - We are completely *(sold) out of thermal socks, Madam.*
 - I've been *working for this company for three years.*
 - It is not *(very) likely (that) they will succeed.*
 - I have *been head of the university for four years.*
 - The rail workers have no *intention of calling off their strike.*
 - Helen's flight will *arrive at 8.00.*
 - Mrs. Scott prides *herself on her cooking/on being a good cook.*
 - Oh no! I have *lost my wallet.*
 - If it hadn't *been for the goalkeeper we could/would have lost the match.*

Exercise 182: Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

- The *bigger they are, the faster they will fall.*
- The *more I look into your eyes, the more I love you.*
- The *more mature she is, the more beautiful she becomes.*
- The *more water he drinks, the thirstier he becomes.*
- The *more you speak English, the better you will be.*
- The *more paper people save, the more wood pulp is preserved.*
- The *more money you make, the more you spend.*
- The *cheaper means of transport are, the more popular they become.*
- The *earlier we leave, the sooner we will arrive.*
- The *younger you are, the earlier you learn.*
- The *older she is, the more beautiful she becomes.*
- The *longer I waited, the angrier I got.*
- The *higher the sun is, the lower the shadow is.*
- The *more I know, the more I forget.*
- The *more I forget, the more I know.*

-
- Sarah is *better at chemistry than Susan*.
 - He is the *youngest in the group*.
 - Iron is *harder than stone*.
 - No one in the team is *so good at football as Tom*.
 - He plays *the guitar better than I do*.

Exercise 183: Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

- Your house is *not as big as mine*.
- The red car *is more expensive than the black one*.
- That film is *not as interesting as this one*.
- Your kitchen *is not as small as mine*.
- My grandmother is the *oldest in my family*.
- Tam is the *tallest in my class*.
- My mother can cook *better than I do*.
- Jack can *play tennis better than him*.
- You spent *more money than I did*.
- *This book is more expensive than I think*.
- *No one in his class is as tall as him*.
- No other films are *as interesting as this one*.
- Japanese cars *are the most expensive of all (in the world)*.
- That exercise is not *as difficult as this one*.
- Jack *doesn't drive as carefully as him*.
- He can *play the best in the group*.
- This hotel is the *most comfortable in the city*.
- The Pacific Ocean is *the largest one in the world*.
- The more *they travel, the more they know about the world*.
- The harder *he practices, the better he performs*.

Exercise 184: Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

- My sister is the *tallest in the class*.
- Ho Chi Minh city *is the largest in Vietnam*.
- This is the *most interesting story I have ever heard*.
- My mother cooks *better than my father does*.
- My brother is the *shortest in the class*.
- The *more slowly Daisy writes, the fewer mistakes she makes*.

-
- The *more stories the writer wrote, the more famous she became.*
 - The *later she started, the more she got into traffic jam.*
 - Tam and I are the *same height.*
 - I don't *do as much as he knows.*
 - Taking by bus isn't *as quickly as taking by taxi.*
 - Hoa can't *cook as well as Linh.*
 - Apples are not *as expensive as oranges.*
 - The train *doesn't take as long as the bus.*
 - My mother *can cook better than I do.*
 - She has *never met a more punctual than him.*
 - They have *never had a more interesting book than that.*
 - This *is the most delicious dish we have ever eaten.*
 - This is *the most difficult situation Jimmy has ever been in.*
 - The more *Dick earns, the more he seems to spend.*

Exercise 185: Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

- Mrs. Smith asked *where the station car park was.*
- Miss Taylor wishes *she were living in such a small house.*
- If *he had hurried, he wouldn't have missed the train.*
- Many houses *have been destroyed by the fire.*
- I began *studying English 3 years ago.*
- A new school *is going to be built in that village.*
- If you *don't water those flowers regularly, they will wither.*
- The driver asked the passengers *not to get off the bus while it's moving.*
- The bank manager *was made to hand over the money.*
- John suggested *Barry to put a better lock on the door.*
- This is the *first time I have ever eaten this kind of food.*
- Peter asked if *he could borrow my bicycle.*
- If it *hadn't been for my father's money, we couldn't have managed.*
- Hardly *had I put the phone down when the boss rang back.*
- The English *owe the introduction of potatoes and tobacco to Walter Raleigh.*
- If I *had (only) been thinking, I wouldn't have made that terrible mistake.*
- Despite my *strong disapproval of your behavior, I will help you this time.*
- I'm sorry *not to have heard/attended Professor Baker's lecture.*
- The concert *may have to be cancelled.*
- It came *as no surprise to me that Harry had failed his driving test.*

Exercise 186: Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

- We were planning to visit grandmother, so we left early in the morning.
- No sooner had the burglars left the building than someone rang the alarm.
- The more popular TV programs become, the worse they seem to get.
- He dismissed the whole idea as (being) ridiculous.
- Anyone found trespassing on this land will be prosecuted (by the authorities).
- I'd rather go out for a meal than stay at home.
- But for the weather, it would have been a super weekend.
- Hardly had she begun to speak before/when people started interrupting her.
- Getting into work this morning was a bit difficult.
- She flatly refused to sleep in that haunted house.
- There's hardly anything he doesn't know about whales.
- The sooner we (can) solve the problem, the better it will be for all concerned.
- So great was the demand that they had to reprint the book immediately.
- They can't (possibly) have been playing in this weather.
- He denied having stolen the car but admitted borrowing/having borrowed it.
- They didn't have/need to call for help after all.
- The police caught him (as he was) climbing over the garden wall.
- Sad though/as it is, unemployment is unlikely to go down this year.
- The man is believed to have escaped in a stolen car.
- Having nothing else to do, we decided to go for a walk.

Exercise 187: Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

- Nowhere will you find a more dedicated worker than Mrs. Jones.
- This is the first time (that) someone has challenged his authority.
- The manager threatened not to select Brian if he didn't train harder.
- The house had its/the roof blown off by/in/during/because of the hurricane.
- You are bound/sure/certain to meet lots of people.
- Rather than disturb the meeting, I left without saying goodbye.
- In few other books would one see this problem so well- explained.
- I object to people criticizing me unfairly.
- Robert now wishes (that) he had taken/accepted the job.
- The film star avoided recognition/being recognized by wearing dark glasses.
- What amazes me is/are the mistakes he makes.
- It came as no surprise to us (to hear) (that) he was/had been successful.
- Jean's mother complimented Jean on her lovely new dress.
- Only after/when all the guests had gone home/could we relax/were we able to relax.
- George was nowhere to be found.
- An increased number of travellers is/are being stopped by customs officials this week.

-
- She is a more sympathetic listener than anyone else I know.
 - You can please yourself/yourselfs about whether you accept their offer or not.
 - Martin's poor health does not stop/prevent him from enjoying life.
 - Each of the company's retiring employee is represented a gold watch.

Exercise 188: Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

- But for his command of (the) local dialect we would have been jailed/put into jail.
- The average depth of the Pacific (Ocean) is greater than that of the Atlantic.
- My father has difficulty/difficulties in following the maps.
- The last thing you should/must/ought to do is to phone/phoning the police.
- There has been a dramatic increase in (the) house prices this year.
- This affair is no concern/business of yours.
- The final date for you to submit articles for the magazine is June 18th.
- Despite his (superior) strength Jimmy was (soon) overpowered by his attacker.
- Fancy seeing you here.
- I have no intention of apologizing to either of them.
- Not until (after) I (had) left home did I realize how much my father meant to me.
- The rail workers have no intention of calling off their strike.
- Mrs. Scott prides herself on her cooking/on being a good cook.
- If it hadn't been for the goalkeeper we could/would have lost the match.
- It came as no surprise (to me) (to hear) that Karen had changed her job.
- Not until John (had) received the offer of promotion in writing did he celebrate.
- Much as I admire her achievements, I don't really like her.
- The accident is thought/ believed to have been caused by human error.
- As long as you (can) keep/stay calm, you will/should/ought to pass your driving test.
- No sooner had he been/was he appointed to the post than the new editor fell ill.

Exercise 189: Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

- John blew up the tyres of his bicycle.
- We'd better leave them a note in case they arrive later.
- Before he came here, his previous boss/employer was Mr. Smith.
- He has an excellent command of German.
- There is no justification for his criticisms.
- I am baffled by their reluctance to sign the contract.
- Chess problems like that (always) defeat me!
- You mustn't let anyone (else) know this.
- I can't afford a new dress. I'll have to make do with that old blue one.
- There is no question of supper being ready by 8 o'clock.
- As far as I can see, there is no advantage in further discussion.

-
- Please *make allowances for Jane's poor typing; she's* only been learning for a month.
 - That young *man is bound to fail in* this test.
 - *Contrary to (its) (harmless)* appearance, the dog was in fact quite dangerous.
 - The accident was *not his fault*.
 - It's not *possible to reach* this hotel in winter.
 - To *(the best of) my knowledge*, he is still working in Bristol.
 - There *is little/no likelihood* that there will be applicants for this post.
 - Susan could *hardly believe the* good news.
 - You must *take his experience into account*.

Exercise 190: Finish each of the following sentences using a phrase including the given bold word in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

- Neither (one) of us *is bound by this* contract until we both sign it.
- You should/do not *assume (that) he* will help you.
- We all *make mistakes*.
- The last Olympic Games *took place* in Seoul.
- His *sole topic of* conversation was the weather.
- I had no *regrets about/on/over* leaving the club in the end.
- You are *an idiot to refuse* Richard's offer of a loan.
- It's the company's *intention to replace* this model.
- Their problems are all *of their own making*.
- Taking that job *will mean (that) you'll* have to get up at 6a.m every morning.
- They had *no alternative* but to look for a new flat.
- I haven't *heard from him* for 3 years.
- It's *a pity (that)* we cannot rely on what she says.
- There is no *comparison between* an open fire and central heating.
- I can *scarcely remember anything* about my childhood.
- Tsiolkovsky is *credited with* the invention of the space rocket.
- I daren't turn on the TV *for fear of* waking up the baby.
- Some people will *do any/great lengths* to lose weight.
- The 2 theories *have (got) nothing in common*.
- The river Volta *burst its banks* last year.

Exercise 191: Finish each of the following sentences using a phrase including the given bold word in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

- He takes *his wife for granted*.
- There has been a *gradual decrease* in the number of people out of work.
- William (decided that he) was not *cut out to be* an actor.
- My cat has *gone/is off* its food.
- The children *did/tried their best to* please their father.
- His behavior *took me aback*.

-
- The bank robbers made *their getaway in a* stolen car.
 - There isn't much *call for cars with* large engines.
 - There *is little likelihood of* the PM calling a(n) (early general) election.
 - The story he *told us was beyond* belief.
 - The whole committee *were in favour of* the project.
 - Scientists *blame our pollution for* the destruction of the forests.
 - One never *knows how he is* going to/will/may/might react.
 - The scandal *had a bad/negative effect*.
 - There was *an agreement among the* teachers to introduce new methods.
 - Jenny wasn't *in the mood to go* to the party/for (going to) the party.
 - The councilor *gave frank answers to* every question.
 - He is *reputed to have* been (sent) to prison.
 - Most stores will accept a credit card *as an alternative to* cash.
 - There is no *difference in/between* our opinions on the subject.

Exercise 192: Finish each of the following sentences using a phrase including the given bold word in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

- Local residents expressed their *disapproval of the new* traffic scheme.
- A *reduction of/in interest* rates may improve the economic situation.
- There *was a heavy criticism of* the architect's new design.
- There was very *little response to* the charity appeal.
- Our company has got *the monopoly of* the importation of these chemicals.
- The team's defeat was a *direct consequence of* the coach's tactics.
- We don't know *his whereabouts*.
- The *prompt action of* the policeman averted an accident.
- There *is no doubt that* this new record will sell a lot of copies.
- I don't want *to be disturbed*.
- He took the company *to court unfairly*.
- There's *every likelihood* that we'll be late.
- The committee *expressed a preference for* the first proposal.
- I really must *get down to answering* all these letters.
- You *mustn't blame* yourself.
- There's quite a lot *of criticism directed* at the police nowadays.
- Quite *bluntly, the man's* an idiot.
- I (just) can't *wait to meet* them.
- They *spent the whole week lying* on the beach sunbathing.
- I have serious *doubts as to whether* this will work.

BÀI 2. WRITING A PARAGRAPH, AN ESSAY VIẾT ĐOẠN VĂN, BÀI VĂN

Phần lời giải cho các bài tập từ **Exercise 193** đến **Exercise 215** là các bài viết mẫu về các chủ đề theo chương trình Sách Giáo Khoa Tiếng Anh khối THPT hiện hành, chủ yếu liên quan tới chương trình lớp 12. Các chủ đề viết được lựa chọn kĩ càng về các vấn đề cuộc sống, học tập, nhà trường, gia đình, các vấn đề về an ninh, xã hội và môi trường. Các chủ đề được lựa chọn chính là những yêu cầu bắt buộc học sinh phải nắm vững khi tham gia kì thi THPT Quốc Gia.

Exercise 193. *Within 160 words, write a paragraph describing a person you admire most.*

SAMPLE WRITING

Of all my acquaintances, the principal of our school is the one who has created the greatest ever impression on me. I must say that I am not only impressed by his good managerial skills but also his personalities. First, this principal is one of the dedicated educational managers who always know how to find new ways to run the school effectively. For example, he has initiated various ideas and programs to improve the school's educational quality, the teaching staff's lives despite limited resources. He also knows very well that he cannot do all things by himself. Therefore, he tries to motivate all the teaching staff to join him towards better achievements treating them fairly. Secondly, he instantly sets a clear example of a moderate but dedicated officer who loves to work more than to talks. He has led a simple life. In short, his leadership skills and personalities are greatly admired by not only me but by the teaching staff in our school. (164 words)

Exercise 194. *Within 160 words, write a paragraph giving your opinions of what makes a person successful in life.*

SAMPLE WRITING

There are many factors that make a person successful, but in my opinion, it is the way people define "success" that most affects people thinking of success. This is because the term "success" can be interpreted differently by different individuals, and the unclear definition of this concept may mislead people in their life. The result is that each individual may not know how successful he is, even when he achieves what he really wishes to. To me, "success" is that you achieve what your abilities allow you to. In other words, the achievement within your abilities will give you the sense of success. For example, if you are not intellectually good enough to study at universities, but you actually have some innate (in-born) ability for soccer or other sports, then a choice to become a football player or a sport-man may bring you success. So, unless we define "success" clearly in our own way and act upon that understanding, success will stay out of our reach. (166 words)

Exercise 195. *Within 160 words, write a paragraph giving your opinions of the benefits of being able to use English.*

SAMPLE WRITING

Obviously, English, in our globalization world, has been considered as the international passport to enable us to be the global citizen. That means the good demand of English helps us live and work well in any corner of the world. First, English is an international language that is spoken everywhere, so if you are able to use English, you can communicate with people all around the world. It is the English language that is used in aviation, international sports, music, commerce, newspapers, periodicals, radio and television stations and other. Secondly, we can learn almost all things with the help of English. If your English is good enough, you can take full advantages of the internet – the mass media storage and sources of knowledge and entertainments. You can realize your long-harbored dream of working overseas also. For example, you will easily apply for a vacant at an international company, organization, corporation, or a global group or enterprise so that you have chance to better your life and work. In conclusion, English benefits us various ways including communication, knowledge, work, entertainment, or even the way we lead our life. (187 words)

Exercise 196. *Within 160 words, write a paragraph describing your homeland.*

SAMPLE WRITING

The hidden beauty of my homeland makes it way to impress the residents as well as the increasing yearly visitors. The village, in fact, does not possess any special beautiful landscapes such as a forested mountain or a romantic river, but nothing can compare with its rich cultural heritages which are reflected in the villagers' lifestyles and other well-preserved artefacts. First, it seems that the present market economy does not affect the way the local people live, work and think. By this I can say that unlike the money-driven lifestyle commonly seen in most of other places, life in my village is still community-oriented. Everybody lives for other else in a harmonious way, describing as "me in others" and "others in me". Secondly, many rick-in-culture well-preserved heritages such as folk songs and music, old-aged architectures will certainly give visitors a sense of long-lived customs of a typical past traditional Vietnamese country village which one can hardly see elsewhere. After all, we – the village residents – are always proud of our homeland for both its inner beauty and people lifestyles. (178 words)

Exercise 197. *Within 160 words, write a paragraph describing your favorite school subject.* SAMPLE WRITING

Personally, I must say that no single school subjects can compare with English in terms of its interests. It is the English language that opens up a new horizon to me due to the status of its being used globally. Undoubtedly, a good command of English will enable me to access new amount of information which brings me to various new academic and cultural

territories. In addition to that, the more I study English, the more I love Vietnamese – my mother tongue. This is because when my English is good enough, I can compare the language with my mother-tongue, and this helps me understand Vietnamese better. My knowledge of other cultures gained by means of studying English encourages me to learn more about my fatherland. For example, if I am good at English, I can study the other cultures and lifestyles, then I can compare the things I have learned with our national heritages and I feel more and more confident and proud of being a Vietnamese. As I want to become both a Vietnamese and a global citizen, English is really a great attraction to me. (187 words)

Exercise 198. *Within 160 words, write a paragraph giving your opinions on the idea of controlling the access to electronic services.*

SAMPLE WRITING

More people now have personal computers and the uses of electronic services such as Internet is becoming more widespread. Some people are concerned about unlimited access to electronic services and would like this access to be controlled nationally or even internationally to prevent some certain bad influences on users, especially children. The first reason for which we should control the use of electronic services is that it saves time for users to do other useful things. For example, people spend too much time surfing, commenting, liking and do other wasteful things on social networks, some even become addicted to them. Some may forget their present lives, enjoying their online lives and becoming seriously impractical. On the other side, we should limit the access to the internet so as to prevent users, especially immature one, from being poisoned by harmful websites or forums. Uncontrolled access to poisonous sites may result to crime, immorality, and violence among the youth. In fact, we can hear of the heinous crimes committed by the one who cannot control their thinking and acting after long-browsing the internet playing violent games or doing other bad things. (181 words)

Exercise 199. *Within 160 words, write a paragraph giving your opinions about the formal school education system in Vietnam.*

SAMPLE WRITING

The current formal school education system in Vietnam consists of three levels; pre-school, primary and secondary educations. Secondary education is divided into lower and upper stage. In some provinces especially in cities, there are two parallel school systems; state and private schools. In both systems, the academic year, from early September to late May, is divided into two semesters consisting of four to five months each. Children start their pre-school at the age of three but this stage is not compulsory. When children reach the age of

six, they go to primary schools. This stage lasts five years with 5 grades. Children then go to lower secondary schools from grade 6 to grade 9. Those who complete lower secondary may be accepted to upper secondary schools which last three years with 3 grades. It depends on the locality that children have to take the entrance examination to be upper secondary students. Often, at the end of upper secondary education, students have to take the General Certificate of Secondary Education (GCSE), the requirement to go to university or college, which takes place in early July. (186 words)

Exercise 200. *Within 160 words, write a paragraph giving your opinions on the benefits of working for an International Organization.*

SAMPLE WRITING

For long, I have harbored the dream to work for an International Organization for a number of following reasons. First, working for an International Organization gives me opportunities to live abroad, to use English at work, and to have high salary. And it will be an interesting life to have chance to travel far and wide to meet different people of different personalities and nationalities. Second, I will be able to further my knowledge by doing numerous researches. I can also understand more about life. Of course, working for an International Organization will offer me occasions to meet, to have talks with well-known people worldwide. As far as I can say, working as an official of an International Organization helps me to be more aware of the value of life. It will give me strength and hope, helps me think more optimistically and do more positive things. I promise myself that I will try my best to realize my dream some day in the future. (165 words)

Exercise 201. *With around 200 words, write a paragraph giving your opinions on the solutions to the commuting problems among people who live in the country to drive to work in the city.*

SAMPLE WRITING

Many people are moving out of big cities into the countryside to live to escape from city problems. This causes problems because most the jobs that are available are in the cities so people have to travel back into the cities again to work. The transport system cannot cope so people are using their own cars and the countryside is affected by the traffic jams. One solution to encourage people to stay in cities is to improve the quality of life there. More money could be spent reducing crime, as this is one of the main reasons why people leave cities. For example, more policemen can be employed for city center. Moreover, safe places to work and live in should be made in the city center. The environment can be made cleaners and more agreeable. As a result, people might be encouraged to stay rather than moving out. A very different way to tackle the problem would be to move some of the jobs

out of city to smaller cities or towns. People could then still live in the countryside and have to travel short distances to work. Another step is to encourage workers to spend part of their working week at home, perhaps two days and then to go into work in the other days. This is happening more and more in many parts of the world. (228 words)

Exercise 202. *With around 220 words, write to discuss the issue “Families now are not as close-knit as they were in the past”.*

SAMPLE WRITING

It is believed that home is where love dwells and that the social, economic changes make the traditional family formulas vary. Although different people have different points of view on the matters, we all agree that families now are not as close-knit as they used to be. The causes are various, but we can count for the three main points below.

First, we all seem to have so busy with working, earning, getting promotions, taking part in social activities, etc. People are likely to have longer working hours because of their demand of earning more and more. People seem to be never satisfied with what they have. In families, under the economic pressure, both parents work so they have less time for themselves as well as for other family members.

Secondly, due to the explosion of modern technologies people are more interested in their online lives than interacting with other family members. People seem to isolate themselves with their mobile-phones, tablets, personal computers, and other information technological devices.

Moreover, the generation gaps sometimes cause misunderstandings or even debates. Information technology also brings opportunities to diverse viewpoints within family members. Having different opinions pulls people far from one another.

Above all, though changes of traditional families are unavoidable, we are to shorten the gaps among family members to be as close-knit as possible. Because family life is very important to any individual, each member must be responsible for bringing all family members closer together. (243 words)

Exercise 203. *Within 200 words, write a letter to apply for an overseas university.*

SAMPLE WRITING

Dear Sir/Madam,

I've read a lot about tertiary study in the UK and very impressed by the reputation of many famous universities there. I am writing now to apply for the course and to ask for the admission requirements to the university.

Now, I am in the last year of the high school and will finish secondary education in 3 months. I am very much interested in an undergraduate course in economics in Birmingham University. At school I have learnt English for 7 years now, and my English is good enough to communicate with English speaking residents. Moreover, I am rather good at natural

science subjects, and I am also very much interested in social activities. My family income is absolutely good enough to pay for my life and study abroad, too. I have good health and am willing to live on my own. What my family and I want to know now is the detailed admission requirements to the university and the degrees I will be granted after finishing the course. Could you please send me some information about the admission requirements, tuitions fees, accommodation and details of the course? I am ready to supply any information about myself if necessary.

I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours faithfully, (213 words)

Exercise 204. *Within 200 words, write a letter to apply for a job as a local tour guide.*

SAMPLE WRITING

Dear Sir/ Madam,

I am writing in reply to your advertisement in the Vietnam News for experienced English-speaking local guides to accompany foreign visitors on trips throughout Vietnam. To tell the truth, I am very much interested in the post and hope to get it.

After reading the requirement for applicants, I can say by sure that I meet all of the qualifications that you specify. I was awarded High School Certificate two years ago with flying colors. After leaving high school, I worked as an accountant in a small travel agency for one year, where I was given a training course on tourism. Then I had one year of experience as a tour guide so I know many tourist areas in Vietnam and have a basic knowledge of Vietnamese culture, history, geography and the people. Moreover, I was a good student at English at school and achieved some prizes for English-speaking and English-in-use contests, so I can say that I speak English fluently and be able to communicate effectively with English speaking partners. In addition, I am a sociable and confident person and can work hard for long hours. I would like to work for you and would appreciate the opportunity to discuss this position with you in person. I am looking forward to hearing from you at your convenience.

Yours faithfully, (210 words)

Exercise 205. *With around 230 words, write a letter to tell your friend about your family life.* SAMPLE WRITING

Dear Jim,

I am writing to talk about my family rules. It is an interesting topic, isn't it? It may be obvious that every family has its own rules. Mine has a few, apart from the traditional ones, especially for this school year as I am in the final year.

First, I am not allowed to watch much TV, except when there is a good or very interesting film or an academic game show, or when I have finished all my homework and exercises. And hardly do my parents let me stay up so late at night.

Next, my parents rarely permit me to go out with friends without necessary reasons for example birthdays or funerals.

Besides, I have to take the balanced diets to keep fit for my coming examinations. And one more thing I have to keep up is talking on the phone. That is why I have to set a limit to my using of the phone.

Furthermore, I don't have to do much housework though we share that all together.

Do you think I have a lot of rules to abide? Or I have no rights or freedom to do what I want or like?

Tell me about your family rules, will you? It is much fun to hear about then.

Write to me as soon as you can. I look forward to hearing from you.

Best wishes, (233 words)

Exercise 206. *With around 250 words, write a letter to a friend to tell her/ him about the one who influenced you most.*

SAMPLE WRITING

Dear Linda,

I am sorry for not writing to you for so long as I have been busy with preparing for the coming GCSE. I am writing today to tell you about the one who has great influence on me.

For me, I must say that my life would not have been as good as it is today if I did not meet Mr. Jimmy. It happened to me when I was a lower secondary student. I always got bad marks for school subjects as well as I got fined daily. My teachers got very disappointed, my parents felt ashamed as I was very often mentioned as a bad example at school. My classmates found ways to keep away from me. I felt so lonely and hopeless. Then Mr. Jimmy, my new teacher appeared. After having had a talk with me and my parents, he agreed to be my private tutor. It was so strange that he did not teach but made ways to be my friend first. He spared time to get to know my difficulties, helped me to gain me confidence, let me believe in what I could do. Gradually, I realized what to do, how to do. He encouraged me when I felt tired, lonely or daunted. He gave me belief and strength to stand right on my own feet. Finally, I got to know the meaning of life.

To tell the truth, I feel so happy to have a great teacher like Mr. Jimmy. I hope that you will let me know about your idols in life. I am looking forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours, (270 words)

Exercise 207. *The widespread use of the Internet has brought many problems.*

What do you think the main problems associated with the use of the web? What solutions can you suggest?

SAMPLE WRITING

Great changes have taken place in our modern life along with development of technology. And I do think that the Internet plays a big role in this.

First, with the surfing internet or playing computer and video games, people have a more sedentary lifestyle. Children no longer play games outside and get exercise but they spend time on the computer. This has bad effect on their health and cause problems such as obesity.

Another problem is the negative effect on their relationship with their family. Internet access fills most young people's time, and even their leisure time, so this separate them from their family and produces bad effect on their social behavior. A third problem is that not all internet sites are useful. Some sites bears inaccurate information, violence, and dangerous things.

To solve the problems, the first solution must be with the parents. They need to limit hours that children spend on the computer and to encourage them to have other hobbies and pastimes. It is also important for children to spend more time to speak with their family than facing electronic devices. Parents should encourage children to use other means of communication, too.

To conclude, I would say that the internet has brought many benefits and it will not disappear, therefore it is very important that we learn to use it well so that we can reap the benefits and not the disadvantages. (235 words)

Exercise 208. *Young people are much more aware of and concerned about the issues like the environment, poverty, and animal welfare than previous generations. What is your own opinion?*

SAMPLE WRITING

Many people think that the world existing problems are only matter the young generation as they are the candidates who are facing them now and in the future.

Although a considerable percentage of the public might refer to these hazards as hazards for the young predominantly, yet many of these concerns are actually brought into the scene by the old people. The previous generation are those who lived the new developments in science and technology that brought with them pollution, poverty and part of it also possible distinction of many species of plants and animals.

So they raise the alarms for those radical and serious consequences. It is often suggested that old generation are passing by and not interested in what happening and only the young who gives those alerts considerable thoughts.

However from what we are experiencing now, that many of green people are old and work actively to preserve animal rights and fight fiercely against global warming and environmental pollution. This give us that the present world concerns are a shared interest of both old and new generations. Although many activist on these issues appears in the media and they are from the youth, still and probably equal number from the old follow the same routes.

Actually, no one in this life wants to destroy our planet. Definitely every parent is of concern about his offspring lives thereafter, and selfishness does not dominate our thinking at all. What one should be aware of is that such threats are not always discussed or contemplated in the right way by old or young generation. (264 words)

Exercise 209. *It is important for travelers and business people to understand the cultures they come into contact with, however briefly. What are the main advantages of doing so? What do you think is the main disadvantage of doing so?*

SAMPLE WRITING

There is no doubt that the number of visitors and businessmen and women who are travelling abroad has been increasing markedly in recent years. However, not surprisingly, understanding the culture of local people brings many benefits to all types of visitors as well as problems for those who do not understand a new culture.

First of all, no sensible person can deny the importance of breaking down barriers between countries. By this I mean, people from different lands can socialize effectively and relate emotionally regardless of their race and religion, if they take time to learn languages and to find out about where they are going before they travel. As a result, the tension between people from different backgrounds would be melted.

Another important advantage that needs to be taken into account is that travelers can broaden their horizons by travelling. In other words, people who travel for business or tourism definitely would gain a lot of information from their host society. Knowing how to behave can help businessmen make lots of money for themselves and for their companies. Undoubtedly business and tourism play a pivotal role in employing of people and reviving the local economy in their own countries and when they travel.

On the other hand lack of understanding of the culture and traditions of people may lead to misunderstanding and even increased tension between different communities, simply because the background of any society can act as a mirror to reflect the nature

personality and behavior of people. Certainly, when we know these vital things we can overcome many difficulties. (262 words)

Exercise 210. *More and more city workers are deciding to live in the country and travel into work every day. The result is increased traffic congestion and damage to the environment. What measures do you think could be taken to encourage people not to travel much long distance into work?*

SAMPLE WRITING

Many people are moving out of big cities into the countryside to live to escape from city problems. This causes problems because most the jobs that are available are in the cities so people have to travel back into the cities again to work. The transport system cannot cope so people are using their own cars and the countryside is affected by the traffic jams.

One solution to encourage people to stay in cities is to improve the quality of life there. More money could be spent reducing crime, as this is one of the main reasons why people leave cities. For example, more policemen can be employed for city center. Moreover, safe places to work and live in should be made in the city center. The environment can be made cleaners and more agreeable. As a result, people might be encouraged to stay rather than moving out.

A very different way to tackle the problem would be to move some of the jobs out of city to smaller cities or towns. People could then still live in the countryside and have to travel short distances to work. Another step is to encourage workers to spend part of their working week at home, perhaps two days and then to go into work in the other days. This is happening more and more in many parts of the world.

There are other ways to overcome the situation but these are the most important. (242 words)

Exercise 211. *Write an essay to discuss the benefits of doing exercise.*

SAMPLE WRITING

Health is considered to be the most valuable thing one possesses. Improving health is always a prior task in one's daily routine. And the simplest, cheapest, but the most effective way to better one's health is doing regular exercise.

One advantage of doing exercise is to reduce stress. People who exercise are likely to feel more relaxed, healthier, and of course happier. Doing regular exercise helps the body produce happy chemicals that make the exercisers reduce the worries about life and work as well as forget the boredom and unhappiness.

Another benefit exercising brings us is that we will feel more energetic to face and overcome our daily difficulties. Doing exercise helps us reduce the possibilities of being ill, protects us from some fatal diseases as heart disease, cancers and diabetes. Regular exercisers are believed to have healthier, happier and longer lives. The other good thing is that doing exercise helps us feel more self-confident. We know exactly what we can do or what abilities, talents we have. We will think positively, do confidently, and lead an optimistic life if we practice exercising regularly. Controlling our weight effectively is another value. Perspiration occurs when we exercise, which helps our bodies get rid of bad things inside. Fats are burnt during our practicing exercise, which helps us to keep fit.

To sum up, doing exercise enables people to have good body-buildings, keep fit and brings exercisers many benefits. Sparing time doing exercise will ensure us a longer, healthier and happier life. (260 words)

Exercise 212. *Write an essay to talk about the situations and to offer the solutions to protect the wildlife from being all disappearing.*

SAMPLE WRITING

We now all know clearly that our environment is worsening day by day. Thousands of species have been vanishing, many other thousands are being threatened to be extinct. To solve the problems, or even to slower the process of extinction, there are a number of measures that should be taken to protect endangered animals.

The first problem is that people do not know much about the need to rare and endangered animals. Therefore, people should be taught about the importance of the wildlife and rare animals in the ecosystem.

Another bad thing is that the habitats for wild animals are being seriously damaged or polluted. To better homes for the wildlife we should protect their habitats from being degraded and then help build up good habitats for all species to live in. Sometimes, people who live in or near the endangered species' habitats have poor living conditions and rely mostly on wildlife products for their livelihood. Urgently, governments should raise these people's living standards by providing them with jobs, and help them to live well with the nature.

The other reasons are that some countries do not have laws to protect the vulnerable animals, people keep buying fashionable wildlife products, and there are not enough wildlife habitat reserves. To deal with these challenges, governments all over the world had better soon pass and enforce laws to protect the nature, to make the purchasing products related to wild species and to build up reserves for endangered ones to survive and develop.

Protecting the environment today is offering us and the next generations more prosperous future. To save the endangered species means to save the earth and to save ourselves. (278 words)

Exercise 213. Write an essay to talk about the reason why people want to have college or university education.

SAMPLE WRITING

People study in college or university for many different reasons. I think the most important reason is to gain more knowledge and learn more skills. Of course, there are also many other reasons that people study in college such as to get more friends, and increase one's self-confidence.

These days, most jobs require people who are educated and have good job skills. Therefore, the people who want a good job have to study hard and at least graduate with a high education. Furthermore, as technology advances all over the world, more and more education is required of people.

Some people who study in college or university want to make more friends and increase their interpersonal skills. They enjoy their lives in university or college and tend to socialize a lot. They can meet more people who have the similar interests with themselves. They can go to somewhere after school and make more friends who they trust.

The people who graduate from college seem more confident in our community. These people are more respected by society. Many people want to be respected and to be important by family, friends, their bosses, and others in their lives. They find that most of them can confidently talk and do their jobs as they are more educated. Therefore, most people want to get the confidence through the university or college study. In today's society, people need more knowledge and skills to be adapted. The university and college study is a good way to achieve this. (251 words)

Exercise 214. Write an essay to talk about the topic "Parents are our first teachers in life".

SAMPLE WRITING

Have you ever wondered the questions of "Who teaches you to walk?" "Who teaches you to speak?" It is your parents who teach you to do these basic things in your life. So don't you think that parents are the best teachers!

Firstly, parents know us very much. Parents give us life, and I think that we will spend large amount of time with them. So they know our merit and demerit in details. Meanwhile, they will help us to get rid of our demerit.

Furthermore, parents possessed many experiences. Since they are older than us, they have experienced many things. Sometimes, they are just like our models. And as the saying

goes: "Example is better than precept." So we will unconsciously copy some of our parents' habits and styles of behavior, i.e. we can learn many things from them.

Finally, parents will teach us everything. Since schoolteachers can just teach us knowledge from the books, our parents can teach us everything. For example, I learn knitting, cooking and make-up from my mother, while learn fixing leaky faucet from my father. They are the persons who love me most, so they will teach me everything without reservations. Just as the saying goes: "There is no place like home." And I think there is no teacher like our parents. They are the best teachers in our life. (227 words)

Exercise 215. *Individuals can do nothing to change society. Any new developments can only be brought about by governments and large institutions. How far do you agree or disagree?*

SAMPLE WRITING

It is no doubt that governments and large institutions carry out many different movements to change the society. However, for me, they cannot do anything without the contributions of each individual citizen.

To begin, members of governments and large institutions are citizens. Governments make policies, other legal measures to manage the society, but their work can only come into practice with the supports and obedience of all people. Take the policy of value added tax in Vietnam for example, the whole society thought it was necessary that customers should contribute to the national budget and approve of the law, so the new tax policy became practical.

By contrast, the fee on motor riders on using the road is not a reasonable rule to all citizens, so our law-makers have to reconsider. This is because of the feedbacks from provincial governments and individual motor users.

For me, state and organizations have legal rights to introduce new ideas or pass new laws, but those can only benefit the whole society when they are accepted by the communities. Moreover, governmental issues can encourage individuals to contribute more to the country and each person will also be greatly beneficial of what he has devoted.

In conclusion, citizens, organizations, and governments need to cooperate to make their own country a better place to live in. (221 words)

-----THE END-----